



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Edue T 1718.88.840

**HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY**

**THE ESSEX INSTITUTE  
TEXT-BOOK COLLECTION**

**GIFT OF  
GEORGE ARTHUR PLIMPTON  
OF NEW YORK**

**JANUARY 25, 1924**





3 2044 102 863 529















# Whitney's Modern Language Books.

---

## GERMAN.

**A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR.** *Revised Edition, with New Exercises.* 12mo, 472 pp.

**KEY TO GRAMMAR.** 12mo. (*Ready shortly.*)

**BRIEF GERMAN GRAMMAR.** 16mo, 143 pp.

**GERMAN READER.** 12mo, 523 pp.

**GERMAN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.** 8vo, 900 pp.

**GERMAN TEXTS.** Edited by Prof. W. D. WHITNEY.

Lessing's *Minna von Barnhelm*. Annotated by W. D. WHITNEY, Prof. in Yale College. 16mo, 138 pp.

Schiller's *Wilhelm Tell*. Annotated by Prof. A. SACHTLEBEN, of Charleston, S. C. 16mo, 199 pp.

Goethe's *Faust*. Annotated by WM. COOK. 16mo, 229 pp.

Goethe's *Iphigenie auf Tauris*. Annotated by Prof. FRANKLIN CARTER, Williams College. 16mo, 113 pp.

Schiller's *Maria Stuart*. Annotated by E. S. JOYNES, Prof. in University of South Carolina. 16mo, 222 pp.

Lessing's *Nathan der Weise*. Annotated by H. C. G. BRANDT, Prof. in Hamilton College. 16mo, 158 pp.

## WHITNEY-KLEMM GERMAN SERIES.

By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, and L. R. KLEMM.

**RUDIMENTS OF GERMAN.** (*In Preparation.*)

**GERMAN BY PRACTICE.** 12mo, 305 pp.

**ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER.** 12mo, 237 pp.

## FRENCH.

**A FRENCH GRAMMAR.** With Exercises and Illustrative Sentences from French Authors. 12mo, 442 pp.

**KEY TO GRAMMAR.** 12mo, 96 pp.

**PRACTICAL FRENCH.** Taken from the author's larger Grammar, and supplemented by Conversations and Idiomatic Phrases. 12mo, 304 pp.

---

**HENRY HOLT & CO., Publishers, New York.**

**A**

**COMPENDIOUS**

**GERMAN GRAMMAR**

BY

**WILLIAM D. WHITNEY**

*Professor of Sanskrit and Comparative Philology and Instructor  
in Modern Languages in Yale College*

---

**SIXTH EDITION, THOROUGHLY REVISED**  
**AND**  
**WITH NEW EXERCISES**

**NEW YORK**  
**HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY**

**F. W. CHRISTERN**  
**BOSTON : CARL SCHÖNHOF**



Edue T 1718.88.840

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GEORGE ARTHUR FLINTON  
JANUARY 25, 1924

COPYRIGHT, 1888,  
BY  
HENRY HOLT & CO.

# PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

(SOMEWHAT ABBREVIATED.)

**T**HE author of a new German grammar, in a community where so many are already in use, and with so much approval, may well feel called upon to explain and defend his undertaking—especially, when his work is comparatively wanting in those practical exercises, for writing and speaking, which make the principal part of the other grammars now most in use.

That system of instruction in modern languages of which the Ollendorff grammars are popularly regarded as the type has its unquestionable advantages where learning to speak is the main object directly aimed at, and where the smallness of the classes, and the time spent with the instructor, render it possible for the latter to give each pupil that amount of personal attention and drilling which is needed in order to make the system yield its best results.

But in our schools and colleges this is for the most part impracticable. Their circumstances and methods of instruction render translation and construction the means by which the most useful knowledge and the best discipline can be gained. To the very great majority of those who learn German, ability to speak is an object inferior in importance to ability to understand accurately and readily the language as written or printed; and the attainment of the former is properly to be made posterior to that of the latter. One who has mastered the principles of grammar, and acquired by reading a fair vocabulary and a feeling for the right use of it, will learn to speak and to write rapidly and well when circumstances require of him that ability.

Moreover, there is a large and increasing class of students whose philological training has to be won chiefly or altogether in the study of the modern languages, instead of the classical—and who must win it by methods somewhat akin with those so long and so successfully followed in classical study. For the class referred to, German offers peculiar advantages, quite superior to those presented by any other modern language. In words, forms, and constructions, it is enough unlike English to call forth and exercise all the pupil's powers of discrimination, to sharpen his attention to the niceties of word and phrase, and to train his philological insight; while, at the same time, the fundamental relation of German to the most central and intimate part of English makes the study instinct with practical bearings on our own tongue, and equivalent to a historical and comparative study of English itself; and, both on the esthetic and on the practical side, there is no other modern literature so rich in attraction and so liberal of reward to us as the German.

It has appeared to me that, in these aspects of the study, hardly sufficient assistance was furnished the teacher and learner by the grammars hitherto accessible. Three subjects especially have called for more careful exposition: the derivation of German words from one another; the construction of sentences; and the correspondences between German and English. I have also desired to see in some respects a more acceptable arrangement of the ordinary subject-matter of a grammar—one having in view the history of words and forms, although not obtruding the details of that history unnecessarily upon pupils unprepared for their study.

At the same time, I have endeavored to make a really compendious and simple grammar, according to the promise of the title-page, a grammar which might answer the needs even of young scholars, although containing some things which they would not fairly understand and appreciate

until later. That I shall have satisfied others' ideal of a compendious grammar, by including all they may deem essential and omitting the unessential, I do not venture to hope ; but only trust that I may have come pretty near to meeting the wants of many.

A careful distinction of the contents of the book by variety of type, according to their degree of immediate importance, has been attempted throughout. Especially, I have meant to put in the largest type (sm. pica) just about so much as the scholar ought to learn carefully and thoroughly in his first course of grammar-lessons, preparatory to reading. This a class should acquire, according to the age and capacity and previous training of its members, in from twelve to twenty-five lessons ; and should then at once be put into reading, while the grammar is taken up again, and such part of what was before omitted is learned as the judgment of the intelligent teacher shall direct.

After enough reading has been done to give some familiarity with forms and constructions, I would have the writing of exercises begun ; and I feel confident that a better result in reading and writing together will be won thus, in a given time, than by any other method. I have myself been accustomed to prepare exercises for my classes, for turning into German, from whatever text the class were reading ; taking a sentence or paragraph, and putting its phrases into a different shape from that presented in the text, so that the student shall have his main vocabulary before him on the page, instead of having to hunt for proper expressions in the dictionary, with knowledge insufficient for the task. This method I would recommend to others.

Some of the subjects treated in the grammar (especially word-derivation, and the relation of English and German) need support from the lexicon. Considering the general deficiency of information on these subjects in the access-

ible dictionaries, I am endeavoring to give the beginner help till he can make his analyses and comparisons for himself, in the Vocabulary to a German Reader, which is published as a companion-book to the present one. From its pages have been drawn a large part of the examples given in the Grammar.

Of course, I have consulted, and more or less used, a good many grammars while engaged in the preparation of this one, deriving more or less of valuable information or suggestion from each and all of them. But I do not feel that I need to make special acknowledgments save to one—the work of Heyse (in its two editions, the *Schul-Grammatik* and the *Ausführliches Lehrbuch*). To it my obligations have been more constant and various than I can well point out in detail ; hence this general confession of indebtedness. Those familiar with Heyse will have no difficulty in tracing its influence in many parts (for example, in the classification of verbs of the Old conjugation, which I have taken almost without modification from that authority); while they will also find that I have nowhere followed it slavishly.

It has everywhere been my intention so to set forth the facts of the language as to favor the recognition of language as a growth, as something which has been gradually converted into what it is, from a very different condition, by those who have used it—a recognition which is the first need, if one would really understand language, and which must lead the way to those deeper studies into the history of languages and of language, constituting so important a branch of modern science.

The study of German is so rapidly increasing in prevalence that there is pressing need of raising it to a somewhat higher plane. I trust it will be found that this volume contributes its part, though a small one, to so desirable an end.

W. D. W.

YALE COLLEGE, New Haven, Aug. 1869.

## PREFACE TO THE SIXTH EDITION.

**I**N the revision of this work no fundamental changes have been made in its plan or structure. Even the paragraphing has been kept unchanged throughout, so as not to interfere with the pertinence of the references extensively made to it in text-books heretofore published. But many additions and improvements have been introduced—partly the result of the author's own experience in the use of the work, partly due to the suggestions of other users: among whom are to be specially mentioned, with thanks, Prof. A. S. Wheeler of the Sheffield Scientific School of Yale College, and Prof. O. Seidensticker of Philadelphia. The so-called New Orthography of German words has also been described, and everywhere introduced, in brackets, beside the old spelling: it has not yet been so widely adopted in German literature that its acceptance in place of the old seemed advisable. And, especially, an entire new set of Exercises has been prepared, including illustrations of the intricacies of German usage by extracts from the best German authors: as to their use, see the Note below.

To obviate objections made from some quarters to the use of the smaller type of the first edition, something of the former elaborate classification of the matter of the volume by three sizes of the type, etc., has been abandoned, and only two sizes, of superior legibility, are now employed.

Grateful for the favor with which the work has been received during nearly twenty years, the author hopes that in its somewhat changed form it will continue to merit the approval of teachers and students.

YALE COLLEGE, New Haven, May 1888.

## NOTE ON THE EXERCISES.

The exercises (pp. 285—395) are intended to be used in connection with the first study of the grammar; but it has seemed best to put them together, instead of scattering them through the body of the text. They are divided into two series. The first series consists of simple exercises for translating from German into English and *vice-versa*. These follow in the main the arrangement of the grammar, though in some places this order is abandoned—as, by introducing a lesson on prepositions quite early in the series, and by taking up the subject of sentence-construction before going on to the subjunctive and infinitive, the use of which necessitates more involved sentences than the pupil is prepared for. Each exercise is accompanied by a vocabulary of the words used for the first time in it, the object being to familiarize the pupil gradually with a good number of the most-used German words, and thus to give him a vocabulary which he will find useful in all reading or speaking. There are also general vocabularies at the end, including all the words used in both series of exercises.

The second series of exercises consists of sentences selected from the writings of well-known German authors, illustrative of the usages of the language, including also those more special idiomatic points not taken up in the first series. Accompanying these are short English themes for translation into German, in which are used as far as possible the same words or the same constructions which are to be found in the illustrative sentences. With the help of the English vocabulary, the pupil will be able without too much difficulty to render these into German.

In making use of these exercises each teacher will of course be guided by his own judgment and the necessities and capabilities of his class. If the exercises are too long, they can be divided. If too short, or not full enough, it will be easy, still using the same words or constructions, to add an indefinite number of sentences to each exercise. If the object is to get the class to the point of reading German as soon as possible, it will be best merely to read through the German exercises of the first series, leaving the English ones to be taken up and written after some reading has been done. In the same way, the reading through of the illustrative sentences, and the

writing of the English themes accompanying them, will serve as a review of the grammar or a valuable auxiliary to reading. After studying carefully the illustrative sentences, the student will meet with little in any German reading which can cause him grammatical difficulty and the working through of the English themes should be sufficient preparation for rendering into German, or writing in German, in a freer and more general way. All the exercises are annotated with references to the grammar in cases of special difficulty.

The illustrative sentences are classified by the paragraph of the grammar which they illustrate, the number of the paragraph being given in brackets. Each sentence is followed by the name of its author in parenthesis. For those authors most frequently met with are used the following abbreviations:

Frei.	Freitag.	Klop.	Klopstock.
G.	Goethe.	Less.	Lessing.
A. Gr.	A. Grimm.	J. P. R.	Jean Paul Richter.
H. Gr.	Herman Grimm.	Rück.	Rückert.
J. Gr.	Jakob Grimm.	Sch.	Schiller.
Hei.	Heine.	Spiel.	Spielhagen.
Hey.	Heyse.	Spr.	Spruch ( <i>proverb</i> ).
Humb.	Humboldt.	Uh.	Uhland.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

*The references are to paragraphs.*

---

## **ALPHABET, 1-4.**

Use of capitals, 4.

## **NEW ORTHOGRAPHY, 5.**

## **PRONUNCIATION, 6-55.**

Vowels, 7-22; consonants, 23-53; foreign words, 54; accent, 55.

## **PARTS OF SPEECH, 56.**

## **DECLENSION, 57-62.**

Rules for gender of nouns, 61.

## **ARTICLES, 63-67.**

Use of articles, 66.

## **NOUNS, 68-113.**

General rules of declension, 68-73; First or strong declension, 74-90; first class, 75-80; second class, 81-86; third class, 87-90; Second or weak declension, 91-95; irregular declension, 96-100; nouns of foreign origin, 101; proper names, 102-108; modifying adjuncts of the noun, 109-112; equivalents of the noun, 113.

## **ADJECTIVES, 114-148.**

When declined, 114-118; first and second declensions, 119-128; mixed declension, 124.2; adjective used as substantive, 129; as adverb, 130; participles as adjectives, 131; comparison of adjectives, 133-142; comparison with adverbs, 141; modifying adjuncts of the adjective, 143-148.

**PRONOUNS, 149-195.**

Personal pronouns, 151-156; possessive pronominal adjectives, 157-162; demonstratives, 163-166; determinatives, 167-171; interrogatives, 172-176; relatives, 177-183; indefinite pronouns and indefinite numerals, 184-195.

**NUMERALS, 196-208.**

Cardinals, 197-202; ordinals, 203; multiplicatives, etc., 202-206; derivatives from ordinals, 207-208.

**USES OF THE FORMS OF DECLENSION, 209-230.**

Numbers, 210-211; cases:—nominative, 212-214; genitive, 215-220; dative, 221-225; accusative, 226-230.

**CONJUGATION, 231.****VERBS, 232-319.**

Classification, 233; simple forms of the verb, 235-237; compound forms, 238-240; use of *haben* or *sein* as auxiliary of tense, 241-244; conjugations, 245-246; New or weak conjugation, 247-250; modal auxiliaries, 251-260; Old or strong conjugation, 261-273; passive verbs, 274-282; reflexive verbs, 283-290; impersonal verbs, 291-295; compound verbs, 296; separable, 297-301; inseparable, 302-307; separable or inseparable, 308-311; other compound verbs, 312-313; verbal adjuncts, 314-319.

**USES OF THE FORMS OF CONJUGATION, 320-359.**

Person and number, 320-322; mode and tense:—indicative, 323-328; subjunctive, 329-333; conditional, 334-336; imperative, 337-338; infinitive, 339-348; participles, 349-359.

**INDECLINABLES, 360.****ADVERBS, 361-370.**

Classification, 362; origin, 363-367; comparison, 368; special uses, 369; place, 370.

**PREPOSITIONS, 371-381.**

Cases governed by them, 372-376.

**CONJUNCTIONS, 382-386.**

Classification, 383.

**INTERJECTIONS, 387-392.**

**WORD-FORMATION, DERIVATION, 393-417.**

Introductory explanations, 393-402; derivation of verbs, 403-406; of nouns, 407-412; of adjectives, 413-416; of the other parts of speech, 417.

**WORD-COMBINATION, COMPOSITION, 418-425.**

Introductory explanations, 418-419; composition of verbs, 420; of nouns, 421-422; of adjectives, 423-424; of particles, 425.

**CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES, 426-446.**

Introductory explanations, 426-429; regular order of the sentence, 430; inverted order, 431; interrogative and optative sentences, 432; conditional clauses, 433; transposed order, 434; dependent clauses, 435-439; substantive dependent clause, 436; adjective dependent clause, 437; adverbial dependent clause, 438; summary of the rules of arrangement, 440-444; concluding remarks, 445-446.

**RELATION OF GERMAN TO ENGLISH, 447-461.**

Introductory explanations, 447-452; the law of progression of mutes, 453-457; correspondences, 458-60.

**BRIEF HISTORY OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, 462-469.**

Three periods of history of High-German, 463; Old High-German period, 464; Middle High-German period, 465; New High-German period, 467; what the present German is, 468; remarks, 469.

**GERMAN WRITTEN CHARACTER, pp. 275.****LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS, pp. 278-284.****EXERCISES, FIRST SERIES, pp. 285-334.**

“ SECOND SERIES, pp. 335-395.

**GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY, pp. 397-444.****ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY, pp. 445-461.****INDEX, pp. 463-472.**

# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

---

## ALPHABET.

1. THE German language is usually printed in an alphabet having the same origin as our own, and the same extent; but in the form of its characters nearly resembling what we call “Old English,” or “Black-letter.”

This is one of the derivative forms of the old Latin alphabet, a product of the perverse ingenuity of monkish scribes in the Middle Ages. It was in general use throughout Europe at the time of the invention of printing, but was abandoned by one nation after another for the simpler, neater, and more legible character which we call “Roman,” and which the Germans know as “Latin” (*lateinisch*). For scientific literature, the latter is in more common use among the Germans themselves, and many of the best German scholars are in favor of the entire relinquishment of the other.

2. The letters of the ordinary German alphabet, with their “Roman” equivalents, and the names by which the Germans call them, are as follows:

German letters.	Roman equiv'ts.	German names.	German letters.	Roman equiv'ts.	German names.
A, a	a	â ( <i>ah</i> )	G, g	g	gâ
B, b	b	bâ ( <i>bay</i> )	H, h	h	hâ
C, c	c	tsâ	I, i	i	ē ( <i>ee</i> )
D, d	d	dâ	J, j	j	yot
E, e	e	â	K, k	k	kâ
F, f	f	ěf	L, l	l	ěl

German letters.	Roman equiv'ts.	German names.	German letters.	Roman equiv'ts.	German names.
M, m	m	ëm	T, t	t	tā
N, n	n	ën	U, u	u	ū (oo)
O, o	o	o	V, v	v	fou ( <i>found</i> )
P, p	p	pā	W, w	w	vā
Q, q	q	kū ( <i>koo</i> )	X, x	x	ix
R, r	r	ër	Y, y	y	ipsilon
S, ſ, s	s	ës	Z, z	z	tsët

1. There is a special written alphabet, as well as a printed, for the German. The forms of its letters, and specimens of written texts, will be given at the end of this work. The beginner had better not concern himself with it, as he can make practical use of it to advantage only when he has already gained considerable familiarity with the language.

2. When German is written or printed in the "Latin" character, each German letter is represented by its Latin equivalent, with the single exception that for the compound ß, sz, is usually and preferably substituted ss (or fs : see 49).

3. Certain points concerning this alphabet require special notice on the part of the learner:

1. Of the two forms of small s, the second, or short s, is used at the end of a word; the other, or long ſ, in other situations: thus, laß; but lesen, ſo.

If a word ending in s is followed by another in composition, it is still written with short s: thus, losgehen, bißher, deßhalb, daßſelbe, Donnerſtag, Liebeßbrief. Short s is also used before an ending of derivation beginning with a consonant: thus, Bißthum [Bistum], Weißeit, boßhaft, Häßchen, Rößlein, lößbar; further, in foreign words before other consonants than t or p: thus, Maße, Boßket or Boßquet, Discours, Disciplin, Patriotismus.

2. Some of the letters are modified in form by combination with one another: thus, ch, ck; sz; tz.

3. Some letters resemble one another so much as to be easily confounded by the beginner:

Thus, B, b, and V, v; C, c, and E, e; G, g, and S, s; R, k, N, n, and R, r; D, d, O, o, and Q, q; also, b, b, d, d, and h, h; f, f, and ſ, s; k, k, and t, t; r, r, and x, x.

4. The German uses capital initial letters

1. As the English, at the beginning of sentences, of lines in poetry, and of direct quotations.

2. For all nouns, common as well as proper, and for words used as nouns.

Words used as nouns are especially adjectives (129) and infinitives (340). As no fixed line divides their ordinary from their substantive use, there are doubtful cases in each class, with regard to which usage is conflicting.

But nouns and noun-forms used as other parts of speech — adverbs, prepositions, prefixes, etc.—do not take capitals: thus, *statt, falls, flugs, leid thun*.

3. For pronouns of the third person, when used in address, with the value of those of the second person (153).

That is, especially, *Sie*, with its oblique cases, and its corresponding possessive *Ihr*; but not its reflexive, *sich*.

4. Pronouns of the second person properly take capitals only when intended to come under the eye of the person addressed (as in letters, etc.); but they are sometimes written with capitals also in other cases.

5. Respecting the indefinite pronouns *Jedermann every one*, *Jemand any one*, *Niemand no one*, etc., and the pronominal adjectives used substantively, such as *alles everything*, *mancher many a one*, *einige some*, usage is very various. Some write *ein* with a capital when it is emphatic, or means *one*.

6. For adjectives derived from names of persons or places, usually; but not for adjectives of nationality, as *englisch English*, *französisch French*.

7. Adjectives of title, or those used in respectful and complimentary address, also usually take capital initials: thus, *Eure Königliche Hoheit your royal highness*, *Sie, Wohlgeborener Herr you, excellent sir*, *Friedrich der Zweite or der Große*.

## NEW ORTHOGRAPHY.

5. 1. German scholars have, for some time past, been attempting to improve the spelling of the language in the direction of simplicity and consistency, especially as regards the use of double vowels, of double consonants, of *h* as the sign of a long vowel, etc. Some of these changes have recently been officially authorized, and are gradually coming into more or less

general use, while others are liable to be met with in the works of certain authors.

2. In this grammar the old and still prevailingly used orthography will be employed; but the authorized changes will be given under the head of Pronunciation after the various letters, and the new spelling of each word will be added after it in brackets wherever it occurs.

## PRONUNCIATION.

6. The precise mode of production of German articulated sounds, taken singly or in combination, as well as the general tone and style of utterance, can only be acquired through means of oral instruction, and by long practice. The following rules, however, will help the learner, with or without a teacher, to approximate to the true pronunciation of German words.

The subject is a comparatively easy one to deal with, because

1. There are no silent letters, either vowels or consonants.

Excepting sometimes *h* (28).

2. As a rule, the same letter receives the same sound under all circumstances.

Exceptions, *b, c, d, g, f, v*—see those letters, below.

3. The German, however, like many other languages, writes certain simple sounds, vowel or consonant, with combinations of two and of three letters, or with digraphs and trigraphs.

## VOWELS.

7. Each simple vowel sound is either long or short, varying in quantity, or time of utterance, without at the same time varying, like our English vowels, to any notable extent, in quality, or nature of sound.

The distinction of long and short vowels must to a great extent be learned by experience; but the following rules will be found of service:

1. A vowel doubled, or followed by *h*, is long.

2. A vowel is short before a double consonant, and more usually before a group of two consonants – unless

the latter of the pair or group belongs to an appended ending or suffix.

8. **A, a.**—**A** has always the sound of our open or Italian *a*, in *far, father*.

It is long in *Mal, Haar, Bahn, nah, Namen*.

It is short in *Ball, Mann, hatte, Hand, scharf, kann, bald*.

Particularly avoid the flattening of this vowel, or its reduction to a sound at all resembling that of our “short *a*” in *hat, can*.

1. Some words vary in spelling between *aa* and *a*; of those more usually having *aa* the New Orthography prescribes *a* in *Maß measure, Schaf sheep, Schar troop* (and *=schar* in *Pflug=schar*), *Star starling, Wage scales, Ware ware, bar in cash* (*Barshaft cash*).

9. **E, e.**—**E** is pronounced nearly as our *e* in *they*, or our “long *a*” in *fate*, only without the distinct vanishing-sound of *ee* into which our *a* passes at its close. Short *e* is nearly our “short *e*” in *met, men*.

It is long in *Heer, mehr, Reh*.

It is short in *denn, schnell, nett, Herr, Welt*.

In long syllables—and by some authorities also in short ones—is distinguished a closer and an opener utterance of the *e*, the latter inclining very slightly toward our “short *a*” (in *hat, can*). The difference is analogous to that between the French *é* and *è*. Thus, *e* is said to be close in *mehr, Reh, jeder* (first syllable), and open in (the first syllables of) *Leben, geben, beten*. No rules are to be given respecting the occurrence of this distinction; nor is it much to be insisted on.

Unlike the other vowels, *e* is notably slighted and obscured in sound when unaccented. Especially before a liquid (*n, l, r*), in a syllable following the accent, it acquires nearly the tone of our “short *u*” (in *but*), and becomes very inconspicuous.

Guard against giving to final *e* the sound of English *e*; it should have a very open utterance, and in parts of Germany even becomes like our “short *u*” (in *but, puff*).

1. The New Orthography writes *Herde herd*, instead of *Heerde*.

10. **I, i.**—**I** has the sound of our *i* in *pique, machine*, or of our “long *e*,” or double *ee*. When short, it is more like our “short *i*” (in *pin*), yet somewhat less removed than that is from our “long *e*.”



It is long in *ihn, ihr, Igel, dir, Mine.*

It is short in *billig, bitten, hinter, ist, Trift.*

ÿ is never written double, and it is followed by *h* only in the personal pronouns *ihn, ihm, ihr, ihrer, ihnen*, and the possessives *ihr* and *ihrig*. To indicate its long sound an *e* is generally added, making the digraph, or compound vowel, *ie* (18).

11. **Ö, ø.**—**Ö** has always the tone of our “long *o*,” except the distinct vanishing-sound of *u* (*oo*) with which the latter ends.

It is long in *Moor, Bohne, Ton, Gebot, Moder.*

It is short in *joll, Gott, offen, Molke, Topf.*

Never give to *ö* the quality of our “short *o*” in *hot, on*, etc.; this is no proper *o*-sound, but pretty nearly the German short *a*.

1. The New Orthography writes *Los lot* (and *lösen* and *Lösung*).

12. **U, u.**—**U** long is our *u* in *rule*, or *oo* in *boot*; *u* short is nearly our *u* in *pull*, or *oo* in *book*, but less removed from long *u*.

It is long in *Uhr, nun, gut, ruhen.*

It is short in *Brust, Stunde, Null.*

**U** is never doubled.

Be especially careful not to give to *u*, under any circumstances, the pronunciation of English *u* in *union, mute, cure*; to do so is to put a *y* before it.

13. **Y, y.**—**Y** is found only in foreign words (except, according to the usage of some, in the digraphs *ay, ey*: see below, 19.3), and is ordinarily pronounced as an *i* in the same situation.

Examples: *Syrup, Asyl, Iyrisch, Myrte.*

Some require that in words from the Greek, of more learned and less popular use, it should have the sound of *ü* (17).

#### MODIFIED VOWELS.

14. 1. The modified vowels are, historically, products of the mixture of an *e* or *i*-sound with *a, o, u*, or of the phonetic assimilation of the latter to the former in a succeeding syllable. They were written *Ne, De, Ue, ac, oc, ue*, and are still often so written when the vowel

modified is a capital; but when small letters were used, the *e* came to be first written above the other vowel—thus, *ä, ö, ü*—and then, for convenience, was reduced in common use to a couple of dots—as *ä, ö, ü*.

2. They are never doubled; and hence, a noun containing in the singular a double vowel, if requiring modification in the plural, loses one vowel: thus, *Saal* forms *Säle*, *Naß* forms *Nässer*.

15. *Ä, ä*.—*Ä* has the sound of an open *e*—that is to say, of an *e* very slightly approaching our “short *a*”; it is everywhere hardly distinguishable from an *e* in the same situation.

It is long in *klägen, prägen, Äser, Späher, Mähre*.

It is short in *Hände, Äpfel, hätte, Bäder, fällen*.

1. A number of words vary in their spelling between *ä* and *e*. Of those often spelt with *e* the New Orthography prefers *ä* in *Gebärde gesture*; and in those oftenest written with *ä* it prefers *e* in *überschwenglich exuberant*, and *welsh Welsh*. For the interchange of *äu* and *eu* see below, 21.3.

16. *Ö, ö*.—*Ö* is really produced by a combination of that position of the tongue in which *e* (*e* in *they*) is uttered, and of that position of the lips in which *o* is uttered; but it is not easily given by a conscious effort so to dispose the organs. It is nearest in tone to our *u* in *hurt*, but is notably different from this, verging considerably toward the *e* of *they*. It is closely akin with the French *eu*-sounds.

It is long in *Öfen, mögen, schön, hören, Öl*.

It is short in *könnte, öffnen, Hölle, Spötter, Örter*.

To form *ö*, therefore, endeavor to hit an intermediate sound between the vowels of *hurt* and *hate*.

The German poets frequently make *ö* rime with the simple *e*, and in parts of Germany the two are hardly distinguished. But their real difference, as properly pronounced, is quite marked, and should never be neglected.

17. *Ü, ü*.—*Ü* is produced by a combination of that position of the tongue in which *i* (*i* in *pique, pin*) is uttered, and of that position of the lips in which *u* (*u* in

*rule, pull*) is uttered. It is the same sound with the French *u*. To utter it, first round the lips to the *u*-position, and then, without moving them, fix the tongue to say *i* (*ee*)—or *vice versa*.

It is long in *übel, Schüler, müde, fühl, über*.

It is short in *Glück, Mütter, Üppigkeit, füllen, Hütte, dünn*.

The sounds of *ö* and *ü* are, among the German vowels, much the hardest to acquire, and cannot be mastered without assiduous practice under a teacher.

#### DIPHTHONGS AND VOCAL DIGRAPHS.

18. For *ŷ, Ȯ, ŭ*, see Modified Vowels, above (14–17).

*ŷe*, as already noticed (10), is an *i* made long by the addition of an *e*, instead of by doubling, or the addition of *h*.

Historically, *ie* often represents an original combination of separate vowels.

Examples: *die, tief, liegen, Frieden, Riemen*.

At the end of a few words (mostly coming from the Latin, and always accented on the preceding syllable), the *e* of *ie* has its own proper sound, and the *i* is pronounced like *y* before it, or else forms an independent syllable: thus, *Linien, Glorie, Familie, Tragödie*; also *Enie* (plural of *Enie*, and better spelt *Eniee*).

1. The New Orthography writes *ie* instead of *i* in verbs (404, II. 4) like *marſchieren, ſtudieren, hantieren*.

19. 1. *ŷi*.—*ŷi* is a combination of letters representing a true diphthongal sound, which is composed of the two elements *a* (*a* in *far*) and *i* (*i* in *pique*). It is pronounced nearly as the English *aye* (meaning ‘yes’), or like the “long *i*” of *aisle, isle*, but with the first constituent of that sound made very slightly opener and more conspicuous, a little dwelt on. It occurs in very few words.

Examples: *Hain, Waiſe, Mai*.

2. *ŷi*.—*ŷi* represents the same sound, and is of very much more frequent occurrence, being the ordinary German equivalent of our “long *i*.”

Examples: Bein, Beil, Eimer, sei, Ei, Eitelkeit.

3. *Ay* and *ey* were formerly written in certain words instead of *ai* and *ei*: they are now gone nearly out of use, only a few authors retaining them.

Examples: May, seyn, sey, Polizen.

20. *Au*.—*Au* combines the two sounds of *a* (in *far*) and *u* (in *rule*), and is pronounced almost precisely like the English *ou*, *ow*, in *house*, *down*, but with the first element, the *a*-sound, a shade more distinct.

Examples: Haus, laufen, Auge, Sau, braun, Maul.

21. 1. *Eu*.—*Eu* is most nearly like the English *oi*, *oy*, in *boil*, *loy*, differing chiefly in having the first element briefer and less conspicuous. Theoretically, its final element is the *ü*-sound.

Examples: heute, neu, Euter, Freunde, euer.

2. *Äu*, *äu*.—*Äu* is the modified diphthong corresponding to *au*, as *ä* to *a*. It is pronounced in the same manner as *eu*.

Examples: Äugler, Häute, bräunen, Träume.

3. There are a number of words which vary in their spelling between *eu* and *äu*. Of those oftenest spelt with *äu* the New Orthography prefers *eu* in *bleuen maul*, *deuchten seem*, *Greuel horror*, *greulich horrible*, *leugnen deny*, *schneuzen snuff*.

22. *Ui*.—*Ui* is found only in *hui*, *pfui*, and is pronounced like *we*.

#### CONSONANTS.

23. *B*, *b*.—*B* has the same sound as in English, when followed in the same syllable by a vowel or a semivowel (*r*, *l*), or when doubled.

Examples: Biber, Bube, haben, ober, Blei, brechen, Ebbe.

In other situations—i.e., when final, or followed by a consonant in general—it loses its sonant character, and is converted into the corresponding surd, *p*.

Examples: Stab, gehabt, ob, schub, Habsburg.

24. *C*, *c*.—*C*, in words properly German, is found

only in the combinations *ch*, *ck*, *ſch*, for which see below, 43, 44, 48.

In words borrowed from other languages and not Germanized in spelling, it is, as in English, hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *n*, *r*, but soft before *e*, *i*, *y*: in the former case, it is pronounced as *k*, in the latter, as *ts* (German *z*: 42).

Examples: *Cato*, *Carcer*, *Concert*, *Cicero*, *Claudius*, *Ocean*.

1. There are many foreign words in regard to which usage is still unsettled, either *f* or *c* being written for the hard sound, and either *z* or *c* for the soft sound: thus, *Carcer* or *Rarzer*, *Concert* or *Ronzert*.

**25. D, d.**—*D*, like *b*, has its own proper sonant sound, that of English *d*, before a vowel, or any consonant that may intervene between it and a vowel in the same syllable; also when doubled.

Examples: *Damm*, *dicke*, *Dorf*, *du*, *Adel*, *drei*, *Dwall*, *Troddel*.

At the end of a word, or of a syllable before another consonant, it is changed to the corresponding surd, *t*.

Examples: *Lied*, *Stadt*, *mild*, *Abend*, *ländlich*.

1. The combination *dt* is the equivalent of a double *t*, the *d* not being separately pronounced: thus, *gesandt*, *beredt*, *lädt*, *ſandte*; and in a few words the spelling wavers between *dt* and *t*. The New Orthography writes *tot dead*, instead of the usual *todt* (hence also *töten*, etc.); also *geſcheit clever*, instead of *geſcheidt*.

**26. F, f.**—*F* has always the same sound as in English.

**27. G, g.**—*G*, like the other sonant mutes, *b* and *d*, has its proper hard sound (as English *g* in *go*, *give*, *get*) when doubled, or when followed in the same syllable by a vowel or a liquid (*l*, *n*, *r*). It is never softened before *e* or *i*—as it also is not in any English word of Germanic origin.

Examples: *Ganz*, *gegen*, *Gier*, *gut*, *groß*, *Glas*, *Gnade*, *Dogge*.

In the same situations in which *b* and *d* become *p* and *t*, *g* is also changed to a surd; it does not, however, assume the value of *f*, but rather that of *ch* (43).

Examples: Tag, jag, Zug, Bogt, Magd, ruhig, täglich.

There is much difference of usage among Germans, and of opinion among German orthoepists, as to the pronunciation of *g*. All, indeed, agree to give it the hard sound when initial. But in other situations, some always soften it to *ch*—e. g., in Degen, Ziege. Others do not allow it anywhere the precise *ch*-sound, especially not after the hard vowels (*a, o, u*), but pronounce it nearly as *f*, or as something between a *g* and *f*, or between a *f* and *ch*—and so on.

In many words taken from the French, *g* has its French sound, like that of the English *s* in *vision*, or *z* in *azure*: thus, Genie, Page, Ingenieur, Orange, genieren.

28. *h*, *h*.—*h* has the sound of English *h* when it begins a word (or either of the suffixes *heit, haft*). Elsewhere it is silent, serving either to lengthen the preceding vowel, or to make a hiatus between two vowels.

For *th*, which is pronounced as simple *t*, see below (37.2). For *ch* and *sch*, see below (43, 48).

Examples: hin, her, hat, Hof, Hut, höher, Rindheit, habhaft, froh, rasch, Schuh, ruhen, Ahn, Ehre, eher, ihm, Ohr, thun, Ather.

29. *j*, *j*.—*j* is always pronounced like our *y* consonant.

Examples: Jahr, jung, jeder, Johann, bejahren.

30. *k*, *k*.—*k* has always the sound of English *k*. Instead of double *k* is written *ck* (which, however, if separated in syllabication, becomes *k=f*).

Examples: kann, kenne, Kleid, Kreide, Knie, Knabe, Klotz, drücken (but drucken).

31. *l*, *l*; *m*, *m*.—These letters have the same sounds as their English correspondents.

32. *n*, *n*.—*n* has usually the same sound as English *n*. Like the latter, it has before *f* the value of *ng*: thus, finfen, Danf.

For the digraph *ng*, see below (45).

33. *p*, *p*.—*p* is pronounced as in English. For the digraph *ph*, see below (46.2).

34. *q*, *q*.—*q*, as in English, is always followed by

u, and qu is pronounced as *kv*, but with the pure labial utterance of the *v*-sound, as explained below (under *m*, 39).

Examples: Qual, quer, Quirl, quoll.

**35. R, r.**—*R* has a decidedly more distinct and forcible utterance than in English, being more or less rolled or trilled, and hence formed a little further forward in the mouth than our *r*. In every situation, it must be clearly heard.

Examples: Rand, reden, Ritter, Rohr, rund, her, Herr, Arbeiter, Führer, vermerken, marmorner, erlernbarer.

**36. S, s, ß.**—*S*, after a manner analogous with *b*, *d*, and *g*, has its proper surd or hissing sound only when doubled, final, or standing before a consonant; before a vowel (not before a semivowel; nor when preceded by a surd consonant, as *t*, *ch*, or a liquid, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*) it approaches a sonant, or buzzing sound, that of our *z*, and in the usage of some localities, or of some classes, it is a full *z*; according, however, to the better supported pronunciation, it is a compromise between *s* and *z*, a kind of *sz*. Before *t* and *p* at the beginning of a word, it is usually and regularly pronounced as *sh* (rather less broadly and conspicuously than our common *sh*); but the pronunciation as written has also good usage (especially in Northern Germany) in its favor.

Double *ß* (*ſß*, *ff*) is always surd or hissing; for *ß*, see 49.

Examples: Glas, Hast, Bosheit, wissen, Looſe, emſig, alſo, Sohn, Seele, Beſen, Geſang, ſteif, Strang, Spur, ſpringen.

**37. T, t.**—*T*, in words properly German, has always the ordinary sound of English *t*.

Examples: Taſel, Taube, Text, treten, Tritt, Tinte.

1. In the terminations of certain words from the Latin or French, *t* is pronounced as *ʒ* (i. e., as English *ts*) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*: thus, martialiſch, Patient, Nation.

2. *Th* is pronounced always as simple *t*, its *h* having, in real German words, no historical ground, but only a phonetic value, as indicating the long quantity of the neighboring vowel: thus, *Thal*, *That*, *Thon*, *thun*, *Thüre*, *Thräne*.

3. The New Orthography omits the *h* of *th* at the beginning of a word in all cases in which the following vowel is otherwise shown to be long: thus, *Tier animal*, *Teil part* (with *Urteil*, *Vorteil*, etc.), *Teer tar*, *teuer dear*, *Tau dew*, *verteidigen defend*; also in *Thurm tower*, and in the suffix *=tum* (for *=thum*): thus, *Reichtum wealth*. But the *h* is retained in *Thee tea*. It writes *t* instead of *th* everywhere at the end of a word (or of a radical syllable before a suffix or ending): thus, *Flut flood*, *Mut spirit*, *Not need*, *Rat council*, *rot red*, *wert dear*, *Rätſel riddle*, *Atem breath*, *Miete hire*, *Rute rod*—instead of *Fluth*, etc.

Some writers omit the *h* of *th* in all cases.

For *ß*, see below (51).

38. *ß, v*.—*ß* is hardly found except at the beginning of a word, and there has the sound of English *f*. In the case or two where it occurs in the interior of words before a vowel, it is pronounced as our *v*; as also, in words taken from foreign languages which give it the latter sound.

Examples: *Vater*, *viel*, *Verfall*, *vor*, *völlig*, *Volk*, *freveln*, *Slave*, *Vacanȝ*, *Venedig*, *violet*, *Pulver*.

39. *ß, w*.—*ß*, when not preceded by a consonant in the same syllable, is commonly and correctly pronounced precisely as the English *v*, or between the edges of the upper teeth and lower lip. Another mode of its utterance, which is also supported by good authority, excludes the action of the teeth, and produces the sound between the edges of the lips alone. As thus made, it is still distinctly a *v* (not a *w*), though one of a different quality from our *v*: the difference, however, is not conspicuous to an unpractised ear. All authorities agree in requiring this purely labial pronunciation after a consonant (which consonant is nearly



always a sibilant, {č or ž): and the same belongs, as above noticed (34), to the u of the combination qu.

Examples: Welle, Bahn, Wuth, wollen, {chmer, žwei, Twiel, Dwall.

40. **Œ, œ.**—Œ is found in only an exceedingly small number of words originally German. It has the sound of English *x* (*ks*), whether as initial or elsewhere.

Examples: Œrt, Œere, Œext, Œenophon, Œenien, Œylographie.

41. **Ÿ, y.**—Ÿ in German is a vowel only (13).

42. **ẞ, ß.**—ẞ is always pronounced as *ts*, except in the combination ẞ (see below, 49): its two constituents should be sharply and distinctly uttered. Instead of double ž is written ẞ (51).

Examples: ẞinn, ẞoll, zu, zerziehen, żagen, heißen, ẞrinż, Holz, ẞerż, ẞlaż, žwei.

#### CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

43. **Œh, čh.**—The compound čh has two sounds: one is deeper or more guttural, nearly our throat-clearing or hawking sound, and is heard after a, o, u, au; the other, after any other vowel or a consonant, is more palatal, made over the middle of the tongue, and approaches the *sh*-sound, or is nearly as we should pronounce *hy* in *hyen*.

Œh, in all situations, is a rough breathing, an *h*, rasped out with conspicuous force through as nearly as possible the same position of the organs in which the preceding vowel was uttered. According, then, as the vowel is one produced in the throat—namely, a, o, u—or one which comes forth between the flat of the tongue and the palate—namely, e, i, y, ä, ö, ü—or as it is a diphthong whose final constituent is of each class respectively—namely, au on the one hand; ai, ei, äu, eu on the other—the following čh has a different pronunciation, guttural or palatal.

1. Œh after a consonant has the softer or palatal sound.

As above noticed (27), g not followed by a vowel etc. has the sound which čh would have in the same situation.

Examples : guttural *ch*: *Bach*, *doch*, *Buch*, *auch*, *Macher*, *Achtung*, *Tochter*, *Tag*, *jog*, *Zug*;

palatal *ch*: *Bech*, *recht*, *ich*, *nichts*, *sicher*, *Bücher*, *ächten*, *Fächer*, *Löcher*, *reich*, *euch*, *feucht*, *däuchte*, *durch*, *Dolch*, *man-cher*, *Weg*, *richtig*, *Mägde*, *beugte*, *Auglein*, *Zwerg*.

The fault particularly to be avoided in practising the *ch*-sound is the closure of the organs, forming a mute consonant, a kind of *k* or *g*. If such a mispronunciation is once acquired, it cannot be unlearned without great trouble. Much better utter a mere breathing, an *h*, at first, depending upon further practice to enable one by degrees to roughen it to the desired point of distinctness.

2. *Ch* before *s*, when the *s* belongs to the stem of the word, and not to an added suffix or inflectional ending, loses its peculiar sound, and is uttered as *k* (i.e., *chs* as *x*).

Examples: *Wachs*, *Dchse*, *Fuchs*, *Büchse*, *Deichsel*, *wechseln*.

3. In words taken from the Greek, *ch* has usually the softer or palatal *ch*-sound before *e* or *i*, as *Chirurg*, *Petechien*; but elsewhere it is pronounced as *f*: thus, *Character*, *Chor*, *Chlor*, *Christ*. In words from the French, it has the French *ch*-sound, or that of German *sch* (our *sh*): thus, *Recherche*, *charmant*, *Chaussee*.

44. *Cf, f*.—*Cf*, as already explained (30), is the written equivalent of a double *f*.

45. *Ng, ng*.—*Ng* is the guttural nasal, the equivalent of English *ng*, standing related to *f* and *g* as *n* to *t* and *b*, and *m* to *p* and *v*. Its *g* is not separately uttered, as *g*, before either a vowel or a consonant: thus, *Finger* like *singer*, not like *finger*; *hungrig* like *hangrope*, not like *hungry*.

Examples: *jung*, *singen*, *Gang*, *Gänge*, *länger*, *bringlich*.

46. 1. *Pf, pf*.—*Pf* is often etymologically the equivalent of our *p* (*Pfund pound*, *Pfahl pale*), but it is uttered regularly as a combination of *p* and *f*.

2. *Ph, ph*.—*Ph* is found only in words of foreign origin, and has the sound of *f*, as in English.

Examples: *Pfeffer*, *Pferd*, *topf*, *rupfen*; *Phase*, *Phosphor*, *Graphit*.

47. **Qu, qu.**—This combination has been already explained (34, 39).

48. **Sch, sch.**—Sch is the equivalent of our *sh*.

Examples: Schiff, schön, scheu, Asche, Fisch, Schnur, Schwan, Schloß, Schmerz, schreiben, findisch.

49. **ß, f.**—ß is pronounced as a double *s* (ff, 36), the *z* losing its distinctive character in the combination. Double ff is not written at the end of a word, nor before a consonant (t), nor after a long vowel or diphthong, *f* being in such situations substituted for it.

Examples: laß, laßt (from lassen), Schloß (but Schöffe), genießen, Strauß and Sträuße, Haß, häßlich, haßte (but hassen).

As was remarked above (2.2), when German is written or printed in the Roman character, *ß* should be represented by *ss* (according to the rules of the New Orthography, rather by the obsolete and barbarous combination *fs*).

1. The New Orthography writes the suffix *-niß* (408–9) with a single *s*: thus, Gleichniß, Finsterniß.

50. **Th, th.**—Th, as noticed above (37), is equivalent to *t* simply.

51. **Tz, t.**—Tz is the written equivalent of a double *z*, and is pronounced in the same manner as a single *z*.

Examples: Platz, Plätze, sitzen, Mühe, jetzt, plötzlich.

#### GENERAL SUPPLEMENTARY RULES.

52. 1. Other combinations of letters than those treated of above, whether of vowels or of consonants, are pronounced as the single letters of which they are made up.

2. Doubled consonants, however, are not pronounced double, but in the same manner as single ones.

Double consonants, in general, have no etymological ground, but are an orthographical device for indicating the short quantity of the preceding vowel.

53. But doubled consonants, or double vowels, or any of the foregoing combinations of vowels or consonants, if produced by

the coming together of the final and initial letters of the parts making up a word—either by composition or by the addition of prefixes or of suffixes of derivation beginning with a consonant—are pronounced as in those parts taken separately. Thus,

beerdet (be-erdet)	not as Beere;	geirrt (ge-irrt)	not as Geier;
beurtheilt (be-urtheilt)	“ Beute;	Handdruck (Hand=druck)	“ Eda;
Mittag (Mit=tag)	“ Mitte;	wegging (weg=ging)	“ Egge;
Abbild (Ab=bild)	“ Ebbe;	auffallt (auf=fallt)	“ Affe;
vielleicht (viel=leicht)	“ Welle;	dennoch (den=noch)	“ Henne;
verreißt (ver=reißt)	“ sperren;	dasfelbe (das=felbe)	“ beßen;
wachsam (wach=sam)	“ wachsen;	ungar (un=gar)	“ Ungar;
Häuschen (Häus=chen)	“ haschen;	Hauszins (Haus=zins)	“ außer;
Putzucker (Put=zucker)	“ Hitze;	wegessen (weg=essen)	“ gegessen;
Abart (Ab=art)	“ Abend;	Handeisen (Hand=eisen)	“ handeln.

**54. Foreign Words.**—1. Many words taken into German from other languages (especially French) are made more or less like German words in spelling and in pronunciation. But many others retain their foreign peculiarities. The most common and important of these have been noticed above, under the different consonants; less frequent are the following: gn, pronounced like *ny*, as in Champagne, Orgnette; ll, like *ly*, as in Billard, Billet; gu, as hard *g*, as in Guitarre; qu, as *k*, as in Bouquet; n with preceding vowel as a nasal vowel, as in Bassin, Refrain, Ballon. So also among vowels: ai, as ä, as in Affaire; au and eau, as o, as in Epaulette, Plateau; eu, as ö, as in Adieu, Ingenieur; ou, as u, as in Cousin, Tour; oi, like English *wa* in *was*, as in Memoiren, Toilette.

2. In pronouncing the classical languages, Latin and Greek, the Germans follow, in general, the rules of utterance of their own letters, both vowels and consonants. But, in reading Latin, *g* is always hard, and *v* has the sound of English *v* (German *w*), not of German *v* (English *f*).

#### ACCENT.

**55.** The accentuation of German words is so generally accordant in its principles with that of English words, that it occasions little difficulty, even to the beginner, and can be left to be learned by practice, without detailed exposition and illustration. The following are its leading rules:

1. The accent ordinarily rests, in words uncompounded, on the radical or chiefly significant syllable—never on terminations of declension or conjugation, almost never on suffixes of derivation, and never on the inseparable prefixes of verbs (302), either in the forms of conjugation or in derivative words.

Exceptions are: the suffix *ei* (408); the *i* or *ie* of verbs ending in the infinitive in *iren* or *ieren* (404); and a few wholly anomalous words, as *leben'dig* (from *le'ben*, *le'bend*).

2. In compound words, except compound particles, the accent rests, as in English, upon the first member. The separable prefixes of verbs are treated as forming compounds, and receive the accent, in the verbal forms and in most verbal derivatives.

Exceptions are: many compounds with *all*, as *allmäch'tig* *almighty*, *allein* *alone*, *allererst* *first of all*; compound words of direction, like *Südost* *south-east*; and a number of others, as *Jahrhun'dert* *century*, *leibei'gen* *vassal*, *willkom'men* *welcome*.

3. Compound particles usually accent the final member: thus, *dahin* *thither*, *obgleich* *although*, *zufol'ge* *according to*, *zuvor* *previously*.

Exceptions are: many adverbs which are properly cases of compound nouns or adjectives; and some others: compare 425.

4. The negative prefix *un* has the accent commonly, but not always (compare 416.4*b*). The same is the case with *erz* and *ur*.

5. Words from foreign languages regularly retain the accent belonging to them in those languages—yet with not a few, and irregular, exceptions. As the greater part of them are French, or Latin with the unaccented syllables at the end dropped off, they more usually accent the final syllable. Some change their accent in the plural: thus, *Dok'tor*, *Dokto'ren*, *Charak'ter*, *Charakte're*.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

56. The parts of speech are the same in German as in English.

They are classified according to the fact and the mode of their grammatical variation, or inflection.

1. NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, and PRONOUNS are declined.

Among these are here included ARTICLES, NUMERALS, and PARTICIPLES, which are sometimes reckoned as separate parts of speech.

2. VERBS are conjugated.

3. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, and CONJUNCTIONS are uninflected.

4. INTERJECTIONS are a class by themselves, not entering as members into the construction of the sentence.

### DECLENSION.

57. Declension is the variation of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns for number, case, and gender.

58. There are two NUMBERS, *singular* and *plural*, of which the value and use are in general the same as in English.

For special rules concerning the use of the numbers in German, see 211.

59. There are four CASES in German, as in the oldest known form of English (Anglo-Saxon).

1. The *nominative*, answering to the English nominative.

The nominative case belongs to the subject of a sentence, to a word in apposition with it, or a predicate noun qualifying it; it is also used in address (as the Latin vocative). See 212-14.

2. The *genitive*, answering nearly to the English possessive, or objective with *of*.

It is therefore most often dependent upon a noun, but is also used as the object of certain adjectives, verbs, and prepositions; and it stands not infrequently without a governing word, in an adverbial sense. See 215-20.

3. The *dative*, corresponding to the Latin and Greek dative, or to the English objective with *to* or *for*.

The dative stands as indirect object of many verbs, transitive or intransitive, and also follows certain adjectives and prepositions. In rare cases, it is the equivalent of an ablative. See 221-5.

4. The *accusative*, nearly the same with our objective.

This is especially the case of the direct object of a transitive verb; certain prepositions are followed by it; it is used to express measure (including duration of time and extent of space), also the time when anything is or is done; and it occasionally stands absolutely, as if governed by *having* understood. See 226-30.

A noun in apposition with a noun standing in any of these relations is in general put in the same case with it (but see 213.2).

60. There are three GENDERS, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*.

Each noun is of one or the other of these genders, yet not wholly according to the natural sex of the object indicated by it. The names of most objects having conspicuous sex are, indeed, masculine or feminine, according as those objects are male or female; but there are not infrequent exceptions; and the names of objects destitute of sex have a grammatical gender, as masculine, feminine, or neuter, according to rules of which the original ground is in great part impossible to discover, and which do not admit of succinct statement.

61. In the main, therefore, the gender of German words must be learned outright; but the following practical rules will be found of value:

1. *Exceptions to the natural gender of creatures having sex.*

a. All diminutives formed by the suffixes *chen* and *lein* (410.1) are neuter: thus, *das Mädchen the girl*, *das Fräulein the young lady*.

b. Besides the special names which designate the male and female of a few species, there is a neuter name for the young, or for the species, or for both: thus, *der Eber the boar*, *die Sau the sow*, *das Ferkel the pig*, *das Schwein the hog*.

But most names of animals are of one gender only, and generally either masculine or feminine: thus, *der Hase the hare*, *die Nachtigall the nightingale*; but *das Crocodil the crocodile*.

c. Of anomalous exceptions, only *das Weib woman*, requires special notice.

## 2. Attribution of gender to classes of inanimate objects.

a. Names of the seasons, months, and days of the week, of the points of compass, and of stones, are masculine: thus, *der Winter winter*, *der Mai May*, *der Montag Monday*, *der Nord north*, *der Kiesel flint*.

b. Most names of plants, fruits, and flowers (usually ending in e), are feminine: thus, *die Fichte the pine*, *die Pflaume the plum*, *die Nelke the pink*.

c. Most names of countries and places, of metals, the names of the letters, and other parts of speech used as nouns, are neuter: thus, *das Italien Italy*, *das Berlin Berlin*, *das Eisen iron*, *das X the letter x*, *das Ja und Nein the yes and no*.

3. Gender as determined by derivation or termination (for further details, see 408-11).

a. Masculine are the greater number of derivatives formed from roots without suffix, by change of vowel; also (though with very numerous exceptions) of words in el, en, and er; and all derivatives formed by ing and ling.

Thus, *der Spruch the speech*, *der Nagel the nail*, *der Regen the rain*, *der Finger the finger*, *der Deckel the cover*, *der Bohrer the gimlet*, *der Findling the foundling*.

b. Feminine are most derivatives in e and t, and all those formed by the secondary suffixes ei, heit, feit, schaft, ung, and in (or inn).

Thus, *die Sprache speech*, *die Macht might*, *die Schmeichelei flattery*, *die Weisheit wisdom*, *die Eitelkeit vanity*, *die Freundschaft friendship*, *die Ordnung order*, *die Freundin the female friend*.

c. Neuter are all diminutives formed with chen and lein (as already noticed), most nouns formed by the suffixes sel, sal, niß [niß], and thum [tum], most collectives and abstracts formed by the prefix ge, and all infinitives used as nouns.

Thus, *das Männchen the mannikin*, *das Knäblein the little boy*, *das Räthsel [Rätsel] the riddle*, *das Schicksal fate*, *das Gleichniß [Gleichniß] the likeness*, *das Königthum [Königtum] the kingdom*, *das Gefieder plumage*, *das Gespräch talk*, *das Stehen the act of standing*.

## 4. Gender of compound nouns.



Compound nouns regularly and usually take the gender of their final member.

Exceptions are die Antwort *answer* (das Wort *word*), der Abscheu *abhorrence* (die Scheu *fear*), several compounds of der Muth [Mut] *spirit*, as, die Großmuth [Großmut] *magnanimity*, Sanftmuth [Sanftmut] *gentleness*, and Demuth [Demut] *humility*, etc., names of cities (which are neuter), and a few others (421).

##### 5. Gender of nouns of foreign origin.

Excepting a few words—which, having become thoroughly Germanized, have had their original gender altered by assimilation to analogous German words, or otherwise anomalously—nouns from other languages are masculine, feminine, or neuter, as in the tongues whence they come: thus, der Titel *the title* (Lat. *titulus*, m.), die Krone *the crown* (Lat. *corona*, f.), das Phänomen *the phenomenon* (Gr. *phainomenon*, n.); but der Körper *the body* (Lat. *corpus*, n.), das Fenster *the window* (Lat. *fenestra*, f.), die Nummer *the number* (Lat. *numerus*, m.).

6. Some nouns are used as of more than one gender. Thus, some of those in *niß* [niß] are either feminine or neuter: see 408, III. 6. Theil [Teil] is generally masculine, but sometimes neuter, especially when used in the sense of *share*; its compounds also vary in gender. Other examples are: der (or das) Käfig *cage*, Ort *place*, Chor *chorus*; die (or der) Butter *butter*, Semmel *roll*; das (or der) Floß *raft*, Mündel *ward*, Zierath [Zierat] *ornament*; and so on.

7. A number of nouns are of more than one gender according to differences of meaning: being either of kindred derivation, or of only accidental coincidence of form. The commonest of these are as follows:

der Band, <i>volume</i>	das Band, <i>band, ribbon</i>
der Bund, <i>covenant</i>	das Bund, <i>bundle</i>
der Erbe, <i>heir</i>	das Erbe, <i>inheritance</i>
die Flur, <i>meadow</i>	der (or die) Flur, <i>floor</i>
der Gehalt, <i>contents</i>	das (or der) Gehalt, <i>wages</i>
der Haft, <i>hold</i>	die Haft, <i>confinement</i>
der Heide, <i>heathen</i>	die Heide, <i>heath</i>
der Hut, <i>hat</i>	die Hut, <i>guard</i>
der Kunde, <i>customer</i>	die Kunde, <i>information</i>
der Schild, <i>shield</i>	das Schild, <i>sign</i>
der See, <i>lake</i>	die See, <i>sea, ocean</i>
der Sprosse, <i>descendant</i>	die Sprosse, <i>round (of ladder)</i>
der Stift, <i>peg</i>	das Stift, <i>foundation</i>
die Wehr, <i>defense</i>	das Wehr, <i>weir</i>

der Buckel, <i>hump</i>	die Buckel, <i>boss</i>
der Kiefer, <i>jaw</i>	die Kiefer, <i>pine-trees</i>
der Leiter, <i>guide</i>	die Leiter, <i>ladder</i>
der Mangel, <i>lack</i>	die Mangel, <i>mangle</i>
die Mark, <i>mark, march</i>	das Mark, <i>marrow</i>
der Mast, <i>mast (of a ship)</i>	die Mast, <i>fodder</i>
der Messer, <i>measurer</i>	das Messer, <i>knife</i>
der Thor, <i>fool</i>	das Thor, <i>gate</i>
der (or die) Weihe, <i>kite (bird)</i>	die Weihe, <i>consecration</i>

62. Adjectives and most pronouns are inflected in the singular in all the three genders, in order to agree in gender with the nouns which they qualify or to which they relate. No such word makes a distinction of gender in the plural.

### ARTICLES.

63. For the sake of convenience, the declension of the definite and indefinite articles is first given.

The definite article is the same with the demonstrative pronoun, in its adjective use (164.1); the indefinite is the same with the numeral *ein one* (198). Our own articles are of like origin.

#### DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>masc.</i>	<i>fem.</i>	<i>neut.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>	
Nom.	der	die	daß	die	<i>the</i>
Gen.	deß	der	deß	der	<i>of the</i>
Dat.	dem	der	dem	den	<i>to the</i>
Acc.	den	die	daß	die	<i>the</i>

#### INDEFINITE ARTICLES.

	<i>Singular.</i>			
N.	ein	eine	ein	<i>a</i>
G.	eines	einer	eines	<i>of a</i>
D.	einem	einer	einem	<i>to a</i>
A.	einen	eine	ein	<i>a</i>

64. 1. The stem (base, theme) of the definite article is *ð* only; of the indefinite, *ein*: the rest is declensional ending.

2. Notice that the declension of *ein* differs from that of *der* in that the former has no ending in the nom. masculine and the nom. and acc. neuter.

65. The acc. neuter *daß*, and the dat. masc. and neuter *dem* are frequently appended to prepositions in the form of simple *s* and *m*, being written as one word with the preposition; and, in such contracted forms, a preposition ending in *n* (*an*, *in*, *von*) loses its *n* before *m*. The dat. feminine *der* is in like manner cut down to *r*, but only after *zu*, forming *zur*.

The commonest cases of this contraction and combination are *am*, *im*, *vom*, *zum*, *beim* (for *an dem*, *in dem*, *von dem*, *zu dem*, *bei dem*), and *anß*, *aufß*, *inß*, *fürß*, *vorß* (for *an daß*, etc.). Much less frequent are *aufm*, *vorm*, *durchß*, and, with dissyllabic prepositions, *überß*, *überm*, and the like.

Rarely, the acc. masculine *den* is similarly treated, forming *übern*, *hintern*, and so on.

The contractions are almost always used in adverbial phrases: thus, *am Ende in fine*, *im Ganzen on the whole*, etc.

Some writers mark the omission of part of the article in these contracted forms by an apostrophe: thus, *auf's*, *über'm*, *hinter'n*, etc.

Very rarely, the same contraction is made after other words than prepositions: thus, *wann endlich ausgefungen ist's alte, ewige Lied when will the everlasting old song be sung out?*

#### USE OF THE ARTICLES.

66. In general, the articles are used in German nearly as in English. But there are also not a few differences, the more important of which are stated below.

1. The definite article regularly stands in German before a noun used in its most comprehensive or universal sense, as indicating the whole substance, class, or kind of which it is the appellation: as, *daß Gold ist gelb gold is yellow*; *die Blätter der Pflanzen sind grün leaves of plants are green*.

2. By a like usage, it stands before abstract nouns: as, *daß Leben ist kurz, die Kunst ist lang life is short, art is long*; *der Glaube macht felig faith makes happy*; *inß Verderben loden to entice to destruction*.

3. It is often used where we use a possessive pronominal adjective (161), when the connection sufficiently points out the possessor, or when the latter is indicated by a noun or pronoun in the dative, dependent on the verb of the sentence: as, *der Vater*

schüttelte den Kopf *the father shook his head*; da ergreift's ihm die Seele *then it takes hold upon his soul*.

4. It is prefixed to words of certain classes which in English are used without it: as,

a. To the names of seasons, months, and days of the week: as, im Winter *in winter*; in dem (or im) Mai *in May*; am Freitag *on Friday*.

b. To names of streets and mountains, and to feminine names of countries: as, auf der Friedrichsstraße *in Frederick street*; der Vesuv *Vesuvius*; in der Schweiz *in Switzerland*.

c. Often to proper names, especially when preceded by adjectives or titles: as, dem kranken Georg *to sick George*; das schöne Berlin *beautiful Berlin*;—or, when the name of an author is used for his works: as, ich lese den Schiller *I am reading Schiller*;—or, in a familiar or contemptuous way: as, rufe den Johann *call John*;—or, to indicate more plainly the case of the noun: as, der Schatten der Maria *Maria's shadow*; den Argwohn des Andronikus *the jealousy of Andronicus* (compare 104).

5. There are numerous phrases, in German as in English, in which the article is omitted, although called for by general analogies. These often correspond in the two languages: as, zu Bette *to bed*, bei Tisch *at table*, Anker werfen *to cast anchor*, Wind und Wetter *wind and weather*, Meister rührt sich und Gejelle *master and man bestir themselves*;—in other cases, the German retains the article which is omitted in English: as, in die Schule *to school*, im Himmel und auf der Erde *in heaven and on earth*, am Abend *at evening*;—or, less often, the article, retained in English, is omitted in the German: as, vor Augen *before THE eyes*, gen Osten *toward THE East*;—and the article is often omitted in proverbial phrases: thus, Morgenstund' hat Gold im Mund *the morning-hour has gold in its mouth*.

6. The article is usually omitted in technical phraseology before words referring to persons or things as already mentioned or to be mentioned, as besagt, gedacht, genannt *the aforesaid*, folgend *the following*, erster and letzter *former and latter*, etc.; also before certain nouns, as Inhaber *holder*, Ueberbringer *bearer*, etc.

7. In place of our indefinite article with a distributive sense, the German employs the definite article: as, so viel das Pfund *so much A pound*; des Abends *of AN evening*; dreimal die Woche *three times A week*. Also, in certain cases, the definite article in combination with a preposition stands where the indefinite would be expected: as, Staat um Staat sollte zur

Provinz werden *state after state was to be turned into a province.*

8. The indefinite article is often omitted before a predicate noun, and before a noun in apposition after *als* *as*, signifying occupation, office, rank, or the like: thus, *er war Kaufmann, will aber jetzt Soldat werden* *he was a merchant, but now wants to become a soldier*, *ich kann es als Mann nicht dulden* *I cannot, as a man, endure it.*

The above are only the leading points that require notice in comparing the German and English use of the articles. The German allows, especially in poetry, considerable irregularity and freedom in their employment, and they are not rarely found introduced—and, much more often, omitted—where general analogies would favor a contrary treatment.

67. In regard to their position—the definite article precedes all other qualifying words (except *all* *all*); and the indefinite suffers before it only *so* or *solch* *such*, *welch* *what*, and *was für* *what sort of*.

Thus, *die beiden Knaben* *both the boys*, *der doppelte Preis* *double the price*, *solch ein Mann* (or *ein solcher Mann*) *such a man*, *welch ein Held* *what a hero*: but *eine halbe Stunde* *half an hour*, *ein so armer Mann* *so poor a man*, *eine ganz schöne Aussicht* *quite a fine view*.

## NOUNS.

68. In order to decline a German noun, we need to know how it forms its genitive singular and its nominative plural; and upon these two cases depends the classification of German declensions.

1. Compound nouns have the inflection of their final member; excepting *Vollmacht* *commission*, *Ohnmacht* *faint*, which are of the 2nd declension, while *Macht* *might* is of the 1st declension, 2nd class.

69. 1. The great majority of masculine nouns, and all neuters, form their genitive singular by adding *s* or *es* to the nominative. These constitute the FIRST or STRONG DECLENSION; which is then divided into classes according to the mode of formation of the nominative plural.

a. The *first class* takes no additional ending for the plural, but sometimes modifies the vowel of the theme: thus, *Spaten spade*, *Spaten spades*; but *Vater father*, *Väter fathers*.

b. The *second class* adds the ending *e*, usually also modifying the vowel: thus, *Jahr year*, *Jahre years*; *Fuß foot*; *Füße feet*.

c. The *third class* adds the ending *er*, and always modifies the vowel (when this is capable of modification): thus, *Mann man*, *Männer men*; *Grab grave*, *Gräber graves*.

d. By modification of the vowel is meant the substitution of the modified vowels *ä*, *ö*, *ü* (14), and *äu* (21.2), for the simpler *a*, *o*, *u*, and *au*, in themes containing the latter. The change of vowel in English *man* and *men*, *foot* and *feet*, *mouse* and *mice*, and their like, is originally the same process.

2. Some feminines form their plural after the first and second of these methods, and are therefore reckoned as belonging to the first and second classes of the first declension, although they do not now take *s* in the genitive singular.

70. The rest of the masculine nouns add *n* or *cn* to the theme to form the genitive singular, and take the same ending also in the nominative plural. Most feminines form their plural in the same way, and are therefore classified with them, making up the **SECOND OR WEAK DECLENSION**.

The feminines have to be classified by the form of their plurals only, because, as is pointed out below, all feminine nouns are now invariable in the singular.

71. The two cases above mentioned being known, the rest of the declension is found by the following general rules:

1. *Singular*. a. Feminines are invariable in the singular.

For exceptions, see below, 95.

b. In the masculines and neuters of the first or strong declension, the accusative singular is like the

nominative. Nouns which add only *ſ* in the genitive have the dative also like the nominative; those which add *es* in the genitive regularly take *e* in the dative, but may also omit it—it being proper to form the dative of any noun of the first declension like the nominative.

c. Masculines of the second or weak declension have all their oblique cases like the genitive.

2. *Plural.* a. The nominative, genitive, and accusative are always alike in the plural.

b. The dative plural ends always in *n*: it is formed by adding *n* to the nominative plural, provided that case end in any other letter than *n* (namely, in *e*, *l*, or *r*, the only other finals that occur there); if it end in *n*, all the cases of the plural are alike.

c. But nouns making foreign plurals (101. 4, 5) have no dative plural different from the other cases.

72. 1. The general scheme of noun-declension, then, is as follows:

1ST (STRONG) DECLENSION.

2ND (WEAK) DECLENSION.

*Singular:*

	m.	n.	f.	m.	f.
N.	0		0	0	0
G.	=es, =ſ		0	=en, =n	0
D.	=e,	0	0	=en, =n	0
A.	0		0	=en, =n	0

*Plural:*

	1st Cl.	2nd Cl.	3rd Cl.	
N.	0	=e	=er	=en, =n
G.	0	=e	=er	=en, =n
D.	=n	=en	=ern	=en, =n
A.	0	=e	=er	=en, =n
	vowel sometimes modified.	vowel generally modified.	vowel always modified.	vowel never modified.

2. The following general rules, applying to all declension—that of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns—are worthy of notice:

a. The acc. singular of the fem. and neuter is like the nominative.

b. The dat. plural (except of personal pronouns) ends in *n*.

73. It will be seen, on comparing the declension of nouns with that of the definite article (63), that the former is less full, distinguishing fewer cases by appropriate terminations. Besides their plural ending—which, moreover, is wanting in a considerable class of words—nouns have distinct forms only for the genitive singular and the dative plural, with traces of a dative singular—and even these in by no means all words.

a. The names *strong* and *weak* declension were introduced by Grimm, and, though destitute of any reasonable ground of application, have become too generally and firmly established to be gotten rid of. A historically suitable designation would be “vowel-declension” and “*n*-declension,” since the first mode of declension properly belongs to themes originally ending in a vowel (though the plural-ending *er* comes from themes in *ſ*); the second, to those ending in *n*: other consonant-endings with their peculiarities of declension have disappeared. The whole German declensional system has undergone such extensive corruption, mutilation, and transfer, that the old historical classifications are pretty thoroughly effaced, and to attempt to restore them, or make any account of them, would only confuse the learner.

#### FIRST OR STRONG DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

74. As already explained, the first or strong declension contains all the neuter nouns in the language, all masculines which form their genitive singular by adding *ſ* or *eſ* to the nominative, and such feminines as form their nominative plural either without an added ending, or else by appending *e* to the stem.

#### FIRST CLASS.

75. The characteristic of the FIRST CLASS is that it adds no ending to form the plural: its nominatives are alike in both numbers—except that in a few words the vowel of the singular is modified for the plural.

76. To this class belong

1. Masculine and neuter nouns having the endings *eſ*, *er*, *en* (including infinitives used as nouns, 340), and one or two in *em*;

2. A few neuter nouns having the prefix *ge* and ending in *e*; also one masculine in *c* (*ſüſc* *cheese*);

3. All neuter diminutives formed with the suffixes *chen*, *lein*, and *ſel*;



4. Two feminines ending in *er* (*Mutter mother* and *Tochter daughter*).

No nouns of this class are monosyllabic (except the infinitives *thun* and *sein*). The endings *el*, *er* do not include *iel*, *eel*, *ier*, *eer*, but imply the simple vowel *e* as that of the termination.

77. Nouns of the first class add only *s* (not *es*) to form the genitive singular, and never take *e* in the dative.

Their only variation for case, therefore, is by the assumption of *s* in the gen. sing. (of masc. and neut. nouns), and of *n* in the dat. plural.

78. About twenty masculines, and both feminines, modify in the plural the vowel of the principal syllable.

1. The masculines modifying the vowel in the plural are :

<i>Acker, cultivated field</i>	<i>Hafen, harbor</i>	<i>Nagel, nail</i>
<i>Apfel, apple</i>	<i>Hammel, ram</i>	<i>Ofen, stove</i>
<i>Boden, floor</i>	<i>Hammer, hammer</i>	<i>Sattel, saddle</i>
<i>Bogen, bow</i>	<i>Handel, business</i>	<i>Schaden, harm</i>
<i>Bruder, brother</i>	<i>Laden, shop</i>	<i>Schnabel, beak</i>
<i>Faden, thread</i>	<i>Mangel, want</i>	<i>Schwager, brother-in-law</i>
<i>Garten, garden</i>	<i>Mantel, cloak</i>	<i>Vater, father</i>
<i>Graben, ditch</i>	<i>Nabel, navel</i>	<i>Vogel, bird</i>

*Bogen*, *Faden*, and *Hammel* sometimes have the unmodified vowel.

79. Examples :—

I. With vowel unchanged in the plural :

*Spaten spade, m.*      *Gemälde picture, n.*      *Käse cheese, m.*

*Singular.*

N. der Spaten	daß Gemälde	der Käse
G. des Spatens	des Gemäldes	des Käses
D. dem Spaten	dem Gemälde	dem Käse
A. den Spaten	daß Gemälde	den Käse

*Plural.*

N. die Spaten	die Gemälde	die Käse
G. der Spaten	der Gemälde	der Käse
D. den Spaten	den Gemälden	den Käsen
A. die Spaten	die Gemälde	die Käse

## II. With vowel modified in the plural :

Bruder *brother*, m.      Kloster *convent*, n.      Mutter *mother*, f.

*Singular.*

N.	der Bruder	das Kloster	die Mutter
G.	des Bruders	des Klosters	der Mutter
D.	dem Bruder	dem Kloster	der Mutter
A.	den Bruder	das Kloster	die Mutter

*Plural.*

N.	die Brüder	die Klöster	die Mütter
G.	der Brüder	der Klöster	der Mütter
D.	den Brüdern	den Klöstern	den Müttern
A.	die Brüder	die Klöster	die Mütter

80. 1. A few nouns are of this class in the singular and of the second declension in the plural ; a few others have lost an original ending *n* or *en* in the nom. (or nom. and acc.) singular : for all these, see Irregular Declension (96—8).

2. Among the infinitive-nouns belonging to this class are a few of irregular ending : namely, *Thun doing* and *Sein being*, with their compounds, some of which are in common use as nouns—e. g., *Dasein existence*, *Wohlfsein welfare*—; and others which end in *eln* and *ern* : thus, *Wandeln walking*, *Wandern wandering*.

## [EXERCISE 1. NOUNS OF FIRST DECLENSION, 1ST CLASS.]

## SECOND CLASS.

81. The characteristic of the SECOND CLASS is that it forms the plural by adding *e* to the singular ; at the same time, the vowel of the principal syllable is usually modified in the plural ; but to this there are many exceptions.

82. To this class belong

1. The greater number of masculine nouns ;
2. Many neuters ;
3. More than thirty monosyllabic feminines (with their compounds, and including the compounds of *funft*, not in use as an independent word), with the feminines

formed by the suffixes *niß* [niß] (about a dozen in number) and *ſal* (two or three).

The feminines belonging to this class are :

Angſt, <i>anxiety</i>	Hand, <i>hand</i>	Nacht, <i>night</i>
Art, <i>axe</i>	Haut, <i>skin</i>	Naht, <i>seam</i>
Banſt, <i>bench</i>	Kluſt, <i>cleft</i>	Noth [Not], <i>need</i>
Braut, <i>bride</i>	Kraft, <i>strength</i>	Nuß, <i>nut</i>
Brunſt, <i>fervor</i>	Ruh, <i>cow</i>	Sau, <i>sow</i>
Bruſt, <i>breast</i>	Kunſt, <i>art</i>	Schnur, <i>string</i>
Fauſt, <i>fist</i>	Laus, <i>louse</i>	Schwuſt, <i>swelling</i>
Flucht, <i>flight</i>	Luſt, <i>air</i>	Stadt, <i>city</i>
Frucht, <i>fruit</i>	Luſt, <i>pleasure</i>	Wand, <i>wall</i>
Gans, <i>goose</i>	Macht, <i>might</i>	Wurſt, <i>sausage</i>
Gruſt, <i>vault</i>	Magd, <i>maid</i>	Zucht, <i>training</i>
Gunſt, <i>favor</i>	Maus, <i>mouse</i>	Zunſt, <i>guild</i>

Noth [Not] hardly forms a plural except in the dative, *Nöthen*, in certain phrases. Schwuſt makes also Schwuſten.

**83.** Masculines and neuters form their genitive singular by adding either *ſ* or *eſ*; the dative is like the nominative, or adds *e*.

1. The ending *eſ* is more often taken by monosyllables, *ſ* by polysyllables; but many words may assume either, according to the choice of the writer or speaker, depending partly on euphony, and partly on the style he is employing—*eſ* belonging to a more serious or elaborate style, and *ſ* being more colloquial. Nouns of more than one syllable with unaccented final containing *e* hardly admit *e* in the ending. On the other hand, nouns having a final sibilant require an *e* to make the genitive ending perceptible. Thus, *Tagſ* or *Tageſ*, *Königſ* rather than *Königeſ*, almost always *Schmetterlingſ*, and always *Flößeſ*, *Luchſeſ*, *Sageſ*.

2. The use or omission of *e* in the dative is nearly parallel with the use of *eſ* or *ſ* in the genitive; but it may be left off from every noun without exception. It is regularly omitted from a noun immediately following a preposition; thus, *mit Recht* *with right*, *vor Zorn* *for anger*; exceptions are *zu* or *nach* *Hauſe* *home*.

**84.** Of the masculines, the great majority take the modified vowel in the plural, there being only about fifty exceptions; of the neuters, only two, *Flöß* *raft* and *Chor* *choir*, require the modification, and two others,

Boot *boat* and Rohr *reed*, may take it or not; of the feminines, all except those ending in *niß* [niß] and *sal* modify the vowel.

1. The masculines not modifying the vowel in the plural are :

Aal, <i>eel</i>	Gaum, <i>palate</i>	Puls, <i>pulse</i>
Adler, <i>eagle</i>	Hall, <i>sound</i>	Punkt, <i>point</i>
Amboß, <i>anvil</i>	Halm, <i>stalk</i>	Punsch, <i>punch</i>
Arm, <i>arm</i>	Hauch, <i>breath</i>	Quast, <i>tassel</i>
Bau, <i>building</i>	Huf, <i>hoof</i>	Schuft, <i>wretch</i>
Besuch, <i>visit</i>	Hund, <i>dog</i>	Schuh, <i>shoe</i>
Born, <i>fountain</i>	Krahn [Kran], <i>crane</i>	Staar [Star], <i>starling</i>
Dachs, <i>badger</i>	Lachs, <i>salmon</i>	Stoff, <i>stuff</i>
Dolch, <i>dagger</i>	Laut, <i>sound</i>	Takt, <i>time</i>
Docht, <i>wick</i>	Luchs, <i>lynx</i>	Tag, <i>day</i>
Dom, <i>cathedral</i>	Lump, <i>ragamuffin</i>	Thron, <i>throne</i>
Dorn, <i>thorn</i>	Mord, <i>murder</i>	Tod, <i>death</i>
Druck, <i>print</i>	Ort, <i>place</i>	Trupp, <i>troop</i>
Forst, <i>forest</i>	Park, <i>park</i>	Zusch, <i>flourish</i>
Grad, <i>degree</i>	Pfad, <i>path</i>	Versuch, <i>trial</i>
Gau, <i>province</i>	Pfau, <i>peacock</i>	

Gau, Halm, and Thron also make plurals of the second or weak declension. Pfau is also declined throughout by the second declension.

## 85. Examples :—

I. With vowel modified in the plural :

Sohn *son*, m.

Floß *raft*, n.

Hand *hand*, f.

### *Singular.*

N. der Sohn

das Floß

die Hand

G. des Sohnes

des Floßes

der Hand

D. dem Sohne

dem Floße

der Hand

A. den Sohn

das Floß

die Hand

### *Plural.*

N. die Söhne

die Flöße

die Hände

G. der Söhne

der Flöße

der Hände

D. den Söhnen

den Flößen

den Händen

A. die Söhne

die Flöße

die Hände

## II. With vowel unchanged in the plural :

Monat *month*, m.      Jahr *year*, n.      Ersparniß [=niß] *saving*, f.

*Singular.*

N.	der Monat	das Jahr	die Ersparniß [=niß]
G.	des Monats	des Jahres	der Ersparniß [=niß]
D.	dem Monat	dem Jahre	der Ersparniß [=niß]
A.	den Monat	das Jahr	die Ersparniß [=niß]

*Plural.*

N.	die Monate	die Jahre	die Ersparnisse
G.	der Monate	der Jahre	der Ersparnisse
D.	den Monaten	den Jahren	den Ersparnissen
A.	die Monate	die Jahre	die Ersparnisse

86. Most nouns of foreign origin belong to this class. For some irregularities in their declension, as well as in that of other members of the class, see below, 97 etc.

## [EXERCISE 2. NOUNS OF FIRST DECLENSION, 2ND CLASS.]

## THIRD CLASS.

87. The characteristic of this class is the assumption of the ending *er* to form the nominative plural, along with modification of the vowel of the theme (if it admits of modification).

88. The class is composed chiefly of neuter nouns, with a few masculines, but no feminines.

Besides the nouns formed by the suffix *thum* [tum] (which are, with two or three exceptions, neuter, and which modify the vowel of the suffix, not that of the radical syllable), there are not far from fifty neuters, and about a dozen masculines, belonging to the class; also, three or four words of foreign origin,

## 1. The neuters are :

Aas, carcass	Gewandt, garment	Lied, song
Amt, office	Glas, glass	Loch, hole
Bad, bath	Glück, luck	Markt, market
Band, ribbon	Grab, grave	Mahl, meal
Bild, picture	Gras, grass	Maul, mouth
Blatt, leaf	Gut, property	Nest, nest
Brett, board	Haupt, head	Pfand, pledge
Buch, book	Haus, house	Rad, wheel
Dach, roof	Hemd, shirt	Reis, twig
Denkmal, monument	Holz, wood	Rind, cattle
Ding, thing	Horn, horn	Scheit, billet
Dorf, village	Huhn, fowl	Schild, shield
Ei, egg	Joch, yoke	Schloß, castle
Fach, department	Kalb, calf	Schwert, sword
Faß, vat	Kind, child	Stift, foundation
Feld, field	Kleid, dress	Thal, valley
Geld, money	Korn, grain	Tuch, cloth
Gemacht, chamber	Kraut, weed	Volk, people
Gemüth [Gemüt], disposition	Lamm, lamb	Wams, waistcoat
Geschlecht, sex	Land, land	Weib, woman
Gesicht, face	Licht, light	Wort, word
Geist, ghost		

## 2. The masculines are :

Bösewicht, scamp	Mann, man	Vormund, guardian
Geist, spirit	Ort, place	Wald, forest
Gott, God	Rand, rim	Wurm, worm
Leib, body	Strauß, bouquet	

The nouns marked with † in the above lists make also plurals in *e*, *Wurm* and *Strauß* with modification of the vowel.

89. Respecting the form of the genitive singular ending, whether *s* or *es*, and respecting the dative, whether like the nominative or adding *e*, the same rules apply as in the second class (83).

## 90. Examples :—

Haus	Weib	Irrthum [=tum]	Mann
house, n.	woman, n.	error, m.	man, m.
Singular.			
N. das Haus	Weib	der Irrthum	Mann
G. des Hauses	Weibes	des Irrthums	Mannes
D. dem Hause	Weibe	dem Irrthum	Manne
A. das Haus	Weib	den Irrthum	Mann

*Plural.*

N.	die Häuser	Weiber	die Irrthümer	Männer
G.	der Häuser	Weiber	der Irrthümer	Männer
D.	den Häusern	Weibern	den Irrthümern	Männern
A.	die Häuser	Weiber	die Irrthümer	Männer

[EXERCISE 3. NOUNS OF FIRST DECLENSION, 3RD CLASS.]

## SECOND OR WEAK DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

91. To the second or weak declension belong only masculine and feminine nouns. They form all the cases of the plural by adding *n* or *en* to the stem, and masculines add the same in the oblique cases of the singular.

92. 1. Nearly all the feminine nouns in the language are of this declension : namely—

*a.* All feminines of more than one syllable, whether primitive words, as *Seite side*; or primary derivatives, as *Gabe gift*; words formed with prefixes, as *Gefahr danger*, or with suffixes, as *Tugend virtue*, *Wahrheit truth*, *Fürstin princess*; or words derived from other languages, as *Minute minute*, *Melodie melody*, *Nation nation*, *Universität university*.

Exceptions : those having the suffixes *niß* [*niß*] or *sal* (see 82.3).

*b.* About sixty monosyllables : namely—

Art, <i>manner</i>	Rost, <i>fare</i>	Schrift, <i>writing</i>
Au, <i>meadow</i>	Last, <i>burden</i>	Schuld, <i>fault</i>
Bahn, <i>track</i>	List, <i>trick</i>	Schur, <i>shearing</i>
Brut, <i>brood</i>	Mark, <i>mark</i>	See, <i>sea</i>
Bucht, <i>bay</i>	Milz, <i>milt</i>	Spur, <i>trace</i>
Burg, <i>castle</i>	Null, <i>nought</i>	Statt, <i>place</i>
Fahrt, <i>passage</i>	Pacht, <i>agreement</i>	Stirn, <i>forehead</i>
Flur, <i>field</i>	Pflicht, <i>duty</i>	Streu, <i>litter</i>
Fluth [ <i>Flut</i> ], <i>flood</i>	Post, <i>post</i>	Sucht, <i>malady</i>
Form, <i>form</i>	Qual, <i>torment</i>	That, <i>deed</i>
Fracht, <i>freight</i>	Rast, <i>rest</i>	Thür, <i>door</i>
Frau, <i>woman</i>	Saat, <i>seed</i>	Tracht, <i>costume</i>
Frist, <i>period</i>	Sau, <i>sow</i>	Trift, <i>pasture</i>
Geiß, <i>goat</i>	Schaar [ <i>Schar</i> ], <i>company</i>	Uhr, <i>watch</i>
Gicht, <i>gout</i>	Shar, <i>share</i> (of a plough)	Wehr, <i>defense</i>
Gift, <i>gift</i>	Schicht, <i>layer</i>	Welt, <i>world</i>
Gut, <i>heed</i>	Schlacht, <i>battle</i>	Zahl, <i>number</i>
Jacht, <i>yacht</i>	Schlucht, <i>ravine</i>	Zeit, <i>time</i>
Jagd, <i>hunt</i>	Schnur, <i>daughter-in-law</i>	

## 2. Masculines of the second declension are

a. Words of more than one syllable in *e*, as *Bote messenger*, *Gatte spouse*, *Knabe boy*—including those that have the prefix *ge*, as *Gefährte companion*, *Geselle fellow*, and some nouns of nationality, as *Preuße Prussian*, *Franzose Frenchman*; also a few in *er* and *ar*, as *Baier Bavarian*, *Ungar Hungarian*.

b. About twenty monosyllabic root-words: namely—

Ahn, forefather	Held, hero	Ochse, ox
Bär, bear	Herr, gentleman	Prinz, prince
Bursch, student	Hirt, shepherd	Schent, cupbearer
Christ, Christian	Mensch, man	Schöps, wether
Fink, finch	Moor, moor	Spatz, sparrow
Fürst, prince	Narr, fool	Strauß, ostrich
Graf, count	Nerv, nerve	Thor, fool.

The nominatives *Bursche*, *Ochse*, and *Schente* are also in use.

c. Many foreign words, as *Student student*, *Monarch monarch*, *Barbar barbarian*.

**93.** Nouns ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, and *ar* unaccented, add only *n* to the stem; others add *en*.

1. Before this ending, the *n* of the suffix *in* is doubled: thus, *Fürstin*, *Fürstinnen*.

2. *Herr gentleman*, in modern usage, ordinarily adds *n* in the singular, and *en* in the plural, being the only masculine whose forms differ in the two numbers.

3. No noun of this declension modifies its vowel in the plural.

**94.** Examples:—

## I. Feminines:

	Seite, side.	That, deed.	Wahrheit, truth.	Nation, nation.
	<i>Singular.</i>			
N.	die Seite	That	Wahrheit	Nation
G.	der Seite	That	Wahrheit	Nation
D.	der Seite	That	Wahrheit	Nation
A.	die Seite	That	Wahrheit	Nation
	<i>Plural.</i>			
N.	die Seiten	Thaten	Wahrheiten	Nationen
G.	der Seiten	Thaten	Wahrheiten	Nationen
D.	den Seiten	Thaten	Wahrheiten	Nationen
A.	die Seiten	Thaten	Wahrheiten	Nationen



## II. Masculines :

	Knabe boy.	Baier Bavarian.	Mensch man.	Student student.
	<i>Singular.</i>			
N.	der Knabe	Baier	Mensch	Student
G.D.A.	Knaben	Baiern	Menschen	Studenten
	<i>Plural.</i>			
N.G.D.A.	Knaben	Baiern	Menschen	Studenten

95. 1. Formerly, many feminine nouns of this declension, like the masculines, took the declensional ending in the genitive and dative singular ; and this ending is still commonly retained in certain phrases : e. g., auf Erden *on earth*, von Seiten *on the part of*. Occasionally, also, it appears in a gen. feminine preceding the governing noun, as um seiner Seelen Heil *for the welfare of his soul*; and yet more rarely, by poetic license, in other situations : e. g., auf der Gassen *on the street*, das Licht der Sonnen *the light of the sun*.

2. Occasionally, when two nouns are used together, the ending en of the second declension is omitted ; thus, Held und Dichter (accus.) *hero and poet*, Mensch zu Mensch *man to man*.

## [EXERCISE 4. NOUNS OF SECOND DECLENSION.]

## IRREGULAR DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

96. Irregularities in the declension of nouns of foreign origin, and of proper names, will be considered below, under those titles respectively (see 101–8).

97. *Mixed Declension.*

1. A number of masculine and neuter nouns are regularly and usually declined in the singular according to the first declension, and in the plural according to the second. Such are: masculines—

Bauer, peasant	Nachbar, neighbor	Stachel, goad
Gebatter, godfather	Pantoffel, slipper	Strahl, ray
Lorbeer, laurel	Schmerz, pain	Unterthan, subject
Mast, mast	See, lake	Vetter, cousin
Muskel, muscle	Staat, state	Zierath [=rat], ornament ;

## Neuters—

Auge, *eye*  
Bett, *bed*

Ende, *end*  
Hemd, *shirt*

Ohr, *ear*  
Weh, *pain*.

Several of these words have other forms. Thus, Gebatter, Pantoffel, Better, and Bett make a plural also according to the first declension 1st class; Bauer, Nachbar, and Unterthan make a singular also of the second declension.

2. Further, certain nouns of foreign origin are of the first declension in the singular, and the second in the plural, as *Insect* *insect*, gen. sing. *Insectes*; pl. *Insecten*:—especially those ending in unaccented *or* (which, however, throw the accent forward, upon the *or*, in the plural), as *Doc'tor*, gen. sing. *Doc'tors*, pl. *Docto'ren*.

## 3. Examples:—

Staat  
*state, m.*

Nachbar  
*neighbor, m.*

Doctor  
*doctor, m.*

Auge  
*eye, n.*

*Singular.*

N.	der Staat	Nachbar	Doctor	das Auge
G.	des Staates	Nachbars	Doctors	des Auges
D.	dem Staate	Nachbar	Doctor	dem Auge
A.	den Staat	Nachbar	Doctor	das Auge

*Plural.*

N. etc.	die Staaten	Nachbarn	Doctoren	Augen
---------	-------------	----------	----------	-------

## 98. Declension with defective stem.

1. A few masculines, otherwise declined according to the 1st class of the first declension, as stems in *en*, sometimes or usually drop the *n* or *en* in the nominative singular. Thus:

Fels (or =*fen*), *cliff*

Haufe (or =*en*), *heap*

Friede (or =*den*), *peace*

Name (or =*men*), *name*

Funke (or =*fen*), *spark*

Same (or =*men*), *seed*

Gedanke (or =*fen*), *thought*

Welle (or =*fen*), *wave*

Glaube (or =*ben*), *belief*

Schade (or =*den*), (*ä* in plur.) *harm*

2. Like the above, *der Schmerz* *pain* has sometimes the genitive in *ens*; and *das Herz* *heart* has a corresponding declension, but with the accusative like the nominative.

## 3. Examples:—

Namen <i>name</i> , m.                      Frieden <i>peace</i> , m.                      Herz <i>heart</i> , n.		
<i>Singular.</i>		
N. der Name (or =men)	Friede (or =den)	das Herz
G. des Namens	Friedens	des Herzens
D. dem Namen	Frieden	dem Herzen
A. den Namen	Frieden	das Herz
<i>Plural.</i>		
N., etc. Namen	Frieden	Herzen

99. *Redundant Declension.*

1. A considerable number of nouns are declined, either in the singular or the plural, or in both, after more than one form. The most important of these have been already pointed out above under the different declensions and classes; others are sometimes met with in dialectic, and even in literary, use.

2. A smaller number have two well established forms of the plural, belonging to different significations of the word; they are as follows:

das Band	Bänder, <i>ribbons</i>	Bande, <i>bonds</i>
die Bank	Bänke, <i>benches</i>	Banken, <i>banks</i>
der Bauer	Bauern, <i>peasants</i>	Bauer, <i>builders</i>
der Bogen	Bogen, <i>sheet of paper</i>	Bögen, <i>bows</i> (for shooting)
das Ding	Dinge, <i>things</i>	Dinger, <i>creatures</i>
der Fuß	Füße, <i>feet</i>	Fuße, <i>feet</i> (a measure)
das Gesicht	Gefichte, <i>apparitions</i>	Gefichter, <i>faces</i>
das Horn	Hörne, <i>kinds of horn</i>	Hörner, <i>horns</i> (of animals)
der Laden	Laden, <i>shutters</i>	Läden, <i>shops</i>
das Land	Lande, <i>regions</i>	Länder, <i>countries</i>
das Licht	Lichte, <i>candles</i>	Lichter, <i>lights</i>
der Mann	Männer, <i>men</i>	Mannen, <i>vassals</i>
der Mond	Monde, <i>moons</i>	Monden, <i>months</i>
der Ort	Orte, <i>regions</i>	Örter, <i>places</i> (towns)
die Sau	Säue, <i>sows</i>	Sauen, <i>wild pigs</i>
der Schild	Schilde, <i>shields</i>	Schilder, <i>signs</i>
das Tuch	Tuche, <i>cloths</i>	Tücher, <i>clothes</i>
das Wort	Worte, <i>words</i>	Wörter, <i>vocables</i>

100. *Defective Declension.*

1. In German, as in English, there are classes of nouns—especially abstracts, as Demuth [Demut] *humility*, and names of

substances, as *Gold gold* (unless, as is sometimes the case, they have taken on also a concrete or individualized sense, as *Thorheiten follies*, *Papiere papers*)—which, in virtue of their signification, have no plural.

Some abstract nouns, when they take such a modified sense as to admit of plural use, substitute other, derivative or compound, forms: as, *Tod death*, *Todesfälle deaths* (literally, *cases of death*), *Bestreben exertion*, *Bestrebungen exertions, efforts*.

2. A much smaller number have no singular: as, *Eltern parents*, *Masern measles*, *Trümmer ruins*, *Leute people*.

3. Compounds of *Mann man* substitute *leute* for *mann* in the plural, when taken collectively: thus, *Kaufmann merchant*, *Kaufleute merchants*; but *Biedermänner worthy men*, *Ehrenmänner men of honor*, as individuals only, not forming a class.

#### NOUNS OF FOREIGN ORIGIN.

101. 1. Nouns derived from foreign languages are variously treated, according to the completeness of their naturalization.

2. The great mass of them are assimilated in inflection to German models, and belong to the regular declensions and classes, as already stated.

3. A class of nouns in *um* from the Latin form a plural in *en*; thus, *Individuum, Individuen*; *Studium, Studien*; and a few in *al* and *il* add *ien*: thus, *Kapital, Kapitalien*; *Fossil, Fossilien*. One German noun, *Kleinod jewel*, makes a similar plural, *Kleinodien*.

4. A few, as in English, form their plurals after the manner of the languages from which they come; but are hardly capable of any other variation, except an *s* as sign of the genitive singular: thus, *Musicus, Musici*; *Tempus, Tempora*; *Factum, Facta*.

5. Some from the French and English, or other modern languages, form the plural, as well as the genitive singular, in *s*: thus, *seidene Sophas silken sofas*, *die Lords the lords*.

Sometimes, rather than add a genitive sign *s* to a word which in the original took none such, an author prefers to leave it, like a proper name, uninflected: thus, *des Jaguar of the jaguar*, *des Klima of the climate*.

Before this foreign and irregular *s*, some authorities set an apostrophe, both in the genitive and the plural, especially after a vowel. The same is true in proper names.

## PROPER NAMES.

**102.** Proper names are inflected like common nouns, unless they are names of persons, of places (towns and the like), or neuter names of countries.

**103.** Names of countries and places admit only the genitive ending *s* (not *es*); if, as terminating in a sibilant, they cannot take that ending, they are not declined at all: thus, *die Wüsten Afrikas the deserts of Africa*, *die Einwohner Berlins the inhabitants of Berlin*, but *die Einwohner von Paris the inhabitants of Paris* (or, *die Einwohner der Stadt Paris*).

**104.** Names of persons were formerly more generally and more fully declined than at present; now, the article is customarily used to indicate the case, and the name itself remains unvaried after it in the singular.

But the genitive takes an ending if followed by the governing word: as, *des großen Friedrichs Thaten Frederick the Great's deeds*.

**105.** When used without the article, such nouns add *s* in the genitive: thus, *Schillers, Friedrichs*. But masculine names ending in a sibilant, and feminines in *e*, have *ens* in the genitive: thus, *Marens, Sophiens*.

The dative and accusative, of both genders, were formerly made to end in *n* or *en*, which ending is now more often, and preferably, omitted, and the name left unvaried in those cases.

1. But classical names ending in *s* are unchanged in the genitive: thus, *Atreus' Sohn Atreus' son*, *Demosthenes' Reden Demosthenes' speeches*. And German nouns ending in a sibilant are sometimes treated in the same way: e. g. *Zedlig's Gedichte Zedlitz' poems*. The use of the apostrophe in such cases is common, but not universal.

**106.** The plurals of masculine names, with or without the article, have *e* (rarely *en*), with *n* added in the dative; of feminines, *n* or *en*. Those in *o* (from Latin themes in *on*) add *ne*: thus, *Cato, Catone*.

**107.** *Jesu*s and *Christu*s are still usually declined as Latin nouns: gen. *Jesu, Christi*; dat. *Jesu, Christo*; acc. *Jesum, Christum*. Other classical names were formerly treated in the same manner, and cases thus formed are occasionally met with, even in recent works.

**108.** 1. A proper name following a title that has the article before it is left unvaried; if without the article, it takes the

genitive sign, and the title (except *Herr*) is unvaried: thus, *der Sohn Kaiser Friedrichs the son of Emperor Frederick*, *Herrn Schmidts Haus Mr. Smith's house*, but *Kreuzzug des Kaisers Friedrich the crusade of Emperor Frederick*.

2. An appended title is declined, whether the preceding name be declined or not; thus, *Alexanders des Großen Geschichte Alexander the Great's history*, *die Thaten des Königs Friedrich des Zweiten the deeds of King Frederick the Second*.

3. Of two or more proper names belonging to the same person, only the last is liable to variation under the preceding rules: thus, *Herrn Johann Schmidts Haus Mr. John Smith's house*; but, if the last be a family name preceded by *von*, it takes the genitive ending only before the governing noun: thus, *Friedrich von Schillers Werke*, but *die Werke Friedrichs von Schiller the works of Frederick von Schiller*.

[EXERCISE 5., NOUNS OF MIXED DECLENSION, ETC.]

#### MODIFYING ADJUNCTS OF THE NOUN.

109. A noun may enter as an element into the structure of the sentence not only by itself, but is modified and limited by adjuncts of various kinds.

110. 1. The most usual adjunct of a noun is an adjective (including under this term the pronominal and numeral adjectives and the articles): namely

*a.* An attributive adjective, directly qualifying the noun, preceding it, and agreeing with it in gender, number, and case: as, *ein guter Mann a good man*, *der schönen Frau of the beautiful woman*, *diesen artigen Kindern to these well-behaved children* (see 115).

*b.* An appositive adjective, less directly qualifying the noun, immediately following it, and in German not varied to agree with it (treated, rather, as if the predicate of an adjective clause): thus, *ein Lehnstuhl reich geschnitten und wunderlich an arm-chair [which is] richly carved and quaint* (see 116.2).

But an adjective may follow a noun, as if appositive, and yet be declined, being treated as if having a noun understood after it: thus, *die Feinde, die mächtigen, siegen the enemies, the mighty, prevail*, *wenn ich vergang'ner Tage, glücklicher, zu denken wage when I venture to think of past days, happy ones*. Such cases are poetic and rare.

c. An adjective clause, containing a verb and its subject, and introduced by a relative pronoun or conjunction: as, *der Ring, den sie mir gab the ring which she gave to me, die Hütte, wo der alte Bergmann wohnt the cottage where the old miner lives* (see 437).

2. Sometimes an adverb, by an elliptical construction (as representing the predicate of an adjective clause), stands as adjunct to a noun: as, *der Mann hier the man here, der Himmel dort oben heaven above: that is, the man who is here, etc.*

111. A noun is very often limited by another noun.

1. By a noun dependent on it, and placed either before or after it.

a. Usually in the genitive case, and expressing a great variety of relations (216).

b. Very rarely, in the dative case (225.1).

2. By an appositive noun, following it, and agreeing with it in case (but not necessarily in gender or number): as, *er hat den Kaiser Friedrich, seinen Herrn, verrathen [verraten] he has betrayed the Emperor Frederick, his master, den sie, meine Geliebte, mir gab which she, my beloved, gave me.*

The appositive noun is sometimes connected with its subject by the conjunction *als* as: thus, *zieht, als der letzte Dichter, der letzte Mensch hinaus the last man marches out as last poet.*

3. The other parts of speech used as substantives (113), of course, may take the place of the limiting noun.

112. A noun is limited by a prepositional phrase: that is, by a noun whose relation to it is defined by a preposition: as, *der Schlüssel zu Hamlets Betragen the key to Hamlet's behavior.*

This construction is especially frequent with verbal derivatives retaining something of the verbal force: thus, *Erziehung zur Freiheit education to freedom, die Hoffnung auf eine Einigung mit dem Kaiser the hoping for an understanding with the emperor.*

In other cases, the prepositional phrase is virtually the predicate (318b) of an adjective clause: as, *der Mann im Osten the man [who was or lived] in the East.*

#### EQUIVALENTS OF THE NOUN.

113. 1. Other parts of speech are habitually or occasionally used as substantives, and may be substituted for the noun in a part or all of its constructions. These are

a. The substantive pronouns and numerals: as, *ich I, dich thee, sie she, her, they, them, wer who, sechs der Männer six of the men.*

b. Infinitives of verbs (which are properly verbal nouns): see 339 etc.

c. Adjectives (including pronominal and numeral adjectives and participles) are often converted into nouns (see 129).

2. Any word or phrase, viewed in itself, as concrete representative of what it signifies, may be used as a neuter substantive: thus, *sein eigen Ich* *his own "I"*, *ohne Wenn oder Aber* *without "if" or "but"*, *jedes Für und Wider* *every pro and con*.

3. A substantive clause, containing a verb and its subject, and introduced generally by *daß* *that*, *ob* *whether*, or a compound relative word, takes the place of a noun in some constructions (see 436).

For a fuller definition of the relations and constructions in which the various equivalents of the noun may be used, see the several parts of speech concerned.

## ADJECTIVES.

114. The Adjective, in German, is declined only when used attributively or substantively.

115. 1. The attributive adjective always precedes the noun which it qualifies; it is varied for number and case, and (in the singular only) for gender, and agrees in all these particulars with its noun.

But the noun to which the adjective relates is often omitted: the latter, in such case, has the same form as if followed by the noun: as, *er hat weiße Häuser*, *und wir haben braune* *he has white houses, and we have brown*, *geben Sie mir zweierlei Tuch, rothes [rotes] und schwarzes* *give me two kinds of cloth, red and black*.

2. For the adjective used as a substantive, see below, 129.

116. The adjective remains uninflected when used predicatively, appositively, or adverbially.

1. A predicate adjective (316) is one which is by means of a verb made to belong to and qualify a noun (or pronoun, etc.). Its uses may be classified as—*a.* simple predicate, after verbs that signify being, becoming, continuing, seeming, and the like: as, *sein Haus war schön und weiß, wird aber jetzt alt, und sieht häßlich aus* *his house was handsome and white, but is now growing old, and looks ugly*;—*b.* adverbial predicate, divid-



ing its qualifying force between the noun and the verb: as, *das Haus steht fest* *the house stands firm*, *tot* [tot] *und starr* *liegt die Wüste hingestreck* *the steppe lies stretched out dead and stiff*;—c. objective or factitive predicate, expressing a condition effected in or ascribed to an object by the action of a transitive verb: as, *das macht mich traurig* *that makes me sad*, *sich halb tot* [tot] *lachen* *to laugh one's self half to death*, *er baut das Haus hoch* *he builds the house high*, *ich will meine Augen offen behalten* *I will keep my eyes open*, *die lang' ich vergessen geglaubt* *which I had long believed forgotten*—whence, of course, also as simple predicate in the corresponding passive expression: as, *das Haus wird hoch gebaut* *the house is built high*.

2. The appositive adjective follows the noun: as, *wir waren zwei Kinder, klein und froh* *we were two children small and merry*, *Worte süß wie Mondlicht* *words sweet as moonlight*.

3. For the adjective used as adverb, see below, 130.

4. The use of the adjective in apposition, as predicate, and as adverb, pass into one another by insensible gradations, and the same word often admits of more than one understanding. The appositive adjective is distinguished from the attributive rather formally than logically, and sometimes, in poetry, an adjective really attributive in meaning is treated as appositive: as, *bei einem Wirthe* [Wirte] *wundermild* *with a host wondrous kind*; *einen Blick zum Himmel hoch* *a look to Heaven high*. The attributive adjective was formerly permitted after the noun as well as before, and was declined in that position; as was also the adjective used predicatively.

117. A few adjectives are always used predicatively, and are therefore never declined; others are used only attributively, and are therefore always declined.

a. Of the first class, some of the most common are *bereit* *ready*, *feind* *hostile*, *kund* *known*, *gewahr* *aware*, *eingedenk* *mindful*, *theilhaft* [teilhaft] *participating*, *nütz* *useful*.

b. To the second class belong many adjectives expressing formal relations—viz., certain pronominal adjectives, as *jener* *yon*, *jeder* *every*, *meinig* *mine*, *selbig* *self-same*; some adjectives of number, time, and place, as *zweit* *second*, *heutig* *of to-day*, *dortig* *there situated*, *täglich* *daily*, *anfänglich* *in the first place*; and, in general, adjectives of material in *en*, *ern*, for which prepositional phrases are usually substituted in predicate construction.

## DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

118. Each adjective, in its attributive use, is subject to two different modes of declension, according as it is or is not preceded by certain limiting words. These we shall call the FIRST and SECOND, or STRONG and WEAK, declensions (see 132).

119. 1. The endings of the FIRST or STRONG DECLENSION are the same with those of the definite article, already given (63).

Excepting that the nom. and acc. sing. neuter have *eſ* instead of *aſ*, and the nom. and acc. plural and fem. singular have *e* instead of *ie*: that is, the final and characteristic letter is the same, but differently preceded.

2. The SECOND or WEAK DECLENSION has only two endings, *e* and *en*: *e* belongs to the nominative singular of all genders, and hence also (see 72.1), to the accusative of the feminine and neuter; *en* is found in all the other cases. Thus

*Adjective Endings of Declension.*

	FIRST (STRONG) DECLENSION.				SECOND (WEAK) DECLENSION.			
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
N.	=er	=e	=eſ	=e	=e	=e	=e	=en
G.	=eſ	=er	=eſ	=er	=en	=en	=en	=en
D.	=em	=er	=em	=en	=en	=en	=en	=en
A.	=en	=e	=eſ	=e	=en	=e	=e	=en

3. It will be noticed that the first declension has more than twice as many distinct endings as the second, and that it therefore makes a correspondingly superior, though a far from complete, distinction of genders and cases.

120. 1. The endings as given are appended throughout to the stem of the adjective, or to the adjective in its simple predicative form.

Thus, from gut *good* are formed, in the first declension, guter, gute, guteſ, gutem, guten; in the second, gute, guten.

2. But adjectives ending in *e* reject this *e* in every case before taking the ending (or, what is the same thing, reject the *e* of every ending).

Thus, from *träge lazy* come *träger, träge, trägeß, tragem, tragen*.

3. Adjectives ending in the unaccented terminational syllables *el, en, er*, also usually reject the *e* either of those syllables or of the declensional ending.

Thus, from *edel noble* come *edler, edle, edleß*, and generally *edlem* and *edlen*, less often *edelm, edeln*; from *heiter cheerful* come usually *heitrer, heitre, heitreß*, and *heiterm* and *heitern*, or *heitrem* and *heitren*; from *eben even* come *ebner, ebne, ebneß, ebnem, ebnen*. The full forms of these words, however—as *ebener, heiterer*, and, less often, *edeleß*—are also in good use, especially in a more stately or solemn style.

4. *hoch high* loses its *c* when declined: thus, *höher, hohe, höheß*, etc.

**121. 1.** The adjective takes the more distinctive endings of the first declension, unless preceded by a pronominal limiting word (i. e. an article, pronoun, or pronominal adjective: see **123**) which itself has those endings.

Thus, as we say *der Mann the man*, so also *guter Mann good man*, but *der gute Mann the good man*; as *die Frauen the women*, so *gute Frauen*, and *gute schöne Frauen*, but *die guten schönen Frauen the good handsome women*; as *dem Kinde to the child*, so *gutem Kinde*, and *gutem, schönem, artigem Kinde*, but *dem guten, schönen, artigen Kinde to the good, handsome, well-behaved child*.

2. Or, in other words, a pronominal limiting word before the adjective, if it have itself the more distinctive adjective ending characteristic of the case and gender of the qualified noun, takes that ending away from the adjective, reducing the latter from the first to the second declension: the distinctive ending is not repeated upon both words.

Note that certain cases—the acc. sing. masculine, the nom. and acc. sing. feminine, and the dat. plural—have the same ending in the one declension as in the other, and are therefore not altered, whatever the situation in which the adjective is placed.

3. Apparently by an irregular extension of this tendency to avoid the unnecessary repetition of a distinctive ending, a gen. sing. masculine or neuter ending in *s* takes before it usually the second form of the adjective (in *en*), instead of the first (in *es*).

Thus, kalten Wassers *of cold water*, frohen Muthes [Mutes] *with joyous spirit*, großen Theils [Teils] *in great part*, and so on, are much more common than kaltes Wassers, frohes Muthes [Mutes] etc., although the latter are not incorrect.

## 122. Examples:—

1. Complete declension of an adjective, *gut good*, in both forms.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>
N.	guter	gute	gutes	gute
G.	gutes	guter	gutes	guter
D.	gutem	guter	gutem	guten
A.	guten	gute	gutes	gute

### SECOND DECLENSION.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>
N.	der gute	die gute	daß gute	die guten
G.	des guten	der guten	des guten	der guten
D.	dem guten	der guten	dem guten	den guten
A.	den guten	die gute	daß gute	die guten

2. Declension of noun and accompanying adjective: rother [roter] Wein *red wine*, große Freude *great joy*, schlechtes Geld *bad money*.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>m.</i>
N.	rother [roter] Wein	der rothe [rote] Wein
G.	rothes [rotes] or rothen Weines	des rothen [roten] Weines
D.	rothem [rotem] Weine	dem rothen [roten] Weine
A.	rothen [roten] Wein	den rothen [roten] Wein

*Singular.*

	<i>f.</i>
N. große Freude	die große Freude
G. großer Freude	der großen Freude
D. großer Freude	der großen Freude
A. große Freude	die große Freude

	<i>n.</i>
N. schlechtes Geld	das schlechte Geld
G. schlechtes or -ten Geldes	des schlechten Geldes
D. schlechtem Gelde	dem schlechten Gelde
A. schlechtes Geld	das schlechte Geld

*Plural.*

	<i>m. f. n.</i>		<i>m. f. n.</i>
N. rothe [rote] Weine &c.		die rothen [roten] Weine &c.	
G. großer Freuden &c.		der großen Freuden &c.	
D. schlechten Geldern &c.		den schlechten Geldern &c.	
A. große Freuden &c.		die großen Freuden &c.	

**123.** The words which, when placed before an adjective, take away its distinctive ending, or reduce it from the first to the second declension, are—

1. The two articles, *der* and *ein*, with *kein* (195.2), the negative of the latter.

2. The possessive adjectives, *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *unser*, *euer*, *ihr* (157 etc.).

3. The demonstrative, interrogative, and relative pronominal adjectives *der*, *dies* and *jen* (163), and *welch* (174).

4. The indefinite pronominal adjectives and numeral adjectives *jed*, *jedlich*, *solch*, *manch*, *ander*, *einig*, *etlich*, *all*, *viel*, *wenig*, *mehr*, *mehrere* (170, 189–194).

But *solch* after *ein* is treated as a simple adjective, and does not affect a following adjective: thus, *ein solcher guter Mann*.

5. A few proper adjectives: namely, *verschiedene* pl. *sundry* (nearly equivalent with *einige* and *mehrere*), and *folgend*, *erwähnt*, *obig*, and their like, used idiomatically without the article (66.6) to indicate things which have been specified or are to be specified.

**124.** 1. Since, however, a part of these words—namely, *ein*, *kein*, and the possessive adjectives—lack the

distinctive ending in three of their forms, the nominative singular masculine and the nominative and accusative singular neuter, the adjective following those cases retains the ending.

Thus, as we say *guter Mann, gutes Kind*, so also *ein guter Mann, ein gutes Kind* (as opposed to *der gute Mann, das gute Kind*), because there is nothing about the *ein* which should render the full ending upon the adjective unnecessary.

2. In this way arises what is sometimes reckoned as a "third" or "mixed" declension, composed of three forms taken from the first declension, and the rest from the second. For example, *mein guter my good* is declined

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
N.	<i>mein guter</i>	<i>meine gute</i>	<i>mein gutes</i>	<i>meine guten</i>
G.	<i>meines guten</i>	<i>meiner guten</i>	<i>meines guten</i>	<i>meiner guten</i>
D.	<i>meinem guten</i>	<i>meiner guten</i>	<i>meinem guten</i>	<i>meinen guten</i>
A.	<i>meinen guten</i>	<i>meine gute</i>	<i>mein gutes</i>	<i>meine guten</i>

There is neither propriety nor advantage in treating this as a separate declension. For each gender and case, there are two forms of the adjective, and only two, and the learner should be taught to distinguish between them, and to note, in every case, the reason of their respective use—which reason is the same in the "mixed" declension as elsewhere.

3. In like manner, when *manch*, *welch*, and *solch* are used without an ending of declension (see 170, 174, 191), the succeeding adjective takes the full ending of the first declension.

Thus, *welch reicher Himmel what a rich sky*, but *welcher reiche Himmel*; *manch bunte Blumen*, but *manche bunten Blumen many variegated flowers*.

4. The same is true after *all*, *viel*, *wenig*, and *mehr*, when they are undeclined: thus, *viel gutes Obst much good fruit*, *mehr offene Wagen more open carriages*.

125. 1. The adjective follows the first declension not only when it has no other limiting word, or only another adjective, before it, but also when preceded by an indeclinable word, such as *etwas*, *genug*, *allerlei*, and the numerals.

2. After the personal pronouns (which do not take the endings of adjective declension), the adjective ought, by analogy, to be of the first declension; and this is not absolutely forbidden; but

in common usage the adjective takes the distinctive endings only in the nominative singular (with the accusative neuter), and follows in the other cases the second declension.—That is to say, the adjective after a personal pronoun is declined as after *ein*, or by the “mixed” declension (124.2).

Thus, *ich armer Thor I poor fool, du lieber Kind thou dear child; but wir armen Thoren we poor fools, ihr süßen Lieder ye sweet songs.*

**126.** 1. The ending *es* of the nom. and acc. neuter in the first declension is sometimes dropped: this omission is especially frequent in poetry.

Thus, *schön Wetter fine weather, falsch Geld false money, ein ander Fest a different festival, der Völker heilig Recht the sacred law of nations.*

2. In old style German, and in poetry, the ending is sometimes dropped in other cases also: thus, *lieb Mutter dear mother, lieb Knabe dear boy.*

3. Adjectives used as collective nouns are uninflected in such combinations as *mit Groß und Klein with great and small, bei Alt und Jung among old and young.*

4. Certain adjectives are in all constructions indeclinable; thus, *a.* those ending in *lei* (415.11) and those in *er* from nouns of places (415.5); *b.* *lauter mere, mehr more, weniger less*; *c.* certain foreign names of color (properly nouns) as, *rosa rose, lila lilac.*

**127.** After a part of the pronominal adjectives mentioned above, 123.4, it is allowable, and even usual, to use the ending of the first declension instead of the second in the nom. and acc. plural.

Thus, *einige große Kasten sundry big boxes, manche glückliche Völker many fortunate races, mehrere lange Straßen several long streets.*

**128.** 1. When two or more adjectives precede and qualify the same noun, unless the first be one of those mentioned in 123, all regularly and usually take the same ending.

2. Rarely, however, when the following adjective stands in a closer relation to the substantive, as forming with it a kind of compound idea, to which the preceding adjective is then added as a more adventitious determinative, the second is allowed to be of the second declension, though the first is of the first; but only in the genitive and dative cases.

Thus, *hohe schattige Bäume high shady trees, mit frohem leichtem Sinn with light joyous mind, guter alter kostbarer Wein good old*

*costly wine*;—but von schönem rothen [roten] Tuche *of handsome red cloth*, frijcher holländijchen Häringe *of fresh Dutch herrings*, mit eignem inneren Organismus *with peculiar internal organization*.

3. Occasionally, what is more properly an adjective qualifying the noun is treated in German as an adverb limiting a following adjective before the noun, and so (130) is left undeclined: thus, die Wolken, die formlos grauen Töchter der Luft *the clouds, the gray shapeless daughters of the air*, die unglücklich traurige Begegnung *the unhappy sad meeting*, der uralte frommen Sitte *of the ancient pious custom*.

4. So also, of two adjectives connected by und *and*, the former is occasionally left without an ending: thus, ein unglaublich reich und lieblicher Mund *an incredibly rich and lovely mouth*.

[EXERCISE 6. ADJECTIVES OF FIRST DECLENSION.]

[EXERCISE 7. ADJECTIVES OF SECOND DECLENSION.]

## 129. *The Adjective used as Substantive.*

1. In German, as in other languages, adjectives are very often used as substantives, either with or without an article or other determining word.

2. When so used, the adjective is written with a capital letter, like any other substantive; but it retains its proper declension as an adjective, taking the endings of the first or of the second declension according to the rules already given.

3. An adjective used as a substantive in the masculine or feminine gender usually denotes a person; in the neuter (singular only), a concrete abstract—a thing which, or that in general which, possesses the quality designated by the adjective.

Thus, der Gute räumt den Platz dem Bösen *the good (man) gives place to the wicked*, daß hie und da ein Glücklicher gewesen *that here and there has been one happy person*, eine Schöne *a beauty*, meine Geliebte *my beloved*, Ihre Rechte *your right hand*,—wo das Strenge mit dem Zarten, wo Starres sich und Milde paarten *where the hard has united with the tender, where what is strong and what is gentle have combined*, durch Kleinere zum Größern mich gewöhnen *accustom me by the less to the greater*.

4. Some adjectives are so constantly used in this way as to have quite acquired the character of substantives. From these



are to be distinguished certain neuters derived from adjectives without a suffix, and declined as nouns of the first declension: as, *Gut property*, *Recht right*, *Roth [Rot] red*, *Deutsch German* (language).

5. After *etwas something*, *was what, something*, *nichts nothing*, an adjective is treated neither as attributive nor as appositive, but as an adjective used as substantive, in apposition: it is therefore of the first declension, and (regularly and usually) written with a capital initial.

Thus, *es muß noch etwas Größeres, noch etwas Herrlicheres kommen there must be coming something more that is greater and more splendid*, *was ich Graujames erlitt what that was dreadful I endured*, *es ist nichts Neues it is nothing new*, *von etwas Anderem of something else*.

6. There is no strict and definite limit between the adjective belonging to a noun understood and the adjective used as a noun, and many cases admit of interpretation as either the one or the other.

### 130. *The Adjective used as Adverb.*

Any adjective, in German, may be used in its predicative or uninflected form as an adverb.

Thus, *ein ganzes Haus a whole house*, but *ein ganz schönes Haus a wholly beautiful house*, and *ein ganz schön gebautes Haus a quite beautifully built house*, *er schreibt gut he writes well*, *er lachte noch viel dummer he laughed yet much more foolishly*.

See further 363; and, for the adjective with adverbial form, 128.3.

#### [EXERCISE 8. ADJECTIVES AS SUBSTANTIVES AND ADVERBS.]

131. *Participles as Adjectives.*—Participles, being verbal adjectives, are treated in nearly all respects as adjectives—as regards their various use, their mode of declension, and their comparison. See further 349 etc.

132. The double declension of the adjective is in some respects analogous with the two-fold mode of declension of nouns, and is often, like the latter, called “strong” and “weak” declension. The second or “weak” declension of adjectives, like that of nouns, is made upon the model of a theme ending in *n*. But the other shares in the peculiarities of the old pronominal inflection; being originally formed, it is assumed, by the composition of a declined pronoun (long since lost in separate use) with the adjective theme. The principle on which the

distinction in the use of the two is now based namely, the economical avoidance of unnecessary explicitness—is of comparatively recent introduction. The first declension was formerly used when the logical emphasis rested on the attribute; the second, when it rested on the person or thing to which the attribute related; the “strong” adjective qualified an indefinite or abstract object; the “weak,” one definite or individualized.

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**133.** Although the subject of comparison, or formation of derivative adjectives of the comparative and superlative degrees, comes more properly under the head of derivation or word-formation, it will be, for the sake of practical convenience, treated here.

**134.** The German adjective, like the English, is subject to variation by termination in order to express degree of quality indicated; a COMPARATIVE and a SUPERLATIVE degree are thus formed from the simple adjective, which, with reference to them, is called POSITIVE.

**135.** 1. The endings forming the comparative and superlative are the same as in English—namely, *er* and *est*. But

2. Adjectives ending in *e* add only *r* for the comparative; and those in *el*, *en*, *er* usually (before the endings of declension, always) reject the *e* of those terminations before *er*.

3. Except after a sibilant letter (*ß*, *ß*, *ß*, *ſch*), and a *b* or *t* usually (especially when preceded by another consonant: and excepting the *nd* of the present participle), the *e* of the superlative ending *est* is regularly omitted, and the ending reduced to simple *ſt*. After a vowel, except *e*, the *e* may be either omitted or retained.

**136.** Monosyllabic adjectives whose vowel is *a*, *o*, or *u* (not *au*) more usually modify those vowels in the comparative and superlative: but there are many (about fifty, including several which may follow either method) that leave the vowel unchanged.

These adjectives are :

bangt, <i>anxious</i>	fahl, <i>bald</i>	sanft, <i>gentle</i>
barsch, <i>harsh</i>	farg, <i>miserly</i>	satt, <i>sated</i>
blant, <i>shining</i>	flart, <i>clear</i>	schlaff, <i>relaxed</i>
blaß†, <i>pale</i>	knapp, <i>close</i>	schlant, <i>slender</i>
bloß, <i>bare</i>	lahm, <i>lame</i>	schroff, <i>rough</i>
brav, <i>brave</i>	laß, <i>weary</i>	starr, <i>stiff</i>
bunt, <i>gay</i>	matt, <i>dull</i>	stolz, <i>proud</i>
dumpf, <i>dull</i>	morſch, <i>rotten</i>	straff, <i>tense</i>
fahl, <i>fallow</i>	nackt, <i>naked</i>	stumm, <i>dumb</i>
faß, “	naß†, <i>wet</i>	stumpf, <i>obtuse</i>
falsch, <i>false</i>	platt, <i>flat</i>	toll, <i>mad</i>
flach, <i>flat</i>	plump, <i>blunt</i>	voll, <i>full</i>
froh, <i>happy</i>	raſch, <i>quick</i>	wahr, <i>true</i>
frommt, <i>pious</i>	roh, <i>rough</i>	wund, <i>wounded</i>
glatt†, <i>smooth</i>	rund, <i>round</i>	zahmt, <i>tame</i>
hohl, <i>hollow</i>	ſacht, <i>soft</i>	zart†, <i>tender</i>
hold, <i>gracious</i>		

Adjectives marked with a † in the list sometimes modify the vowel in comparison, but the unmodified form is in better usage.

137. The formation of comparatives and superlatives by the endings *er* and *eſt* is not, as in English, limited to monosyllabic adjectives. But superlatives of harsh combination are avoided; nor are adjectives compared which (see 117*a*) are used only predicatively, and are incapable of declension.

Of course, as in English, some adjectives are by their signification excluded from comparison: e. g., *ganß entire*, *tobt dead*, *irden earthen*.

### 138. Examples:—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
ſchön, <i>beautiful</i>	ſchöner	ſchönſt
heiß, <i>hot</i>	heißer	heißeſt
träge, <i>lazy</i>	träger	trägeſt
frei, <i>free</i>	freier	freiſt, freieſt
alt, <i>old</i>	älter	älteſt
fromm, <i>pious</i>	frömmmer	frömmſt
kurz, <i>short</i>	kürzer	kürzeſt
froh, <i>joyous</i>	fröher	froheſt
dunkel, <i>dark</i>	dunfler	dunkelſt
mager, <i>thin</i>	magrer, magerer	magerſt
offen, <i>open</i>	offner, offener	offenſt
verworfen, <i>abandoned</i>	verworfenner	verworfenſt
bedeutend, <i>significant</i>	bedeutender	bedeutendſt

### 139. *Irregular and Defective Comparison.*

1. A few adjectives are irregular in the comparative, or in the superlative, or in both: namely—

gut, <i>good</i>	besser	best
viel, <i>much</i>	mehr	meist
hoch, <i>high</i>	höher	höchst
nah, <i>nigh</i>	näher	nächst
groß, <i>great</i>	größer	größt (rarely größte)

2. A few are defective, lacking a positive:

—— little	minder	mindest
—— mid	mittler	mittelft

especially, a class derived from prepositions or adverbs:

[in, <i>in</i> ]	inner	innerst
[auß, <i>out</i> ]	äußer	äußerst
[ober, oben, <i>above</i> ]	ober	oberst
[unter, unten, <i>below</i> ]	unter	unterst
[vor, <i>in front</i> ]	vorder	vorderst
[hinter, hinten, <i>behind</i> ]	hinter	hinterst

3. Two lack (as adjectives) both positive and comparative:

[ehe, <i>ere</i> ]	[eher, <i>sooner</i> ]	erst, <i>first</i>
—— late	——	lest, <i>last</i>

From these two superlatives are irregularly formed new comparatives, *erster former* and *lester latter*. So also, from the comparative *mehr more*, the double comparative *mehrer* (used almost only in the plural *mehrere several*) is made.

### 140. *Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives.*

1. In general, comparatives and superlatives are subject to the same rules of declension as their positives, the simple adjectives.

That is to say, they are uninflected when used in apposition, as predicate, or as adverb (with exceptions noted just below), and declined when used attributively or substantively; and they have the same double declension as simple adjectives, determined by the same circumstances. The comparative presents no irregularities, but—

2. *a.* The superlative does not often occur without an article or other limiting word before it, and is therefore more usually of the second declension.

It occurs of the first declension especially in the vocative, after a limiting genitive, and in phrases which omit the article:

thus, liebster Bruder *dearest brother*, auf des Meeres tiefunterstem Grunde *on the sea's very lowest bottom*, in höchster Eile *in extreme (highest) haste*, meiner Wünsche wärmster, innigster *the warmest, most heartfelt of my wishes*.

b. What is of much more importance, the superlative is not, like the positive and comparative, used predicatively in its uninflected form; but for this is substituted an adverbial expression, formed with the preposition *an* and the definite article *dem* (dat. sing. neuter), contracted into *am*.

Thus, er ist mir *am liebsten* *he is dearest to me*, im Sommer sind die Tage zu kurz; im Herbst, noch kürzer; aber *am kürzesten* im Winter *in summer the days are too short; in autumn yet shorter; but shortest in winter*.

This expression means literally 'at the dearest,' 'at the shortest,' and so on, but is employed as general predicate in many cases where we could not substitute such a phrase for it. Its sphere of use borders close upon that of the superlative with preceding article, agreeing with a noun understood; and it is often inaccurately used in place of the latter: e. g., er ist *am fleißigsten* unter allen Schülern *he is most diligent of all the scholars*, for er ist der fleißigste *ic. he is the most diligent*, etc. Thus, we ought to say, dieser Sturm war gestern *am heftigsten* *this storm was most violent yesterday*, but der gestrige Sturm war der heftigste *the storm of yesterday was the most violent* (e. g., of the year).

Only *allerliebste* is used directly as predicate: das war *allerliebste* *that was charming*.

c. For the superlative as adverb are also generally substituted adverbial phrases formed with *am*, *auf*, and *zum* (see 363.2).

#### 141. Comparison with Adverbs.

1. Adjectives not admitting of comparison in the usual manner, by *er* and *est* (137), may be compared, as in English, with help of the adverbs *mehr* *more* and *am meisten* *most*.

Thus, er ist mir *mehr* feind, als ich ihm *he is more unfriendly to me than I to him*, er war mir *am meisten* nützlich *he was most useful to me*.

2. When, of two qualities belonging to the same object, one is declared to be in excess of the other, the comparison is usually and more properly made with *mehr*.

Thus, er war *mehr* tapfer als flug *he was more bold than prudent*; but, wahrer, als flug und fromm *more true than prudent and dutiful* (Goethe).

**142. Additional Remarks.**

1. The superlative has, as in other languages, a twofold meaning and use: one implying direct comparison and eminence above others (superlative relative); the other, general eminence, or possession of the designated quality in a high degree (superlative absolute).

Thus, *schönste Blumen most beautiful (exceedingly beautiful) flowers*, *die schönsten Blumen the most beautiful flowers* (of all those had in view).

This distinction appears especially in adverbial superlatives: see 363.2c.

2. Less often, the comparative is used absolutely, without direct comparison implied: thus, *eine längere Rede a lengthy speech*, *höhere Schulen high schools*.

3. To a superlative is often prefixed *aller*, in order further to intensify its meaning: thus, *der aller schönsten the most beautiful of all*.

*Alle* is the gen. pl. of *all*, and so is used in its literal sense, only combined with the adjective, and often in connections where its introduction as an independent adjunct of the adjective would be impossible.

[EXERCISE 9. COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES.]

**MODIFYING ADJUNCTS OF THE ADJECTIVE.**

**143.** The adjective, in all its uses as adjective and as substantive (for its adverbial use, see under Adverbs, 363), is liable to be limited by modifying adjuncts of various kinds.

**144.** 1. The customary adjunct of an adjective is an adverb: as, *sehr gut very good*, *herzlich froh heartily glad*.

2. An adjective may be limited by an adverbial clause, containing a verb and its subject, and introduced by a conjunction (see 438.3b).

Thus, *er ist so gut, daß ich ihn nur lieben kann he is so good, that I can not but love him*, *fränker als man glaubte sicker than was supposed*.

An adverbial clause can hardly qualify an adjective, except as a specification of degree, where a comparison is made.

**145.** An adjective is often limited by a noun (or pronoun) dependent on it.

1. By a noun in the genitive case: thus, *ledig aller Pflicht free from all obligation*, *ihrer Beute gewiß sure of its prey*: see 217.

2. By a noun in the dative case: thus, ihm eigen *peculiar to him*, gleich einer Leiche *like a corpse*: see 223.

3. By a noun in the accusative case, but only very rarely, and in predicative construction: thus, ich bin es müde *I am tired of it*: see 229.

4. By an infinitive, with its sign zu *to*: thus, leicht zu verschaffen *easy to procure*: see 344.

146. An adjective is limited by a prepositional phrase: that is, by a noun whose relation to it is defined by a preposition: thus, vom Schäume rein *free from scum*, angenehm von Gestalt *agreeable in figure*.

147. 1. An adverbial adjunct to an adjective always precedes it—except the adverb genug *enough*.

2. An adjective used attributively must be preceded by all its modifying adjuncts: thus, aller von dem deutschen Reiche abhängigen, oder dazu gehörigen Völkerstämme *of all the races dependent on the German empire, or belonging to it*.

3. Adjectives used in the predicate or in apposition may take the limiting noun, with or without a preposition, either before or after them: but the adjective more usually follows; and necessarily, if the limiting word be a pronoun without a preposition.

148. Participles, as verbal adjectives, share in most of the constructions of the adjective: see 349 etc.

## PRONOUNS.

149. In German, as in English, substantive pronouns and pronominal adjectives (or adjective pronouns) are for the most part not distinguished from one another (as they are distinguished in French) by different forms, but the same word is used, according to circumstances, with either value. It will be convenient, therefore, to treat both classes together, explaining under each word its own proper use or uses.

150. The principal classes of pronouns are—

1. The personal;
2. The possessive;
3. The demonstrative (including the determinative);
4. The interrogative;

5. The relative (all of which are also either demonstrative or interrogative);

6. The indefinite, with the indefinite numerals.

The determinative, indefinite, and numeral pronouns are in part of ambiguous character, being intermediate classes through which the pronouns shade off into ordinary adjectives and numerals.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### 151. The personal pronouns are

##### FIRST PERSON.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	ich	<i>I</i>	mir	<i>we</i>
G.	meiner, mein	<i>of me</i>	unser	<i>of us</i>
D.	mir	<i>to me</i>	uns	<i>to us</i>
A.	mich	<i>me</i>	uns	<i>us</i>

##### SECOND PERSON.

N.	du	<i>thou</i>	ihr	<i>ye</i>
G.	deiner, dein	<i>of thee</i>	euer	<i>of you</i>
D.	dir	<i>to thee</i>	euch	<i>to you</i>
A.	dich	<i>thee</i>	euch	<i>you</i>

##### THIRD PERSON, *Singular.*

	<i>maso.</i>		<i>fem.</i>		<i>neut.</i>	
N.	er	<i>he</i>	sie	<i>she</i>	es	<i>it</i>
G.	seiner, sein	<i>of him</i>	ihrer	<i>of her</i>	seiner, sein	<i>of it</i>
D.	ihm	<i>to him</i>	ihr	<i>to her</i>	ihm	<i>to it</i>
A.	ihn	<i>him</i>	sie	<i>her</i>	es	<i>it</i>

##### *Plural.*

##### *m. f. n.*

N.	sie	<i>they</i>
G.	ihrer	<i>of them</i>
D.	ihnen	<i>to them</i>
A.	sie	<i>them</i>

Sich, the special reflexive of the third person (see 155.3), is also a member of this class, a personal pronoun.

152. 1. Mein, dein, sein are older forms of the gen. singular, now antiquated, but still met with in certain phrases; ihr, for



ihrer, does not occur; unserer, for unser, and eurer, for euer, are not unknown, but rare.

Examples are: ihr Instrumente spottet mein *ye instruments mock me*, was bedarf man sein *what do they require of him?* nicht aus Verachtung euer *not out of contempt of you*.

2. These genitives in composition with halben, wegen, and willen add a wholly anomalous et; and unser and euer, in like manner, add a t: thus, meinethalben, deinetwegen, um feinethwillen, unfertwegen, euerthalben, etc.

3. Genitives of the personal pronouns are everywhere of rare occurrence, and only as objects of verbs (219) and adjectives (217). For the genitive limiting a noun is substituted a possessive adjective (158.2).

### 153. Use of the Personal Pronouns in address.

1. In German, as in English, the pronoun of the second pers. singular, du *thou*, is no longer used in address, in the ordinary intercourse of life.

It is retained (as in English) in the language of worship and of poetry: and further, in that of familiarity—the familiarity of intimacy, between equals, as between husband and wife, near relations, or particular friends, also among children;—the familiarity toward inferior age and station, as on the part of any one toward young children, or on the part of teachers or employers toward youthful pupils or servants;—and even, sometimes, the familiarity of insult or contempt.

2. The pronoun of the second pers. plural—ihr *ye* etc.—was at one time generally current in Germany for the singular (like our *you*), and is still met with in poetry or narrative: but modern use authorizes it only in addressing more than one of such persons as may, singly, be addressed with du.

3. The singular pronouns of the third person—er *he*, sie *she*, etc.—were also once used in customary address, but soon sank to the condition of address by an acknowledged superior to an inferior—as by a monarch to a subject, a master to a servant, and the like—with which value they are still retained, but are going out of vogue.

Employed in this way, er and sie and their cases are usually and properly written with a capital.

4. At present, the pronoun of the third pers. plural—sie *they*—and its possessive, ihr *their*, are alone

allowed, in the sense of *you, your*, in common life, in addressing either one person or more than one. When thus used, they are, for distinction, written with capital letters, *Sie, Ihnen, Ihr*, etc. (but the reflexive *sich* is not so written).

Thus, *ich danke Ihnen für Ihre Gefälligkeit, daß Sie sich die Mühe gegeben haben* *I thank you for your kindness, in that you have given yourself the trouble.*

The verb with *Sie* is always in the plural, whether one person or more be intended. But a following adjective is either singular or plural, according to the sense: thus, *Sie unglücklicher* *you unhappy man!* but *Sie unglücklichen* *you unhappy ones!*

The use of *Sie* in address is quite modern, not having become generally established till about the middle of the last century.

5. Some authorities write all the pronouns of address with a capital, even *Du, Dich, Euch*, etc.; but this is not to be approved, except in such documents as letters, where the words are to reach the person addressed through the eye.

#### 154. *Peculiarities in the use of Pronouns of the third person.*

1. As a general rule, the pronoun of the third person, in the singular, takes the gender of the noun to which it relates.

Thus, when speaking of a hat (*der Hut*), we use *er* and *ihn*; of a pen (*die Feder*), *sie*; of bread (*das Brod*), *es*.

Excepted from this rule are such words as *Weib* *woman*, which are neuter, though designating female persons; also diminutives (neuter) of personal appellations, such as *Mädchen* *girl*, *Fräulein* *young lady*, *Knäblein* *little boy*: a pronoun referring to one of these often follows the natural gender, instead of the grammatical. *Kind* *child* is represented by *es* *it*, as with us.

2. But these pronouns are seldom used in the genitive or dative for things without life. For the genitive is substituted the genitive of a demonstrative, *der* or *derselbe*; for the dative, the dative of the same: or, if governed by a preposition, a combination of that preposition with the adverb *da* (or *dar*) *there*.

Thus, *damit* *therewith*, *davon* *thereof*, *darin* *therein*, *darnach* *thereafter*, and so on, are used instead of *mit ihm* or *ihr* *with it*, etc. *Dar* is put instead of *da* before a vowel or *n*.

Similar substitutions of the demonstratives are often made also in other cases where we employ the personal pronouns: see below, 171.

3. The neuter accusative *es* is, in like manner, almost never allowed after a preposition, but is replaced by *da* before the preposition: thus, *dafür, darum, for für es for it, um es about it.*

4. The neuter *es* has certain special uses.

a. It is, as in English, the indefinite and impersonal subject of a verb: thus, *es regnet it rains, es ist sein Bruder it is his brother, es freut mich, Sie zu sehen it rejoices me to see you.*

b. In this use, it often answers to our *there* before a verb: as, *es war ein Kern darin there was a kernel in it, es wird Niemand kommen there will no one come.*

c. Yet more often, it serves the purpose of a mere grammatical device for shifting the true subject to a position after the verb, and is itself untranslatable: as, *es sperren die Riesen den einsamen Weg the giants bar the lonely way, es fürchte die Götter das Menschengeschlecht let the human race fear the gods.*

d. In all these uses, the verb agrees in number with the following noun, the logical subject or the predicate: thus, *es waren die aller schönsten it was (or, they were) the very finest ones.*

e. *Es* also stands as indefinite object; also as predicate, representing another word or phrase already used, and of which the repetition is avoided (to be rendered, then, by *so, be so, do so, or the like*): thus, *ich selber bin es nicht mehr I myself am so [what I was] no longer, als ich es noch konnte when I was still able to do so.*

f. Instead of *it is I*, and the like, the German reverses the expression, and says *ich bin es I am it, Sie waren es you were it* (i. e., *it was you*), etc.

g. *Es*, in all situations, is liable to be abbreviated to *'s*: the apostrophe should in such case always be written, but is sometimes omitted.

### 155. *Reflexive use of the Personal Pronouns.*

1. A reflexive pronoun is one which represents the same person or thing as the subject of a sentence, but in the relation of object—namely, as object, direct or indirect, of the verb in the sentence; or (less properly) in a prepositional adjunct to that verb.

It is usually to be rendered by a personal pronoun with the word *self* added: thus, *ich wasche mich* *I wash myself*, *ich schmeichle mir* *I flatter myself*, *ich spare meiner* (or *mich*) *I spare myself*, *ich stoße sie von mir* *I thrust them from myself* (or, *from me*).

2. In the first and second persons, singular and plural, the reflexive pronoun is the same with the personal in every case, the latter being used in a reflexive sense, without any adjunct corresponding to our *self* (but compare 5, below).

The same is the case with the genitive of the third person—as, *er spart seiner* *he spares himself*—but

3. In the third person, there is a special reflexive pronoun, *sich*, which must always be used instead of the dative or accusative of a personal pronoun, after either verb or preposition, when the subject of the sentence is referred to. It has the value of both accusative and dative, of either number, and of any gender.

Thus, *er, sie, es wäscht sich, schmeichelt sich* *he, she, or it washes or flatters himself, herself, or itself*, *sie waschen sich, schmeicheln sich* *they wash themselves, or flatter themselves*, *daß ist an und für sich gut* *that is good in and by itself*.

4. In German, as in French (there is no corresponding usage in English), the reflexive pronoun in the plural is not seldom employed in what is called a “reciprocal” sense, answering to our *one another*.

Thus, *wir hätten uns nie sehen sollen* *we ought never to have seen one another*, *ihr haßet euch* *ye hate each other*, *sie (Sie) geben sich das Zeichen* *they (you) give one another the signal*.

Instead of the reciprocal reflexive (or, rarely and redundantly, along with it), the word *einander* *one another* is often employed.

Only the connection and the requirement of the sense can show in any case whether the pronoun has its directly or its reciprocally reflexive value.

5. *Selbst* (or *selber*) *self* may be added to any reflexive pronoun, for greater emphasis; or, in the plural, to exclude the reciprocal sense.

It may also be added for emphasis to any pronoun, or noun, answering to our *myself*, *thyself*, *itself*, etc.

**156.** The dative of a personal pronoun is sometimes introduced into a clause expletively, for liveliness of expression : as, *laß mir herein den Alten let the old man in here (for me)*: compare **222. III. c.**

[EXERCISE 10. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.]

POSSESSIVE PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

**157.** The personal pronouns are always substantive ; their corresponding adjectives are the possessives : namely

<i>mein, my</i>	<i>unſer, our</i>
<i>dein, thy</i>	<i>euer, your</i>
<i>ſein, his, its</i>	<i>ihr, their</i>
<i>ihr, her</i>	<i>(Ihr, your)</i>

The possessives of the masc. and neut. singular are the same, *ſein*. The possessive of the fem. singular and that of the plural of all genders also agree in form ; and, as the latter (see **153.4**) is used in the sense of a second person, *ihr* has three meanings, *her, their, and your* (the last of which is distinguished to the eye by the capital initial).

**158.** 1. It will be noticed that the possessives correspond closely in form with the genitives of the personal pronouns, being, in fact, the same words in a different condition.

2. The office, also, of the possessive, agrees with that of the genitive of a noun. The genitive of the pronoun is very seldom used to limit a noun, but for it is substituted a possessive in the form of an adjective, qualifying the noun (**216.3**).

Thus, *die Arme deſ Mannes the man's arms*; but *ſeine Arme his arms*, not *die Arme ſeiner the arms of him*. Rarely, such cases occur as *Beherrſchung eurer ſelbſt control of yourself* (a verbal noun imitating the construction of the verb).

**159.** As regards their declension, possessives are treated in the same manner as other adjectives.

1. They are used predicatively in their simple or thematic form.

Thus, *der Becher iſt dein the goblet is thine*, *die Braut ſei mein be the bride mine*.

2. When used attributively (their regular and ordinary office), they are declined, not like *der the*, but like *ein a* (63). Thus, *mein my* is declined—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>
N.	<i>mein</i>	<i>meine</i>	<i>mein</i>	<i>meine</i>
G.	<i>meines</i>	<i>meiner</i>	<i>meines</i>	<i>meiner</i>
D.	<i>meinem</i>	<i>meiner</i>	<i>meinem</i>	<i>meinen</i>
A.	<i>meinen</i>	<i>meine</i>	<i>mein</i>	<i>meine</i>

and *unser our*—

N.	<i>unser</i>	<i>unsere</i>	<i>unser</i>	<i>unsere</i>
G.	<i>unsere</i>	<i>unserer</i>	<i>unsere</i>	<i>unserer</i>
D.	<i>unserem</i>	<i>unserer</i>	<i>unserem</i>	<i>unseren</i>
A.	<i>unseren</i>	<i>unsere</i>	<i>unser</i>	<i>unsere</i>

*Unser* and *euer* follow the same rules as other adjectives (120.3) respecting the contraction of their endings: thus, we may have *unsere* or *unfre*, *unsere*, *unser*, or *unfre*, and so on.

3. The possessive is also often used substantively, or with the value of a pronoun (not qualifying a noun expressed, but representing one understood); in that case, it is declined in full like an adjective of the first or strong declension: thus, nominatives *meiner*, *meine*, *meines*, *meine*.

For example, *daß ist nicht dein Becher; es ist meiner that is not thy goblet; it is mine (i. e., my goblet); sein Hirn, wie meines his brain, like my own.*

4. In the same substantive use, the possessive may be preceded by the definite article; and it is then declined like any other adjective in like circumstances, or by the second or weak adjective declension (119.2): thus, nom. *der*, *die*, *das meine*, gen. *des*, *der*, *des meinen*, etc.

For example, *sein Richterstuhl ist nicht der meine his judgment-seat is not mine; löst mir das Herz, daß ich das eure rühre set my heart free, that I may touch yours.*

5. Again, for the simple possessive, in its absolute or pronominal use after the definite article, is substituted a derivative in *ig*: thus, *meinig*, *unfrig*, etc. These are never used except with the article, and therefore always follow the second adjective declension. The nominatives of the whole series are—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
der meinige	die meinige	das meinige	die meinigen, <i>mine</i>
der deinige	die deinige	das deinige	die deinigen, <i>thine</i>
der seinige	die seinige	das seinige	die seinigen, <i>his, its</i>
der ihrige	die ihrige	das ihrige	die ihrigen, <i>hers</i>
der unsrige	die unsrige	das unsrige	die unsrigen, <i>ours</i>
der eurige	die eurige	das eurige	die eurigen, <i>yours</i>
der ihrige	die ihrige	das ihrige	die ihrigen, <i>theirs</i>
[der Ihrige	die Ihrige	das Ihrige	die Ihrigen, <i>yours</i> ]

Neither the derivatives in *ig*, nor the simple possessives preceded by the article, are ever used attributively, qualifying a noun expressed.

*Mein* etc., used predicatively, assert ownership pure and simple : thus, *der Hut ist mein* *the hat belongs to me*, and to no one else. *Meiner*, *der meine*, and *der meinige* are nearly equivalent expressions, adding to the idea of property that of particularizing or identifying the thing owned : thus, *er ist meiner* etc. *it is the one that belongs to me*. *Der meinige* etc. are most common in colloquial use ; *der meine* etc. are preferred in higher styles.

**160.** The absolute possessives preceded by the article (*der meine*, *der meinige*, etc.) are sometimes used substantively (like other adjectives : see 129) : the neuter singular denoting 'what belongs to one' (his property, his duty, or the like) ; the plural 'those who belong to one' (as his family, his friends).

Thus, *unsere Pflicht ist, auf das Unsrige zu sehen, und für die Unsrigen zu sorgen* *our duty is to attend to our business and take care of our dependents*, *er ermunterte die Seinen* *he encouraged his men*, *gemordet von den Seinen auf dem Seinen* *murdered by his own people on his own ground*.

**161.** The German, like the French, avoids the use of the possessives in many situations where we employ them : either putting in their stead the definite article only, where the possessor is sufficiently pointed out by the connection ; or, along with the article (or even without it), using the dative of the corresponding personal pronoun, where it can be construed as indirect object of the verb in the sentence (see 222. III. b).

Thus, *er schüttelte den Kopf* *he shook his head*, *der Frost bringt mir durch alle Knochen* *the frost penetrates through all my bones*, *er fiel ihr um den Hals* *he fell upon her neck*, *es kam mir in Sinn* *it came into my mind*.

162. *Dero* and *Ihro* are old-style expressions, used in ceremonious address, before titles, etc.: thus, *Ihro Majestät* *your majesty*, *Dero Befehle* *your commands*.

Before titles, *seine* and *seiner* are often abbreviated to *Se.* and *Er.*; and for *euer*, *eure*, is written *Em.*

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

163. The proper demonstratives are *der* *this, that*, *dies* *this, that*, and *jen* *yon, that*. Their original value is that of adjectives; but they are now with equal freedom used adjectively, qualifying a noun expressed, and absolutely, or as pronouns, standing for a noun understood.

*Der* is historically the same word with our *the, that*, and *they*; *dies* is our *this, these, those*; *jen* is our *yon*, and may by this correspondence be conveniently distinguished from *jed* (*jeder*) *every* (see 190), with which it is apt to be confounded by learners.

164. 1. *Der* when used adjectively is declined like the article *der* (63): being, in fact, the same word, and distinguished from it only by greater distinctness, of meaning and of utterance.

Thus, *der Ort ist übel regiert* *that place is ill governed*, *der eine hat die, die anderen andere*, *Gaben* *one has these gifts, others have other*.

2. *Der* when used absolutely, or as pronoun, has peculiar forms in a part of its cases—namely, the genitives singular and plural and the dative plural—where it adds *en* to the adjective forms, at the same time doubling their final *s*: thus,

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
N. <i>der</i>	<i>die</i>		<i>daß</i>	<i>die</i>
G. <i>dessen, (deß)</i>	<i>deren, (der)</i>		<i>dessen, (deß)</i>	<i>deren, (derer)</i>
D. <i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>		<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i>
A. <i>den</i>	<i>die</i>		<i>daß</i>	<i>die</i>

The genitives singular *deß*, *der*, *deß* are also allowed, but very rarely used, except the neuter in certain compounds, as *deßwegen*, *deßhalb* (also written *deßwegen*, *deßhalb*).



In the genitive plural, *derer* is used instead of *deren* when a limiting addition, usually a relative clause, follows: thus, *derer, die mich lieben* of those who love me, *derer von Paris* of them of Paris (people from Paris).

**165.** *Dieß* and *jen* are declined as adjectives of the first declension, or like the definite article (only with *es* instead of *as* in the nom and acc. neuter); and without any difference, whether they are used as adjectives or as pronouns. Thus,

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. f. n.</i>
N.	<i>diefer</i>	<i>diefe</i>	<i>diefes, (dieß)</i>	<i>diefe</i>
G.	<i>diefes</i>	<i>diefer</i>	<i>diefes</i>	<i>diefer</i>
D.	<i>diefem</i>	<i>diefer</i>	<i>diefem</i>	<i>diefen</i>
A.	<i>diefen</i>	<i>diefe</i>	<i>diefes, (dieß)</i>	<i>diefe</i>

The nom. and acc. neuter *diefes* is often abbreviated to *dieß* (or *dieß*), especially when the word is used as a pronoun.

**166.** *Use of the Demonstratives.*

1. *Diefer* is a general demonstrative, answering to both *this* and *that*. If, however, the idea of remoteness in place or time is at all emphasized, either by the antithesis of *this* and *that*, or in any other way, *that* must be represented by *jener*. Often, *diefer* and *jener* are to be rendered *the latter* (*diefer*, the one last mentioned, the nearer) and *the former* (*jener*, the one mentioned earlier, the remoter). *Dieß* and *daß* are also sometimes contrasted as *this* and *that*.

2. *Der* has a great range of meaning, from the faint indefiniteness of the article to the determinateness of *diefer*—depending mainly on the emphasis with which it is uttered. Special uses worthy of note are as follows:

a. *Der* is the demonstrative employed in such phrases as *unfere Pferde und die der Fremden* our horses and those of the strangers, *der mit den hellen Augen* he (the one) with the sharp eyes.

Rarely, *derjenige* (168) is used in the same sense.

b. It takes the place of the pronoun of the third person used emphatically: thus, *die muß recht dumm sein* she (this person) must be right stupid, *der füttere Krähen* may he (that one) be food for crows.

3. The neuters singular, *daß*, *dieß* (or *dieß*, *dießeß*), and (rarely) *jeneß*, are used, like *eß* (154.4), as indefinite subjects of verbs; and, if a plural predicate noun follows the verb, the latter agrees with the noun: thus, *daß ist mein Vater that is my father*, *daß find die Reizungen those are the charms*, *dieß ist der Kampf der Pferde und Fische this is the combat of horses and fishes*. *Daß* is sometimes used in a half-humorous, half-contemptuous way of persons, singular or plural: e. g. *daß schlendert wie die Schnecken those people loiter like snails*.

4. Compounds of the adverbs *da* and *hier* with prepositions are very frequently used instead of cases of the demonstratives with governing prepositions: thus, *damit therewith*, *darin therein*, for *mit dem*, *in dem*; *hiermit herewith*, *hierin herein*, for *mit diesem*, *in diesem*.

5. For the demonstratives as substitutes for the personal pronoun, see below, 171.

#### DETERMINATIVES.

167. Certain pronominal words, connected with the demonstratives in derivation or meaning, or in both, are ordinarily called determinatives.

168. *Derjenige*.—1. This is made up of the definite article *der*, and *jenig*, a derivative from *jen yon, that* (like *meinig* from *mein*, etc., 159.5). The latter part never occurs without the former, and they are written together as a single word, although each is separately declined, the one as the article the other as an adjective of the second declension. Thus,

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	m.	f.	m. f. n.
N.	<i>derjenige</i>	<i>diejenige</i>	<i>daßjenige</i>
G.	<i>desjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>	<i>desjenigen</i>
D.	<i>demjenigen</i>	<i>derjenigen</i>	<i>demjenigen</i>
A.	<i>denjenigen</i>	<i>diejenige</i>	<i>daßjenige</i>

2. *Derjenige* is used both as adjective and as pronoun, more often the latter. Its specific office is that of antecedent to a following relative; in this office it is interchangeable with the demonstrative *der*, as the latter's more prosaic and colloquial substitute: thus, *derjenige, or derjenige Mann, welcher weise ist, ist zufrieden he (that man) who is wise is contented*.

169. *Derjelbe*.—1. This word is composed of the definite article and the adjective *jelb*. Both its parts are declined, after the manner of *derjenige* (168.1).

2. *Derſelbe* is both adjective and pronoun, and means literally *the same*. But it also interchanges with the demonstratives as substitute for the pronoun of the third person (see 171).

3. For *derſelbe* are sometimes used *derſelbige* and *ſelbiger*, which, however, are antiquated expressions. *Der nämliche* is its equivalent in the full sense of *the same*.

*Selber* and *ſelbſt* (155.5) are indeclinable forms of the same adjective *ſelb*, always following, appositively, the noun or pronoun which they qualify, often at a distance from it. *Selbſt* is also used adverbially, meaning *even*, and as substantive in the phrase *von ſelbſt* of *its own accord*.

*Selb* is also, rarely, declined after *dieſer* as after *der*. The genitive of *derſelbe* is written either *deſſelben* or *deſſelben*: the former is theoretically preferable (3.1), the latter more usual (likewise *daſſelbe*, neuter).

170. *Soldſch*.—1. *Soldſch* is the English *such*, and is used, both as adjective and as pronoun, in nearly the same manner. It is declined like *dieſer* (165); or, when preceded by *ein*, as any other adjective would be in the same situation (124).

2. *Such a* is either *ſoldſch ein*, or *ein ſoldſcher*, the adjective being undeclined when placed before the article. For *as*, when used after *such* with the value of a relative pronoun, the German uses the relative: thus, *ſoldſchen, die ihn kannten* *to such as knew him*.

#### 171. *The Demonstratives and Determinatives as Substitutes.*

The pronouns of these classes are often used where we put the third personal pronoun or its possessive:

1. For the emphatic pronoun of the third person (166.2b), and the antecedent of a relative clause (168.2), as already explained.

2. Where the demonstrative meaning helps avoid an ambiguity: as, *er ging mit meinem Vetter und deſſen Sohn*, or *dem Sohne deſſelben* *he went with my cousin and his (the latter's) son*;—or an awkward repetition: as, *er hat eine Schweiſter: kennen Sie dieſelbe* (for *kennen Sie ſie*)? *he has a sister; do you know her?*

3. In the oblique cases, where things and not persons are intended: as, *ich bin deſſen benöthigt* [*benötigt*] *I am in need of it* (*ſeiner* would mean *of him*, rather). In like manner, with prepositions, instead of the adverbial compounds with *da* (154.2,3): as, *ich habe einen Garten, und gehe oft in demſelben* (or *darin*) *ſpazieren* *I have a garden, and often go to walk in it*.

4. The substitution, especially of *derselbe*, is often made, in popular use, in cases where no reason can be assigned, and where the personal pronoun would be preferable.

[EXERCISE 11. POSSESSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.]

INTERROGATIVES.

172. The interrogatives are *wer* *who*, *was* *what*, and *welcher* *what*, *which*. *Wer* and *was* are pronouns only; *welcher* is primarily adjective, but also frequently used as pronoun.

173. 1. *Wer* and *was* are peculiar in having no plural; also, in conveying no idea of gender, but being distinguished precisely as our *who* and *what*, the one denoting persons, the other things. They are declined as follows:

N.	<i>wer</i>	<i>who</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>what</i>
G.	<i>wessen</i> , ( <i>weß</i> )	<i>whose</i>	<i>wessen</i> , ( <i>weß</i> )	<i>of what</i>
D.	<i>wem</i>	<i>to whom</i>	—	
A.	<i>wen</i>	<i>whom</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>what</i>

2. *Weß* as genitive of *wer* is antiquated and out of use, and as genitive of *was* is hardly met with except in compounds like *weswegen*, *weshalb* (or *weswegen*, *weßhalb*). *Was* has regularly no dative; for both its dative and accusative as governed by prepositions are substituted compounds of those prepositions with the adverb *wo* or *wor* *where*: thus, *womit* *wherewith*, *with what*, *worin* *wherein*, *in what*, *wofür* *wherefore*, *for what* (like *damit*, *hiermit*, etc.: see 154.2, 166.4).

3. Popular colloquial usage sometimes puts *was*, both as accusative and as dative, after prepositions: thus, *mit was* *with what*, *für was* *for what*, and instances of such use are occasionally met with in literature.

4. *Weß* is, quite rarely, used adjectively: as, *weß Sinnes der Herr sei* *of what disposition the master is*.

174. 1. *Welch* is declined like *dies* (165), or as an adjective of the first declension. As an adjective, qualifying a noun expressed, it means either *what* or *which*; used absolutely, it is our *which*.

2. Before *ein* or an adjective, especially when used in an exclamatory way, *welch* generally loses its declensional endings, and appears in its undeclined form.

Thus, *welches* Buch *what* (or *which*) book, *welches* von diesen Büchern *which of these books*:—*welch* tiefes Summen, *welch* ein heller Ton *what deep murmur, what a clear tone!* *welch* schlechte Sitten *what bad manners!*

175. *Was* with the preposition *für* *for* after it (sometimes separated from it by intervening words), is used in the sense of *what sort of, what kind of*. It is then invariable, and the words to which it is prefixed have the same construction as if they stood by themselves.

Thus, *was* hast du *für* einen Fisch gefangen *what sort of a fish have you caught?* *von was* *für* Zeugen, und mit *was* *für* einem Werkzeuge, machen Sie das *of what kind of stuffs, and with what sort of an instrument, do you make that?*

176. 1. All the interrogatives are used also as relatives (see 177).

2. *Was* stands often for *etwas something*; *wer*, in the sense of *some one*, is quite rare; *welch*, as pronoun only, is familiarly, but not elegantly, used to signify *some*.

Thus, *noch was* werth [*wert*] *still worth something*, *ich* möchte *was* profitieren *I would fain profit somewhat*, *meinte wer* aus der Gesellschaft *remarked some one in the company*, *haben Sie* Pflaumen? *geben Sie mir* *welche* *have you plums? give me some*.

3. *Was* is used not rarely for *um was, or warum why?* thus, *was* birgst du dein Gesicht *why hidest thou thy face?* and sometimes for *wie how*: thus, *was* mein armes Herz zittert *how my poor heart trembles!*

#### RELATIVES.

177. The demonstrative pronoun (not adjective: 164.1) *der*, and the interrogatives *wer, was, was für*, and *welcher* (both adjective and pronoun), are used also as relatives; they are declined, as such, in the same manner as when having their more original and proper value.

178. *Der* and *welcher* are the ordinary simple relatives following an antecedent. In the nominative and accusative, they are

used interchangeably, according to the arbitrary choice of speaker or writer. In the dative (except after prepositions) the cases of *der* are rather preferred to those of *welcher*; and, in the genitive (as pronouns), only *dessen* and *deren* are ever met with.

179. 1. *Wer* and *was*, *was für*, and *welcher* used adjectively (also absolutely, when meaning *which*), like *who* and *what* in English, are properly compound relatives, or antecedent and relative combined.

Thus, *wer bei Nacht vorbeifuhr, sah die Flammen* *he who (whoever) went by at night saw the flames*, *was im Menschen nicht ist, kommt auch nicht aus ihm* *what (whatever) is not in a man does not come out of him*, *ich will vergessen, wer ich bin, und was ich litt* *I will forget who I am and what I have suffered*, *mit ihr wandelt, wem sie die Weihe lieh* *with her walks he on whom she has bestowed consecration*, *man suchte zu vergessen, welche Noth [Not] überall herrschte* *one sought to forget what distress was everywhere prevailing*, *wer weiß, was für eine List dahinter steckt* *who knows what sort of a trick is hidden in that?*

2. But the demonstrative is repeated, for distinctness, after the compound relative, much more often in German than in English:

Thus, *wer nicht vorwärts geht, der kommt zurück* *who (whoever) does not advance, he (that one) falls back*, *was du nie verlierst, das mußt du beweinen* *what you never lose, that you have to bewail*, *was ich für Herrlichkeit gesehen, das steht nicht in der Worte Macht* *what kind of magnificence I saw, that is not in the power of words to tell*.

3. As occasional irregular variations of the mode of relative expression may be noticed the use of the personal pronoun instead of *der* as antecedent after *wer*, of *der* instead of *wer* as preceding relative, of *wer* instead of *welcher* after *der*, etc.

4. The examples show that *wer* and *was* are sometimes to be translated by *whoever* and *whatever*. To give them more distinctly this indefinite sense, they may be followed (either immediately, or, more often, after one or more interposed words) by *auch* *even*, *nur* *only*, or *immer* *ever*, especially the first: thus, *was er auch thue* *whatever he may do*. *Auch* is often added with the same sense to relative adverbs: thus, *wo er auch sei* *wherever he may be*, *wie sie sich auch dagegen streben* *however they may resist*.

5. After a neuter pronoun, personal, demonstrative, or indefinite (as *es*, *das*, *alles*, *etwas*, *nichts*, *manches*, *viel*, *wenig*), also after an adjective (especially a superlative) taken in a general sense and not referring to some definite object, the compound relative *was* is used, instead of the simple relative *das* or *welches*.

Thus, *über das, was er selbst erzählte* *about that which he was himself relating*, *alles was von dir mir kam* *all that came to me from thee*, *nichts was meine Meinung störte* *nothing that should shake my opinion*, *das erste was sie hörten* *the first thing which they heard*.

That is to say, for an adjective clause qualifying the antecedent is substituted a substantive clause in apposition with it (436.3c.).

6. Like *das* (166.3), *was* is sometimes used collectively of persons in the singular or plural: thus, *früh übt sich was ein Meister werden will* *whoever would be a master begins to practice early*.

180. For the dative or accusative case of a relative (either simple or compound) governed by a preposition is usually substituted, when things and not persons are referred to, the compound of the preposition with an adverb (as in the case of the demonstratives and interrogatives: see 166.4, 173.2). But the compounds of *da* (*davon*, *daraus*, etc.) are only rarely used relatively, those of *wo* (*wovon*, *woraus*, etc.) being preferred.

181. A verb agreeing with a relative is put in the third person even when the antecedent of the relative was a pronoun of the first or second person (or a vocative), unless that pronoun be repeated after the relative.

Thus, *um mich, der sich rettet zu dir* *about me, who am taking refuge with thee*, *bist du es, der so zittert* *is it thou who art trembling thus?*—but *um mich, der ich mich rette*; *bist du es, der du so zitterst*;—*glückseliger Alexander, der du Italien nicht sahest* *fortunate Alexander, that didst never see Italy!*

182. 1. In antiquated or archaic style, *so* is used as indeclinable relative, representing the nominative and accusative cases of *der* and *welcher*: thus, *der Mann, so es sagte* *the man who said it*.

2. In a like manner, *da* is appended to a relative to express indefiniteness, itself being wholly untranslatable: thus, *wer da athmet* [*atmet*] *im rosen Licht* *whoever breathes in the rosy light*.

183. The relative, often omitted in English, must always be expressed in German: thus, *die Freunde, die ich liebe* *the friends I love*.

[EXERCISE 12. INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.]

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

184. A class of words needs some attention under the above head, in connection with the pronouns, as being more or less related with the latter, and differing from ordinary nouns and adjectives, in derivation or in office, or both.

185. *Man one*.—*Man* (originally the same word with *Mann man*) is employed as wholly indefinite subject to a verb, like the French *on*, our *one, they, people, we*, taken indefinitely. Thus, *man sagt one says, they say, it is said*. If any other case than a nominative is required, *einer* (195) is used instead.

186. *Jemand some one, Niemand no one*.—These are compounds of *Mann man* with the adverbs *je ever* and *nie never*. They ought, therefore, to be declinable only as substantives of the first declension; and it is proper always so to treat them, adding *s* in the genitive, and leaving the other cases like the nominative. But (especially where the phrase would otherwise be ambiguous or indistinct) they are allowed to take the endings *em* or *en* in the dative, and *en* in the accusative.

*Niemand no one* must be used instead of *nicht Jemand not any one*, except in an interrogative sentence.

187. *Jedermann every one*.—This word is made up of *jeder every* (190) and *Mann man*, but is used without distinction of gender. Its first part is undeclined, and it is varied only by adding *s* to form the genitive.

188. *Etwas something, nichts nothing*.—These words are invariable in form, and always have a substantive value. A following limiting adjective is treated as a substantive in apposition with them (129.5): and the same construction is usual with a noun after *etwas*: thus, *etwas Geld some money*. Both are often used adverbially.

For *was* in the sense of *etwas*, see 176.2.

*Nichts* is usually and regularly used instead of *nicht etwas not anything*, except when the sentence is interrogative as well as negative.



**189.** *Einig, etlich some.*—These are used chiefly in the plural, and declined like *dieß* (165). They are employed both adjectively and substantively.

*Etmelch* is a word, now antiquated, having the same meaning: for this, *welcher* is often used colloquially (176.2), as *maß* for *etwaß*.

**190.** *Jed, jeglich, jedwed each, every.*—Only the first of these is in familiar use. All are declined like *dieß*; or, the first two as adjectives of the “mixed” declension (124.2) when preceded by *ein*, the only limiting word which can stand before them. They are used either adjectively or substantively.

The original themes are *jeder* and *jedweder*, and their *er* has not until modern times been treated as ending of declension only. For *Jedermann*, see above, 187.

**191.** *Manch many.*—In the singular, *manch* means *many a*; in the plural, *many*. It is usually declined like *dieß* (165), but, before an adjective, may be left uninflected: thus, *manch bunte Blumen many variegated flowers*, *manch gülden Gewand many a golden garment*. It is also used substantively.

**192.** *Viel much, wenig little.*—1. After another limiting word, *viel* and *wenig* are declined as any other adjectives would be in the same situation—except in *ein wenig a little*. If they precede the noun which they qualify (or another adjective qualifying it), they are sometimes declined and sometimes left unvaried—and the former more when the meaning is distributive, the latter more when collective: thus, *viel Wein a great quantity of wine*, but *vieler Wein wine of many kinds*; *viel leicht beschwingte Gäste a number of light-winged guests*, but *viele andere Thier[Tier=]gestalten many other animal shapes (individual)*—but this distinction is by no means closely observed. Both words are used substantively as well as adjectively, and may govern a partitive genitive: as, *vieler der Fußgänger many of the pedestrians*.

2. *Mehr more* and *weniger less*, comparatives of *viel* and *wenig*, are generally invariable. But *mehr* has a plural, *mehre*, or (irregularly, but much more commonly) *mehrere*, meaning *several, many*.

**193.** *All all.*—1. When it directly precedes the noun it qualifies, *all* is fully declined (like *dieß*, 165); but before a pronominal word (adjectively or substantively used) it may remain unvaried (with a tendency toward the same distinction of collective and distributive meaning that appears in *viel*; see 192.1).

Thus, aller Wetteifer *all zeal*;—alle deine hohen Werke *all thy lofty works*, alle die Tage des Festes *all the days of the festival*, von all dem Glanze *by all the splendor*, bei all diesen Verhältnissen *in view of all these circumstances*.

2. In certain phrases, alle is used instead of all undeclined: thus, bei alle dem *in spite of all that*.

3. The neuter singular alles (like the corresponding case of other pronominal words) is employed in an indefinite way of persons, meaning *every one*: thus, alles nähert sich einander *all draw near to one another*.

4. The plural of all is sometimes used distributively: as, alle Wochen *every week*.

194. Under other is a pronominal word, but not distinguished in its uses from an ordinary adjective.

For noch ein in place of ander, see 198.3c; for ander as ordinal, 203.1a.

195. Ein *one, an, a*, kein *not one, none, no*.—1. The numeral ein *one* is also used as indefinite pronoun (see 198.2), and as article (63).

2. Kein is the negative of ein, and is everywhere declined as the latter would be in the same situation. Like Niemand (186) and nichts (188), it often requires to be taken apart in translating into ein and nicht *not*; e. g. so kein Gesicht sah ich in meinem Leben *such a face I never saw in my life*.

## NUMERALS.

196. Although the numerals do not form in the proper sense a separate part of speech, their peculiarities of form and use are such that they require to be treated as a class by themselves.

197. 1. The fundamental words denoting number, the CARDINAL numerals, are as follows:

1. ein	11. elf	21. ein und zwanzig
2. zwei	12. zwölf	22. zwei und zwanzig
3. drei	13. dreizehn	30. dreißig
4. vier	14. vierzehn	40. vierzig
5. fünf	15. fünfzehn	50. fünfzig
6. sechs	16. sechzehn	60. sechzig
7. sieben	17. siebzehn	70. siebzig
8. acht	18. achtzehn	80. achtzig
9. neun	19. neunzehn	90. neunzig
10. zehn	20. zwanzig	100. hundert
1000. tausend	1,000,000. Million	

2. An older form of *elf* 11, now nearly out of use, is *eilf*. For *fünfzehn* 15, and *fünzig* 50, the less regularly derived forms *funfzehn* and *funfzig* are also in good and approved use. *Siebenzehn* 17 and *siebenzig* 70, instead of the contracted *siebzehn* and *siebzig*, are not infrequent. *Sechzehn* 16 and *sechzig* 60 are abbreviated, for ease of pronunciation, from *sechszehn* and *sechszig*, which may likewise be employed.

3. The odd numbers, between twenty and a hundred, are formed always by prefixing the name of the unit to that of the ten, with *und* *and* interposed: thus, *drei und zwanzig* *three and twenty* (not *zwanzig=drei twenty-three*). With the higher numbers, the odd numbers follow, as in English: thus, *hundert und sieben* 107; *tausend und drei und vierzig* 1043; and the *und* *and* may be dropped, especially when more than two numbers are put together: as, *ein tausend acht hundert neun und sechzig*, or *achtzehn hundert neun und sechzig*, 1869.

4. The higher numbers, *hundert*, *tausend*, *million*, are multiplied by prefixed numbers, as in English: thus, *sechshundert* 600; *drei und achtzig tausend* 83,000. The German says *eine Million* *a million*, as we do; but simply *hundert* *a hundred*, *tausend* *a thousand*: *ein hundert*, *ein tausend*, mean *one hundred*, *one thousand*.

198. *Ein* is the only cardinal number that is fully inflected.

1. If used adjectively, or qualifying a noun expressed, it is (unless preceded by another qualifying word: see 3) declined when numeral in the same manner as when indefinite article (63).

Thus, *ein Mann* *one man* or *a man*, *ein Kind* *one child* or *a child*.

2. When used absolutely, or pronominally, standing for a noun understood, it is declined like *dieß* (165), or an adjective of the first declension (but *eineß* is usually contracted to *einß* in the nom. and acc. neuter).

Thus, *um ein Glied*, *und dann um noch einß länger* *longer by one joint, and then by one more*, *einer von euch* *one of you*, *einer der auf ein Abenteuer ausgeht* *one who goes out upon an adventure*, *von sich zu jagen, was einem lieb ist* *to drive away from one's self what is dear to one!*

3. When preceded by another limiting word (usually the definite article), it is declined as any adjective would be after the same word.

Thus, *der eine sprach* *the one spoke*, *mit dieser einen Irrung* *with this one error*, *auf seinem einen Beine* *on his one leg*.

a. Der eine is often employed where we should say *one* simply; occasionally it forms a plural, die einen *the ones, some*.

b. In numeration, the pronominal neuter, einſ, is used: thus, einſ, zwei, drei *one, two, three*; einmal einſ iſt einſ *once one is one*.

c. Noch ein *one more* is employed instead of ein ander *another*, where simple addition, not difference, is signified: thus, nimm noch ein Goldſtück *take another gold piece* (i. e. in addition to the one you have); but nimm ein andereſ *take another* (i. e. in place of the one you have).

d. In the compound numbers, ein und zwanzig 21, etc., ein is invariable: also, usually, in ein und derſelbe, ein paar, ein wenig, ein halb, etc.: thus, mit ein wenig Waſſer *with a little water*, mit ein paar Schritten *with a few steps*, ein Drittel von ein Halb *a third from a half*.

e. In order to distinguish to the eye ein used as pronoun or numeral from the same word as article, some write it with a capital, Ein; others, with the letters spaced, e i n (the ordinary German equivalent of our *italics*); others, with an accent upon the e, éin: others leave the difference of value to be pointed out by the connection.

f. The neuter einſ is sometimes used in an indefinite way of persons: thus, unſer einſ *one of us*, nun ſag' mir einſ, man ſoll kein Wunder glauben *now let any one tell me we are not to believe in miracles!*

199. Zwei 2 and drei 3 are generally unvaried, but have gen. and dat. plural forms—zweier, zweien; dreier, dreien—which may be used where the case would not otherwise be indicated.

a. For zwei, the old masculine zween (*twain*) and feminine zwo are antiquated, but still occasionally met with: thus, waren mit mir zween Genoſſen *were with me two comrades*, zwo Schwalben ſangen um die Wette *two swallows were singing in emulation*.

b. Beide *both* is often used where we say *two*: thus, meine beiden Brüder *my two brothers*.

200. 1. From the other units and tens, only a dative in en is occasionally formed, when the words are used substantively; or, yet more rarely, from all the units, a nom. and acc. in e (a relic of a former fuller declension)—namely, in certain special uses, as alle Viere *all fours*; or in poetry, to make an additional syllable; or in colloquial and low style.

2. Hundert 100, and tausend 1000, are frequently construed and declined as (neuter) collective substantives. Million (fem.) is regularly and usually so treated.

3. As names of the figures designating them, the numerals are treated as feminine nouns (*Zahl* f. *number* being understood), and take the plural ending *en*, and sometimes *e* in the singular: *ein* forms *die Eins*, *die Einsen*.

201. 1. The cardinal numerals are used in general with equal freedom as substantives and as adjectives: thus, *ein Kind* a child, *eins der Kinder* one of the children, *vier oder fünf solcher Mädchen* four or five of such girls, *wir drei Freunde* we three friends, *unser drei* three of us, etc.

2. For the use of a singular instead of a plural noun of measure after numerals, see 211.2.

202. From the cardinals come, by derivation or composition, all the other classes of numerals, the most important of which are explained below.

203. *Ordinals*. 1. The ordinals are a series of adjective derivatives, formed from the cardinals by the suffixes *t* and *st*: from the numbers 2–19, by adding *t*; from the higher numbers by adding *st*.

Thus, *zweit* second, *neunt* ninth, *sechzehnt* sixteenth, *zwanzigst* twentieth, *hundertst* hundredth, *tausendst* thousandth.

a. But the ordinal of *ein* is *erst* first; *drei* forms irregularly *dritt*, and *acht*, *acht* (instead of *achtt*); *ander* other is sometimes used instead of *zweit* second.

b. Compound numbers add, as in English, the ordinal ending only to their last member: thus, *der zwei und zwanzigste* 22d, *der hundert und erste* 101st, *im achtzehn hundert sieben und achtzigsten Jahre* in the 1887th year.

2. The ordinals are not used predicatively or adverbially and consequently do not appear (except in composition) in their simple undeclined form. They are declined in all respects like other adjectives.

[EXERCISE 13. CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMERALS.]

204. *Multiplicatives*. These are formed by compounding the cardinals with the words *fach* or *fältig*: thus, *einfach* or *ein-*

fältig *simple*, zweifach or zweifältig *double*, zehnfach or zehnfältig *ten-fold*. They are adjectives, and are treated in all respects like other adjectives.

**205. Variatives.** These add *erlei* to the cardinals: thus, *einerlei* of one sort, *dreierlei* of three sorts, *vielerlei* of many sorts. They are used as adjectives (see 415.11), but are incapable of declension.

**206. Iteratives.** These are adverbs, formed by compounding the numeral with *mal* (literally *mark*; hence *repetition*, *time*): thus, *einmal* once, *zehnmal* ten times, *manchmal* many times, *often*.

a. The word *mal* is often written apart from the numeral, sometimes with a capital, as an independent word.

b. As the examples have shown, derivative words of these three classes are formed also from the indefinite numerals.

### 207. Derivatives from the Ordinals.

1. *Dimidiatives* are formed by adding *halb* half to the ordinal as ending in *te* (or *t*), and denote a quantity half a unit less than the corresponding cardinal. Thus, *viertehalb* or *vierhalb* *four less a half* or *three and a half*. They are construed as invariable adjectives.

The implied meaning is, ['the first, second, and third complete; but] *the fourth*, [only] *half*.' Instead of *zweitehalb*  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , *anderthalb*, irregularly formed from *ander* other, in the sense of *second* (203.1a), is in use.

2. *Fractionals* are originally compounds of the ordinals with *Theil* [*Teil*] *part*, but are abbreviated by the contraction of the latter into *tel*, before which the final *t* of the ordinal is dropped: thus, *drittel* (*dritt=tel*, *dritt Theil* [*Teil*]) *third*, *viertel* *quarter*, *zwanzigstel* *twentieth part*.

Instead of *zweitel* *second part* is used only *halb*, *Halbte* *half*.

3. *Ordinal Adverbs* add the ending *enß* to the ordinal theme: thus, *erßtenß* *firstly*, *zwanzigßtenß* *in the twentieth place*.

**208.** Other derivative numeral words it belongs rather to the dictionary than to the grammar to explain.

## USES OF THE FORMS OF DECLENSION.

**209.** The following rules apply only to nouns and to words (pronouns, numerals, adjectives, infinitives: see 113) used as nouns; since the declension of all adjectives and words used adjectively (articles, pronominal adjectives, and participles) is determined by that of the nouns to which they belong, and with which they are made to agree in number, case, and gender.

### NUMBERS.

**210.** The value and use of the numbers are, in general, the same in German as in English.

**211.** 1. This does not exclude minor differences in regard to particular words, which the one language may, in general or in certain connections, use as singular and the other as plural: for example, *3ange* (sing.) *tongs* (pl.), *Blattern* (pl.) *small-pox* (sing.), *auf dem Arm* (sing.) *in the arms*, *Sie* (lit. *they* pl.), *you* (meaning one or more: see 153.4), etc.

2. Masculine and neuter nouns used to express measurement, of extent, quantity, weight, or number, generally stand in the singular instead of the plural after numerals (whether cardinal or indefinite).

Thus, *sie haben sieben bis acht Fuß Länge* *they have seven or eight feet of length*, *zehn Faß Bier* *ten casks of beer*, *wieviel Pfund Zucker* *how many pounds of sugar?* *ein Hülfsheer von zehn tausend Mann* *an auxiliary army of 10,000 men*, *zwanzig Kopf Rinder* *twenty head of cattle*, *drei Zoll breit* *three inches broad*.

But *drei Ellen* (f.) *Tuch* *three yards of cloth*, *fünf Meilen* (f.) *weit* *five miles distant*;—and also *tausend Schritte* (m.) *lang* *1000 paces long*. Respecting the form of the noun expressing the thing measured, see below, 216.5a.

3. In the familiar expressions for the time of day, *Uhr* *hour* is also unvaried after a numeral: thus, *neun Uhr* *nine o'clock*.

### CASES.

#### *Nominative.*

**212.** The proper office of the nominative is to stand as the subject of the sentence: as, *der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt* *man proposes, God disposes*.

Of course, also, a noun in apposition with a subject nominative is put in the nominative; since (111.2) an appositive noun always agrees in case with the noun it explains.

213. 1. With the verb *sein* *to be*, and a few others, of kindred meaning—such as *werden* *become*, *bleiben* *continue*, *heißen* *be called*, *scheinen* *appear*—also, with the passive of verbs that govern a second accusative as objective predicate (227.3b), a noun may be used in the nominative as predicate: (i. e. as, through the verb, describing and qualifying the subject: compare 116.1).

Thus, *mein Bruder ist der Lehrer dieses Knaben* *my brother is this boy's teacher*, *der bleibt ein Narr sein Leben lang* *he (lit. that one) remains a fool his whole life long*, *er wird ein Geizhals gescholten* *he is called reproachfully a miser*.

a. With *werden*, however, the noun is often put in the dative, after the preposition *zu*: as, *da werden Weiber zu Hyänen* *then women become hyenas (turn to hyenas)*.

2. The nominative is sometimes used in apposition and predication relating to a word (usually a pronoun) in an oblique case. Thus, *laß mich dein Freund* (more usually *deinen Freund*) *sein* *let me be thy friend*, *ich sehe sie ein (or einen) Raub der Flammen werden* *I see them become a prey to the flames*, *er nennt mich sein (or seinen) Freund* *he calls me his friend*, *als ich mich einen Fremdling in diesem Kreise sah* (Schiller) *as I saw myself a stranger in this circle*; but *Sie sehen mich ein Raub der Wellen* (Lessing) *you see me a prey to the waves*; so also after *wie* and *als*: thus, *der Ruhm dieses Mannes als beredter Redner* (or *als eines beredten Redners*) *war weit verbreitet* *this man's fame as an eloquent speaker was spread widely abroad*, *always sein Ruhm als Redner* *his fame as orator*, *einem Manne wie Sie kann es nicht an Geld fehlen* (Lessing) *a man like you cannot want for money*.

214. The nominative is used in address (as a “vocative”).

Thus, *holder Friede, süße Eintracht, weilet über dieser Stadt* *lovely Peace! sweet Concord! linger over this city*.

### Genitive.

215. The genitive in German, as in the other related languages, is primarily and especially the adjective or adnominal case, denoting by a form of the noun a variety of relations such as might be expressed by a derivative adjective. As was remarked above (under 158.2), it is in part traceably of adjective origin. But its later uses arise also in part from its being merged with other primitive cases—particularly the ablative, the case representing the *from* relation, of origin or removal—



and assuming their office. To trace all these uses to their origin would require vastly too much of detailed historical discussion, and will not be attempted here.

### 216. *The Genitive with Nouns.*

1. The German genitive is especially the case of a noun that is added to another noun in order to limit or define its meaning.

2. It is used, accordingly, in all the senses in which we use the possessive case of a noun, or a pronominal possessive (*my, your, his, etc.*); also, in most of the senses belonging to a noun connected with another noun by the preposition *of*: thus,

a. As genitive of possession or appurtenance: *das Haus meines Vaters the house of my father, des Mannes Kopf the man's head.*

b. As genitive of origin or cause: *in des Schreckens Bahn in the madness of terror, der Trieb der Großmuth [Großmut] the impulse of magnanimity.*

c. As complement of relation (designating that toward which the relation expressed by the governing noun is sustained): *der Vater des Sohnes the father of the son, des Vaters Sohn the father's son, König dieses Reichs king of this realm.*

d. As partitive genitive (expressing a whole of which the governing noun is a part), in all its varieties: *der Schrecklichste der Schrecken the most terrible of terrors, eins der kleinsten Kinder one of the smallest children, jedes dieser Bedürfnisse each of these needs, allzuviel des Spases quite too much of the joke.*

e. As genitive of material, constitution, or equivalence: *ein Dach schattender Buchen a roof of shady beeches, der Zweige laubiges Gitter the leafy trellis-work of the branches, eine Anzahl schreiender Knaben a number of shouting boys, des Goldes Ströme streams of gold.*

f. As genitive of characteristic: *ein Mann hohen Ranges und großer Tugend a man of high rank and great virtue, ein Hirtenstamm türkischer Abkunft a shepherd-race of Turkish descent.*

g. As subjective genitive (implying an action of which the thing designated by the genitive is the subject): *des Sturmes Gausen the roaring of the storm, der Magnete Hassen und Lieben the hating and loving (attraction and repulsion) of magnets.*

h. As objective genitive (implying an action of which the thing designated by the genitive is the object): *dein Wunsch des Guten thy desire of good, Verbesserer der Welt und des Gesetzes Improver of the World and of the Law.*

The relation of the genitive to its governing noun is so infinitely various that neither the above classification nor any other is exhaustive or peremptory.

3. In these relations, the genitive of a personal pronoun is rarely admitted; but for it is usually substituted a possessive pronominal adjective, qualifying the noun to be limited (158.2).

Exceptions: certain cases of partitives, of genitives followed by a qualifying word, and a few others: as, *unser einer one of us*, *ihrer beiden Eindrücke the impressions of them both*, *ihrer Meister werden to get the better of them*.

4. For the genitive, in all these uses, may be substituted a dative with the preposition *von of*, as in English.

a. The substitution is made, especially, when the expression would otherwise be ambiguous or unclear, from the want of a distinct ending to the genitive, or of a limiting word showing its character: thus, *die Einwohner von Paris the inhabitants of Paris*, *Vater von sechs Kindern father of six children*; but *die Einwohner Berlins the inhabitants of Berlin*, *Vater dieser sechs Kinder father of these six children*;—or, to avoid a succession of several genitives: as, *der Sohn von dem Onkel Kaiser Emanuels the son of the uncle of Emperor Emanuel*. And the construction with *von* is the regular and usual one instead of the genitive of material and of characteristic.

5. a. After nouns signifying measure, of extent, quantity, weight, or number, the noun designating the substance measured, if not preceded by an adjective, is usually put neither in the genitive (partitive genitive), nor in the dative with *von of*, but is treated as indeclinable.

b. Thus, *ein Glas Wein a glass of wine* (i. e., wine, to the extent of one glass), *zwei Pfund Thee two pounds of tea*, *drei Ellen Tuch three yards of cloth*, *einige Buch Papier a few quires of paper*, *große Blätter Rauchgold great sheets of gold-tinsel*;—but, *ein Glas dieses Weins or von diesem Weine a glass of this wine*, *zwei Pfund guten Thees two pounds of good tea*.

c. Exceptions are occasionally met with: thus, *den besten Becher Weins the best goblet of wine*, *300 Centner Goldes 300 cwt. of gold*.

d. By abbreviation, the name of the month is left unvaried after a numeral designating the day: thus, *den neunten Mai the ninth of May*.

6. The genitive, in any of its senses, may be placed either before or after the noun which it limits (as is shown by the exam-

ples given). But its position before the noun, especially if limited by any other word than an article, belongs rather to a higher or poetic style; in plain colloquial prose, the genitive ordinarily follows the noun that governs it. An objective genitive most rarely precedes; and never, if another genitive be dependent on the same noun: thus, *des Königs Wahl eines Ministers* *the king's choice of a minister*.

As in English, the noun preceded by a dependent genitive takes no article: thus, *meines Freundes Herz* *my friend's heart*, but *das Herz meines Freundes* *the heart of my friend*.

### 217. *The Genitive with Adjectives.*

About thirty adjectives (with their corresponding negatives) are followed by a genitive, denoting that in respect of which the action or quality they express is exerted.

Thus, *des Singens müde* *weary of singing*, *würdiger des Rings* *more worthy of the ring*, *eines Sultans unwürdig* *unworthy of a Sultan*, *süßer Erinnerung voll* *full of sweet memories*.

a. These adjectives are mostly such as are followed by *of* in English, although some admit a different construction. Among the commonest of them (besides those already instanced) are *bewußt* *conscious*, *fähig* *capable*, *gewiß* *sure*, *schuldig* *guilty*,  *satt* *sated*, *überdrüssig* *tired*, *voll* *full*. Some of them also are construed with prepositions, and a few (229) even govern an accusative, when used with the verbs *sein* and *werden*.

### 218. *The Genitive with Prepositions.*

About twenty prepositions govern the genitive.

Thus, *wegen seiner Sünde* *on account of his sin*, *während meiner tollen Jagd* *during my mad chase*, *ungeachtet dieser Erklärung* *notwithstanding this explanation*, *statt duftiger Gärten* *instead of fragrant gardens*.

a. The prepositions governing the genitive are mostly of recent derivation from nouns and adjectives. For a list of them, see below, under Prepositions (373).

### 219. *The Genitive as Object of Verbs.*

1. A genitive immediately dependent upon a verb has generally the office of a remoter object, further qualifying the action of the verb upon its nearer personal object.

2. A number of transitive verbs govern a genitive in addition to their direct object, the accusative.

a. These are verbs of removing, depriving, accusing, convicting, admonishing, assuring, and the like, and one or two others (*mürdigen esteem worthy, verträsten console*).

Thus, er klagt den Diener des Diebstahls an *he accuses the servant of theft*, er hat uns einer großen Furcht entledigt *he has rid us of a great fear*, er beraubt den Unglücklichen der Hoffnung *he robs the wretched man of hope*.

3. A number of reflexive verbs admit a genitive in addition to their reflexive object.

a. These verbs are of too various meaning to admit of classification. Some of them may be rendered in English either by a construction resembling the German, or as simple transitive verbs taking a genitive as direct object: thus, freue dich deiner Jugend *rejoice thyself of (enjoy) thy youth*, er entsinnt sich jedes Wortes *he bethinks himself of (recollects) every word*, sich gefährlicher Waffen bedienen *to serve one's self with (employ) dangerous weapons*;—others, only in the latter method: thus, mit Eifer hab' ich mich der Studien beflissen *zealously have I pursued my studies*, deiner heiligen Zeichen, o Wahrheit, hat der Betrug sich anmaßt *thy holy signs, O Truth! has deceit usurped*.

4. A few impersonal verbs take a genitive of the object, with an accusative of the subject, of the feeling they represent.

a. They are erbarmen *pity*, gelüsten *long*, jammern *grieve*, reuen or gereuen *rue*: thus, mich erbarmt seines Elends *I pity his misery*.

5. A number of verbs may take a genitive only (corresponding to a direct object in English).

The commonest of these are achten *regard*, bedürfen *need*, brauchen *use*, denken *think of*, entbehren *do without*, ermangeln *lack*, erwähnen *mention*, gedenken *remember*, genießen *enjoy*, geschweigen *keep silence about*, harren *await*, hüten *guard*, lachen *laugh at*, pflegen *nurse*, schonen *spare*, spotten *mock*, verfehlen *miss*, vergessen *forget*, wahrnehmen *perceive*, warten *wait for*.

Thus, er achtete nicht der warmen Sonne *he heeded not the warm sun*, es bedarf der Annahme nicht *it needs not the assumption*, andrer Frevel nicht zu gedenken *not to mention other atrocities*, laß mich der neuen Freiheit genießen *let me enjoy the new freedom*, jedes Leiden vergeßend *forgetting every trial*, ihr spottet mein *ye mock me*, wo ich deiner warte *where I wait for thee*.

6. Many of the verbs in these various classes may take instead of the genitive an accusative, or else a noun governed by a preposition: for example, all the impersonals, and all but two

(ermangeln and geschmeigen) of the last class. The construction with the genitive is an older one, which has for some time been going gradually out of use, and is now mainly antiquated or poetic: thus, diese Freiheit, die ich jetzt genieße *this liberty which I now enjoy*, denen, auf die die ewige Freiheit wartet *to those for whom eternal freedom is waiting*, er freut sich über sein Glück *he rejoices at his good fortune*.

## 220. Other uses of the Genitive.

1. The genitive of a noun is often used in an adverbial sense, especially (with or without a limiting adjective) to denote time; also (with adjective) not infrequently manner, more rarely place.

Thus, eines Tages im Lenze *one day in spring*, des Winters sind wir wie vergraben in dem Schnee *in the winter we are, as it were, buried up in the snow*, die Wolken, die Morgens und Abends über ihn hin segelten *the clouds which sailed along over him of a morning and evening*, er schlürft langen Halses *he sips with outstretched neck*, hörst du's klingen mächtigen Rufes *dost thou hear it ring with mighty sound?* ich ermahnte ihn alles Ernstes *I admonished him in all seriousness*, sachte schleich' ich meiner Wege *I softly steal off on my way*.

a. A large number of adverbs are, by origin, genitives of nouns or adjectives, or of a noun and a limiting word which have grown together by familiar use: see 363-5.

2. A genitive is sometimes used with a verb (especially sein and werden) in the sense of a predicative adjective, or as predicate genitive: thus, sie waren munter und guter Dinge *they were merry and of good cheer*, die waren oft nicht so groß, oder gleichen Alters mit ihm *they were often not so big, or of equal age with him*, alle werden auf einmal eines Sinnes *all become suddenly of one mind*, ich bin Willens *I am of a mind*.

a. The genitive in this construction is allied with the genitive of characteristic (216.2f).

3. By a construction formerly not rare, but now little used, a partitive genitive is used with verbs: thus, er trank des Baches *he drank of the brook*, sie brachte des klaren herrlichen Weines *she brought of the clear excellent wine*.

4. Yet more unusual are cases of the occurrence of a possessive genitive and of a genitive of origin with verbs: thus, thue was deines Amtes ist *do what belongs to (is of) thy office*, Hungers sterben *to die of hunger*.

5. A genitive is sometimes used with an interjection, to signify the thing which is the occasion of the exclamation: thus, *ach des Unglücks* *alas for the mishap* (see 392).

### *Dative.*

**221.** 1. The dative is originally and properly the case of the indirect personal object, designating the person or persons with reference to whom, or as affecting whom, anything is or is done—a relation which is ordinarily (though not always) expressed in English by the preposition *to* or *for*. In this sense, the dative in German is usually the adjunct of a verb, much less often of an adjective, very rarely of a noun.

2. The dative has also inherited the offices of primitive cases, now lost; especially of the instrumental, expressing the *with* or *by* relation, and the locative, expressing the *in* relation. In these senses, it is ordinarily governed by prepositions.

### **222.** *The Dative with Verbs.*

The dative, in German, is most often the indirect personal object of a verb.

*a.* It is thus doubly contrasted in office with the genitive: the latter usually limits a noun; and, as indirect object, it is prevalently not personal: thus, *ich versichere ihn einer Sache* *I assure him of a matter*, but *ich versichere ihm eine Sache* *I assure (vouch for) a matter to him*; *ich beraube ihn seines Geldes* *I rob him of his money*, but *ich raube ihm sein Geld* *I steal from him his money*.

*b.* The connection of the dative with the action of the verb is of every degree of closeness, from constituting its essential or necessary complement to indicating a mere incidental interest in its action: thus, *er bot mir die Hand* *he offered me his hand*, *ich legte es ihm auf den Tisch* *I laid it on the table for him*.

**I.** 1. A large number of transitive verbs take, along with the accusative, a dative as more or less necessary complement of their action. Such are

*a.* Many simple verbs, especially such as denote a bringing near or removing, a giving or taking, imparting, commanding, permitting or refusing, and the like.

Thus, *er brachte den Ring der Alten* *he brought the ring to the old woman*, *ich schreibe meinem Vater einen Brief* *I write my father a letter*, *man erlaubt alles einem Freunde* *one permits a friend anything*.

*b.* Many verbs compounded with inseparable or separable prefixes, especially *ent*, *er*, *ver*, and *auf*, *ab*, *bei*, *nach*, *vor*, *zu*.

Thus, er vermacht den Ring dem liebsten seiner Söhne *he makes over the ring to the dearest of his sons*, er wollte ihm die Krone aufsetzen *he wished to set the crown on his head*, sie mußte ihm die Jungfrau zusagen *she had to promise him the girl*.

c. A few verbs that require a reflexive object in the dative, forming a class of improper reflexives (290): thus, ich habe mir Beifall verdient *I have earned myself applause*.

d. A few verbs compounded with adjectives, or verb-phrases akin with such: e. g., mahrsagen *prophecy*, kund machen *make known*.

2. In the passive of these verbs, where the object-accusative becomes a subject-nominative, the dative remains as sole object: thus, der Ring wurde der Alten gebracht *the ring was brought to the old woman*, es wird mir kund gemacht *it is made known to me*.

3. As the examples have shown, the English also often uses its objective without a preposition (when placed next the verb) in a dative sense. In other cases, it expresses the dative relation by prepositions, especially *to*. But, where the verb implies removal, the dative frequently answers to our objective with *from*.

Thus, nimm meiner Rede jeden Stachel *take from my words all sting*, es stahl mir das Leben *it stole my life from me*, es deinem Mitleid zu entziehen *to withdraw it from thy compassion*, er soll mir nicht lebendig gehen *he shall not get away from me alive*.

a. The same is true of the dative after intransitive verbs: see below.

4. Either the direct or indirect object may often be omitted, and the verb used with the other alone: thus, einem ein Buch vorlesen *to read a book aloud to some one*, ein Buch vorlesen *to read a book aloud*, einem vorlesen *to read aloud to some one*; also, simply vorlesen *to read aloud, lecture*.

## II. 1. Many verbs take a dative as their sole object.

These, as not admitting an accusative, are reckoned as intransitive; but many of them correspond to verbs which in English are looked upon as transitive (227.1a, b).

a. A number of simple verbs, together with a few that have the inseparable prefixes *be*, *ge*, *er*; also, the contraries of several of them, formed with the prefix *miß*.

The commonest of these are antworten *answer*, danken *thank*, dienen *serve*, drohen *threaten*, fluchen *curse*, folgen *follow*, helfen



*help*, *ſchaden harm*, *ſchmeicheln flatter*, *trogen defy*, *trauen trust*, *wehren control*, *begegnen meet*, *gefallen please*, *gehörchen obey*, *erwidern answer*.

Thus, *ſeid ihr ihnen nicht begegnet* *did you not meet them?* *folgt durch den Aether dem Strahl* *follows the beam of light through the ether*, *wie's ihnen gefällt* *as it pleases them*, *wenn es mir nicht mißfiel* *if it did not displease me*, *kann es dir nicht ſchaden* *can it not harm thee?* *helft mir* *help me!* *den Räumen und Zeiten zu trogen* *to defy space and time*.

b. A large number of verbs compounded with the inseparable prefix *ent*, and with the prepositions *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *auß*, *bei*, *ein*, *entgegen*, *nach*, *unter*, *vor*, *wider*, *zu*; deriving their power to take the dative object from the modification of meaning given by the prefix.

Thus, *die Schwerter entſliegen der Scheide* *the swords leap from the scabbard*, *viele ſtimmten dieſer Anſicht bei* *many acceded to this view*, *kommt einer ihm entgegen* *if one comes to meet him*, *um ähnlichen Ereigniſſen vorzubeugen* *in order to avoid such occurrences*, *welcher den Gefechten zuſah* *who was looking on at the contests*.

The meaning added by the prefix is, as the examples show, to be very variously rendered in English.

c. A number of verbs compounded with nouns, adverbs, and adjectives; also, of verbal phrases akin with such.

Thus, *daß ſein Geſang ſeinem Kleide gleichkommen müſſe* *that his song must correspond with his attire*, *er eilte ſeinem Vater zu Hülfe* *he hastened to the help of his father*, *es thut mir leid* *it pains me*, *er macht dieſer Dame den Hof* *he is paying court to this lady*, *es ward ihm zu Theil [Teil]* *it was granted him (fell to his share)*.

d. *Werden become* is sometimes used alone with a (possessive) dative in the sense of *zu Theil [Teil] werden*: thus, *dazu ward dem Menſchen der Verſtand* *for that end was understanding given to man (became his)*. Quite rarely, such a possessive dative follows *ſein*: as, *es iſt ihm* *it is his (belongs to him)*.

e. A few impersonal verbs, or verbs used impersonally, take a dative designating the subject of the feeling or condition they express: thus, *es graut mir* *I am horrified*, *ihm ſchwindelt* *he turns giddy*. Some of these take also the accusative.

f. Also *ſein*, *werden*, and *gehen* or *ergehen*, with adverbial adjuncts, are frequently thus used impersonally with the dative (292.4): thus, *ihm war bange* *he was in anxiety*, *mir wird ſo wohl*



*so pleasant a feeling is coming over me, wie iſt mir denn how is it then with me? dem iſt ſo the case is thus (it is thus with regard to that).*

2. Of the intransitive verbs governing the dative, a part—especially those that denote an action proceeding from a person—may form an impersonal passive governing the same case (see 279.2).

Thus, *eſ ward mir hart begegnet I have been harshly dealt with (met), eſ wurde ihm geholfen he was helped.*

III. In a looser and less strictly dependent construction—as denoting the person (or thing) in behalf of whom, or as affecting whom, anything is or is done, the dative (“dative of interest”) is used so freely, and with so many verbs, that to attempt giving rules for its occurrence would be useless. Only one or two points call for special notice.

a. A dative grammatically dependent on the verb is often used instead of a possessive genitive qualifying a noun in the sentence: thus, *dem Diener um den Hals fallend falling upon the servant's neck, leget den Miöllner der Maid in den Schooß lay Miöllner in the maid's lap.*

b. This is especially common with the personal pronouns: thus, *eſ blickt auß den Augen ihm fühn a daring look beams from his eyes* (see 161).

c. The personal pronoun is sometimes thus used in a manner that seems to us expletive: thus, *ſieh mir ob ſie kommen see (for me) whether they are coming* (compare 156).

IV. For the dative dependent upon a verb, in all its varieties (but not with all verbs: especially not with those which take the dative after the manner of a direct object, II.1a), is sometimes substituted a case governed by a preposition (as *zu to, für for, von from*). This substitution is notably more frequent with a noun than with a personal pronoun; a dative of the latter is often used where one of the former would make a harsh or forced construction.

### 223. *The Dative with Adjectives.*

1. The construction of the dative with adjectives is analogous to its construction with verbs. Some adjectives call for the case as their essential or natural defining complement; others admit it in a looser relation, after the manner of a “dative of interest” (above, 222.III.).

2. Adjectives taking the dative as their more essential complement are especially those that signify nearness or remoteness, likeness or unlikeness, suitableness, property, inclination, advantage or disadvantage, and the like. Usually, they require in English the preposition *to* before a noun limiting them.

Thus, *wie nah* fühl' ich mich dir *how near I feel myself to thee!*  
 dem Ackerbau fremd *strangers to agriculture*, Wolken gleich Fittigen  
*clouds like wings*, einen ihm eigenen Werth *a value peculiar to it*,  
 eine Seele, die der That nicht gewachsen ist *a soul that is not equal to the deed*,  
 ein mir unverhofftes Glück *a happiness un hoped for by me*.

3. Participles of verbs governing the dative admit a complement in the same case, in analogy with the uses of the verbs from which they come, and according to their own character as active, passive, or neuter participles.

4. Verbal derivatives in *bar* and *lich*, signifying possibility, take a dative of the person whom the possibility concerns: thus, *mir begreiflich* *comprehensible to me*, *dem Menschen unbewohnbar* *uninhabitable by man*.

5. Almost any adjective qualified by *zu* *too* or *genug* *sufficiently*, *enough* admits an adjunct in the dative: thus, *das Kleid ist mir zu lang*, *ihm aber nicht lang genug* *the garment is too long for me, but not long enough for him*.

6. Many adjectives admit a dative adjunct more readily, or only, when used with a verb, either predicatively or forming a more or less closely compounded verbal phrase: thus, *das ist mir recht* *that suits me (seems to me right)*, *das wird dem Knaben schwer* *that grows hard for the boy*.

For such phrases, with transitive, intransitive, and impersonal verbs, see above, 222.I.1d, II.1c,f.

7. For the dative with an adjective, also, is often used a case governed by a preposition (especially *von* *from*, *für* *for*).

## 224. The Dative with Prepositions.

1. About twenty prepositions govern the dative.

For the list of them, see under Prepositions (374).

2. Nine prepositions govern the dative when the relation expressed is that of situation or locality; but the accusative, when motion or tendency toward anything is implied.

These are *an*, *auf*, *hinter*, *in*, *neben*, *über*, *unter*, *vor*, *zwischen* (see 376).

### 225. *The Dative in other constructions.*

1. The use of the dative as a virtual possessive genitive, grammatically dependent on a verb, but logically, or according to its real meaning, qualifying a noun, has been explained above (222.III.a,b). Rarely, the dative is found having the same value with a noun alone: as, *dem Riesen zur Lust* *for the giant's pleasure* (*for a pleasure to the giant*), *er gab, ihm zu Ehren, manche Feste* *he gave many festivals in his honor*. Yet more rarely, it occurs with a noun in other relations usually expressed by a genitive, or with the aid of a preposition: as, *ein Muster Bürgern und Bauern* *a model for citizens and peasants*, *Gewißheit einem neuen Bunde* *assurance of a new covenant*.

2. The dative sometimes follows a noun in exclamatory phrases (as if the imperative of *sein* *to be* were understood): thus, *dem Buben und dem Knecht die Acht* *outlawry to the villain and flunkey!* *Freude dem Sterblichen* *joy to the mortal!* Some words habitually employed as exclamations are also followed by a dative signifying the person toward whom the feeling expressed by the exclamation is directed: such are *wohl*, *Heil*, *Weh*, and the like (see 392).

### ACCUSATIVE.

226. The relations of the accusative are more simple than those of the other oblique cases. Its proper office is to stand as direct object of a verbal action; and also, in the relation, most nearly akin with the former, of the goal of motion; but this it has in German only in part. The German uses it also as the case absolute.

### 227. *The Accusative with Verbs.*

1. The accusative is especially the case belonging to the direct object of a transitive verb: as, *ich sehe den Mann*; *er trägt einen Hut* *I see the man; he wears a hat*.

a. And a transitive verb, on the other hand, is one that takes a direct object in the accusative. The classification of verbs as transitive and intransitive is in part formal rather than logical (i. e. a matter of usage, and not of essential meaning), and—

b. Some verbs which in English are regarded as transitive take in German the genitive (219.5) or the dative (222. II.1), and therefore belong to the class of intransitives. Again, some verbs which to us are intransitive are in German, uniformly or occasionally, transitive: as, *ihr habt mich sprechen wollen* *you have desired to speak to me*.

2. The accusative is also sometimes used as the object of a verb properly intransitive.

a. Some verbs may be followed by an accusative of meaning akin with their own, or signifying a substantive idea which they themselves virtually involve ("cognate accusative").

Thus, wir sterben hier den Tod der Freien *we die here the death of the free*, betet einen frommen Spruch *pray a pious phrase*, sie schläft den letzten Schlaf *she sleeps the last sleep*.

b. By a pregnant construction, an intransitive may be followed by an accusative of that which is effected or made to appear by the action it designates: thus, tönt die Glocke Grabgesang *the bell tolls a funeral hymn*, was grindest du mir her *what grinnest thou at me (what does thy grinning signify)?*—or by an accusative and an adjective or other equivalent expression as objective predicate, signifying the condition into which that which is designated by the accusative is brought by the action described by the verb: thus, sich halb tot [tot] lachen *to laugh one's self half dead*, ich träum' als Kind mich zurücke *I dream myself back into childhood (as child)*, du wirst die Wächter aus dem Schlafe schreien *thou wilt scream the guards out of sleep*.

c. Some impersonal verbs, denoting a personal condition or state of feeling, take an accusative signifying the person affected: thus, es lüftet keinen, euer Mann zu werden *no one desires to become your husband*, mich hungert *I am hungry*. See 294.

With these are included also dünken, dünken [denken] *seem* (the only verbs in which a like construction still appears in English): thus, mich dünkt *methinks*, mich dünkte [denkte] *methought* (292.2). These (and some of the others also) admit a dative instead of an accusative object (222.II.1e).

d. For the accusative after sein or werden with certain adjectives, see below (229).

3. A few transitive verbs govern two accusatives: namely—

a. Lehren *teach* takes an accusative of the thing taught together with an accusative (or sometimes a dative) of the person to whom it is taught: thus, ich lehre ihn (or ihm) die Musik *I teach him music*. Fragen *ask* and bitten *beg* also sometimes add to their personal object a pronominal accusative of the thing desired: thus, ich bitte dich nur dies *I beg of thee only this*.

b. Heißen and nennen *call, name*, schimpfen and schelten *call by way of reproach*, and taufen *christen*, which add to their personal object a second accusative as objective predicate, denoting the

name or title given: thus, *ich will alles eine Schöpfung nennen* *I will call the whole a work of destiny*, *er schimpfte seinen Gegner einen Narren* *he reviled his adversary as a fool*.

c. A noun in the accusative as objective predicate now and then appears with other verbs—as, *so glaube jeder seinen Ring den echten* *then let each believe his own ring the genuine one*; but this construction is generally avoided by the use of a different expression: as, *man macht or wählt ihn zum König* *they make, or choose, him king (for king)*, *ich halte ihn für meinen Freund* *I deem him my friend*, *ich kenne ihn als einen Ehrenmann* *I know him a man of honor*.

### 228. *The Accusative with Prepositions.*

1. Eight prepositions always govern the accusative.

They are *biß, durch, für, gegen or gen, ohne, sonder, um, wider* (see 375).

2. Nine prepositions are followed by the accusative when they indicate motion or tendency toward; otherwise, by the dative.

They are *an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen* (see 376).

### 229. *The Accusative with Adjectives.*

A few adjectives, when used predicatively with *sein* or *werden* (especially the latter), may take an object in the accusative.

They are *ansichtig, bewußt, gewahr, gewohnt, los, müde, satt, überdrüssig, zufrieden*: thus, *die Geister werd' ich nun nicht los* *I cannot now get rid of the spirits*, *ich wär' es zufrieden* *I should be content with it*, *wenn wir nicht sein Eingreifen gewahr würden* *if we did not feel its taking hold*.

This anomalous construction is of quite modern origin, and in part owing to a misapprehension of the old genitive *es* as an accusative. It is easier with a pronoun than with a noun as object, and in the case of *zufrieden* *contented* is limited to a pronoun. The governing force belongs to the combination of adjective and verb (compare 223.6).

### 230. *The Accusative in absolute construction.*

1. The accusative is used absolutely (that is, as adverbial adjunct of a verb or adjective, but not properly governed by them) to express measure—whether of duration of time, of extent of space, of weight, of value, or of number.

Thus, er hörte einen Augenblick *he listened for a moment*, an die ich viele Jahre nicht gedacht *of which I have not thought for many years*, man hatte sie nur wenige Tage vorher gesehen *they had been seen only a few days before*, zwanzig Jahre her *twenty years since*, als sie eine gute Strecke fortgegangen waren *when they had gone on a good piece*, eine halbe Stunde vor dem Schloß *half a league outside the castle*, acht Morgen tief *eight furlongs deep*, es wiegt ein Pfund *it weighs a pound*, das kostet zwei Thaler *that costs two dollars*, ein Heer 300,000 Mann stark *an army 300,000 men strong*.

a. To an accusative expressing duration of time is often added the adverb *lang long*: as, er lag sieben Jahre lang *he lay for seven years*, den ganzen Tag lang *the whole day long*;—less often other adverbs: as, das ganze Jahr durch *the whole year through*, diese Zeit über *all this time*.

b. By a similar construction, an adverb of direction or motion is very frequently added to an accusative of space, in such way as almost to have the value of a preposition governing it: thus, die Treppen herunter *down the stairs*, den Berg hinan *up the mountain*, den Weg am Bach hinauf *up the path by the brook*, den ganzen Corso hin und wieder *through the whole Corso and back*.

2. The accusative is also used to express the time of occurrence ("time when").

Thus, das geschah jedes Jahr *that happened every year*, den Abend beim Tanze *that evening at the dance*, er sieht die Welt kaum einen Feiertag *he sees the world only on a holiday*.

a. This use of the accusative borders on that of the adverbial genitive (220.1): but the accusative has the more definite meaning, and cannot be used without a defining adjunct: thus, Abends, des Abends *of an evening, in the evening* (now and then, or habitually); but diesen Abend *this evening*, letzten Abend *last evening*, and so on.

3. a. A noun in the accusative is sometimes used absolutely, with an adjunct (prepositional or adjective), to express an accompanying or characterizing circumstance—as if governed by *with* or *having* understood.

Thus, die Mütter erschienen, den Säugling im Arme *the mothers appeared, (with) their infants in their arms*, andere fliehen, wilde Angst im funkelnden Auge *others fly, wild terror in their flashing eyes*.

b. This is especially usual with a participle as adjunct of the noun: thus, winkt uns, die Fackel umgewandt *beckons to us, with*

*torch inverted*, man gewöhnt es, den Kopf gegen den Corso gerichtet, still zu stehen *it is trained to stand still, (having) the head directed toward the Corso*, selbst Kranke nicht ausgenommen *even sick persons not excepted*.

c. Allied with this is the so-called imperative use of the participle (see 359.3).

## CONJUGATION.

**231.** Conjugation is variation for mode, tense, number, and person.

Only verbs are conjugated: hence, the subject of conjugation is coincident with that of verbal inflection.

## VERBS.

**232.** The essential characteristic of a verb is that it predicates or asserts something of a subject: that is to say, it ascribes some action, or state, or quality, to some being or thing expressed by a noun or pronoun.

This predication or ascription is not always direct and positive; it may be contingent, inquiring, or optative: compare 427.

**233.** Verbs are variously classified.

1. They are divided into TRANSITIVE and INTRANSITIVE, according to the nature of the relation they sustain to a noun representing the object of their action: a verb that admits an object in the accusative is called transitive; otherwise, intransitive.

Thus, transitive verbs, *ich lobe ihn I praise him*, *er schlägt mich he strikes me*;—intransitive, *ich stehe*, *er fällt I stand, he falls*, *er schonet seines Feindes he spares his enemy*, *ich danke Ihnen I thank you*.

a. That the distinction of transitive and intransitive is in part formal rather than essential, has been pointed out above (227.1a,b): practically, however, it is one of importance.

2. Under these classes are distinguished—

a. REFLEXIVE verbs, which take an object designating the same person or thing with their subject.

b. IMPERSONAL verbs, used only in the third person singular, and either with an indefinite subject or without an expressed subject.

3. Transitive verbs, again, form by the help of an auxiliary verb a **PASSIVE VOICE**, denoting the suffering of an action, and taking as its subject what was the object of the transitive verb: which latter, by contrast with the other, is said to be of the **ACTIVE VOICE**.

4. Nearly all verbs, moreover, admit of being compounded with certain prefixes, of a prepositional character; with reference to such composition, therefore, they are distinguished as **SIMPLE** and **COMPOUND**.

**234.** The general rules of conjugation apply alike to all verbs, of whatever class they may be. They will be first stated and illustrated in their application to simple personal verbs in the active voice.

#### SIMPLE FORMS OF THE VERB.

**235.** The German verb has the same simple forms as the English, namely:

1. Two *tenses*, the **PRESENT**, and the **PRETERIT**, or indefinite past.

*a.* The value and use of these tenses nearly correspond in the two languages. But the present is sometimes employed in place of our perfect, or our future; and the limits of the preterit and the perfect are also not precisely the same in both: see **324** etc.

2. These tenses are formed each in two *modes*, the **INDICATIVE** and the **SUBJUNCTIVE**.

*a.* The subjunctive is nearly extinct in English: the German subjunctive is employed sometimes for our potential and conditional; others of its uses have no correspondent in English: see **329** etc.

*b.* The rendering of the subjunctive tenses in the paradigms, therefore, by *may* and *might* is only conventional, and for the sake of uniformity; such rendering gives but one of their various meanings.

3. Each tense is declined in two *numbers*, with three *persons* in each number, as in English.

4. Of an **IMPERATIVE** mode there are two persons, the second singular and the second plural.

5. An **INFINITIVE**, or verbal noun (**339**).



6. Two PARTICIPLES, or verbal adjectives (349): one present and active; the other past, and prevailingly passive.

a. The infinitive and participles are not proper verbal forms, since they contain no idea of predication. They present the verbal idea in the condition of noun and of adjective respectively; but, as regards their adjuncts, they share in the construction of their corresponding verbal forms: see 348 and 357.

## 236. Examples:

### 1. lieben *love* (root, lieb).

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
			<i>Present.</i>		
PERS.	SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.		
1	ich liebe	<i>I love</i>	ich liebe	<i>I may love</i>	
2	du liebst	<i>thou lovest</i>	du liebest	<i>thou mayest love</i>	
3	er liebt	<i>he loves</i>	er liebe	<i>he may love</i>	
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
1	mir lieben	<i>we love</i>	mir lieben	<i>we may love</i>	
2	ihr liebt	<i>ye love</i>	ihr liebet	<i>ye may love</i>	
3	sie lieben	<i>they love</i>	sie lieben	<i>they may love</i>	
<i>Preterit.</i>					
SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
1	ich liebte	<i>I loved</i>	ich liebte, =bete	<i>I might love</i>	
2	du liebtest	<i>thou lovedst</i>	du liebtest, =betest	<i>thou mightest love</i>	
3	er liebte	<i>he loved</i>	er liebte, =bete	<i>he might love</i>	
PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
1	mir liebten	<i>we loved</i>	mir liebten, =beten	<i>we might love</i>	
2	ihr liebtet	<i>ye loved</i>	ihr liebtet, =betet	<i>ye might love</i>	
3	sie liebten	<i>they loved</i>	sie liebten, =beten	<i>they might love</i>	
IMPERATIVE.					
SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
2	liebe, liebe du <i>love thou</i>		liebt, liebt ihr <i>love ye</i>		
INFINITIVE.					
lieben			to love		
PARTICIPLES.					
<i>Present.</i>			<i>Past.</i>		
liebend <i>loving</i>			geliebt <i>loved</i>		

*Remarks.* 1. This verb illustrates the mode of inflection of verbs of the New or weak conjugation, corresponding with what are wont to be called "regular verbs" in English. The special rules concerning the inflection of such verbs are given below: see 246 etc.

2. The forms *liebest* and *liebet* may be used also in the present indicative and the imperative, as well as *liebete* etc. in the preterit indicative, and *geliebet* in the past participle: see below, 237.3.c.

2. *geben* *give* (root, *geb*).

#### INDICATIVE.

##### *Present.*

##### SINGULAR.

1	ich gebe	<i>I give</i>
2	du giebst, gibst	<i>thou givest</i>
3	er giebt, gibt	<i>he gives</i>

##### PLURAL.

1	mir geben	<i>we give</i>
2	ihr gebt	<i>ye give</i>
3	sie geben	<i>they give</i>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

##### SINGULAR.

ich gebe	<i>I may give</i>
du gebest	<i>thou mayest give</i>
er gebe	<i>he may give</i>

##### PLURAL.

mir geben	<i>we may give</i>
ihr gebet	<i>ye may give</i>
sie geben	<i>they may give</i>

##### *Preterit.*

##### SINGULAR.

1	ich gab	<i>I gave</i>
2	du gabst	<i>thou gavest</i>
3	er gab	<i>he gave</i>

##### SINGULAR.

ich gäbe	<i>I might give</i>
du gäbest	<i>thou mightest give</i>
er gäbe	<i>he might give</i>

##### PLURAL.

1	mir gaben	<i>we gave</i>
2	ihr gabt	<i>ye gave</i>
3	sie gaben	<i>they gave</i>

##### PLURAL.

mir gäben	<i>we might give</i>
ihr gäbet	<i>ye might give</i>
sie gäben	<i>they might give</i>

#### IMPERATIVE.

##### SINGULAR.

2	gieb, gib du	<i>give thou</i>
---	--------------	------------------

##### PLURAL.

gebt, gebt ihr	<i>give ye</i>
----------------	----------------

#### INFINITIVE.

geben	<i>to give</i>
-------	----------------

#### PARTICIPLES.

##### *Present.*

gebend	<i>giving</i>
--------	---------------

##### *Past.*

gegeben	<i>given</i>
---------	--------------

*Remarks.* 1. This verb illustrates the mode of inflection of verbs of the Old or strong conjugation, corresponding with what are wont to be called "irregular verbs" in English. The special rules concerning the inflection of such verbs are given below: see 261 etc.

2. The forms *gebet, gäbeſt, gäbet* (for *gebt, gäbſt, gäbt*) are occasionally met with; also *gäbſt, gäbt* (for *gäbeſt, gäbet*). For the double forms *giebſt, gibſt*, etc., see 268.1b.

### 237. General Rules respecting the Simple Forms of the Verb.

1. Of the forms thus given, three are called the **PRINCIPAL PARTS**, because, when they are known, all the others can be inferred from them: these are the *infinitive*, the 1st pers. sing. *preterit*, and the past *participle*: thus, *lieben, liebte, geliebt*; *geben, gab, gegeben*.

a. The infinitive always ends in *n*, and almost always in *en*. The rejection of this *n* or *en* gives us the **ROOT** (393b) of the verb.

Not ending in *en* are only *ſein be, thun do*, and infinitives from roots of more than one syllable ending in *l* or *r*, as *mandeln walk, wandern wander*.

b. There are, as the examples show, two ways of forming the preterit and past participle: the preterit adding *ete* or *te* to the root, or else adding nothing, but changing the radical vowel; the participle taking the ending *et* or *t*, or else *en* or *n*. According to these differences, verbs are divided into two conjugations (see below, 245).

2. The endings of tense inflection are

first pers. singular, <i>e</i> , —	first pers. plural, <i>en, n</i>
second pers. " <i>eſt, ſt, e</i> , —	second pers. " <i>et, t</i>
third pers. " <i>et, t, e</i> , —	third pers. " <i>en, n</i>

The rules for their use are as follows:

a. The first persons pres. indicative and subjunctive are the same, and formed by adding *e* to the simple root.

Exceptions are only *bin am*, *ſei may be*, and the pres. indicative of the modal auxiliaries (see 251.3), and *wiſſen know* (260).

b. The first (and third) pers. singular of the preterit subjunctive, and of the preterit indicative except in verbs of the Old or strong conjugation (269.I.1), also end in *e*.

3. a. The third pers. sing. pres. indicative has the ending *t* or *et* (our *th*, *s* in *loveth*, *loves*): in all the other tenses, the third person is like the first.

Exceptions: without the ending *t* are only the modal auxiliaries (see 251.3), and a few other verbs (268.5).\*

b. The ending of all second persons singular (except in the imperative) is *st* or *est* (our *st* in *lovest*); of all first and third persons plural (excepting only *find are*), *en* or *n*; of all second persons plural (with the single exception *seid are*) *et* or *t*.

c. The retention or rejection of the vowel *e* of the endings *est*, *et* (also of *e* before the *te* forming the preterit of one conjugation) depends partly on euphony, partly on arbitrary choice. The *e* must always be used when the final letter of the root is such that the consonant of the ending would not otherwise be distinctly heard—thus, we may say *liebest* or *liebst*, but only *liefeſt readest*, *tanzeſt danceſt*; *liebt* or *liebet*, but only *bittet begs*, *redet talks*—also, when a harsh or unpronounceable combination of consonants would otherwise occur—thus, only *athmeſt [atmeſt]*, *athmet [atmet] breatheſt, breathes*; *ſegneſt, ſegnet blesseſt, blesses*. In other cases, the writer or speaker is allowed to choose between the fuller and the briefer form; the latter being more familiar or colloquial, the former more used in stately and solemn styles. But the *e* is more often retained in the subjunctive, and especially when the distinction of subjunctive and indicative depends upon it.

The *e* of the ending *en* of the first and third persons plural is rarely dropped except after unaccented *er* or *el*, in the indicative.

Special rules affecting some of the forms of the Old or strong conjugation will be given below (268–9).

d. The final unaccented *e* of all verbal forms (as of all other words in the language) is not unfrequently cut off, especially in poetry, and in colloquial style. An apostrophe should always be used, to show the omission; but this is sometimes neglected.

4. The inflection of the tenses is always regular, except in the second and third persons singular of the pres. indicative, which often show a difference of vowel or of consonant, or both, from the other persons of the

tense. The same irregularities appear in part also in the imperative singular (see 268, 270).

5. The imperative singular ends in *e* in nearly all verbs (for exceptions, see 270.2); the plural is the same with the second pers. pl. indic. present. Both numbers admit of use, as in English, either with or without a subject pronoun.

For the filling up of the imperative with subjunctive forms, see 243.1.

6. The form of the present participle may always be found by adding *nd* to the infinitive.

Only *thun do* and *sein be* form *thuend*, *seiend*.

7. The past participle has usually the prefix *ge*. For exceptions, see 243.3.

8. Notice that the third pers. plural of all verbal forms is used also in the sense of a second person, singular or plural (see 153.4), its subject *sie* being then written with a capital: thus, *Sie lieben you love*, *Sie gaben you gave*.

#### (EXERCISE 14. SIMPLE FORMS OF THE VERB.)

#### COMPOUND FORMS OF THE VERB.

238. As in the case of the English verb, again, the scheme of German conjugation is filled up with a large number of compound forms, made by the aid of auxiliary verbs.

#### 239. *Conjugation of the Auxiliaries of Tense.*

The auxiliaries used in the formation of the tenses of ordinary conjugation are three: namely, *haben have*, *sein be*, *werden become*. The simple forms of these verbs are as follows:

1. *Haben*:—principal parts *haben*, *hatte*, *gehabt*.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		<i>Present.</i>	
SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
1	<i>ich habe I have</i>	<i>ich habe I may have</i>	
2	<i>du hast thou hast</i>	<i>du habest thou mayest have</i>	
3	<i>er hat he has</i>	<i>er habe he may have</i>	

*Present.*

PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1	mir haben <i>we have</i>	mir haben <i>we may have</i>	
2	ihr habt <i>ye have</i>	ihr habet <i>ye may have</i>	
3	sie haben <i>they have</i>	sie haben <i>they may have</i>	

*Preterit.*

SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
1	ich hatte <i>I had</i>	ich hätte <i>I might have</i>	
2	du hättest <i>thou hadst</i>	du hättest <i>thou mightest have</i>	
3	er hatte <i>he had</i>	er hätte <i>he might have</i>	

PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1	mir hatten <i>we had</i>	mir hätten <i>we might have</i>	
2	ihr hättet <i>ye had</i>	ihr hättet <i>ye might have</i>	
3	sie hatten <i>they had</i>	sie hätten <i>they might have</i>	

*IMPERATIVE.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
2	habe <i>have thou</i>	habt <i>have ye</i>	

*INFINITIVE.*

haben      *to have*

*PARTICIPLES.**Present.*

habend      *having*

*Past.*

gehabt      *had*

2. *Sein be.*—principal parts *sein, war, gewesen.**INDICATIVE.**SUBJUNCTIVE.**Present.*

SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
1	ich bin <i>I am</i>	ich sei <i>I may be</i>	
2	du bist <i>thou art</i>	du seiest <i>thou mayest be</i>	
3	er ist <i>he is</i>	er sei <i>he may be</i>	
PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1	wir sind <i>we are</i>	wir seien <i>we may be</i>	
2	ihr seid <i>ye are</i>	ihr seiet <i>ye may be</i>	
3	sie sind <i>they are</i>	sie seien <i>they may be</i>	

*Preterit.*

SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
1	ich war <i>I was</i>	ich wäre <i>I might be</i>	
2	du warst <i>thou wast</i>	du wärest <i>thou mightest be</i>	
3	er war <i>he was</i>	er wäre <i>he might be</i>	
PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1	wir waren <i>we were</i>	wir wären <i>we might be</i>	
2	ihr waret <i>ye were</i>	ihr wäret <i>ye might be</i>	
3	sie waren <i>they were</i>	sie wären <i>they might be</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
2	sei <i>be thou</i>	seid <i>be ye</i>	

## INFINITIVE.

sein	<i>to be</i>
------	--------------

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past.</i>	
seiend	<i>being</i>	gewesen	<i>been</i>

3. Werden *become*:—principal parts werden, ward or wurde, geworden.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.*

SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
1	ich werde <i>I become</i>	ich werde <i>I may become</i>	
2	du wirst <i>thou becomest</i>	du werdest <i>thou mayest etc.</i>	
3	er wird <i>he becomes</i>	er werde <i>he may become</i>	
PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1	wir werden <i>we become</i>	wir werden <i>we may become</i>	
2	ihr werdet <i>ye become</i>	ihr werdet <i>ye may become</i>	
3	sie werden <i>they become</i>	sie werden <i>they may become</i>	

*Preterit.*

SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
1	ich ward, <i>I became</i> wurde	ich würde <i>I might become</i>	
2	du wardst, <i>thou becamest</i> wurdest	du würdest <i>thou mightest etc.</i>	
3	er ward, <i>he became</i> wurde	er würde <i>he might become</i>	

PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1	mir wurden <i>we became</i>	mir würden <i>we might become</i>	
2	ihr werdet <i>ye became</i>	ihr würdet <i>ye might become</i>	
3	sie wurden <i>they became</i>	sie würden <i>they might become</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
2	werde <i>become thou</i>	werdet <i>become ye</i>	

## INFINITIVE. -

werden *to become*

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past.</i>	
werdend	<i>becoming</i>	geworden	<i>become</i>

4. *Irregularities in the Conjugation of these Verbs.*

a. Haben is analogous in its conjugation with lieben, above, but the frequency of its use has led to abbreviation of a few of its forms. Thus, *hast* and *hat* are for older *habst* and *habt*, and *hatte* for *hätte*. The modification of the vowel in *hätte*, pret. subj., is against the prevailing analogy of verbs of its class (see 250.2).

b. Sein is of the same conjugation with geben, above. Its irregularity, which is far greater than that of any other verb in the language, comes mainly from its being made up of forms derived from three independent roots: *bin* and *bist* are from the same root as our *be, being, been* (original form *bhú*; Lat. *fui*, Greek *phūo*); the rest of the present from the same root as our pres. indicative *am* etc. (original form *as*; Lat. *sum*, etc., Greek *eimi*); while the preterit *war* and past participle, *gewesen*, are from the root of our *was, were* (original form *vas, dwell, abide*).

Some authors still retain *en* for *ei* (see 19.3) in *sein*, in order to distinguish it from the possessive *sein* (157).

c. Werden is a nearly regular verb of the same conjugation with geben. For its persons *wirſt* and *wird*, see below, 268.5. In the double form of its pret. ind. singular, it preserves a solitary relic of a condition once belonging to many verbs in the language, whose preterits had a different vowel in the singular and plural. *Ward* is the original form, and *wurde* is a quite modern and anomalous fabrication, made after the analogy of the plural *wurden*.



### 240. Formation of the Compound Tenses.

1. From *haben* or *sein*, with the past participle of any verb, are formed a perfect and a pluperfect tense, indicative and subjunctive, and a perfect infinitive.

a. The PERFECT tense, indicative and subjunctive, is formed by adding the past participle to the present tense of *haben* or of *sein*: thus, *ich habe geliebt* *I have loved*, or *I may have loved*, *ich bin gekommen* *I have (am) come*, *ich sei gekommen* *I may have come*.

b. The PLUPERFECT adds the participle to the preterit of the auxiliary: thus, *ich hatte geliebt* *I had loved*, *ich hätte geliebt* *I might have loved*, *ich war gekommen* *I had (was) come*, *ich wäre gekommen* *I might have come*.

c. But the modal auxiliaries (251) and a few other verbs (namely *lassen*, *heißen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *sehen*, *lehren* and *lernen*—the last two not uniformly), when construed with another verb in the infinitive, form their perfect and pluperfect tenses by adding the infinitive instead of the participle to the auxiliary (see 251.4).

d. The PERFECT INFINITIVE prefixes the participle to the simple or present infinitive: thus, *geliebt haben* *to have loved*, *gekommen sein* *to have come*.

e. What verbs take *haben* and what take *sein* as their auxiliary, will be explained below (see 241). For omission of the auxiliary, see 439.3a.

2. From *werden*, with the infinitives, present and past, of the verb, are formed a future and a future perfect tense, indicative and subjunctive, and a conditional and conditional perfect.

a. The FUTURE tense, indicative and subjunctive, is formed by prefixing to the present infinitive the present tense, indicative and subjunctive, of *werden*: thus, *ich werde lieben* or *kommen* *I shall love or come*.

b. The FUTURE PERFECT prefixes the same tenses to the perfect infinitive: thus, *ich werde geliebt haben* *I shall have loved*, *ich werde gekommen sein* *I shall have come*.

c. The CONDITIONAL and CONDITIONAL PERFECT are formed by prefixing to the present and perfect infinitive the preterit subjunctive of *werden*: thus, *ich würde lieben* or *kommen* *I should love or come*; *ich würde geliebt haben* *I should have loved*, *ich würde gekommen sein* *I should have come*.

3. The uses of these tenses so nearly agree with those of the corresponding English phrases with which they are translated that they need no explanation here: for details, see 323 etc.

4. The German is the only one of the Germanic languages which, in its modern extension of the conjugational system by composition, has chosen *werden* as its auxiliary for forming the future tenses. *Ich werde geben*, literally *I am becoming to give*, receives a future meaning through the idea of *I am coming into a condition of giving*, i. e. *I am going to give*.

a. In the tenses formed with *haben*, the participle is originally one qualifying the object of the verb in the manner of an objective predicate, or expressing the condition in which *I have* (*possess, hold*) the object. This, as being the constructive result of a previous action, is accepted as a description of that action, and *ich habe die Arme ausgestreckt*, for example, from meaning *I have my arms stretched out*, comes to signify *I have stretched out my arms*.

b. On the other hand, in the tenses formed with *sein*, the participle is originally one qualifying the subject in the manner of a direct predicate, and defining a state or condition in which the subject exists. This, in English, has become (by a process quite analogous with that just above described) also a passive, or an expression for the enduring of the action which produced that condition. But the German uses (see below, 275) another auxiliary to form its passives, and, in its combination of *sein* with the participle, it only adds to the assertion of condition the less violent implication that the action leading to the condition is a past one: *ich bin gekommen* *I am here, being come*: i. e., *my action of coming is a thing of the past*; or, *I have come*.

c. In strictness, then, *haben* should form the past tenses only of transitive verbs, and when they take an object; and *sein*, only of intransitives which express a condition of their subject. But, as *have* in English has extended its use until it has become the auxiliary of all verbs without exception, so, in German, *haben* has come to be used with transitive verbs even when they do not take an object; and with such intransitives as are in meaning most akin with these; until the rules for the employment of the two have become as stated in the next paragraph.

## 241. Use of *haben* or *sein* as Auxiliary of Tense.

1. Verbs which take *haben* as auxiliary are

a. All transitive verbs (including the reflexives and the modal auxiliaries).

b. Almost all intransitives which take an object in the genitive (219.5) or the dative (222.II.1a).

c. A large number of other intransitives, especially such as denote a simple activity, a lasting condition, or

2. The infinitive, as in English (though not so commonly), takes often the preposition *zu* *to* as its sign; this is always placed next before the simple infinitive form: thus, *zu* geben, gegeben *zu* haben.

For details respecting the use of *zu*, see 341 etc.

3. The past participle of nearly all verbs has the prefix *ge*. Exceptions are

a. Verbs that begin with an unaccented syllable, especially  
1. Those ending in the infinitive in *iren* or *ieren* (being verbs derived from the French or Latin, or others formed after their model): as *marſchiren* [*marſchieren*] *march*, part. *marſchirt* [=ſchirt]; *ſtudiren* [*ſtudieren*] *study*, part. *ſtudirt* [=dirt]. 2. Those compounded with an inseparable, and therefore unaccented, prefix: as, *vergeben* *forgive*, part. *vergeben*. 3. A few others, such as *prophezeien* *prop'esy*, *trompeten* *trumpet*.

b. *Werden*, when used as passive auxiliary, forms *worden* instead of *gemorden* (see 276.1a).

c. The syllable *ge* was not originally an element of verbal inflection, but is one of the class of inseparable prefixes (see 307.5). It was formerly used or omitted as special prefix to the participle without any traceable rule, and has only in modern times become fixed as its nearly invariable accompaniment. Hence, in archaic style and in poetry, it is still now and then irregularly dropped.

#### 244. Synopsis of the complete conjugation of *haben* and *sein*.

The synopsis of *werden* will be given later, in connection with that of the passive voice of the verb (277).

#### INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, <i>I have</i> etc.	<i>I am</i> etc.
S. I habe	bin
PRETERIT, <i>I had</i> etc.	<i>I was</i> etc.
S. I hatte	war
PERFECT, <i>I have had</i> etc.	<i>I have been</i> etc.
S. I habe gehabt	bin gewesen
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had had</i> etc.	<i>I had been</i> etc.
S. I hatte gehabt	war gewesen
FUTURE, <i>I shall have</i> etc.	<i>I shall be</i> etc.
S. I werde haben	werde sein
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have had</i> etc.	<i>I shall have been</i> etc.
S. I werde gehabt haben	werde gewesen sein

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, <i>I may have etc.</i>	<i>I may be etc.</i>
S. I habe	sei
PRETERIT, <i>I might have etc.</i>	<i>I might be etc.</i>
S. I hätte	wäre
PERFECT, <i>I may have had etc.</i>	<i>I may have been etc.</i>
S. I habe gehabt	sei gewesen
PLUPERFECT, <i>I might have had etc.</i>	<i>I might have been etc.</i>
S. I hätte gehabt	wäre gewesen
FUTURE, <i>I shall have etc.</i>	<i>I shall be etc.</i>
S. I werde haben	werde sein
FUTURE PERFECT, <i>I shall have had etc.</i>	<i>I shall have been etc.</i>
S. I werde gehabt haben	werde gewesen sein

## CONDITIONAL.

CONDITIONAL, <i>I should have etc.</i>	<i>I should be etc.</i>
S. I würde haben	würde sein
COND'L PERFECT, <i>I should have had etc.</i>	<i>I should have been etc.</i>
S. I würde gehabt haben	würde gewesen sein

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>have etc.</i>	<i>be etc.</i>
S. 2 habe	sei

## INFINITIVES.

PRESENT, <i>to have</i>	<i>to be</i>
haben	sein
PERFECT, <i>to have had</i>	<i>to have been</i>
gehabt haben	gewesen sein

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, <i>having</i>	<i>being</i>
habend	seiend
PAST, <i>had</i>	<i>been</i>
gehabt	gewesen

[EXERCISE 15. SIMPLE AND COMPOUND FORMS OF THE AUXILIARIES.]

## CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

**245.** Verbs are inflected in two modes, called respectively the OLD or STRONG, and the NEW or WEAK CONJUGATIONS.

**246.** 1. Verbs of the Old or Strong conjugation form their preterit by a change of the vowel of the root, without any added ending, and their past participle by the ending *en*: thus, *geben*, *gab*, *gegeben*; *singen*, *sang*, *gesungen*.

2. Verbs of the New or Weak conjugation form their preterit by adding *te* or *ete* to the root, and their participle by the ending *et* or *t*: thus, *lieben*, *liebte*, *geliebt*; *reden*, *redete*, *geredet*.

3. The Old and New Conjugations correspond to what have been generally called in English the "Irregular" and "Regular" verbs. The former, as the name implies, is the more primitive method of inflection; its preterit was originally a reduplicated tense, like the Greek and Latin perfects (as *dedōka*, *tetigi*); and, in the oldest Germanic languages, many verbs have retained the reduplication (as *haihald held*, from *halban hold*: *ſaiſlep ſlept*, from *ſlepan sleep*). By phonetic corruption and abbreviation, however, this reduplication led to an alteration of the radical vowel, and then was itself dropped, in the great majority of verbs; producing phenomena of conjugation so various that there was left no prevailing and guiding analogy by which to inflect the new derivative verbs, that were brought in as needed, to supplement the old resources of expression. Hence the need of a new method of conjugation; which was obtained by adding the preterit of the verb *do* (*did*) to the theme of conjugation. The preterit-ending *te* of the New conjugation is the relic of this auxiliary (as, in English, *I loved* stands for an original *I love-did*).

The Old conjugation therefore includes the more primitive verbs of the language; the New, all those of later origin. Only, as the latter have become the larger class, and their mode of conjugation the prevailing one, some of the old verbs (although to by no means such an extent as in English) have been changed, in part or altogether, to conform to it. See below, **272**.

The wholly fanciful names "Strong" and "Weak," now generally adopted, are the invention of Jacob Grimm (compare **73**, **132**).

We shall take up first the New conjugation, as being simpler in its forms, and easiest to learn.

#### NEW OR WEAK CONJUGATION.

**247.** The characteristics of the New or Weak conjugation are that its preterit ends in *te*, and its participle in *t*.

248. Examples: *reden talk, wandern wander.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*reden, redete, geredet**wandern, wanderte, gewandert*

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, *I talk etc.*

S. 1 rede  
 2 redest  
 3 redet

P. 1 reden  
 2 redet  
 3 reden

*I wander etc.*

wandere, wandre  
 wanderst  
 wandert

wandern  
 wandert  
 wandern

PRETERIT, *I talked etc.*

S. 1 redete  
 2 redetest  
 3 redete

P. 1 redeten  
 2 redetet  
 3 redeten

*I wandered etc.*

wanderte  
 wandertest  
 wanderte

wanderten  
 wandertet  
 wanderten

PERFECT, *I have talked etc.*

S. 1 habe geredet  
 2 hast geredet  
 3 hat geredet

P. 1 haben geredet  
 2 habt geredet  
 3 haben geredet

*I have wandered etc.*

bin gewandert  
 bist gewandert  
 ist gewandert

sind gewandert  
 seid gewandert  
 sind gewandert

PLUPERFECT, *I had talked etc.*

S. 1 hatte geredet  
 2 hättest geredet  
 3 hatte geredet

P. 1 hätten geredet  
 2 hättet geredet  
 3 hätten geredet

*I had wandered etc.*

war gewandert  
 wärest gewandert  
 war gewandert

wären gewandert  
 wäret gewandert  
 wären gewandert

FUTURE, *I shall talk etc.*

S. 1 werde reden  
 2 wirst reden  
 3 wird reden

*I shall wander etc.*

werde wandern  
 wirst wandern  
 wird wandern

- P. 1 werden reden  
 2 werdet reden  
 3 werden reden

werden wandern  
 werdet wandern  
 werden wandern

**FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have talked etc.***

*I shall have wandered etc.*

- S. 1 werde geredet haben  
 2 wirst geredet haben  
 3 wird geredet haben  
 P. 1 werden geredet haben  
 2 werdet geredet haben  
 3 werden geredet haben

werde gewandert sein  
 wirst gewandert sein  
 wird gewandert sein  
 werden gewandert sein  
 werdet gewandert sein  
 werden gewandert sein

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

**PRESENT, *I may talk etc.***

*I may wander etc.*

- S. 1 rede  
 2 redest  
 3 rede  
 P. 1 reden  
 2 redet  
 3 reden

wandere, wandre  
 wandereſt, wandreſt  
 wandere, wandre  
 wandere, wandren  
 wandereſt, wandreſt  
 wandere, wandren

**PRETERIT, *I might talk etc.***

*I might wander etc.*

- S. 1 redete  
 2 redeteſt  
 3 redete  
 P. 1 redeten  
 2 redetet  
 3 redeten

wanderte  
 wanderteſt  
 wanderte  
 wanderten,  
 wandertet  
 wanderten

**PERFECT, *I may have talked etc.***

*I may have wandered etc.*

- S. 1 habe geredet  
 2 habeſt geredet  
 3 habe geredet  
 P. 1 haben geredet  
 2 habet geredet  
 3 haben geredet

ſei gewandert  
 ſieieſt gewandert  
 ſei gewandert  
 ſeien gewandert  
 ſieiet gewandert  
 ſeien gewandert

**PLUPERFECT, *I might have talked etc.***

*I might have wandered etc.*

- S. 1 hätte geredet  
 2 hätteſt geredet  
 3 hätte geredet  
 P. 1 hätten geredet  
 2 hättet geredet  
 3 hätten geredet

wäre gewandert  
 wäreſt gewandert  
 wäre gewandert  
 wären gewandert  
 wäret gewandert  
 wären gewandert

**FUTURE, *I shall talk etc.***

- S. 1 werde reden  
 2 werdest reden  
 3 werde reden

- P. 1 werden reden  
 2 werdet reden  
 3 werden reden

***I shall wander etc.***

- werde wandern  
 werdest wandern  
 werde wandern

- werden wandern  
 werdet wandern  
 werden wandern

**FUTURE PERFECT, *I shall have talked etc.***

- S. 1 werde geredet haben  
 2 werdest geredet haben  
 3 werde geredet haben

- P. 1 werden geredet haben  
 2 werdet geredet haben  
 3 werden geredet haben

***I shall have wandered etc.***

- werde gewandert sein  
 werdest gewandert sein  
 werde gewandert sein

- werden gewandert sein  
 werdet gewandert sein  
 werden gewandert sein

**CONDITIONAL.****CONDITIONAL, *I should talk etc.***

- S. 1 würde reden  
 2 würdest reden  
 3 würde reden

- P. 1 würden reden  
 2 würdet reden  
 3 würden reden

***I should wander etc.***

- würde wandern  
 würdest wandern  
 würde wandern

- würden wandern  
 würdet wandern  
 würden wandern

**COND. PERF., *I should have talked etc.***

- S. 1 würde geredet haben  
 2 würdest geredet haben  
 3 würde geredet haben

- P. 1 würden geredet haben  
 2 würdet geredet haben  
 3 würden geredet haben

***I should have wandered etc.***

- würde gewandert sein  
 würdest gewandert sein  
 würde gewandert sein

- würden gewandert sein  
 würdet gewandert sein  
 würden gewandert sein

**IMPERATIVE.*****talk etc.***

- S. 2 rede, rede du  
 3 rede er, er rede

- P. 1 reden wir  
 2 redet, redet ihr  
 3 reden sie

***wander etc.***

- wandere, wandere du  
 wandere er, er wandere

- wandern wir  
 wandert, wandert ihr  
 wandern sie



## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT, *to talk**to wander*

reden, zu reden

wandern, zu wandern

PERFECT, *to have talked**to have wandered*

geredet haben, geredet zu haben      gewandert sein, gewandert zu sein

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, *talking**wandering*

redend

wandernd

PAST, *talked**wandered*

geredet

gewandert

*Remarks.* The conjugation of reden exemplifies the necessity of retention of e of the endings et, etc after a consonant with which t would be confounded in pronunciation. Wandern is one of the verbs which (241.3b) take sometimes haben and sometimes sein as auxiliary. It exemplifies the loss of e of the ending en, and other peculiarities of the combination of endings with verbal roots in el and er.

*Irregularities of the New Conjugation.*

249. A few verbs, all of which have roots ending in nn or nd, change the radical vowel e to a in the preterit indicative (not the subjunctive also) and in the past participle. Thus:

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Preterit.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>
		<i>indicative.</i>	<i>subjunctive.</i>	
brennen	<i>burn</i>	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
fennen	<i>know</i>	fannte	fennte	gefannt
nennen	<i>name</i>	nannte	nennte	genannt
rennen	<i>run</i>	rannte	rennte	gerannt
senden	<i>send</i>	sandte	sendete	gesandt
wenden	<i>turn</i>	wandte	wendete	gewandt

a. The last two, senden and wenden, may also form the pret. indicative and the participle regularly: thus, sendete, gesendet; wendete, gewendet.

250. 1. Two verbs, bringen *bring* and denken *think*, are still more irregular, and agree closely in their forms with the corresponding English verbs. Thus:

<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Preterit.</i>		<i>Participle.</i>
		<i>indicative.</i>	<i>subjunctive.</i>	
bringen	<i>bring</i>	brachte	brächte	gebracht
denken	<i>think</i>	dachte	dächte	gedacht

2. The irregularities of *haben* have been given in full above (239.4a); *bringen*, *denken*, and *haben*, with some of the modal auxiliaries, are the only verbs of the New or weak conjugation which modify in the preterit subj. the vowel of the indicative, like the verbs of the Old or strong conjugation (269.II).

[EXERCISE 16. VERBS OF THE NEW OR WEAK CONJUGATION.]

251. *Modal Auxiliaries.*

1. These are (as already noticed)

<i>dürfen</i> <i>be allowed</i>	<i>müssen</i> <i>must</i>
<i>können</i> <i>can</i>	<i>sollen</i> <i>shall</i>
<i>mögen</i> <i>may</i>	<i>wollen</i> <i>will</i>

2. While the corresponding verbs in English are both defective and irregular, these have in German a complete conjugation (only lacking, except in *wollen*, the imperative), but with the following irregularities:

a. For the singular of the present indicative are substituted forms which properly belong to a preterit of the Old conjugation.

These are, in fact, relics of an ancient preterit used in the sense of a present—thus, *kann can* is literally *I have learned how*, *soll shall* is *I have owed*, *mag may* is *I have gained the power*;—and the rest of their conjugation is of more modern origin.

b. Those which have a modified vowel in the infinitive reject the modification in the preterit indicative and the past participle.

c. All the rest of their inflection is regular, according to the rules of the New conjugation (except that *mögen* changes its *g* to *d* before *t* in the preterit and participle).

3. Thus, the simple forms are—

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

S. 1	<i>darf</i>	<i>kann</i>	<i>mag</i>	<i>muß</i>	<i>soll</i>	<i>will</i>
2	<i>darfst</i>	<i>kannst</i>	<i>magst</i>	<i>mußt</i>	<i>sollst</i>	<i>willst</i>
3	<i>darf</i>	<i>kann</i>	<i>mag</i>	<i>muß</i>	<i>soll</i>	<i>will</i>
P. 1	<i>dürfen</i>	<i>können</i>	<i>mögen</i>	<i>müssen</i>	<i>sollen</i>	<i>wollen</i>
2	<i>dürft</i>	<i>könnt</i>	<i>mögt</i>	<i>müßt</i>	<i>sollt</i>	<i>wollt</i>
3	<i>dürfen</i>	<i>können</i>	<i>mögen</i>	<i>müssen</i>	<i>sollen</i>	<i>wollen</i>

## INDICATIVE PRETERIT.

S. I	durfte	konnte	mochte	mußte	sollte	wollte
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRESENT.

S. I	dürfe	fönne	möge	müße	solle	wolle
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE PRETERIT.

S. I	dürfte	fönnte	möchte	müßte	sollte	wollte
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

S. 2						wolle
P. 2						wollt

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	dürfend	fönnend	mögend	müßend	solle	wollend
Past.	gedurft	gefönnt	gemocht	gemußt	gesollt	gewollt

## INFINITIVE.

dürfen	fönnen	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
--------	--------	-------	--------	--------	--------

4. The compound tenses are formed in the same manner as those of other verbs—with one important exception, namely—

a. When used in connection with another verb (infinitive), the infinitive is substituted for the participle in the perfect and pluperfect tenses.

Thus, *er hat es nicht gefönnt*, but *er hat es nicht thun fönnen* *he has not been able to do it*; *was habt ihr gewollt* *what have you wished?* but *ihr habt mich sprechen wollen* *you have wanted to speak to me*; *wir haben warten müssen* *we have been compelled to wait*.

5. The compound tenses are, then, as follows :

PERFECT (first person the same in both modes).

S. I habe gedurft, gefönnt, &c.  
or habe dürfen, fönnen, &c.

## INDICATIVE PLUPERFECT.

S. I hatte gedurft, gefönnt, &c.  
or hatte dürfen, fönnen, &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE PLUPERFECT.

S. I hätte gedurft, gefönnt, &c.  
or hätte dürfen, fönnen, &c.

FUTURE (first person the same in both modes).

S. I werde dürfen, können, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT (first person the same in both modes).

S. I werde gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

S. I würde dürfen, können, &c.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

S. I würde gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, &c.

INFINITIVE PERFECT.

gedurft haben, gekonnt haben, &c.

6. *a.* The absence of a complete conjugation of the corresponding auxiliaries in English makes it necessary for us often to render the German verb by a paraphrase: substituting, for example, *be able* for *can* (können); *be compelled, have to*, for *must* (müssen); *be willing, wish, desire*, for *will* (wollen), and so on: compare below, 253-9.

*b.* The same absence has led to the use of certain idiomatic and not strictly logical constructions in English, in which the auxiliary of past time, *have*, is combined with the principal verb in the participle, instead of with the modal auxiliary; while the German, more correctly, combines it with the latter. Thus, *he would not have done it* is not, in German, *er wollte es nicht gethan haben*, unless it signifies *he was not willing to have done it*; if, as usual, it means *he would not have been willing to do it*, it is *er hätte es nicht thun wollen*. Thus also, *he might have come* (that is, *he would have been able to come*) is *er hätte kommen können*, not *er konnte gekommen sein*. The logical sense of the sentence may be tested, and the proper German expression found, by putting the corresponding verbal phrase in place of the simple auxiliary in the English.

#### USES OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

252. Although the exposition of the meaning of these auxiliaries belongs rather to the dictionary than to the grammar, yet such is the frequency of their use, and the intimacy of their relation to the verbs with which they are combined, that it is desirable to give here some account of their chief uses.

253. Dürfen.—1. This represents two separate verbs of the older language, the one meaning *need, require*, the other *dare*,

*venture, trust one's self.* The former sense is nearly lost, appearing only occasionally with *nur* and *faum*, and in a few other phrases: thus, *er darf nur befehlen* *he needs only to command*. The other has been in modern use modified into *be authorized, permitted*, and, even where it approaches nearest to *dare*, means properly rather *feel authorized, allow one's self*. Thus, *Niemand darf plündern* *no one is permitted to plunder*, *darf ich bitten* *may I ask?* *einem Kaiser darf die Milde nie fehlen* *an emperor may never lack clemency*, *er durfte ihn ins Angesicht preisen* *he was allowed to praise him to his face*.

2. The preterit subjunctive *dürfte* signifies, by a quite special use, a probable contingency: as, *daß dürfte wahr sein* *that is likely to be true*.

254. *Können*.—The original meaning of *können*, as of our *can*, is *to know how*; but both have alike acquired the sense of *be able*, and signify ability or possibility in the most general way, whether natural, conceded, or logical. Thus, *ich kann lesen*, *I can read*, *meinetwegen kann er gehen* *he can (may) go, for all me*, *jene Tage können wieder kommen* *those days may return (their return is possible)*, *er kann schon gekommen sein* *he may possibly have already arrived*.

255. *Mögen*.—This verb meant originally *to have power*, but its use in that sense is now antiquated and quite rare: thus, *wenn keiner sie ergründen mag* *though none is able to fathom them*. At present, it has two leading significations:

1. That of power or capability as the result of concession on the part of the speaker; and that, either a real permission—as *er mag ihn behalten* *he may keep it*—or as a logical concession or allowance, as *daß mag wohl zu Zeiten kommen* *that may happen at times*.

2. That of choice, liking, desire: thus, *was sie dir nicht offenbaren mag* *what she does not choose to reveal to thee*, *daß mochte er gar nicht hören* *he did not like to hear that at all*. This meaning is most frequent with the preterit subjunctive: thus, *es möchte fein Hund so länger leben* *no dog would care to live longer thus*, *auch ich möchte mit dir sterben* *I too would like to die with thee*.

a. *Mögen* has other uses (akin with the above, but of less definite character), in which it approaches very near to equivalence with the subjunctive tenses: thus, in expressing a wish, *möge nie der Tag erscheinen* *may the day never appear*, *möchte die ganze Welt uns hören* *would that the whole world might hear us*;

also, in clauses expressing design or purpose: as, damit sie nicht ausgleiten mögen *that they may not slip*; or after an indefinite pronoun: as, was er auch thun mag (or thue) *whatever he may do*.

**256. Müssen.**—This, like mögen, has wandered far from its primitive meaning, which was *find room or opportunity*, and now designates a general and indefinite necessity (as können a correspondingly indefinite possibility), either physical, moral, or logical. It is rendered by our *be compelled to, be obliged to, have to, cannot but*, and the like. Thus, alle Menschen müssen sterben *all men must die*, wir müssen treu sein *we must be faithful*, es muß in dieser Weise geschehen sein *it must have taken place in this way*, wir mußten umwenden *we had to turn back*, heute muß die Glocke werden *to-day the bell has to come into existence*, man mußte glauben *one could not but suppose*, ich mußte über die Leute lachen *I could not help laughing at the people*.

a. As *must* in English is present only, such phrases as those above given should always be used in translating the other tenses of müssen.

**257. Sollen.**—Its proper sense is originally that of *duty or obligation*, and in the past tenses, especially the preterit, it is often still used in that sense: thus, es sollte so, und nicht anders sein *it ought to be thus, and not otherwise*, er hätte kommen sollen *he ought to have come*.

But to this meaning has now become added, in prevailing use, the distinct implication of a personal authority, other than that of the subject, as creating or enforcing the obligation: thus:

1. Proceeding from the speaker; in which case the auxiliary intimates a command, a promise, a threat, or the like: as, du sollst Gott lieben *thou shalt love God*, meine Töchter sollen dich warten *my daughters shall wait on thee*, man droht, dieser oder jener König solle gegen ihn ziehen *it is threatened that this or that king shall take the field against him*.

2. Recognized by the speaker, but not proceeding from him; in which case sollen is to be rendered by *to be to, to be intended or destined to*, or other like expressions: as, wenn man zuletzt halten soll, will man lieber hier bleiben *if one is finally to stop, one will rather stay here*, was soll geschehen *what is to happen?* man zweifelte welchen Weg man einschlagen solle *they doubted which road they were to take*, was mag ich hier wohl hören sollen *what can I*

*be meant to hear here? darüber sollte er bitter enttäuscht werden he was destined to be bitterly undeceived upon that point.*

3. A special form of this use of *sollen* is its employment to report something that rests on the authority of others, is asserted by them: thus, Verbrechen, die er begangen haben soll *crimes which he is claimed to have committed*, viele sollen an diesem Tage umgekommen sein *many are said to have lost their lives on that day.*

4. In conditional and hypothetical clauses, *sollte* is sometimes used like our *should*, nearly coinciding in meaning with the proper conditional tenses: thus, sollt' er auch straucheln überall *even should he everywhere stumble*; so, elliptically, in interrogation: sollte das wahr sein [*is it possible that*] *that should be true?*

258. *Wollen*.—This signifies will, intent, choice, on the part of the subject of the verb: thus, ich will dich gleichfalls begleiten *I will accompany thee likewise*, keiner will den Becher gewinnen *no one wants to win the goblet*, was er Zierliches aufführen will *whatever he intends to bring forward that is pretty*, ich wollte ihn mit Schätzen beladen *I would load him with treasures.*

a. Occasionally it indicates a claim or assertion (compare the correlative use of *sollen* above, 257.3): thus, er will dich gesehen haben *he claims to have seen you (will have it that he has done so).*

b. Not infrequently it implies the exhibition of intent, or impending action, and is to be rendered by *be on the point of* and the like; thus, er will gehen *he is on the point of going*, ein Bauer, welcher sterben wollte *a peasant who was about to die*, Braaten will verbrennen *the roast is on the brink of burning.*

## 259. *The Modal Auxiliaries without accompanying Verb.*

All these auxiliaries are sometimes met with unaccompanied by an infinitive dependent upon them. Thus:

1. When an infinitive is directly suggested by the context, and to be supplied in idea: thus, daß jeder so toll sein dürfe als er wolle *that every one may be as wild as he will (be)*, ich thue, was ich kann *I do what I can (do).*

2. Very often, an adverb of direction with the auxiliary takes the place of an omitted verb of motion: thus, wir müssen auch daran *we must also [set] about it*, sie können nicht von der Stelle *they cannot [stir] from the place*, wohin sollen die *whither are they to [go]*, der immer dahin wollte *who all the time wanted [to get]*

away, er darf nicht weit genug hinaus *he may not venture [to go] far enough out.*

3. Other ellipses, of verbs familiarly used with these, or naturally suggested by the context, are not infrequent: thus, was soll ich *what am I to [do]?* was soll diese Rede *what is this talk intended to [signify]?* die falschen Ringe werden das nicht können *the false rings will not be able [to accomplish] that,* nicht Vergoldung will man mehr *one will no longer [have] gilding.*

4. The auxiliary is thus often left with an apparent direct object, really dependent on the omitted verb. In other cases the object may represent the omitted verb—as, hätte ich mich gefreut, als ich es noch konnte *had I enjoyed myself when I was still able to do so*—or be otherwise more really dependent on the auxiliary. Wollen is most often used thus as a proper transitive: thus, nicht er will euren Untergang *not he wishes your ruin,* was Gott gewollt *what God has willed*—also, mögen in the sense of *like*: as, ich mag ihn nicht *I do not like him*—and können in the sense of *know (a language)*: as, können Sie Deutsch *do you know German?*

260. Wissen *know, know how*, has a conjugation nearly akin with that of the modal auxiliaries: namely—

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	weiß, weißt, weiß, wissen, wißt, wissen.		
<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	wisse, etc.		
<i>Pret. Indic.</i>	wußte, etc.	<i>Pret. Subj.</i>	müßte, etc.
<i>Past Partic.</i>	gewußt.		

[EXERCISE 17. MODAL AUXILIARIES.]

OLD OR STRONG CONJUGATION.

261. The characteristics of the Old or strong conjugation are: the change of radical vowel in the preterit, and often in the past participle also; and the ending of the past participle in *en*.

With these are combined other peculiarities of inflection, of less consequence, which will be found stated in detail below.

For the reason of the name “Old” conjugation, see above, 246.3.

*Change of Radical Vowel.*

262. The changes of radical vowel in verbs of the Old or strong conjugation are, in general, as follows:



1. The vowel of the infinitive and that of the present tense (indicative and subjunctive) are always the same.

But the vowel of the present is sometimes altered in the second and third persons singular indicative: see below, 268.

2. The vowel of the preterit is always different from that of the infinitive and present.

3. The vowel of the past participle is sometimes the same with that of the infinitive and present, sometimes the same with that of the preterit, and sometimes different from either.

263. According to the varieties of this change, the verbs are divided into three principal classes, each with several subdivisions.

Class I. Verbs whose infinitive, preterit, and participle have each a different vowel.

Class II. Verbs in which the vowel of the participle is the same with that of the present.

Class III. Verbs in which the vowel of the participle is the same with that of the preterit.

*a.* This is merely a classification of convenience, founded upon the facts of the modern language. The latter have undergone too great and too various alteration to allow of our adopting, with practical advantage, a more thorough classification, founded on the character of the original radical vowel, and the nature of the changes it has suffered.

264. FIRST CLASS. Verbs whose infinitive, preterit, and participle have each a different vowel.

I. 1. Verbs having the vowels *i* — *a* — *u* in the three forms specified.

Example: *singen* — *sang* — *gesungen* (*sing, sang, sung*).

To this subdivision belong 16 verbs, all of them having roots ending in *ng*, *nf*, or *nd*.

2. Vowels *i* — *a* — *o*. 6 verbs: root ending in *nn* or *mm*.

Example: *spinnen* — *spann* — *gesponnen* (*spin, span, spun*).

3. Vowels *e* — *a* — *o*. 22 verbs.

Example: *brechen* — *brach* — *gebrochen* (*break, brake, broken*).

One verb, *gebären*, has irregularly *ä* for *e* in the infinitive.

4. Vowels *i* or *ie* — *a* — *e*. 3 verbs.Examples: *sitzen* — *saß* — *gesessen* (*sit, sat, sat*).*liegen* — *lag* — *gelegen* (*lie, lay, lain*).

These are properly verbs belonging to the first division of the next class, II.1, but have their vowel irregularly varied in the infinitive.

**265. SECOND CLASS.** Verbs having the same vowel in the infinitive and participle.

II. 1. Vowels *e* — *a* — *e*. 10 verbs.Example: *sehen* — *sah* — *gesehen* (*see, saw, seen*).

Three verbs properly belonging to this division have changed their vowel to *i* or *ie* in the infinitive, and thus become a fourth division of the first class (see above).

2. Vowels *a* — *u* — *a*. 10 verbs.Example: *schlagen* — *schlug* — *geschlagen* (*slay, slew, slain*).3. Vowels *a* — *ie* or *i* — *a*. 16 verbs.Examples: *fallen* — *fiel* — *gefallen* (*fall, fell, fallen*).*hängen* — *hing* — *gehängen* (*hang, hung, hung*).4. Vowels *au*, *u*, or *o* — *ie* — *au*, *u*, or *o*. 4 verbs.Examples: *laufen* — *lief* — *gelaufen* (*leap*) *run*.*rufen* — *rief* — *gerufen* *cry*.*stoßen* — *stieß* — *gestoßen* *thrust*.

**266. THIRD CLASS.** Verbs having the same vowel in the preterit and participle.

III. 1. Vowels *ei* — *i* — *i*. 22 verbs.Example: *beißen* — *biß* — *gebissen* (*bite, bit, bitten*).2. Vowels *ei* — *ie* — *ie*. 16 verbs.Example: *treiben* — *trieb* — *getrieben* (*drive, drove, driven*).

These two divisions differ only in the length of the vowel of the preterit and participle. One verb, *heißen*, has the participle *geheißen* (below, 267).

3. Vowels *ie* or *ü* — *o* — *o*. 24 verbs (only 3 with *ü*).Examples: *fliegen* — *flog* — *gefliegen* (*fly, flew, flown*).*lügen* — *log* — *gelogen* *lie* (*speak falsely*).4. Vowels *au* — *o* — *o*. 4 verbs.Example: *saugen* — *sog* — *gesogen* *suck*.

## 5. Vowels, i, e, ä, ö, or a — o — u. 20 verbs.

Examples: flimmen — flomm — geflommen *climb*.

weben — wob — gewoben (*weave, wove, woven*).

wägen — wog — gewogen *weigh*.

ſchwören — ſchwor — geſchworen (*swear, swore, sworn*).

ſchallen — ſcholl — geſchollen *sound*.

All the verbs in this division are stragglers, irregularly altered from other modes of conjugation. Of those having e in the infinitive (like weben) there are eleven; of the other forms, only one, two, or three each.

## 6. Vowels i — u — u. 2 verbs.

Example: ſchinden — ſchund — geſchunden *flay*.

These, also, are stragglers, from I.1.

267. *Verbs with irregular change of vowel.*

1. kommen — kam — gekommen (*come, came, come*):  
an exception under I.3, the original vowel of the infinitive being e.

2. heißen — hieß — geheißen *be called*:  
an exception under III.2, as noted above.

3. gehen — ging — gegangen *go*:  
an exception under II.3, the original infinitive being gangan.

4. ſtehen — ſtand — geſtanden *stand*:  
in Old High-German, belonging to II.2 (ſtantan — ſtuont — ſtantan).

5. thun — that — gethan (*do, did, done*).

## FORMATION AND INFLECTION OF THE SIMPLE VERBAL FORMS.

268. *Present Tense.*

The first person singular and all the plural persons of the present indicative, together with the whole of the present subjunctive, are, without exception, regularly formed (see 237), and need no remark. But the second and third persons singular of the indicative are subject to various irregularities.

1. Verbs having e as radical vowel in the first person change it to ie or i in the second and third—short e becoming i, and long e becoming ie (that is, long i: see 18): thus, helfe, hilſt, hilſt; ſtehe, ſtiehſt, ſtiehſt; eſſen, iſſeſt, iſt; ſehen, ſiehſt, ſieht. But—

a. A few verbs leave the *e* unchanged: namely, *gehen*, *stehen*, *heben*, *weben*, *pflügen*, *bewegen*, *melfen*, *geneſen*—besides a few which here, as in others of their forms, follow the New or weak conjugation.

b. Two or three verbs that have long *e* in the first person shorten it to *i* in the second and third: namely, *nehmen*, *nimmſt*, *nimmt*; *treten*, *trittſt*, *tritt*. *Geben* makes either *giebſt*, *giebt*, or *gibſt*, *gibt*.

2. Verbs having *a* as radical vowel in the first person modify it (to *ä*) in the second and third: thus, *trage*, *trägiſt*, *trägt*; *laſſen*, *läſſeſt*, *läßt*. But—

a. The *a* remains unchanged in *ſchaffen* and *ſchallen*, and in other verbs which substitute in part the forms of the New or weak conjugation.

3. *Laufen*, *ſaufen*, and *ſtoßen* also modify the vowel in the same persons; *kommen* does so sometimes, but not according to the best usage; *löſchen* forms *liſcheſt*, *liſcht*.

4. *Fliegen* and about a dozen other verbs of its class (III.3) have a second and third person in *eu*—as *fliege*, *fliegiſt*, *fliegt*; *lüge*, *leugiſt*, *leugt*—which are now antiquated, and only met with in archaic and poetic style. One or two that have roots ending in *h* change this letter to *ch* after *eu*.

5. The tendency to reject the *e* of the endings *eſt* and *et* is stronger in these persons with altered vowel than anywhere else in conjugation. The *e* of *eſt* is rarely retained except after a sibilant—as in *erliſcheſt*, *läſſeſt*, given above. The *e* of *et* is always omitted, even when preceded by *t*, *th*, *ð*; hence, after these letters, the *t*, being no longer audible, is also dropped in writing.

The verbs which thus lose the ending of the third pers. sing. pres. indicative are *ſechten*, *ſicht*; *berſten*, *birſt*; *ſlechten*, *ſlicht*; *gelten*, *gilt*; *ſchelten*, *ſchilt*; *werden*, *wird*; *halten*, *hält*; *rathen* [*raten*], *räth* [*rät*]; *braten*, *brät*; *bieten*, *beut*. Only *laden* forms *lädt*.

## 269. *Preterit Tense.*

I. 1. The preterit indicative is formed by the change of radical vowel alone, without an added termination, and therefore ends in the final letter of the root, whatever that may be. But—

a. A few roots, ending in the infinitive with a double consonant, and lengthening their vowel in the preterit, reduce the

double consonant to a single one : namely, *ſchreden, ſchraf* ; *treffen, traf* ; *bitten, bat* ; *baden, bat* ; *ſchaffen, ſchuſ* ; *fallen, fiel* ; *kommen, kam*.

b. A few others (fifteen), on the contrary, shortening their vowel in the preterit, double the following consonant ; and three of them, ending in *b*, change it to *tt* : namely, *leiden, litt* ; *ſchneiden, ſchnitt* ; *ſieden, ſott*.

All of these save three (*trieben* and *ſieden*, III.3 ; and *ſaufen*, III.4) are of division III.1 : e. g., *reiten, ritt, geritten* (*ride, rode, ridden*).

c. More isolated cases are *ziehen, zog* ; *hauen, hieb* ; *ſißen, ſaß*. For *gehen, ging* ; *ſtehen, ſtand* ; *thun, that*, see 267.

2. The second person singular strongly inclines to the abbreviated form of the ending, *ſt* instead of *eſt*, and in ordinary use rejects the *e* except after a sibilant or in order to avoid a very harsh combination of consonants.

3. Traces of an ending *e* in the first and third persons are, very rarely, met with : especially *ſahe*, for *ſah* *saw* ; also *hielte*. For *murde*, from *werden*, see 239.4c.

4. A few verbs have a double form in the preterit, of which one is in more common use, the other archaic or provincial.

But *ſchwor* and *ſchwor* are of nearly equal authority : of the others, those most often met with are *hub*, for *hob* (*heben*, III.5), and *ſtund*, for *ſtand* (*ſtehen*).

This double form (as in like cases in English : e. g., *began* or *begun*) is due to the fact that in the ancient language many verbs had different vowels in the singular and plural of the preterit indicative, both of which, in the later usage, appear in either number of a few verbs. The vowel of the subjunctive preterit agreed with that of the indicative plural, not the singular : whence the double forms of the subjunctive, noted below.

II. 1. The preterit subjunctive is regularly formed from the indicative by adding *c* (in the first person), and modifying the vowel, if the latter be capable of modification : thus, *ſang, ſänge* ; *ſah, ſähe* ; *ſchlug, ſchlüge* ; *fiel, fiele* ; *ſlog, flöge* ; *ſchwor* or *ſchwor*, *ſchwöre* or *ſchwüre* ; *that, thäte*. But—

a. Some verbs have a double form of the subjunctive, of which one differs in vowel from the indicative : thus, all in division I.2 have a second in *ö*—e. g., *ſpann, ſpänne* or *ſpönne*—which

is as common as that in *ä*, or more so; and others (especially in I.3) have second forms in *ö* or *ü*: e. g., *galt*, *gälte* or *gölte*, *warb*, *wärbe* or *mürbe*; the latter being the preferred one, probably as better distinguished from the present *gelte*, *werbe*, etc. All that have two indicative forms have the two corresponding subjunctives: thus, *stünde* and *stünde*, *höbe* and *hübe*.

### 270. Imperative.

1. The imperative singular regularly ends in *e*, the plural in *et* or *t*, adding those endings respectively to the root of the verb as shown in the infinitive: thus, *singen*, *singe*; *schlagen*, *schlage*; *rufen*, *rufe*; *kommen*, *komme*; *gehen*, *gehe*. But—

2. Verbs which in the second pers. sing. of the pres. indicative change *e* to *i* or *ie* (268.1) take the latter also in the imperative singular (not in the plural)—at the same time rejecting the *e* of the ending.

Thus, *helfen*, *hilf*; *stehlen*, *stiehl*; *essen*, *iß*; *sehen*, *sieh*.

a. So, also, verbs that have an archaic second person in *eu* (268.4) have a corresponding archaic imperative: thus, *fliegen*, *fliege* or *fleug*. *Erlöschen* (268.3) forms *erlös*. But verbs that modify *a*, *au*, *o* to *ä*, *äu*, *ö* (268.2,3) retain in the imperative the unchanged vowel and the ending: thus, *tragen*, *trage*; *laufen*, *laufe*; *stoßen*, *stoße*.

b. Exceptions are: *werden* (*wirft*) has *werde*; *sehen* (*siehst*) has either *siehe* or *sieh*.

3. The *e* of the singular ending is dropped much more freely in the other verbs of this than in those of the New conjugation, and in some—as *kommen*, *laß*—is almost never used.

### 271. Past Participle.

1. The ending of the participle is *en*.

The *e* of the ending is ordinarily retained in all cases, but may be occasionally dropped; especially after a vowel or *h*: thus, *gesehen* or *gesehn*. When, however, the participle is used as an adjective and declined, it is subject to the same abbreviation as other adjectives ending in *en* (120.3): thus, *vergangner Tage* of *past days*, *verschmüdner Pracht* of *vanished splendor*.

2. A number of participles share in the irregular changes of a final radical consonant exhibited by the preterit: namely—

a. All those that shorten in the preterit the vowel of the infinitive (269.I.1b): thus, *reiten*, *ritt*, *geritten*; *leiden*, *litt*, *gelitten*; *saufen*, *soff*, *gesoffen*.

b. Of those that lengthen the vowel (269.I.1a), only one, namely *bitten*, *bat*, *gebeten*;—but *treffen*, *traf*, *getroffen*; *fallen*, *fiel*, *gefallen*, etc.

c. Also, *ziehen* (*zog*), *gezogen*; *ſitzen* (*ſaß*), *geſeſſen*; *gehen* (*ging*), *gegangen*; *ſtehen* (*ſtand*), *geſtanden*; *thun* (*that*), *gethan*.

3. *Esſen eat* has the prefix twice: thus, *gegeſſen* (*geſſen* from *ge=esſen*, and *ge* again prefixed).

### 272. *Mixed Conjugation.*

The same tendency which has converted a large number of the “irregular” verbs in English into “regular” has been active, though to a much less degree, in German also. Besides those verbs which have entirely changed their mode of inflection, and therefore no longer require to be made any account of under the Old or strong conjugation, there are others which form a part of their inflection by the one method and a part by the other, or which have equivalent forms of either conjugation. Thus,

1. Some have a double series of forms through the whole or nearly the whole conjugation: the forms of the Old conjugation being then either poetic and unusual (as in *räſſen*), or else belonging to the verb in certain special meanings (as in *wiegen*) or in its transitive use (as in *bleiſſen*).

2. Some have certain forms of either conjugation—especially the second and third pers. ind. present and second sing. imperative, with differences of use as above stated; most often with intransitive meaning for the Old forms: such are *ſichreden*, *verderben*, *ſieden*, *löſſen*, *ſchmelzen*, *ſchwellen*, and others.

3. Some have retained only a participle of the Old conjugation; and even that in special uses or connections. The participle is in general the form that has maintained itself most persistently.

These irregularities, as well as those which are explained in more detail above, are exhibited in a TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS, given at the end of this volume.

### 273. *Examples of Verbs of the Old or Strong Conjugation.*

*Binden* (I.1).

*Kommen* (267.1).

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*binden*, *band*, *gebunden*.

*kommen*, *kam*, *gekommen*.

## INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, *I bind etc.*

S. 1 binde  
2 bindest  
3 bindet

P. 1 binden  
2 bindet  
3 binden

*I come etc.*

komme  
kommst  
kommt

kommen  
kommt  
kommen

PRETERIT, *I bound etc.*

S. 1 band  
2 bandst  
3 band

P. 1 banden  
2 bandet  
3 banden

*I came etc.*

kam  
kamst  
kam

kamen  
kamt  
kamen

PERFECT, *I have bound etc.*

S. 1 habe gebunden  
etc.

*I have come etc.*

bin gekommen  
etc.

PLUPERFECT, *I had bound etc.*

S. 1 hatte gebunden  
etc.

*I had come etc.*

war gekommen  
etc.

FUTURE, *I shall bind etc.*

S. 1 werde binden  
etc.

*I shall come etc.*

werde kommen  
etc.

FUT. PERF., *I shall have bound etc.*

S. 1 werde gebunden haben  
etc.

*I shall have come etc.*

werde gekommen sein  
etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, *I may bind etc.*

S. 1 binde  
2 bindest  
3 binde

P. 1 binden  
2 bindet  
3 binden

*I may come etc.*

komme  
kommest  
komme

kommen  
kommet  
kommen



**PRETERIT, *I might bind etc.***

S. 1 bände  
 2 bändest  
 3 bände

P. 1 bänden  
 2 bändet  
 3 bänden

***I might come etc.***

käme  
 kämest  
 käme

kämen  
 kämet  
 kämen

**PERFECT, *I may have bound etc.***

S. 1 habe gebunden  
 etc.

***I may have come etc.***

sei gekommen  
 etc.

**PLUPERF., *I might have bound etc.***

S. 1 hätte gebunden  
 etc.

***I might have come etc.***

wäre gekommen  
 etc.

**FUTURE, *I shall bind etc.***

S. 1 werde binden  
 etc.

***I shall come etc.***

werde kommen  
 etc.

**FUT. PERF., *I shall have bound etc.***

S. 1 werde gebunden haben  
 etc.

***I shall have come etc.***

werde gekommen sein  
 etc.

**CONDITIONAL.****CONDITIONAL, *I should bind etc.***

S. 1 würde binden  
 etc.

***I should come etc.***

würde kommen  
 etc.

**COND. PERF. *I should have bound etc.***

S. 1 würde gebunden sein  
 etc.

***I should have come etc.***

würde gekommen sein  
 etc.

**IMPERATIVE.*****bind etc.***

S. 2 binde  
 3 binde er  
 P. 1 binden wir  
 2 bindet  
 3 binden sie

***come etc.***

komme, komm  
 komme er  
 kommen wir  
 kommt  
 kommen sie

INFINITIVE.	
PRESENT, <i>to bind</i> binden	<i>to come</i> kommen
PERFECT, <i>to have bound</i> gebunden haben	<i>to have come</i> gekommen sein
PARTICIPLES.	
PRESENT, <i>binding</i> bindend	<i>coming</i> kommend
PAST, <i>bound</i> gebunden	<i>come</i> gekommen

[EXERCISE 18. VERBS OF THE OLD OR STRONG CONJUGATION.]

#### PASSIVE VERBS.

274. The passive voice is a derivative conjugation of a transitive verb, in which that person or thing which in the simple conjugation is the object of the transitive action becomes a subject of the suffering of that action: thus, active, *der Hund biß den Knaben the dog bit the boy*; passive, *der Knabe wurde vom Hunde gebissen the boy was bitten by the dog*.

a. That a kind of passive is also formed from some intransitive verbs is pointed out below (279.2,3).

b. The passive is mainly a grammatical device for directing the principal attention to the recipient of the action, and the action as affecting him, and putting the actor in a subordinate position.

275. The German passive, like the English, is formed by the aid of an auxiliary verb—but by a different one, namely the verb *werden become*.

276. 1. To form the passive of any verb, its past participle is combined with *werden*, throughout the whole conjugation of the latter. In this combination—

a. The past participle of the auxiliary, wherever it occurs, is abbreviated from *gemorden* to *worden*.

b. The participle of the main verb is put after the proper verbal forms (simple tenses) of the auxiliary, but before its infinitives or participles.

This is in accordance with the general rule for the position of any word limiting an infinitive or participle: see below, 348.2, 358.

2. Hence, to produce any given person, tense, and mode of the passive of a verb, combine its past participle with the corresponding person, tense, and mode of *werden*.

**277. Synopsis of the Forms of *werden* and of a Passive Verb.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT, <i>I become</i> etc.	<i>I am loved</i> etc.
S. I werde	werde geliebt
PRETERIT, <i>I became</i> etc.	<i>I was loved</i> etc.
S. I ward, wurde	ward, wurde geliebt
PERFECT, <i>I have become</i> etc.	<i>I have been loved</i> etc.
S. I bin geworden	bin geliebt worden
PLUPERFECT, <i>I had become</i> etc.	<i>I had been loved</i> etc.
S. I war geworden	war geliebt worden
FUTURE, <i>I shall become</i> etc.	<i>I shall be loved</i> etc.
S. I werde werden	werde geliebt werden
FUT. PERF., <i>I shall have become</i> etc.	<i>I shall have been loved</i> etc.
S. I werde geworden sein	werde geliebt worden sein

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT, <i>I may become</i> etc.	<i>I may be loved</i> etc.
S. I werde	werde geliebt
PRETERIT, <i>I might become</i> etc.	<i>I might be loved</i> etc.
S. I würde	würde geliebt
PERFECT, <i>I may have become</i> etc.	<i>I may have been loved</i> etc.
S. I sei geworden	sei geliebt worden
PLUPERFECT, <i>I might have become</i> etc.	<i>I might have been loved</i> etc.
S. I wäre geworden	wäre geliebt worden
FUTURE, <i>I shall become</i> etc.	<i>I shall be loved</i> etc.
S. I werde werden	werde geliebt werden
FUT. PERF., <i>I shall have become</i> etc.	<i>I shall have been loved</i> etc.
S. I werde geworden sein	werde geliebt worden sein

## CONDITIONAL.

CONDITIONAL, <i>I should become etc.</i>	<i>I should be loved etc.</i>
S. 1 würde werden	würde geliebt werden
COND. PERF., <i>I should have become etc.</i>	<i>I should have been loved etc.</i>
S. 1 würde geworden sein	würde geliebt worden sein

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>become etc.</i>	<i>be loved etc.</i>
S. 2 werde	werde geliebt

## INFINITIVES.

PRESENT, <i>to become</i>	<i>to be loved</i>
werden	geliebt werden
PERFECT, <i>to have become</i>	<i>to have been loved</i>
geworden sein	geliebt worden sein

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, <i>becoming</i>	<i>being loved</i>
werdend	geliebt werdend
PAST, <i>become</i>	<i>been loved</i>
geworden	geliebt worden

*Remark:* geliebt worden is used only in forming the compound tenses, since the past participle of a transitive verb has by itself a passive value.

**278.** The passive voice of a transitive verb has one peculiar form, a kind of *future passive participle*, formed from the present active participle, by putting *zu* before it: thus, *zu liebend*. It implies a possibility or a necessity: thus, *ein zu liebendes Kind* *a child to be loved*—i. e., *which may or should be loved*. It can only be used as an attributive adjective, and therefore hardly deserves to be called a participle.

a. It is in reality a quite modern and anomalous derivative from an infinitive, answering attributively to the infinitive with *zu* taken predicatively (343.III.1b): as, *das Kind ist zu lieben* *the child is to be loved*—i. e., *may or should be loved*.

**279.** 1. Transitive verbs, with hardly an exception, may form a passive voice, with a complete scheme of conjugation, as given above.

*haben* *have* is not used in the passive.

2. Many intransitives (especially such as denote a mode of action by a person) may form an impersonal passive—that is, a passive third person singular, with indefinite subject *eß*, or with omitted subject (291).

Thus, *eß wurde gelacht und gesungen* *there was laughing and singing*, *um Antwort wird gebeten* *an answer is requested*.

a. These passives do not represent any subject as suffering an action, but simply represent the action, without reference to an actor.

3. Those intransitives which, by a pregnant construction (227.2b), govern an accusative along with a factitive predicate, are also convertible into passives in corresponding phrases: thus, *sie werden aus dem Schläfe geschrien* *they are screamed out of sleep*, *er wurde frei gesprochen* *he was acquitted (declared free)*.

280. 1. Verbs which govern two accusatives (227.3), except *lehren*, take in the passive the second accusative, either as object (*fragen*, etc.), or as predicate nominative (*nennen*, etc.).

2. Transitive verbs which, in addition to their direct object, govern a genitive (219.2) or a dative (222.I.1), retain the latter along with the passive: thus, *der Diener wurde des Diebstahls angeklagt* *the servant was accused of robbery*, *alles wird einem Freunde erlaubt* *everything is permitted to a friend*.

3. Of the intransitives that form an impersonal passive, such as govern a genitive or dative take the same case in the passive: thus, *eß wird meiner geschont* *I am spared*, *ihm wurde geholfen* *he was helped*.

281. The passive is very much less frequently used in German than in English, being replaced by other modes of speech. Sometimes a full active expression, with subject and object, is employed instead. Most often, the intent of the passive form of speech is attained by using an active verb with the indefinite subject *man* *one*, etc. (185): thus, *man sagt* *it is said*, *ein Gesetz, welches man erließ* *a law which was passed*. Not infrequently, a reflexive phrase is substituted, the return of the action upon the subject being accepted as signifying the latter's endurance of the action: thus, *eß fragt sich* *it is questioned (asks itself)*, *der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden* *the key has been found*.

282. 1. By its use of *werden* *become* instead of *sein* *be* as auxiliary forming the passive, the German is able clearly to distinguish between the actual endurance of an action, and existence in a state which is the

result of such action. Thus, alle Fenster werden nach und nach mit Teppichen behängt *all windows are by degrees hung with tapestry*, and wie alle Fenster mit Teppichen behängt sind *as all the windows are hung with tapestry*; eingeladen wurden sie *they were invited*, and eingeladen sind sie all' *they are all invited*—the latter phrases, in either pair, signifying the condition to which the act described by the former led. As we use the same verb, *be*, in both senses, of copula and of passive auxiliary (accepting the simple statement of the resulting condition as sufficiently implying the suffering of the action), our expression is liable to ambiguity—an ambiguity which we are sometimes forced into removing by the use of the phrase *be being*: thus distinguishing *it is being cleaned* (es wird gereinigt) from *it is cleaned* (es ist gereinigt). And our sense of the distinction is so obscured that the English pupil finds it one of his greatest difficulties to know when to translate *to be* before a participle by *sein*, and when by *werden*. Only assiduous practice in noting the distinction as made in German will remove this difficulty. A practical rule which will answer in a great number of cases is this: if, on turning the expression into an active form, the same tense (pres. or pret.) is required, it was passive and requires *werden*; if the tense has to be changed to a perfect (perf. or plup.), *sein* is the proper word. Thus *they were invited* is *sie wurden eingeladen* when it means *I invited them*, but *sie waren eingeladen* when it means *I had invited them*; and *sind* is used in *eingeladen sind sie all'*, because it means *I have invited them*.

2. The German itself sometimes loosely accepts the statement of condition, with the pres. or pret. of *sein*, in lieu of the full passive expression in perf. or pluperfect. Thus, der Fisch war gefangen *the fish had been caught* (for war gefangen worden), sie ist ermordet auf der Londner Straße *she has been murdered, in London street*.

#### REFLEXIVE VERBS.

**283.** A reflexive verb is one that represents the action as exerted by the subject upon itself.

1. Such verbs are formally transitive, since they take an object in the accusative; they all, then, take *haben* as their auxiliary.

2. Logically, or according to their real meaning, they are rather to be regarded as intransitive, since they do not signify an action exerted by the subject upon any object outside of itself: thus, ich fürchte mich (literally *I frighten myself*) *I am afraid* is in idea as much intransitive as ich zittere *I tremble*. And, as noticed above (281), a reflexive verb is often used even in a passive sense, the idea of the endurance of the action on the part of the subject being more conspicuous to the mind than that of its exertion of the action.

**284.** Such a verb, therefore, takes as its object a reflexive pronoun, of the same person and number with its subject.

1. The reflexive pronouns of the first and second persons are the same as the personal; that of the third person is *sich*, in both numbers (155).

2. The reflexive pronoun is placed where any other pronoun would be placed as object of the verb: namely, after the verb in the simple tenses, but before the infinitives and participles.

### 285. *Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb.*

*Sich freuen to rejoice (rejoice or gladden one's self).*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Sich freuen, freute sich, gefreut.*

INDICATIVE.	PRESENT.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
S. 1 <i>ich freue mich</i> 2 <i>du freuest dich</i> 3 <i>er freut sich</i>		<i>ich freue mich</i> <i>du freuest dich</i> <i>er freue sich</i>
P. 1 <i>wir freuen uns</i> 2 <i>ihr freut euch</i> 3 <i>sie freuen sich</i>		<i>wir freuen uns</i> <i>ihr freuet euch</i> <i>sie freuen sich</i>
	PRETERIT.	
S. 1 <i>ich freute mich</i> etc.		<i>ich freute mich</i> etc.
	PERFECT.	
S. 1 <i>ich habe mich gefreut</i> 2 <i>du hast dich gefreut</i> 3 <i>er hat sich gefreut</i>		<i>ich habe mich gefreut</i> <i>du habest dich gefreut</i> <i>er habe sich gefreut</i>
P. 1 <i>wir haben uns gefreut</i> 2 <i>ihr habt euch gefreut</i> 3 <i>sie haben sich gefreut</i>		<i>wir haben uns gefreut</i> <i>ihr habet euch gefreut</i> <i>sie haben sich gefreut</i>
	PLUPERFECT.	
S. 1 <i>ich hatte mich gefreut</i> etc.		<i>ich hätte mich gefreut</i> etc.
	FUTURE.	
S. 1 <i>ich werde mich freuen</i> 2 <i>du wirst dich freuen</i> 3 <i>er wird sich freuen</i>		<i>ich werde mich freuen</i> <i>du werdest dich freuen</i> <i>er werde sich freuen</i>

P 1 wir werden uns freuen  
 2 ihr werdet euch freuen  
 3 sie werden sich freuen

wir werden uns freuen  
 ihr werdet euch freuen  
 sie werden sich freuen

## FUTURE PERFECT.

S. 1 ich werde mich gefreut haben  
 etc.

ich werde mich gefreut haben  
 etc.

## CONDITIONAL.

## CONDITIONAL.

S. 1 ich würde mich freuen  
 etc.

## CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

ich würde mich gefreut haben  
 etc.

## IMPERATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

1  
 2 freue dich, freue du dich  
 3 freue er sich

## PLURAL.

freuen wir uns  
 freut euch, freut ihr euch  
 freuen sie sich

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

sich freuen

## PERFECT.

sich gefreut haben

## PARTICIPLES.

## PRESENT.

sich freuend

## PAST.

sich gefreut

*Remarks.* 1. The reflexive pronoun is not given with the participle in the principal parts, since, that participle being in transitive verbs of a passive character, it can take no object except as used with an auxiliary in forming the compound tenses.

2. The *sich* given with the infinitives and participles is, of course, only representative of the whole body of reflexive pronouns, with all of which those forms, not being restricted to any one person or number, may be construed.

**286.** Any transitive verb in the language may be used reflexively, or take a reflexive pronoun as object; but none are properly regarded as reflexive verbs except—

1. Those which are only used with a reflexive object: as, *sich schämen* *be ashamed*, *sich sehnen* *long*, *sich widersetzen* *resist*.



2. Those which are usually or often used reflexively, and have a special meaning in that use, the object not maintaining its independence, but combining with the verb to form a single conception, the equivalent of an intransitive verb: as, *sich hüten* *beware* (*hüten guard*), *sich stellen* *make believe, pretend* (*stellen place*), *sich verlassen* *rely* (*verlassen quit*).

287. 1. A reflexive verb is thus often related to the simple verb as a corresponding intransitive to a transitive—thus, *freuen* *give pleasure to*, *sich freuen* *feel pleasure*, *fürchten* *fear*, *sich fürchten* *be afraid*. But—

2. A few are intransitive, and of nearly the same meaning, both as simple verbs and as reflexives: thus, *irren* and *sich irren* *be mistaken*, *nahe* and *sich nahe* *draw nigh*, *zanken* and *sich zanken* *quarrel*.

288. 1. An intransitive verb is much more often used transitively (227.2b) with a reflexive object than with one of another character: thus, *er arbeitet und läuft sich tot* [*tot*] *he works and runs himself to death*, *du sollst dich einmal satt essen* *thou shalt eat thyself full* (lit. *satisfied*) *for once*.

2. An intransitive reflexive is sometimes used impersonally instead of an intransitive passive (279.2), especially with adverbs of manner, to express the action itself, without reference to a subject: thus, *es tanzt sich hier gut* *it is good dancing here*, *lebhaft träumt sich's unter diesem Baum* *it is lively dreaming under this tree*, *es sieht sich gar artig in die Kutschen hinein* *it is very pretty looking into the carriages*.

289. 1. A considerable number of reflexive verbs take an additional remoter object (not personal) in the genitive (219.3).

a. The construction of a reflexive verb with the genitive is notably easier than of the same verb used otherwise than reflexively—thus, *ich erinnere mich meines Vergehens* *I remember (remind myself of) my fault*, but *ich erinnere ihn an sein Vergehen* *I remind him of his fault*—yet many of these also frequently make their construction by the aid of a preposition, and many others admit only a prepositional construction: thus, *ich verlasse mich auf ihn* *I rely on him*.

2. Only two or three reflexives take a remoter object in the dative: such are *sich nahe* *approach*, *sich widersetzen* *oppose*, *sich bequemen* *submit*.

**290.** A small number of verbs are used with a reflexive object in the dative, in a manner quite analogous with the true reflexive verbs, and therefore form a class of improper reflexives.

*a.* Most of these require in addition a direct object in the accusative: thus, *ich mache mir kein Unrecht an* *I make no unjust claim*, *ich bilde mir das nicht ein* *I do not imagine that*, *du getrauest dir viel* *thou darest much*. But *sich schmeicheln* *flatter one's self* is intransitive.

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**291.** 1. An impersonal verb, or a verb used impersonally, is one by means of which the action implied in the verb is represented as exerted, without reference to a subject or actor.

2. Such a verb stands always in the third person singular, and either without a subject, or, more usually, with the indefinite subject *es* *it*.

Thus, *es regnet* *it rains*, i. e. *there is rain falling*; *es klopft* *it knocks*, i. e. *there is a knocking*; *am Ganges duftet's und leuchtet's* *on the Ganges are sweet odors and shining sights*; *mir dünkt* *me seems*, i. e. *it seems to me*; *ihn hungerte* *him hungered*, i. e. *he was hungry* (227.2c).

**292.** No verbs in German are absolutely and exclusively impersonal: verbs impersonally used may be classified as follows:

1. Verbs describing the phenomena of nature, which are almost invariably impersonal in virtue of their meaning: thus, *es hagelt* *it hails*, *es hat geschneit* *it has snowed*, *es wird donnern und blitzen* *it will thunder and lighten*.

2. Certain verbs which by the idiom of the language are ordinarily used in an impersonal form: as, *dünken* and *däuchten* [*deuchten*] *seem*, *gelüsten* *desire*, *gelingen* *prove successful*; and a number of verbs signifying personal conditions and feelings, as *hungern* *hunger*, *dürsten* *thirst*, *frieren* *freeze*, *schwindeln* *be giddy*, *grauen* *be horror-struck*, etc.

*a.* All this class of impersonals take an object designating the person affected by their action, or the subject of the feeling or condition they describe: some take an accusative, others a dative, others either an accusative or dative (222.II.1e; 227.2c);

thus, mich gelüſtete nicht nach dem theuren [teuren] Lohn *I should not long for the costly prize*, dürſtet deinen Feind, ſo tränke ihn *if thine enemy is thirsty, give him to drink*, mir grauet vor der Götter Neide *I dread the envy of the gods*, eſ dünkt mir or mich *it seems to me*.

3. Almost any verb, transitive or intransitive, is liable to occur in impersonal use—if transitive, along with its ordinary object.

Thus, wie ſteht's mit den Göttern *how fares it with the gods?* ergeht's euch wohl *if it goes well with you*, eſ fehlte an Holz *there was lack of wood*, plötzlich regt eſ ſich im Rohre *suddenly there is a stir in the reeds*, eſ treibt ihn den Preis zu erwerben *he is impelled to gain the prize*, eſ erfordert eine Drehung *it requires a turning*, eſ bedarf der Annahme nicht *it needs not the assumption*.

a. The very common use of eſ giebt *it gives* (i. e. *there are given or furnished*), in the sense of *there is* or *are*, with following accusative, requires special notice: thus, da gab eſ Schauſelſtühle *there were rocking-chairs there*, eſ giebt viele, die älter ſind, *there are many who are older*, daß eſ weniger Chriſten gäbe als Saracenen *that there were fewer Christians than Saracens*.

4. Impersonal phrases formed with the verbs ſein and werden along with adverbial or adjective adjuncts, describing personal conditions or states of feeling, and always accompanied by a dative designating the person to whom such conditions belong, are very frequent.

Thus, mir iſt ganz anders zu Muth [Mut] *I feel quite otherwise (it is to me quite otherwise in mind)*, ihm war ſo bange *he was so apprehensive*, wie mir wohl iſt *how well I feel!* wie iſt mir denn *how is it with me then?*—nun wird mir immer bänger *now I grow more and more anxious*, wie weh wird mir *how I am beginning to suffer!* je kälter eſ iſt, deſto heißer wird mir *the colder it is, the hotter I become*, ihm iſt's, als ob's ihn hinüberrief *he feels as if he were invited across*.

5. Impersonal expressions are often made from intransitive verbs in a passive or reflexive form (see 279.2, 288.2).

Thus, heute Abend wird getanzt werden *there will be dancing this evening*, eſ ſigt ſich ſchlecht hier *it is disagreeable sitting here*.

293. The impersonal subject eſ is (as is abundantly shown by the examples already given) very often omitted—not, however, with the impersonals describing the phenomena of nature; nor, generally, with verbs which are not of common use in im-

personal form ; but, as a rule, with verbs which are of common impersonal use, whenever the *es* would, by the rules for the arrangement of the sentence, come elsewhere than in its natural place next before the verb.

*a.* That is, especially in the cases mentioned in sections 2, 4, and 5 of the last paragraph, whenever the object of the impersonal verb, or an adjunct qualifying the verb, is placed before it—and the putting of the object first, with consequent omission of *es*, is the more usual construction.

**294.** Since the impersonal verb represents the simple action without reference to an acting subject, such impersonals as take an object, direct or indirect, representing the person or thing affected by the action or condition, are virtually equivalent to passives or intransitives, having that person or thing as their subject—and they often may or must be so rendered in English.

*a.* Many of the examples given above have been so rendered, and those with *sein* or *werden* hardly admit of being treated otherwise: thus, further, *es erfordert eine Drehung* *a turning is required*, *es bedarf der Annahme nicht* *the assumption is not needed*.

**295.** A verb having the indefinite subject *es* *it* is not always to be regarded as impersonal; the *es* sometimes represents indefinitely a subject which is contemplated by the mind, and admits of being definitely stated; yet more often (154.4), *es* is a grammatical subject only, standing for a logical subject which is to be stated later, whether a substantive clause, an infinitive clause, or a simple substantive: thus, *es freut uns, daß Sie hier sind* *it rejoices us that you are here*, *es freut uns, Sie zu sehen* *it rejoices us to see you*, *es freut uns diese Nachricht* *this news rejoices us*.

[EXERCISE 20. PASSIVE, REFLEXIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.]

#### COMPOUND VERBS.

**296.** Verbs in German admit of composition with various other parts of speech—with nouns, adjectives, and adverbs. The importance and frequent use of certain classes of these compounds render it necessary that they be treated here, rather than later, under the general subject of the composition of words.

**297.** Verbs are compounded especially with a class of elements called **PREFIXES**. These are all of kindred

derivation, being originally adverbs, words signifying place or direction; but they have become divided in modern use into two well-marked classes:

1. Prefixes which are also employed as independent parts of speech, adverbs or prepositions. These form a less intimate union with the verb, being separable from it in many of its forms; they are therefore called **SEPARABLE PREFIXES**, and a verb in combination with them is said to be **SEPARABLY COMPOUNDED**.

2. Prefixes which, in their present form, occur only in combination with verbs, and never admit of separation from verbal forms (or verbal derivatives); they are called **INSEPARABLE PREFIXES**, and the verb with them is said to be **INSEPARABLY COMPOUNDED**. But—

3. A few independent prefixes sometimes form with verbs combinations after the manner of the inseparable prefixes, and therefore require to be treated as a class by themselves.

#### VERBS SEPARABLY COMPOUNDED.

**298.** The class of separable prefixes is divided into two subclasses, *simple* and *compound*.

1. The simple separable prefixes (including those sometimes also used as inseparable—see **308** etc.) are:

ab off, down	fort forth, away	ob over, on
an on, at	gegen against	über over
auf up, upon	in in	um around
aus out, from	heim home	unter under
bei by, beside, with	her toward one	vor before
da or } there, at	hin from one	wider or } against or
dar }	hinter behind	wieder } again
durch through	mit with	weg away
ein in, into	nach after	zu to
empor up, aloft	nieder down	zurück back
entzwei in two, apart		zusammen together

2. The compound separable prefixes are—

a. Combinations of many of the above with one another, especially with the words of more general direction or place her, hin, da or dar, vor: as heran, hinan, daran, voran,

b. One or two combinations of the above with preceding inseparable prefixes : namely, *bevor before*, *entgegen against* (this, however, is really derived from *in=gegen*).

c. *Dazwischen between* (*zwischen* by itself is not used as a prefix), and *hinten behind* (contracted from *hinten an*).

d. Note that, of those given in the list above, several are really compound adverbs (*empor, entwei, zurück, zusammen*), although not made up of two different prefixes.

### 299. *Conjugation of Verbs compounded with Separable Prefixes.*

The conjugation of a compound verb is in general the same with that of the simple verb : only one or two matters regarding the treatment of the prefix require notice :

1. The prefix stands before the verb in the infinitive and both participles, but after it in all the other simple forms.

a. In the former case, the prefix is written with the verb as a single word ; in the latter case it is, of course, separated from it ; and, if the verb be followed by other adjuncts—as objects, adverbs, etc.—the prefix usually and regularly stands last, at the end of the whole clause : thus, from *anfangen begin*, *ich fange an I begin*, *ich fing diesen Morgen früh zu studiren [studieren] an I began early this morning to study*.

b. But if, by the rules for the arrangement of the sentence (434), the verb is transposed, or removed to the end, it comes, even in the simple forms, to stand after its prefix, and is then written as one word with it : thus, *als ich diesen Morgen früh zu studiren [studieren] anfing as I began to study early this morning*.

2. The ordinary sign of the past participle, *ge*, is inserted between the separable prefix and the root ; also the sign of the infinitive, *zu*, whenever used.

Thus, *angefangen begun*, *anzufangen to begin* : in the latter case, as the example shows, the verb is written along with its infinitive sign and prefix, as one word.

3. The prefix has the principal accent.

**300. Examples:** anfangen *begin* (II.3), herannähen *draw nigh*.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

anfangen, fing an, angefangen herannähen, nähte heran, herangenäht

### INDICATIVE.

**PRESENT, *I begin* etc.**

S. 1 fange an  
2 fängst an  
3 fängt an

P. 1 fangen an  
2 fangt an  
3 fangen an

**PRETERIT, *I began* etc.**

S. 1 fing an

**PERFECT, *I have begun* etc.**

S. 1 habe angefangen

**PLUPERFECT, *I had begun* etc.**

S. 1 hatte angefangen

**FUTURE, *I shall begin* etc.**

S. 1 werde anfangen

**FUT. PERF., *I shall have begun* etc.**

S. 1 werde angefangen haben

***I draw nigh* etc.**

nahe heran  
näht heran  
näht heran

nähen heran  
näht heran  
nähen heran

***I drew nigh* etc.**

nähte heran

***I have drawn nigh* etc.**

bin herangenäht

***I had drawn nigh* etc.**

war herangenäht

***I shall draw nigh* etc.**

werde herannähen

***I shall have drawn nigh* etc.**

werde herangenäht sein

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

**PRESENT, *I may begin* etc.**

S. 1 fange an  
etc., etc.

***I may draw nigh* etc.**

nahe heran  
etc., etc.

### CONDITIONAL.

**CONDITIONAL, *I should begin* etc.**

S. 1 würde anfangen  
etc., etc.

***I should draw nigh* etc.**

würde herannähen  
etc., etc.

### IMPERATIVE.

***begin* etc.**

S. 2 fange an, fange du an  
3 fange er an  
etc.

***draw nigh* etc.**

nahe heran, nahe du heran  
nahe er heran  
etc.

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT, *to begin*

anfangen, anzufangen

*to draw nigh*

herannahen, heranzunahen

PERFECT, *to have begun*

angefangen haben

*to have drawn nigh*

herangenahet sein

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, *beginning*

anfangend

*drawing nigh*

herannahend

PAST, *begun*

angefangen

*drawn nigh*

herangenahet

301. 1. The meaning of the simple verb is often greatly altered by its composition with a prefix, as in anfangen *begin*, literally *take hold on*: in other cases, each member of the compound retains its independent meaning nearly unchanged.

2. When the combination is of the latter character, no absolute line is to be established dividing the employment of the prefix as prefix from its use as independent adverb; and there are many instances in which the prefix (especially a compound one) is treated in both ways indifferently, and either written with the verb or separated from it; thus, wo man mager hinein geht und fett heraus kommt (or, hineingeht, herauskommt) *where one goes in lean and comes out fat*.

## [EXERCISE 21. VERBS SEPARABLY COMPOUNDED.]

## VERBS INSEPARABLY COMPOUNDED.

302. The inseparable prefixes are be, ent (or emp), er, ge, ver, and zer.

a. These prefixes are, most of them, traceably descended from those of the other class: their original form and present office will be explained below (307).

303. They remain in close combination with the verb to which they are attached, through its whole conjugation, forming with it, as their name denotes, an inseparable combination, of which the radical syllable, and not the prefix, receives the accent. Hence—



1. The sign of the infinitive, *zu*, is put before the combination (and separated in writing from it), as if it were a simple verb.

2. The sign of the participle, *ge*, is omitted altogether.

*a.* Since, as was pointed out above (243.3*a*), this is never prefixed to an unaccented syllable. Moreover, the *ge* is itself an inseparable prefix, and no verbal form is ever allowed to have two inseparable prefixes.

**304.** Examples: *beginnen begin* (I.2), *verreisen journey away*.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*beginnen, begann, begonnen*

*verreisen, verreiste, verreist*

#### INDICATIVE.

*beginne*

*verreise*

*begann*

*verreiste*

*habe begonnen*

*bin verreist*

*hatte begonnen*

*war verreist*

*werde beginnen*

*werde verreisen*

*werde begonnen haben*

*werde verreist sein*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

*beginne*

*verreise*

*begänne or begönne*

*verreisete*

*etc., etc.*

*etc., etc.*

#### CONDITIONAL.

*würde beginnen*

*würde verreisen*

*etc., etc.*

*etc., etc.*

#### IMPERATIVE.

*beginne*

*verreise*

#### INFINITIVES.

*beginnen, zu beginnen*

*verreisen, zu verreisen*

*begonnen haben*

*verreist sein*

#### PARTICIPLES.

*beginnend*

*verreisend*

*begonnen*

*verreist*

305. A few inseparably compounded verbs are further compounded with a separable prefix. Such combine the peculiarities of both modes of conjugation, taking no *ge* in the participle, and interposing *zu* of the infinitive between the two prefixes: thus, *anerkennen recognize*, *anzuerkennen*, *erkannte an*, *anerkannt*.

a. Some of these, however—as *anbetreffen*, *auferstehen*, *auslesen*, *einberleiben*, *vorenthalten*—are never used except in such verbal forms, or in such arrangements of the sentence, as require the separable prefix to stand before the verb: thus, *als Christus auferstand when Christ arose*; but not *Christus erstand auf Christ arose*.

306. No verb separably compounded is ever further compounded with an inseparable prefix.

a. The words sometimes given as examples of such composition are really derivatives from nouns: thus, *verabscheuen regard with horror* is not from a verb *abscheuen*, but from the noun *Abſcheu horror*; *beauftragen commission*, in like manner, is from *Auftrag an errand, charge*; *benachrichtigen inform* from *Nachricht news, information*, and so on.

### 307. *Derivation and Uses of the Inseparable Prefixes.*

1. The inseparable prefixes are elements which have become greatly changed, both in form and in meaning, from their originals, and have acquired such importance in the system of word-formation as to call for special notice in the grammar.

a. While they have in part a distinct and clearly definable force in the compounds they form, they in part also modify in a very general and indefinite way the meaning of the verbs to which they are attached; and their spheres of use variously approach, and even sometimes overlap, one another. Only their leading applications will be stated below.

b. These prefixes are also freely used in forming derivative verbs from other parts of speech (see 405.III); such derivatives are conjugated in the same manner as the inseparably compounded verbs.

2. *Be* is the same with our own prefix *be*, and of kindred force with the latter; it comes ultimately from the separable prefix and independent preposition *bei by*.

a. Prefixed to an intransitive, it adds the meaning of *upon*, *about*, or the like, converting the intransitive into a transitive:

thus, *flagen moan*, *beflagen bemoan*, *singen sing*, *befingen sing about*, *besing*.

b. Prefixed to a transitive, it changes the direction of the verbal action, converting into a direct object what was only indirectly or remotely the object of the simple verb: thus, *malen paint a picture*, *bemalen paint over* (as a wall), *rauben steal* (something from some one), *berauben rob* (some one of something).

c. Rarely, it only slightly modifies the meaning of a verb, usually in the way of a strengthening or extension of its action: thus, *beden and bededen cover*; *drängen and bedrängen crowd, oppress*; *harren and beharren wait, persist*; *stehen and bestehen stand, subsist*.

d. Some of its compounds are restricted to a reflexive use: thus, *sich befinden find one's self, be*; *sich betragen bear one's self, behave*.

3. *Ent* was earlier *ant*, in which form it appears in *Antwort answer* and *Antlitz countenance*; it is by origin an adverb meaning *against*, related to our *and* and the prefix of *answer* (*andswarian*), etc. In combination with three verbs beginning with *f*, it has taken, by assimilation, the form *emp*: thus, *empfangen*, *empfehlen*, *empfinden*.

a. Its primitive meaning appears in a few compounds, as *entsprechen correspond, answer*; *empfangen receive*.

b. Its leading idea is now that of *out*; it denotes removal, separation, deprivation, sometimes even negation: thus, *entgehen, entkommen, entfliehen escape*; *entziehen take away*; *entlassen let off, release*; *entfagen renounce*; *entweihen desecrate*.

c. It sometimes indicates transition into a condition: as, *entbrennen take fire*, *entstehen come into being*.

4. *Er* is the same word with the prefix *ur* forming nouns (411.4), and means by origin *forth, out*, being related to *aus out*, and probably ultimately identical with it.

a. It has most nearly its primitive force in such verbs as *erziehen educate, bring up*, *errichten erect*, *erschrecken startle*.

b. It often signifies a passing into a condition, a becoming, the beginning of an action: as, *erscheinen (shine forth) appear*, *ertönen sound forth*, *erzittern fall a trembling*.

c. It strengthens the verbal idea, often adding an implication of accomplishment or attainment: as, *erschöpfen exhaust*, *ertragen endure*, *erleben experience*, *ersuchen request*, *erfinden invent*.

d. Hence (its prevailing office in the production of new compounds), it signifies an acquisition by means of the action expressed by the simple verb: thus, *erjagen obtain by hunting*, *ertrogen get by defiance*, *ertanzen bring on by dancing*.

5. Ge is believed to have had at first the sense of *with, together*, which sense appears, somewhat dimly, in a few of the compounds it forms: as, *gefrieren become solidified by cold*, *gerinnen coagulate*, *gefallen (fall in with) please*, *gestehen (stand by) confess*. But this sense has become so generalized and effaced, and its applications are so various and indistinct, that it would be in vain to attempt to classify them.

a. The adoption of this prefix as regular characteristic of past participles has been already referred to (243.3c) as comparatively modern, and hardly admitting of explanation.

6. a. Ver is historically the same word as *vor forward, forth*, and its leading idea is that of *forth, away*: as in *verdrängen crowd out*, *verjagen chase away*, *verfaufen bargain away, sell*, *verreisen journey off*, *verspielen lose at play*.

b. Hence, as intimating removal through the action of the verb to which it is attached, it comes further to imply loss, detriment, destruction: as in *verbrauchen wear out*, *verderben ruin*;—or a removal from what should be, the production of an untoward effect: as in *verführen lead astray*, *verrücken put out of place*;—or the commission of error: as in *verrechnen misreckon*, *verkennen mistake*;—or a reversal of action: as in *verbieten forbid*, *verachten despise*.

c. On the other hand, it signifies a complete working-out of the action of the verb: as in *verbluten bleed to death*, *verbrennen burn up*;—which may imply a cessation of the action, as in *verblühen blossom out, fade, wither*; or, more usually, a strengthening of the action, as in *versinken sink away*, *vertilgen blot out*, *verschließen shut up*, *verbinden unite*;—and this intensive force in a few cases makes transitive, as *verlachen deride*, *versehlen miss, fail of*.

7. Zer represents an older *dis*, which is related to the Latin *dis*, and means, like the latter, *apart, asunder*.

a. Accordingly, it either intensifies the meaning of verbs which contain the idea of dissolution, of going to pieces or reducing to pieces, or it adds that idea: thus, *zerbrechen break asunder*, *zer Sprengen blow to pieces*, *zerfallen fall apart*, *zerrinnen become dissolved*.

## PREFIXES SEPARABLE OR INSEPARABLE.

**308.** A few prefixes, belonging properly to the separable class (being all of them in use also as independent parts of speech), nevertheless sometimes form compounds after the manner of inseparables.

**309.** These prefixes are—

<i>durch</i> <i>through</i>	<i>über</i> <i>over</i>	<i>unter</i> <i>under</i>
<i>hinter</i> <i>behind</i>	<i>um</i> <i>about</i>	<i>wider</i> { <i>against</i>
		<i>wieder</i> { <i>again</i>

*a.* *Wider* and *wieder* are the same word, but differently spelt, to indicate a difference of meaning. All verbs compounded with *wider* are inseparable; all but one or two compounded with *wieder* are separable.

**310.** In verbs separably compounded with these prefixes, both members of the compound have their own full meaning, hardly modified by the combination; the inseparable compounds often take an altered or figurative sense.

*a.* Thus, as separable compounds, *durchdringen* *crowd through*, *hintergehen* *go behind*, *übersetzen* *set across*, *umgehen* *go around*, *revolve*, *unterwerfen* *throw under*, *wiederholen* *fetch back*;—but, as inseparable compounds, *durchdringen* *penetrate*, *permeate*, *hintergehen* *deceive*, *übersetzen* *translate*, *umgehen* *evade*, *unterwerfen* *subjugate*, *wiederholen* *repeat*. Yet the difference is not often so marked as in these examples, and in a host of cases the two classes of compounds are distinguished by only a slight shade of meaning, if at all.

**311.** The compounds, of either class, are accented and conjugated according to the rules already given. That is to say—

1. The separable compounds are accented on the prefix; they put the prefix before the verbal form in the infinitive and participles, but after it in other cases; they take the signs of participle and infinitive between the prefix and the root.

Thus, from *durchdringen* *crowd through* come *durchzubringen*, *bringe durch*, *drang durch*, *bin durchgedrungen*, *werde durchdringen*, *durchgedrungen*.

2. The inseparable compounds are accented on the radical syllable, reject the *ge* of the participle, and put *zu* of the infinitive before the whole combination.

Thus, from *durchdrin'gen penetrate* come *zu durchdrin'gen*, *durchdrin'ge*, *durchdrang'*, *habe durchdrun'gen*, *werde durchdrin'gen*, *durchdrun'gen*.

#### OTHER COMPOUND VERBS.

**312.** Verbs compounded with other adverbs than those already mentioned, or with nouns or adjectives, fall into two classes:

1. True or close compounds, in which the first member has become an integral part of the combination, and the whole is treated as a simple verb.

Thus, *handhaben handle, manage*, *zu handhaben*, *handhabte*, *gehandhabt*; *wahrsagen prophesy*, *zu wahrsagen*, *wahrsagte*, *gewahrsagt*; *liebfoßen caress*, *zu liebfoßen*, *liebfoßte*, *geliebfoßt*.

2. Loose or false compounds, phrases, written together as one word, in which the first member is treated as any such word limiting the verb would be, and the combination is conjugated like a verb separably compounded.

Thus, *stattfinden take place*, *stattzufinden*, *fand statt*, *stattgefunden*; *mohlthun benefit*, *mohlzuthun*, *that mohl*, *mohlgethan*; *fehlſchlagen miscarry*, *fehlzuſchlagen*, *ſchlug fehl*, *fehlgeſchlagen*; *loſſprechen ab-solve*, *loſſzupprechen*, *ſprach loſ*, *loſgeſprochen*.

a. If a verb of the former class has not the accent on its first syllable, it loses (243.3a) the *ge* of the past participle: thus, *ſrohloſ'en*, *ſrohloſt*.

b. From the same class are to be carefully distinguished certain verbs which have the aspect of compounds, but are in fact derivatives from compound nouns: such are *frühſtücken to breakfast* (from *Frühſtück breakfast*), *rathſchlagen [ratſchlagen] consult* (from *Rathſchlag [Ratſchlag] consultation*).

**313.** *Miß* and *poß* are treated in part as proper prefixes, and form both separable and inseparable compounds, which are accented and conjugated like those made with *durch*, etc. (308-11).

But *miß* is very rarely treated as a separable, and only by the insertion of *zu* and *ge* in the infinitive and participle: thus, *mißzuverſtehen*, *mißgegangen*, but not *ich verſtehe miß*, etc.; and some verbs take a prefixed *ge* in the participle: thus, *gemäßbraucht*,

gemäßhandelt, etc. *Voll* forms five or six inseparable compounds, as *vollbringen* *accomplish*, *vollziehen* *execute*, and a number of loose separables, as *vollgießen* *pour full*.

[EXERCISE 22. VERBS INSEPARABLY COMPOUNDED, ETC.]

ADJUNCTS OF THE VERB.

**314.** A verb, in a proper verbal form (that is to say, excluding the infinitives and participles: see 339, 349), always stands as the bare predicate of a sentence; and all that constitutes the complete predicate is brought in in the way of modifying adjuncts to the verb, variously limiting and qualifying its action.

*a.* The proper verbal forms, those possessing the characteristic of *person*, are often called its “finite” forms: they are better called its *personal* forms, and this expression will be used here.

*b.* Even in the compound tenses of the verb itself, the rank of *verb* belongs in strictness only to the personal auxiliary, the other parts being adjuncts of the latter: thus, in *ich habe ihn ge-fränkt* *I have pained him*, *habe* is the bare predicate, and *ge-fränkt* is an attribute of the object, as much as *finde* and *fränk*, respectively, in *ich finde ihn fränk* *I find him sick*; *ich werde ge-fränkt* *I am pained*, *ich bin gegangen* *I am (have) gone* are analogous, in like manner, with *ich werde fränk* *I become sick*, *ich bin weg* *I am away*; and *ich werde ge-fränkt worden sein* *I shall have been pained* is made up by the addition of successive modifying adjuncts to *werde*, each adjunct after the first being (see 348.2) regularly prefixed to the one which it further limits; the phrase means literally *I am entering (werde) into a state of having (sein) become (worden) pained (ge-fränkt)*. That the auxiliaries have more or less completely the inferior value of copulas, connecting the subject with the chiefly significant part of the predicate, does not alter their formal or grammatical character.

*c.* No personal form of a verb has the value of adjunct to another personal form; there are as many separate sentences as there are separate verbs. All the other parts of speech (excepting the conjunctions: see 382.*a*) may enter, by connection with the verb as its adjuncts, into the relation of parts of the predicate of a sentence.

**315.** *Object of a Verb.* Most verbs may take an *object*—that is to say, may be followed by a noun (or its equivalent) in an

oblique case, designating the person or thing upon which, or as affecting which, the action which it describes is exerted by the subject.

1. A "transitive" verb takes its object in the accusative case; and such is called a *direct object*: thus, er hat einen Hut, und trägt ihn *he has a hat, and wears it*: see 227.

a. A few transitive verbs are followed by two accusatives: see 227.3.

2. Many "intransitive" verbs take an *indirect object* in the genitive or dative case: thus, ich spare meines Feindes I *spare my enemy*, er folgt mir *he follows me*: see 219, 222.II.

3. Many verbs, besides their direct object, take a *remoter object* in the dative or genitive, indicating the person or thing affected less immediately by the action of the subject upon the object, or further defining that action: thus, ich raube diesem Manne das Geld I *steal the money from this man*, ich beraube ihn seines Geldes I *rob him of his money*: see 219, 222.I.

**316. Predicate Noun or Adjective.** A noun or adjective is called predicate, if it is brought by the verb into connection with a noun or its equivalent (either the subject or the direct object of the verb), as limiting or qualifying that noun.

1. a. A predicate noun stands in the nominative, relating to and qualifying the subject of the verb, after sein *be*, werden *become*, bleiben *continue*, scheinen, dünken, and dächten [*deuchten*] *seem*, and heißen *be called*; also, with the passive of the verbs that take a noun in the accusative as objective predicate: see 213.

These are verbs of incomplete predication, requiring a complement. Especially sein *be* is the ordinary simple connective of a subject with its predicated quality, and is therefore called the *copula*.

b. After a few verbs—of calling, regarding, and the like—a predicate noun stands in the accusative, brought by the verb into relation with its object: this is called an *objective predicate*: thus, er nannte mich seinen Freund *he called me his friend*: see 227.3b,c.

2. a. A predicate adjective is used after the same verbs as a predicate noun: thus, er ist und bleibt mir treu, und wird nie untreu werden *he is and continues faithful to me, and will never become unfaithful*.



b. With verbs of more complete predication, or of full predicative force, an adjective is often used in a manner which it is convenient to distinguish as *adverbial predicate* (116.1b): thus, die Kinder standen stumm *the children stood silent*, die Stimme strömte himmlisch hell *the voice poured forth heareenly clear*, wird's auch schön zu Tage kommen *will it also come forth beautiful?*

c. Some verbs are followed by an adjective as *objective predicate* (116.1c), relating to and qualifying their object: thus, sie ringen die Hände wund *they wring their hands sore*, die ich gerne dreifach biete *which I gladly offer threefold*, sie stellt sich überrascht *she feigns herself surprised*, ich fühle meine Kräfte höher *I feel my powers higher*, er hält ihn warm *he holds him warm*.

This predicative construction is much more common with adjectives than with nouns, which generally require *als as*, *für for*, *zu to*, or the like, before them: compare 227.3c.

**317. Adverb.** The verbal idea is limited by an adverb, or by more than one, in the most various manner, in respect to time, place, occasion, manner, end, and so on. See Adverbs, 361 etc.

Thus, ich gehe jetzt *I am going now*, er wohnt hier *he lives here*, sie sprechen gut *they speak well*, du bist heute morgen sehr spät erwacht *you woke very late this morning*.

**318. Prepositional Phrase.** A phrase composed of a preposition along with the word (generally a noun, with or without adjuncts) which it governs, and the nature of whose relation to the verbal action it defines, is a very frequent adjunct to the verb, taking the place of object, predicate, or adverb.

a. As direct object in place of an accusative, such a phrase can hardly stand: but it may be used for a genitive object—as, ich warte auf ihn, for ich warte seiner *I wait for him*; for a dative object—as, er folgt mir, or er folgt auf mich *he follows me*; yet more freely for a remoter object along with a direct object—as, ich freue mich über dieses, for ich freue mich dessen *I rejoice at this*, ich schreibe einen Brief an ihn, for ich schreibe ihm einen Brief *I write a letter to him*.

b. Examples of prepositional phrases with predicate value are es war von entscheidender Wichtigkeit *it was of decisive importance*, die Kranken blieben in der Mitte *the sick remained in the midst*, sie erwählten ihn zum Kaiser *they chose him emperor*, dies wird zum Ausdruck der Seele *this becomes an expression of the soul*.

c. Adverbial prepositional phrases are *der Vogel spielt im Laube* *the bird plays in the foliage*, *wir bergen den Samen in der Erde* *we hide the seed in the earth's bosom*, *er rief mit lauter Stimme* *he cried with a loud voice*.

### 319. Order of the verbal adjuncts.

1. In the normal or regular arrangement of the sentence, all the adjuncts of a personal verb are placed after it.

a. For the *inverted* order of arrangement, in which one of the adjuncts is frequently placed before the verb it modifies, and for the *transposed* order, in which the personal verb is placed after all its adjuncts, see the rules given for the order of the sentence, below, 431, 434.

2. When the verb is modified by two or more adjuncts, the general rule is, that one which is more closely combined in idea with the verb, and more essentially modifies its predicative meaning, is placed further from it than one of a more external and accessory character. Hence—

a. The infinite or participle, in a compound verbal form, stands at the end of the sentence: thus, *sie hatte ihre Zähne scharf in seine Finger gesetzt* *she had sunk her teeth sharply into his fingers*, *ihr werdet euch so blutig eurer Macht nicht überheben* *you will not presume so cruelly upon your power*.

b. An infinitive dependent upon any verb, modal or causative auxiliary or other, stands in like manner at the end of the sentence: thus, *ich will vor ihr mich niederwerfen* *I will humble myself before her*.

c. A separable prefix belonging to the verb takes the same place: thus, *sie sah dabei recht finster und unwillig aus* *she looked at the same time right gloomy and out of humor*.

d. Any part of speech compounded with a verb after the manner of a separable prefix, or forming with it a verbal phrase analogous with such a compound, takes the same place: thus, *ich nahm nichts mehr von der hinter mir liegenden Ebene wahr* *I no longer saw anything of the plain that lay behind me*.

e. Of two cases governed by the same verb, the second accusative (227.3) is placed after that which is the more immediate object of the verb; the genitive (219.2,3) follows the accusative; the dative (222.I.1) usually precedes the accusative (except when this is a pronoun or emphatic).

f. Of more than one adverb qualifying the same verb, an adverb of time ordinarily precedes one of place, and both are

placed before one of manner or degree: thus, *er arbeitet immer fleißig* *he always works industriously*, *du wohnst hier sehr bequem* *you live here very comfortably*. Hence, also, the adverb of negation, *nicht*, if it modifies the general assertion of the sentence, stands last; but if its negative force applies to some particular adjunct of the verb, it is placed next before that adjunct.

3. The rules as above stated are subject to various modification under the influence of accent or emphasis, or of euphony.

*a.* Any adjunct of the verb may be transferred to a position other than its proper one (usually later), for the purpose of being made more prominent.

*b.* Since a pronoun is, in general, a less significant and emphatic word than a noun, usage has established the rule that—

A pronoun immediately dependent on the verb (not governed by a preposition), whether as direct or indirect object, comes first among the verbal adjuncts.

Among the pronouns, a personal pronoun comes before a demonstrative, the briefer personal pronouns, especially *es* *it*, before the longer, and the reflexives first of all.

4. Prepositional phrases take, in general, the position belonging to the part of speech whose equivalent they are; but they are more liable than single words to change place for euphonic reasons.

5. The natural connections of the different verbal adjuncts are regarded in the arrangement of the sentence; those which affect one another, and exert a combined influence upon the verbal action, being put together.

6. The above are only the leading principles of the arrangement of words in a sentence. To follow out their application in detail, and illustrate their joint and mutual action, and the more or less irregular and arbitrary modifications which they admit, cannot here be attempted.

## USES OF THE FORMS OF CONJUGATION.

### PERSON AND NUMBER.

**320.** In general, the verb is of the same person and number as its subject.

*a.* Being, of course, of the first or second person only when its subject is a personal pronoun of those persons respectively, since all other words are of the third person.

### 321. *Special Rules respecting Person.*

1. When the same verb has subjects of more than one person, it is of the first person (plural) if either of its subjects is of the first person; otherwise, of the second: thus, *ich und du find hier I and thou are here*, *du und er glaubt es beide nicht you and he both disbelieve it*.

2. After a relative (*der*) referring to an antecedent of the first or second person, the verb is in the third, unless the personal pronoun is repeated after the relative (compare 181): thus, *du, der dem Basilisk den Mordblick gab thou who gavest to the basilisk his deadly glance* (but *du, der du . . . . gabst*).

### 322. *Special Rules respecting Number.*

1. A verb having for its subject more than one singular noun is put in the plural.

*a.* To this rule there are frequent exceptions—either as the several subjects are regarded as combined into a single idea; or as, when preceding or following an enumeration of single subjects, the verb, by a familiar license of speech, is suffered to agree with the one nearest it alone; or as the verb is in fact understood with other than the one subject with which it agrees: thus, *hinter mir liegt nur Kummer und Elend behind me lies only sorrow and misery*, *Fels und Meer wird fortgerissen rock and sea are hurried onward*, *es begleite durch Leben und Sterben uns Lied und Liebe und Wein may song and love and wine accompany us through life and death*, *Lügen, Morden, Stehlen und Ehebrechen hat überhand genommen lying, murder, theft, and adultery have become prevalent*.

2. A collective noun in the singular takes a verb in the singular much more strictly than in English.

*a.* Exceptions are only such expressions as *ein Paar two or three*, *eine Menge a number*, *ein Duzend a dozen*, which are frequently used with plural nouns (ordinarily construed appositionally with them: see 216.5*a*), and have gained a plural value by association: thus, *in welchem ein Paar Vögel hin und wieder hüpfen in which a couple of birds hop back and forth*, *im Hofe spielten ein Paar der munteren Kinder in the yard were playing two or three of the merry children*, *ein Paar sind gewöhnlich voraus a couple are generally in front*.

3. After the impersonal and indefinite subjects *es*, *dies*, *das*, *was*, *welches*, etc., the verb is put in the plural if a following

predicate noun is plural: thus, *es sind unser zwei there are two of us, daß sind meine Freunde those are my friends.*—So also occasionally in a case like *die Frucht dieses Baumes sind kleine Beeren the fruit of this tree is small berries.*

4. Out of exaggerated respectfulness, the plural verb is sometimes (the usage is happily going out of vogue) construed with a singular title, or name and title: as, *belieben der Herr diesen Sessel zu erproben may the gentleman be pleased to try this purse, Seine Majestät der König haben geruht his majesty the king has been graciously pleased to . . . , Herr Doctor wurden da catechisirt the doctor was put through his catechism there.*

### MODE AND TENSE.

#### *Indicative.*

**323.** The use of the indicative mode, in its various tenses, corresponds upon the whole pretty closely in German and in English. The principal points of difference will be stated below.

**324.** *Indicative Present.* 1. The German present—e. g. *ich liebe*—answers to the three English forms of the present *I love, I do love, and I am loving*: the shades of difference among these different values are either left to be inferred from the context, or are expressed or intimated by adjuncts to the verb or by verbal phrases.

2. In German, as in English and French, the present is often substituted for the preterit in lively narration: thus, *ich hielt stille, und sah mich nach dem Stande der Sonne um. Indem ich nun so emporblide, sehe ich zc. I stopped, therefore, and looked about me for the position of the sun. While, now, I am thus looking upward, I see etc.*

3. In expressing a past action or state which is continued so as to be present also (or in signifying what has been and still is), the German, like the French, indicates the present part and leaves the past to be inferred, while the English does the contrary: thus, *sind sie schon lange hier have you been (are you) here already a long time? er schläft seit fünf Jahren unter dem Schnee he has been (is) sleeping for five years beneath the snow.*

4. The German present, much more often than the English, is used in the sense of a future: thus, *wie fang' ich's an? ich dreh' mich um, so ist's gethan how shall I set about it? I will turn myself about; that will fetch it; die Güter, die er dereinst erbt the property which he will one day inherit.*

This future use of the present is a direct inheritance from a former condition of Germanic language (as represented to us by the oldest Germanic dialects), in which the present and future meanings were both habitually expressed by the present tense, the later auxiliary futures, as *I shall or will love* *ich werde lieben*, not having been yet brought into use.

**325. Indicative Preterit.** 1. The preterit answers to our own simple past tense, in its three forms *I loved, I did love, I was loving*—all expressed, without distinction, by *ich liebte*.

2. As the present for the perfect (324.3), so the preterit is sometimes used for our pluperfect, to express what, at a given time, had been and was still: thus, *waren Sie schon lange da* *had you been (were you) there long already?*

3. The distribution of the expression of past time between the preterit and perfect is not precisely the same in German as in English. As (326.2) the German perfect often stands where we should use the preterit, so the contrary is also sometimes the case: thus, *ihr hörtet, welch schreckliches Gericht des Herrn über Jerusalem erging* *you have heard what a terrible judgment of the Lord has come upon Jerusalem*.

**326. Indicative Perfect.** 1. The perfect answers in the main to our perfect, expressing completed action, or action in the past with implied reference to the present, as no longer continuing: thus, *ich habe geliebt* *I have loved, or have been loving*.

2. But the perfect is not infrequently used where we employ the preterit; the perfect is rather the tense by which something is simply asserted as true, while the preterit implies a connection with other past events in continuous narration, or a personal participation of the speaker, as spectator or joint actor.

Thus, *Gott hat die Welt erschaffen* *God created the world (it was God who etc.)*, *ich bin gestern in der Kirche gewesen* *I was at church yesterday*, *unser Freund ist neulich gestorben* *our friend died lately*; —but *Gott erschuf die Welt in sechs Tagen, und ruhte am siebenten* *God created the world in six days, and rested on the seventh*, *ich war in der Kirche, wo Herr N. eine vortreffliche Predigt hielt* *I was at church, where Mr. N. preached an admirable sermon*, *unser Vater starb gestern* *our father died yesterday (in our presence)*.

a. Something of the same distinction appears also in English usage, and it is impossible to explain fully the difference in idiom between the two languages without a great deal of

detailed illustration. Moreover, there are many cases in either tongue where both tenses might be employed with equal propriety.

3. For the present in place of our perfect, see 324.3; for the perfect in place of the future, see 328.3b.

**327. Indicative Pluperfect.** The pluperfect in German, as in English, expresses action already finished at a time in the past either defined or contemplated by the speaker: thus, *ich hatte geliebt* *I had loved or been loving*.

**328. Indicative Future and Future Perfect.** 1. These tenses ordinarily agree in use with their English correspondents: thus, *ich werde lieben* *I shall love or be loving*, *ich werde geliebt haben* *I shall have loved or been loving*.

a. They express simple futurity, that which is going to be; and are carefully to be distinguished from the modal auxiliary forms composed of the infinitive with *mögen* and *sollen* (257–8), which more or less distinctly imply an assent or intent, and a propriety or obligation.

2. The futures are sometimes used to indicate a claimed probability, or to express a conjecture: thus, *daß wird wohl Ihr Bruder sein* *that is your brother, is it not?* *er wird nicht lange dort geblieben sein* *I presume he did not stay there long*.

3. a. In German, as in English, the perfect is often employed where the future perfect would be logically more correct, the implication of futurity being sufficiently made by the context: thus, *ich werde kommen, sobald ich meinen Brief geschrieben habe* *I shall come as soon as I have written my letter* (not *geschrieben haben werde shall have written*).

b. A present or perfect is occasionally substituted for a future, by a figure of speech, to indicate the certainty of what is to take place: thus, *jene hat gelebt, wenn ich dies Blatt aus meinen Händen gebe* *she has ceased to live, if I let this paper go out of my hands*, *steh', oder du bist des Todes* *stand, or thou art a dead man!*

c. For the frequent use of a present instead of a future tense, see 324.4.

#### [EXERCISE 27. USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.]

##### *Subjunctive.*

**329.** The subjunctive mode, which has almost passed out of use in English, still continues in full currency in German,



having, if the two "conditional" tenses be included with it (as they are in fact subjunctive, both in form and character), more than a corresponding tense for every tense of the indicative. In some of its offices (the optative, potential, conditional) it answers to what is left of our own subjunctive, and to the compounded tenses (with the auxiliaries *may*, *might*, *would*, and *should*) by which we have in part supplied the place of the latter; in other offices (especially in indirect statement, 333) there is in English hardly anything analogous, though the classical tongues present similar constructions in abundance.

**330.** The subjunctive is the mode of possibility, contingency, subjectivity, in contradistinction to the indicative as the mode of actuality, direct assertion, objectiveness.

*a.* The subjunctive of the Germanic languages is by origin an optative, or mode expressing wish or desire, and there was another mode more properly known as subjunctive. In the Greek, both still subsist together; but in German, as in Latin, the two have become one, which combines, with various modifications and restrictions, their several offices.

*b.* Not every statement of a hypothetical or contingent character requires the subjunctive: that character is often sufficiently intimated by the radical meaning of the verb used, or of the adverbs or conjunctions employed with it; the cases in which this mood is availed of are those to be explained below.

*c.* Even in the cases detailed, there is considerable freedom of choice between a subjunctive and an indicative expression, depending on the degree of contingency or reality of the implied conception, the difference being sometimes so slight as to be hardly definable; and an indicative is occasionally used where analogy would lead us to expect a subjunctive, as if, by a figure of speech, to give a character of actuality to what is in itself properly contingent. It is not possible to say, as in some other languages, that certain grammatical constructions, or certain particles, require or "govern" the subjunctive.

*d.* In the subjunctive, the distinctions of tense are of only subordinate value, and are even to some extent effaced. The tenses do not, therefore, require to be separately treated.

### **331.** *The Subjunctive as Optative.*

1. The present subjunctive is frequently used in an *optative* sense, as expressing a wish, request, or direction on the part of the speaker.



Thus, *gesegnet sei er alle Zeit blessed be he ever, lang lebe der König, es freue sich, wer da . . . . long live the king! let him rejoice who . . . ., bräutliches Leinen legen wir dem Thor an let us dress Thor in bridal vestments, gesteh' ich es nur only let me confess it.*

a. This use is limited to the first and third persons of both numbers: for the second persons, the imperative is used; in the first singular, *möge may* is common as auxiliary; and the same auxiliary may also be employed in the other persons.

b. The subject is put after the verb, except in the third pers. singular, where it may have either position, and more usually stands before.

c. The optative subjunctive is used, as already noticed (243.1), to fill out the declension of the imperative, and is practically, in the third pers. plural, the most common imperative form, since the use of the second person in ordinary address is no longer approved (153.4).

d. This subjunctive sometimes becomes, in application, concessive, or expresses a supposition or assumption: thus, *man begegne Jemanden im Haus; es sei eine Gesellschaft beisammen let one meet anybody in the house; let a company be assembled (i. e. supposing such to be the case); er thue, was er wolle let him do what he please (i. e. though he do).*

e. Hence, with *denn*, it becomes, by an elliptical construction, equivalent to *unless*; thus, *er führe denn Freya zur Braut mir heim unless he bring me home Freya as bride (i. e. [if he would gain what he wishes] then let him bring, etc.), ihr müßtet mir zur Stelle dann Versprechen unless you promise me on the spot.*

2. The preterit and pluperfect tenses are also employed in a kind of optative sense, but only by elliptical construction, in abbreviated conditional and indirect phrases where the wishes expressed are implied to be contrary to fact, or impossible of attainment.

Thus, *wäre es doch Abend if it were only evening! hätte ich mich doch gefreut had I only enjoyed myself (while it was still in my power to do so)! ach, daß meine Augen Thränenquellen wären O that my eyes were fountains of tears!*

### 332. *The Subjunctive as Conditional and Potential.*

The conditional and potential uses of the subjunctive so pass into one another that they can hardly be treated separately. We commence, for convenience, with the hypothetical period.

1. The *hypothetical period* consists of two parts or clauses, the one (the *apodosis*) expressing a conclusion or result which would follow, if the condition were true which is expressed by the other (the *protasis*)—it being at the same time implied that the condition is not realized, and, generally, that the result is therefore also untrue. This, in its complete form, requires a past tense (preterit or pluperfect) of the subjunctive in each clause.

Thus, *regierte Recht, so läget ihr vor mir im Staube* *if right prevailed, you would lie in the dust before me*, *wenn's länger gedauert hätte, wäre ich im Frost erstarrt* *if it had lasted longer, I should have been stiffened with frost*, *glücklicher wäre auch ich, wenn ich nach Asien gezogen wäre* *I too should be happier, if I had marched to Asia*.

a. Either of the two clauses may stand first, and the idea of *if* in the clause of condition (*protasis*) may be expressed either by a conjunction (*wenn*) or by the inverted arrangement (433)—as the examples show.

b. In the result or conclusion (*apodosis*), the conditional tenses may be used instead of the proper subjunctive: see below, 335.

c. The implication as to the result is liable to modification by various causes: for example, by its being put into the form of a question—as, *was wäre aus mir geworden, hättet ihr mich nicht aufgenommen* *what would have become of me, if you had not received me?*—or by an *even* involved in the condition: as, *und wären von Gold sie, ich gäbe sie dir* *even were they of gold, I would give them to thee*.

d. If the condition be regarded as doubtful merely, and not contrary to reality, the verbs are put in the indicative mode: thus, always when the tense is present or perfect—as, *wenn er kommt, gehe ich fort* *if he comes, I shall go away*, *wenn er gekommen ist, will ich ihn sehen* *if he be arrived, I wish to see him*; and often when the tense is past: thus, *wenn er schon gekommen war, muß er uns gesehen haben* *if he had already come, he cannot have failed to see us*.

e. Rarely, a pret. indic. is used, for emphasis (compare 328.3b), in the clause of result, and even in that of condition: thus, *du warst verloren, hätte er nicht für dich gesprochen* *thou wast lost, had he not spoken for thee*, *war ich . . . der Verräther [Verräter], ich hätte mich den guten Stein gespart* *had I been the traitor, I might have spared myself the good stone*.

2. In the *incomplete hypothetical period*, either the condition or the conclusion is unexpressed, but is more or less distinctly intimated or implied.

a. The conclusion is wanting altogether, and the condition has the value of a wish or prayer (see 331.2). In this case a *doch* or *nur* is more often introduced to help the optative expression, but is not indispensable: thus, *wären wir nur den Berg vorbei [how happy I should be] if we were only past the hill! könnt' ich mit if I could but go along with you!*

b. The conclusion may be intimated by *als* *as*, and the conditionality of the other clause expressed either by a conjunction, *ob* or *wenn*, or (more commonly) by the inverted arrangement (433b) of the clause after *als*:

Thus, *ihr eilet ja, als wenn ihr Flügel hättet you are hurrying as [you would do] if you had wings*, *er will die Wahrheit so, als ob sie Münze wäre he demands truth in this way as [he would demand it] if it were cash*, *der Boden flafft auf, als wäre er von Erdstößen erschüttert the soil cleaves open, as [it would do] if it were shaken by earthquakes*.

c. The analogy of this construction calls always for a past tense, but a present is sometimes met with, as if the phrase were one of indirect statement (333) instead of conditional: thus, *da ward es mir als könne ich durch den Boden sehen, als sei er grünes Glas then it seemed to me as if I could see through the ground as though it were green glass*. Occasionally, it really represents an indirect phrase: thus, *ich dachte als sei es . . . , for ich dachte, es sei . . . I thought as if it were, for I thought it was, so and so*.

d. The conclusion is expressed by some other and virtually equivalent means: thus, *ich gedachte, dafern ich kein Abenteuer fände, den Heimweg zu suchen I intended, in case I should meet with no further adventure, to seek the way homeward*.

e. On the other hand, the conclusion may be fully expressed and the condition intimated by some word or phrase which more or less distinctly implies it:

Thus, *O wäre ich ein großer Baum! dann könnte ich meine Zweige ausbreiten O that I were a big tree! then [if I were so] I might spread out my branches*, *manches hätt' ich gethan; allein wer scheut nicht die Kosten I would have done much—only, who does not fear the cost? [if I had not feared the cost], sonst wär' er gefallen otherwise [if this were not so] he would have fallen*.

3. A yet less explicit implication of a condition makes of the past subjunctive a proper *potential*, expressing what in general, under the circumstances, might, could, or would be:

Thus, *daß ginge noch that might answer yet*, *es hätte sich's keiner vermogen no one would have presumed to do so*, *es könnte mich retten it might be able to rescue me*, *nimm' ihr jeden Stachel, der vermunden könnte take from it (222.I.3) every sting that should be able to wound*.

a. The potential subjunctive is sometimes used in place of an indicative, when it is desired to soften the positiveness of an assertion: thus, *ich dächte I should think*, for *I think*, *ich möchte I should like (255.2)*, *ich wäre fast gegen Baumstämme angerannt I came near running against trunks of trees*.

4. Analogous, on the other hand, with the clause expressing the condition in the hypothetical period, are occasional phrases like *es wird nachgeahmt, wäre es nur mit einigen Rutschen it is imitated, were it only with a few carriages*, *besonders, wenn er sich verhoffen haben sollte especially if he should chance to have exhausted his ammunition*.

5. Akin with the potential and hypothetical uses of the subjunctive are the following more special cases:

a. The subjunctive present is used in a clause involving an indefinite relative pronoun or conjunction (*whoever, however, etc.*): thus, *wie auch der Menschliche wankt however human (will) may waver*, *so klein sie auch sei however small it be*, *auf welche Art es sei in whatever way it may be*.

b. The subjunctive, present or past, is used after *daß, auf daß, damit in order that*, to express the end had in view, or sought to be attained: thus, *löst mir das Herz, daß ich das eure rühre relieve my heart, that I may move yours*, *er wünschte zu regieren, nur damit der Gute ungehindert gut sein möchte he desired to rule only in order that the good might be able to be good without hindrance*.

The tense is governed by the requirements of the sense, generally according with that of the preceding verb.

c. In these, as in other constructions, the indicative is also met with, especially after *damit*: thus, *was auch die Sinnlichkeit zu thun gedrängt ist whatever our sensuousness is impelled to do*, *damit man diese Stadt einnehmen kann that the city may be (where-with it is able to be) captured*, *daß jeder Quell versiegt that every fountain may dry up (so that every fount shall dry up)*.

d. A subjunctive is used in a dependent substantive clause (generally after *daß* *that*) to denote something that is provided for or looked forward to, regarded as of probable, desirable, or suitable occurrence: thus, *er mußte bleiben bis (or bis daß) die Fluthen [Fluten] sich verliefen* *he had to remain till the floods should subside*, *es lag ihm daran, daß der Friede nicht unterbrochen werde* *he was anxious that the peace should not be broken*, *es gehört sich, daß das Bedürfnis [Bedürfnis] befriedigt werde* *it is proper that the want be satisfied*.

In some of its forms, this construction passes over into that of the subjunctive of indirect statement (see the next paragraph), after verbs of wishing, anticipating, and the like.

[EXERCISE 28. SUBJUNCTIVE AS OPTATIVE, CONDITIONAL, AND POTENTIAL.]

333. *The Subjunctive of Indirect Statement.*

1. By a construction which has only partial analogies in English, the German subjunctive is often used to express a thought indirectly, as reported, recognized, or contemplated by some one.

Thus, *er antwortete, er achte Friedrich und wünsche den Frieden* *he answered that he esteemed Frederick and desired peace*, *wir wissen kaum, was zu thun sei* *we hardly know what is to be done*, *denkt man er gehe weg* *if one thinks he is going away*, *man sieht gleich, was Sinnes der Herr sei* *one sees at once of what mind the master is*.

2. Such a subjunctive stands always in a (logically) dependent substantive clause. The use of this mode more fully subordinates the clause to the action of the verb in the other clause, upon which it depends, relieving the speaker from responsibility for it or concern with it.

3. Verbs most often followed by the subjunctive of indirect statement are especially—

a. Verbs that signify imparting, in every form, as statement, report, assertion, confession, reminding, and the like.

b. Verbs that signify apprehension, as perceiving, knowing, feeling, calling to mind, imagining, concluding, and the like.

c. Verbs that signify contemplation with feelings of various kinds, as belief, doubt, dread, wonder, joy, sorrow, wish, hope.

Some of these verbs complicate the idea of indirectness with that of desire, doubt, or conditionality, as expressed by the subjunctive in its other uses.

d. The verb upon which the clause of indirect statement depends is sometimes unexpressed, being inferred from the connection: thus, *die Lateiner wurden hart verfolgt, weil jener sie zu sehr begünstigt habe* *the Latins were severely persecuted, because (it was claimed that) he had favored them too much.*

e. Or, the clause is dependent on a noun of kindred meaning with the verbs above mentioned: thus, *aus Besorgniß [Besorgniß], daß er Unruhen erregen werde* *out of apprehension that he would stir up disorders*, *unter dem Vorwand, er habe früher beschworen alles anzuzeigen* *under the pretext that he had earlier taken oath to denounce everything*, *die Nachricht, daß er sie ins Gefängniß [Gefängniß] geworfen habe* *the news that he had thrown them into prison.*

4. a. Regularly and ordinarily, the verb in the indirect statement has the same tense as it would have if the statement were made directly, by the person and under the circumstances contemplated.

Thus, *sie glaubten, daß es wahr sei* *they believed that it was true* (since they would have said "*we believe that it is true*"); *er antwortete, er sei nicht gekommen, Christen feindlich anzugreifen, sondern werde nur Gewalt mit Gewalt zurücktreiben* *he answered, he was not ("I am not") come to attack Christians, but would only ("I shall only") repel violence with violence*; *bald fragte man nicht mehr, wer mitgehe, sondern wer zurückbleibe* *soon it was no longer asked who was going along ("who is going?"), but who was staying ("who is staying?") behind*; *ich habe gewünscht, er solle sich auf Reisen begeben* *I have wished that he should betake himself to journeying.*

b. Hence, the use of the present, perfect, and future subjunctive in indirect statement is much more frequent than that of the preterit and pluperfect and of the conditional. But—

c. The past tenses are used, when they would have been used (either as indicative or as subjunctive) in the corresponding statement made directly: thus, *er wünschte, daß er auf dem Boden geblieben wäre* *he wished he had remained in the garret*, *wer kann wissen, was nicht Jemand glaublich fände* *who can tell what somebody might not think credible?* *des Gefühles, daß nichts im Leben recht geschähe wenn es bloß geschähe* *of the feeling that nothing in life would be done rightly if it should be simply done.*

Rarely, on the other hand, a subjunctive of indirect statement is forced out of the past tense which it should have into the present, as the more usual tense belonging to the indirect construction.

d. Moreover, in a clause dependent on a verb of past tense, the subjunctive is quite often put in the past (as it always is in English), contrary to strict rule: thus, *ſie glauben eß wäre* (for *ſei*) *Hahnengeſchrei* *they thought it was the crowing of cocks*, *ſie fragten ob ſie recht müßte* (for *wiſſe*) *wer ihr Mann wäre* (for *ſei*) *they asked whether she really knew who her husband was*, *ging bei mir zu Rath [Rat], ob ich ſie wedte* (for *wedte*) *took counsel with myself, whether I should wake her*.

e. This assimilation of the subjunctive in tense to the verb on which it depends is, in general, much more common in the more careless and less dignified styles of writing, and in colloquial discourse, than in higher styles. But it is occasionally met with in every style, sometimes without special assignable cause, sometimes where a present subjunctive form would not be distinguishable from an indicative, or where a clause is dependent on another dependent clause, and needs to be distinguished from the latter in construction: thus, *er bot durch Geſandte an, die Fürſten möchten* (for *mögen*, which would be indicative as well) *ſelbſt entſcheiden, waß er rechtmäßig beſäße* *he offered through embassadors that the princes might themselves decide what he rightfully possessed*.

5. The indicative may also be used in phrases similar to those above cited, mostly with an implication of actuality, as recognized by the speaker also: thus, *wer weiß, wo dir dein Glücke blüht* *who knows where thy fortune is blooming for thee (as it surely is blooming somewhere)?* *man mußte glauben, daß er völlig vergeſſen war* *one could not but believe that he was wholly forgotten*, *er verweilte, biß er ſich überzeugt hatte, daß keiner von den ſeinen zurückblieb* *he delayed till he was persuaded that none of his men was left behind*.

But the difference of implication is often very indistinct, and the choice between the two modes depends in part upon the style used: too nice a use of the subjunctive in easy or colloquial discourse would be thought finical and pedantic.

6. The elliptical use of the subjunctive of indirect statement with optative meaning, or to express a wish, has been referred to above (331.2): thus, *o daß ſie ewig grünen bliebe* *O that it*



*might ever continue to flourish!* (i. e. *ich möchte, daß . . . , I should wish that . . .*).

7. A past subjunctive tense is sometimes used interrogatively, by way of questioning or disputing something supposed to have been asserted: thus, *du hättest es gesagt? du hast mir nichts gesagt* [*is it claimed that*] *you have said so? you have said nothing to me, gastfreundlich hätte England mich empfangen? that England had received me hospitably?*

[EXERCISE 29. SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT STATEMENT.]

*Conditional.*

**334.** The conditional tenses are, in form, subjunctive preterits corresponding to the future as a present: thus, *er wird lieben* *he is about to love*, *er werde lieben* *he may be about to love*, *er würde lieben* *he might or would be about to love*.

Their proper significance, then, is that of contingent futurity, such a potentiality as may be signified by a tense past in form. In this they coincide (as appears from the rules and examples given above, 332) with the past subjunctive tenses, preterit and pluperfect. In fact—

**335.** 1. The conditional corresponds in meaning with the preterit and pluperfect subjunctive, being an admissible substitute for these tenses in some of their uses.

a. Especially, in the conclusion (*apodosis*) of a complete hypothetical period (332.1): thus, *lebst du noch, ich würde dich lieben von dieser Zeit wert* *thou yet alive, I should love thee henceforth*, *keines würde lenksam genug sein, wenn wir bloß sein Dasein in der Hand gewahr würden* *none would be manageable enough, if we were merely aware of its presence in the hand*.

b. In a conclusion with condition only intimated (332.2e): thus, *die Vögel würden dann Nester in meinen Zweigen bauen* *in that case (if this were so) the birds would build nests in my branches*, *prob' es lieber nicht, denn du würdest zerschellt werden* *rather, do not try it; for (if thou didst try it) thou wouldst be dashed in pieces*.

c. In a more strictly potential construction (332.3): thus, *sich ernstlich zu wehren würde sehr gefährlich sein* *to defend one's self seriously would be very dangerous*, *das würde uns zu weit führen* *that would lead us too far*.

2. The use of the conditional is much less frequent than that of the past subjunctive tenses in the constructions above ex-



plained. While the two are so nearly equivalent that the subjunctive may usually be put in place of the conditional, they are not absolutely identical in sense; the conditional may sometimes be preferred where the idea of futurity is prominent (as in the first example above, under *a*)—as also for formal reasons, where the subjunctive verb would not be plainly distinguished from an indicative (as in the first example under *b*).

**336.** The conditional is sometimes employed in indirect statement in place of the future subjunctive, in the same manner as a preterit subjunctive for a present (333.4*d*)—that is to say, with the value of a past subjunctive to the future: thus, *er mußte, daß diese Anerbietungen den Kreuzzug nicht aufhalten würden* (for *werden*, which would not be distinguishable from an indicative) *he knew that these offers would not detain the crusade.*

#### *Imperative.*

**337.** The use of the imperative requires no explanation, being the same in German as in English.

*a.* With the proper imperative persons (the second persons singular and plural) the subject pronouns, *du* and *ihr*, may be either expressed or omitted: if expressed, they follow the verb.

*b.* For the use of the present subjunctive as imperative in the third persons singular and plural and the first plural, see 331.1*c*.

**338.** Besides the phrases mentioned at 243.1 as employed imperatively, the present indicative, or the future indicative, sometimes intimates a peremptory order, as if from one whose simple word is equivalent to a command; the past participle has, elliptically (see 359.3), a similar force; and the infinitive is used, dialectically or colloquially, with the same meaning (347.2).

#### *Infinitive.*

**339.** The infinitive is properly the verbal noun, and all its uses grow out of its value as such.

**340.** 1. Any infinitive is capable of use directly as a noun, either with or without an article or other limiting words. Such a noun is always of the neuter gender (61.3*c*), and declined according to the first declension, first class (76); and, having the value of an abstract, it very seldom forms a plural.

Thus, *Gotteslästern, Lügen, Morden und Stehlen hat überhand genommen* *blasphemy, lying, murdering, and stealing have become*

*prevalent, welch ein Appetit zum Schmausen what an appetite for feasting! er fing wieder mit seinem häßlich höflichen Grüßen an he began again with his odiously polite greeting.*

2. As the examples show, such a noun is more usually to be rendered by our verbal noun in *ing* (which we often call “participial infinitive,” although in truth it is quite another word than the present participle); but also, not rarely, by other verbal derivatives.

3. There are some nouns, originally infinitives, which are in such constant use as to have won an independent value as nouns: such are *Leben* *life*, *Entsetzen* *horror*, *Andenken* *memorial*, and so on.

**341.** In German, as in English, the preposition *zu* *to*, which was originally used only in its proper prepositional sense with the infinitive, governing the latter as it would govern any other noun under similar circumstances, has now become attached as a kind of fixed accompaniment, or sign, to the infinitive in a great part of its uses; and therefore, in describing the different infinitive constructions, it becomes necessary to distinguish between the cases in which *zu* is employed and those in which it is omitted.

**342.** *The Infinitive as subject of a verb.*

The infinitive, either with or without *zu*, is often employed as the subject of a verb.

Thus, *wachsen, groß und alt werden, das ist das einzig Schöne to grow, to become big and old—that is the only fine thing, wo getäuscht zu werden uns heilsamer war where to be deceived was more advantageous for us, mit solchen ist nicht gut in der Nähe kämpfen fighting at close quarters with such men is not good, gefährlich ist's den Leu zu wecken it is dangerous to wake the lion.*

a. The infinitive as subject is in the great majority of cases accompanied by *zu*.

b. More usually (as the examples show), the infinitive stands as logical subject, the verb taking in addition *es* *it* or *das* *that*, or the like (especially the first), as impersonal or indefinite grammatical subject (compare 295).

**343.** *The Infinitive as object, or dependent on another verb.*

I. The infinitive without *zu* is directly dependent on—

1. The various auxiliaries: *as*, *werden*, the auxiliary of the future and conditional tenses (240.2); *haben*, the auxiliary of

the perfect and pluperfect tenses, in the cases where the infinitive is used instead of the past participle in forming those tenses (240.1c); the auxiliaries of mode (242.1); *thun*, when used as auxiliary in the sense of our *do* (242.3); *lassen*, as causative auxiliary (242.2): see below, 5.

2. *Haben have*, in certain phrases, with an adjective: thus, *du hast gut reden* *that is easy to say* (*i. e. thou hast talking good, makest an easy thing of talking*).

3. *Thun*, and a few other verbs, followed by *nichts als* *nothing [else] than, nothing but*: thus, *er that nichts als sie anschauen* *he did nothing but look at her*, *es kostet nichts als die Gemeine sein für alle* *it costs nothing but being the common one for all*.

4. *Lernen learn*: thus, *er hatte das Gute würdigen gelernt* *he had learned to value what was good*.

5. A number of verbs admit an infinitive in the manner of a second object, along with their ordinary object: these are *heißen* *call, bid*, *nennen* *call*, *lehren* *teach*, *helfen* *help*, *machen* *make*, *lassen* *allow, cause*, and a few that denote perception by the senses, namely *sehen* (and rarely *schauen*) *see*, *hören* *hear*, *fühlen* *feel*, and *finden* *find*.

Thus, *er heißt ihn weder Kosten noch Mühe sparen* *he bids him spare neither expense nor labor*, *was man so erkennen heißt* (*nennt*) *what people call knowing*, *das lehrt uns beurtheilen* [*beurteilen*] *ob . . . that teaches us to judge whether . . .*, *wir müssen ihm helfen hüten* *we must help him tend his herd*, *die Freiheit macht euch schwärmen* *this freedom makes you rave*, *der Gott, der Eisen wachsen ließ* *the God who made iron grow*, *er sieht sie erbleichen und sinken hin* *he sees her turn pale and sink down*, *ich finde sie auf dem Sopha liegen* *I find her lying on the sofa*.

a. With most of the verbs under this head, the object taken along with the infinitive has the logical value of a *subject-accusative to the infinitive*—which is the nearest approach made in German to that construction, familiar in the classical tongues, especially in the Latin: thus, *ich höre das Gras wachsen* *I hear the grass grow* signifies that the grass grows, and that I perceive it so doing.

This construction, especially with *sehen*, *hören*, and *lassen* (and by far oftenest with the last), is followed out into a variety of other forms, some of them of a peculiar and idiomatic character: thus—

b. The proper object of the governing verb is frequently omitted, and the infinitive then designates its action without

reference to any definite actor: thus, *ich höre klopfen* *I hear [some one] knock (hear a knocking)*, *laßt klingeln* *cause to ring (let the bell be rung)*, *laß überall für das Kreuzheer in den Kirchen beten* *cause to pray for the crusading army everywhere in the churches (let it be prayed for)*.

c. If, then, the infinitive itself takes an object, the construction is equivalent to one in which that object is directly dependent upon the governing verb, and is the subject-accusative of the infinitive taken as an infinitive passive; and it is generally best so rendered: thus, *ich höre euch jeden Tag preisen* *I hear you to be praised every day (hear [them] praise you)*, *er ließ die drei Ringe für einen machen* *he caused the three rings to be made in place of one (caused to make them)*.

d. That the construction has in fact, in the apprehension of those who use the language, been virtually converted into a passive one, and the real object of the infinitive transferred to the governing verb, is shown by the circumstance that that object, when designating the same person or thing with the subject of the verb, is expressed by the reflexive instead of the personal pronoun: thus, *er wollte sich nicht halten lassen* *he would not let himself be held (instead of would not allow [any one] to hold him)*, *das läßt sich hören* *that lets itself be heard (i. e. is worth hearing)*, *als er sich etwas vorlesen ließ* *as he was having something read aloud to himself*, *er läßt oft von sich hören* *he lets himself be often heard from (lets [us] often hear from him)*. Occasionally, the logical object of *lassen* is even added in the form of a prepositional adjunct: thus, *sie ließen sich durch die Wache nicht abhalten* *they did not suffer themselves to be restrained by the guards*—instead of *sie ließen die Wache sie nicht abhalten* *they did not suffer the guards to restrain them*.

6. Special and more anomalous cases are—an infinitive in the sense of a present participle after *bleiben* *remain*: thus, *sie blieben im Wasser stecken* *they remained sticking in the water*; and after *haben* with a direct object: thus, *er hat Wein im Keller liegen* *he has wine lying in his cellar*:—an infinitive of purpose (below, III.1) without *zu* in a few phrases: as, *laß sie betteln gehn* *let them go begging!* *er legt sich schlafen* *he lays himself down to sleep*;—and *spazieren* *to be out for pleasure or exercise (expatiate)* after a verb expressing the kind of motion: as, *ich reite, fahre, gehe spazieren* *I ride, drive, or walk out for pleasure*.

II. The infinitive with *zu* is often construed as a direct object:

1. As the sole object of a considerable number of verbs, especially of verbs whose action points forward to something as to be attained or done: for example, such as signify begin, undertake, endeavor, venture, plan, hope, desire, promise, refrain; and some others.

2. Along with an indirect personal object, with verbs signifying command, permit, impute, forbid, and the like.

Thus, *er gebot mir zu schweigen* *he commanded me to remain silent*, *die Wache erlaubt Niemanden vorzutreten* *the guard allows no one to step forward*.

III. The infinitive with *zu* is construed in the manner of an indirect object:

1. To express the purpose or design of an action: thus, *ich bin nicht da Räthsel [Rätsel] zu lösen* *I am not here to solve riddles*, *die Meere zu befreien, sollten alle Länder erobert werden* *to free the seas, all lands were to be subdued*.

a. This comes nearest to the original and proper purpose of an infinitive with *zu* *to*, *in order to*, *for to*. The same meaning is conveyed more explicitly by prefixing *um* (see below, 346.1).

b. The infinitive stands thus often after *sein* *to be* and *stehen* *stand*, with the logical value of an infinitive passive: thus, *da war so vieles zu sehen* *there was so much there to be seen* (*so much for seeing, as object for sight*).

This construction in itself evidently admits of either an active or a passive interpretation, according as the thing mentioned is put forward as subject or object of the verbal action conveyed by the infinitive. German usage merely adopts the latter alternative.

c. *haben*, with a following infinitive and *zu*, also sometimes forms a phrase in which what is properly the object of *haben* is regarded and treated as if dependent on the other verb: thus, *wir haben den Corso zu beschreiben* *we have to describe the Corso* (*have the Corso for describing, or as theme for description*);—the object may even be omitted, or an intransitive infinitive employed, leaving to *haben* simply the idea of necessity: thus, *er hat nicht mehr zu fürchten* *he no longer has [ought] to fear*.

2. In other relations such as are ordinarily expressed by a remoter object, or a prepositional phrase having the value of such an object, after verbs intransitive or transitive; thus, *als*

er kam zu sterben *when he came to die (to dying)*, da treibt's ihn, den Preis zu erwerben *then he feels impelled to gain the prize*, man gewöhnt es still zu stehen *it is trained to stand still*, nicht darf ich dir zu gleichen mich vermessen *I may not presume to be like thee*, wir freuen uns, das zu hören *we rejoice at hearing that*, er ruht nicht die Stadt zu verzieren *he ceases (rests) not to adorn the city*, das Gedränge hindert ihn zu fliehen *the crowd forbids (hinders) him to fly*.

As the examples show, the infinitive in this construction, though it often has the value of a dative, which its governing preposition *zu* to best fits it to fill, is also sometimes used in the manner of a genitive, or of an "ablative" (expressing the *from* relation).

[EXERCISE 30. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND OBJECT.]

**344.** *The Infinitive as adjunct to an Adjective.*

1. The infinitive, always with its sign *zu*, is used as limiting adjunct especially to adjectives denoting possibility, ease or difficulty, obligation, desire, readiness, and the like—to such, in general, as point forward, to something to be attained or done.

Thus, bereit den Aether zu durchdringen *ready to penetrate the ether*, leicht zu schaffen *easy to obtain*, bange, seinen Schmuck zu verlieren *afraid of losing his adornment*.

2. Many adjectives when qualified by *zu* too or genug, etc. *enough, sufficiently*, become capable of taking an infinitive as adjunct: thus, mächtig genug, die größten Thiere [Tiere] zu tödten [töten] *powerful enough to kill the largest animals*, zu klein den Raum zu füllen *too small to fill the space*.

But after *zu* and an adjective, the infinitive governed by *um* (346.1), or an awkward and illogical construction with *als daß* than *that* is more frequent.

Compare the power to govern a dative given to an adjective by the same qualifying words (223.5); the cases are plainly analogous, the *zu* in such infinitive combinations having its proper prepositional force.

**345.** *The Infinitive as adjunct to a Noun.*

The infinitive, always accompanied by *zu*, is often dependent upon a noun.

The cases of such infinitives may be classified under three heads:

1. The governing noun is one related in meaning to the verbs and adjectives already specified as admitting a dependent infinitive: thus, Erlaubniß [Erlaubniß] den Baum zu plündern *permission to plunder the tree*, ohne Hoffnung aufzustehen *without hope to rise again (of rising)*, die Begierde, sie zu wecken *the desire to awaken her*, den Vorschlag, seine Söhne abzusenden *the proposal to send off his sons*.

2. The preposition zu has nearly its proper meaning as connecting the infinitive with the noun: thus, Zeit, sich zu ergötzen *time to please one's self (for pleasing)*, Muth [Mut], mich in die Welt zu wagen *courage for venturing into the world*, der Augenblick zu reden *the moment for talking*.

3. The infinitive represents a genitive, most often a genitive of equivalence (216.2e), or has the logical value of an added explanation of the governing noun: thus, die Schwachheit, jedem zu versprechen *the weakness of promising to each one*, ein Gefühl des Verdienstes, diese ganze Höhe auszufüllen *a feeling of the merit of filling out this whole height*.

These classes, however, variously cross and pass into each other.

### 346. *The Infinitive governed by a Preposition.*

1. Only three prepositions—namely, um *in order*, ohne *without*, statt or anstatt *instead*—are allowed in German directly to govern the infinitive (preceded by its sign zu).

They are placed at the beginning of the infinitive clause, preceding all the words dependent on or limiting the infinitive, which stands last, always with zu next before it, and which is ordinarily to be rendered (except after um) by our infinitive in *ing*: thus, jedermann kommt, um zu sehen oder gesehen zu werden *every one comes in order to see or to be seen*, ohne euch schwer zu verflagen *without accusing you sorely*, anstatt aber die hiedurch erzeugte günstige Stimmung zu benutzen *instead, however, of improving the favorable state of mind thus brought about*.

2. With other prepositions, when a similar expression is required, the infinitive clause is represented beforehand by a da or dar in composition with the preposition, and then itself follows, as if in apposition with this da.

Thus, sie waren nahe daran, auf ihn zu treten *they were near to treading on him (near to this—viz. to tread on him)*, bewahrte mich davor, die Ratter an den Busen selbst zu legen *saved me from*

*laying the adder to my own bosom (from this—viz. to lay etc.),* sie drangen darauf, sich rechts zu wenden *they insisted on turning to the right.*

a. Such a phrase as *they insisted on his turning to the right*, where the subject of the action signified by the participial infinitive is different from that of the verb with which this is connected by the preposition, cannot be expressed in German by an infinitive: for the infinitive clause is substituted a complete substantive clause (436.3d), with a personal verb and its subject: thus, sie drangen darauf, daß er sich rechts wenden sollte *they insisted on this—that he should turn to the right.*

### 347. *The Infinitive in Absolute Constructions.*

1. In various elliptical constructions, chiefly analogous with such as are usual in English also, the infinitive stands without being dependent on any other word: thus, warum mich wecken *why awaken me?* ach! auf das muthige [mutige] Roß mich zu schwingen *oh, to leap upon a spirited horse!* o schönes Bild, zu sehen . . . *oh beautiful picture! to see . . .*, anderer Frevel nicht zu gedenken *not to mention other outrages:* and so on.

2. By a usage not authorized in good German style, an infinitive is colloquially used with an imperative meaning: thus, da bleiben *stay there!*

### 348. *Infinitive Clauses.*

1. The infinitive used directly as a noun (340) has the construction of an ordinary noun. But in its proper use as infinitive it shares in the construction of the verb of which it forms a part, taking the same adjuncts—whether predicate, object, adverb, or prepositional phrase—as the personal forms of the verb; thus forming often extended and intricate *infinitive clauses*, which have the logical value of full substantive clauses, and are exchangeable with such.

Thus, man ist beschäftigt, das schöne Pflaster, wo es abzuweichen scheint, wieder neu in Stand zu setzen *people are occupied with setting the nice pavement newly in order again, wherever it seems to be giving way*, or man ist damit beschäftigt, daß man . . . in Stand setzt.

2. As a rule, the infinitive stands last in such a clause; and, in general, whatever is dependent on an infinitive is placed before it.



*a.* See the examples already given. When two or three infinitives come to stand together, each precedes the one it depends on, in the reverse of the English order: thus, *ihr habt mich ermorden lassen wollen* *you have wanted to cause to murder me (have me murdered)*. But an infinitive used as participle (240.1c) allows nothing to follow it, and an auxiliary infinitive must be placed before it: thus, *ihr werdet mich haben ermorden lassen wollen* *you will have wanted* etc. Compare 439.2.

[EXERCISE 31. INFINITIVE AS ADJUNCT AND WITH PREPOSITION.]

### *Participles.*

**349.** The participles are properly verbal adjectives, and all their uses and constructions are those of adjectives.

**350.** The present participle has active force, representing in adjective form the exerting of an action, or the continuing of a state or condition, in the same way as this is represented by the present tense of the verb.

Thus, *der reisende Maler* *the travelling painter (i. e. the painter who travels)*, *eine liebende Mutter* *a loving mother*.

*a.* In rare cases, and by a license which is not approved, a present participle is used passively: thus, *eine melkende Kuh* (*eine Kuh welche gemelkt wird*) *a milking cow (a cow that is milked)*, *die vorhabende Reise* (*die Reise die man vorhat*) *the intended journey (the journey which one has before him)*, *der betreffende Punkt* *the point concerned*.

**351. 1.** The past participle of a transitive verb has passive meaning, without any distinct implication of past time.

Thus, *das geliebte Kind* *the beloved child, i. e. the child whom one has loved, or loves, or will love, according to the connection in which the term is used*.

*a.* But such a participle, from a verb denoting a single act rather than a continuous action, may sometimes be used with a past meaning: thus, *das gestohlene Pferd* *the stolen horse*, *der getrunzene Wein* *the imbibed wine*.

**2.** The past participle of an intransitive verb has active meaning, and is for the most part employed only in the formation of the compound tenses of the verb. But—

*a.* The past participle of a verb taking *sein* as its auxiliary (241.2) may be used adjectively, with a distinctly past meaning:

thus, *der gefallene Schnee* (*der Schne, welcher gefallen ist*) *the fallen snow*.

3. Many words have the form of past participles, but the value of independent adjectives, either as having a meaning which would not belong to them as participles, or as being divorced from verbs both in form and meaning, or as derived from verbs which are no longer in use as verbs, or as seeming to imply verbs which have never been in use.

Thus, *gelehrt* *learned*, *bekannt* *known*, *verdroffen* *listless*;—*erhaben* *lofty* (*erhoben* *raised*), *gediegen* *pure*, *sterling* (*gediehen* *thriven*);—*verſtohlen* *furtive*, *verſchieden* *different*;—*gestirnt* *starry*, *bejahrt* *aged*.

a. Such past participles have not rarely assumed the value of present participles: thus, *verſchwiegen* *silent*, *verdient* *deserving*, *beforgt* *anxious*, *pſichtvergeſſen* *duty-forgetting*.

352. The future passive participle, as has been already noticed (278), is formed only from transitive verbs, and is not used otherwise than attributively.

Thus, *die Rolle einer auf keine Weiſe zu beruhigenden Frau* *the part of a woman who was in no way to be pacified*, *die gleichzeitig anzutretenden Pilgerfahrten* *the pilgrimages to be entered upon at the same time*—but *die Frau iſt auf keine Weiſe zu beruhigen* *the woman is in no way to be pacified* (343.III.1b).

353. The present participle is used freely as an attributive, and hence also, like other attributive adjectives, as a substantive; but it is rarely employed as a predicate.

Thus, *die ſpielenden Lüſtchen* *the sporting breezes*, *er weckte den Schlämmernden* *he awoke the sleeper (slumbering one)*, *daß trügende Bild lebender Fülle* *the deceiving show of living fulness*, *in der Hand des Schreibenden oder Malenden* *in the hand of the writer or painter*.

a. But there are a number of present participles which have assumed the value and character of adjectives, and admit of predicative use: for example, *reizend* *charming*, *hinreiſſend* *ravishing*, *bedeutend* *important*.

b. Such constructions as our *he is loving*, *they were going*, though not unknown in ancient German, are no longer in use.

354. The past participle (except of an intransitive having *haben* as auxiliary: see 351.2) is commonly employed both attrib-

utively and predicatively, and may be used as a substantive, like any other adjective.

Thus, *die verlorene Zeit* *the lost time*, *in ewig wiederholter Gestalt* *in ever repeated form*, *gebt den Gefangenen ledig* *set free the prisoner (imprisoned one)*.

**355.** Both participles admit of comparison, or form a comparative and superlative degree, only so far as they lay aside the special character of participles, and become adjectives.

Thus, *bedeutendere Summen* *more important sums*, *das erhabenste Bild* *the most majestic image*.

**356.** As adverbs they are used rather sparingly, except those which have assumed the value of adjectives.

Thus, *ausgezeichnet gelehrt* *exceedingly learned*, *siedend heiß* *boiling hot*, *entzückend oft* *ravishingly often*, *ihre gesenkt schlummern-den Blätter* *their droopedly slumbering leaves*.

**357.** Both participles are, especially in higher styles of composition, very commonly used appositively (110.1b), either alone, or with limiting adjuncts such as are taken by the personal forms of the verb.

Thus, *der Alte sah kopfschüttelnd nieder* *the old man looked down, shaking his head*; *schlafend hatte sie mir so gefallen* *she had so pleased me sleeping*; *herrliche Gaben bescherend erscheinen sie* *bestowing splendid gifts, they appear*; *dem Beispiele folgend, empfangen diese jetzt das Kreuz* *following the example, these now took the cross*; *das Heer hatte, durch fruchtbare Gegenden vorausziehend, und reichlich mit Lebensmitteln versorgt, die Drau erreicht* *the army, moving on through fruitful regions and abundantly supplied with provisions, had reached the Drave*; *ich bin ein Freund von Geschichten, gut erzählt* *I am fond of stories, well told*; *noch lesen umflort die Augen die Inschrift nicht* *my eyes, dimmed with grief, do not yet read the inscription*; *ich kniete nieder, von Lieb' und Andacht ganz durchstrahlet* *I knelt down, quite irradiated with love and devotion*; *vom Meißel beseelt, redet der fühlende Stein* *animated by the chisel, the feeling stone speaks*; *ich verließ sie weinend* *I left her weeping*.

a. Such a participle or participial phrase is used only in the sense of an adjective clause, and expresses ordinarily an accompanying circumstance, or describes a state or condition; it may not be used, as in English, to signify a determining cause, or otherwise adverbially: in such phrases as *not finding him, I went away*, *walking uprightly, we walk surely*, *having saluted*

*him, we retired*, full adverbial clauses must be substituted for the participial phrases: thus, *da ich ihn nicht fand*;—*wenn wir aufrichtig wandeln*;—*nachdem wir ihn begrüßt hatten*.

b. Rarely, however, the participle approaches a causative force: thus, *dieß befürchtend, tödtete [tötete] er den Beauftragten* *fearing this, he slew the messenger*. Compare also 431.d.

358. The participial clause follows the same rule of arrangement as the infinitive clause (348.2,3): namely, the participle regularly and usually stands last, being preceded by all that limits it or is dependent on it.

a. This rule is without exception, when the participle is used attributively (compare 147.2); in the appositive clause, the participle not very rarely stands first: thus, *der dritte, mit den frohesten Hoffnungen begonnene, mit seltener Klugheit geführte Kreuzzug* *the third crusade, begun with the gladdest hopes, conducted with rare prudence*; in *den Ideen der französischen Umwälzung erwachsen, rein gehalten von ihren Verbrechen, begabt mit der Geistesstärke . . .* *grown up in the ideas of the French revolution, kept free from its crimes, gifted with the strength of mind . . .*

359. *Special Uses of Participles.* 1. The past participle is used in the sense of a present participle, after one or two verbs of motion, to express the mode of motion: thus, *so kam häufig ein Hase angesprungen* *a hare often came jumping along*, *heulend kommt der Sturm geflogen* *the howling storm comes flying*.

2. After a verb of calling, a past participle is occasionally used in an infinitive sense: thus, *daß heißt auch für die Zukunft gesorgt* *that I call (is called) caring for the future also*.

3. By an elliptical construction, a past participle has sometimes the value of an imperative: thus, *ins Feld, in die Freiheit gezogen* *march forth (let there be marching) into the field, to freedom!* *den Rapen gezäumt* [*have*] *the steed bridled!* See 230. 3c.

### [EXERCISE 32. PARTICIPLES.]

## INDECLINABLES.

360. There are three classes of words not admitting inflection, or grammatical variation of form indicating change of relation to other words, and which are therefore called indeclinables, or particles. These three are ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, and

CONJUNCTIONS. They pass over into one another, to some extent, the same word having often more than one office.

*a.* Ja *yes* and nein *no* are particles which fall properly into no one of the classes mentioned, each being by itself a complete (abbreviated) expression, affirming or denying a thought as already expressed by another.

## ADVERBS.

**361.** Adverbs are words qualifying verbs and adjectives, as also other adverbs, and defining some mode or circumstance of the action or quality signified by those parts of speech.

In certain exceptional cases, adverbs qualify prepositions also: see 369.1.

**362.** Adverbs may be classified according to their meaning as—

1. Adverbs of manner and quality: as, blindlings *blindly*, treulich *faithfully*, vollends *completely*, anders *otherwise*, also *thus*.

2. Adverbs of measure and degree: as, beinahe *almost*, gänzlich *wholly*, kaum *scarcely*, zu *too*, sehr *very*.

3. Adverbs of place and motion: as, hier *here*, dort *yonder*, her *hither*, hin *hence*, empor *up*, rechts *to the right*, weg *away*.

4. Adverbs of time: as, dann *then*, einst *once*, oft *often*, schon *already*, endlich *finally*, nie *never*, heute *to-day*.

5. Adverbs of modality, or such as limit not so much the thought itself as its relation to the speaker, or show the logical relation between one thought and another: thus, affirmative, fürwahr *assuredly*, allerdings *by all means*;—negative, nicht *not*, keineswegs *by no means*;—potential, vielleicht *perhaps*, wahrscheinlich *probably*;—causal, daher *therefore*, warum *for what reason*.

*a.* This last is a transition class between adverbs and conjunctions: see 385.

*b.* These leading divisions may be very variously subdivided, nor are their own limits precise or absolute. The relations expressed by adverbs are almost as indefinitely various as those expressed by adjectives, and are in like manner incapable of distinct and exhaustive classification. Hence it is of equal or greater importance to note their various derivation, to which we next pass.

### 363. *Adverbs from Adjectives.*

1. Almost all adjectives in German admit of use also as adverbs, in their uninflected or thematic form (see 130).

a. Exceptions are: the articles and pronominal and numeral adjectives (except *erst*); further, most participles having their proper participial meaning (356); and a few others, as *arm*, *gram*, *wahr*, from which derivative adverbs have been formed by means of endings (below, 3).

b. In an earlier condition of the language, the adjective when used as adverb had an ending of inflection. A relic of this ending is the *e* of *lange long* (adj. *lang long*), and that of *gerne*, *ferne*, *sachte*, *stille*, and a few others, which are now more commonly used without *e*.

2. Adjectives are thus used as adverbs both in the positive and the comparative degree; but only rarely in the superlative.

a. Superlatives that are employed as adverbs in their simple form are *meist*, *längst*, *jüngst*, *nächst*, *höchst*, *äußerst*, *möglichst*, *innigst*, *freundlichst*, *herzlichst*, *gütigst*, *gefälligst*, and a few others.

b. Instead of the simple adjective, is commonly used in the superlative an adverbial phrase, composed of the adjective with preceding definite article and governed by a preposition, *an* or *auf*; more rarely, *in* or *zu* (compare the similar treatment of the superlative as predicate, 140.2b).

Thus, *was am meisten in die Augen fiel* *what most struck the eye*, *das Pferd, das sich gestern am schlechtesten gehalten* *the horse that behaved worst yesterday*; *man muß sie aufs beste erziehen* *one must bring them up in the best possible manner*, *er bot durch Gesandte aufs höflichste an* *he offered most courteously through ambassadors*; *Herren nicht im mind'jten eitel* *gentlemen not in the least vain*; *da traf er zum ersten Thrym* *then he smote Thrym first (for the first)*.

c. Of the phrases formed with *am* and *aufs*, respectively, the former are used when there is direct comparison made, and eminence of degree above others is signified (superlative relative); the latter, when general eminence of degree, without comparison, is intended (superlative absolute: compare 142.1); *im* and *zum* are used with certain adjectives, in special phrases.

d. Many superlatives form a derivative adverb with the ending *enſ*: see below, 3c.

3. A comparatively small number of adverbs are formed from adjectives by means of derivative endings:

a. *Lich* (our *ly*, originally the same word with *like*) forms a number of derivative adjectives from adjectives, nouns, and participles; and of these a few (fifteen or twenty) are used only with adverbial meaning: examples are *freilich*, *neulich*, *ſchwerlich*, *ſicherlich*, *treulich*, *wahrlich*, *ſolglich*, *hoffentlich*.

b. Six or eight adverbs are formed from adjectives (or nouns) by the ending *lingſ*: thus, *blindlingſ* *blindly*, *ſchrittlingſ* *step by step*. The *ſ* of this suffix is originally a genitive ending.

c. The suffix *enſ* forms adverbs from many superlatives, and from all the ordinal adjectives: thus, *beſtenſ* *in the best manner*, *erſtenſ* *firstly*, *zehntenſ* *tenthly*; also from *übrig*, *übrigenſ* *more-over*.

The *en* of this suffix is an ending of adjective declension, to which a genitive *ſ* has become farther attached, irregularly.

d. The simple genitive ending *ſ* forms adverbs from a small number of adjectives and participles: thus, *linſ* *on the left*, *bereitſ* *already*, *anderſ* *otherwise*, *eilenſ* *hastily*, *vergebenſ* *vainly*, *zuſehenſ* *visibly*; *vollendſ* *completely* is a corruption of *vollenſ*.

e. A few other derivatives are too irregular and isolated to require notice here.

### 364. Adverbs from Nouns.

1. Besides the few adverbs formed from nouns by the suffixes *lich* and *lingſ* (above, 363.3a,b), there is also a small number formed by the simple genitive ending *ſ*; as, *anfangſ* *in the beginning*, *flugſ* *in haste*, *theilſ* [*teilſ*] *in part*, *nachtſ* *in the night*.

With these are to be compared the adverbial genitives of nouns, either without or with a limiting word, noticed at 220.1.

2. A considerable number of adverbs of direction are formed from nouns and prepositions by the suffix *wärtſ* (by origin, the genitive case of an adjective *wärt* *turned, directed*): thus, *aufwärtſ* *upward*, *oſtwärtſ* *eastward*, *himmelmärtſ* *heavenward*.

### 365. Adverbs by combination.

1. Combinations of a noun and a limiting word (article, adjective, pronominal adjective—even adverb), which, from being adverbial phrases, have become fused together into one word,

a. Such are of every oblique case, most often genitives, least often datives, but not infrequently with irregular endings or inserted letters.

Examples are *größtentheils* [größtenteils] *mostly*, *keineswegs* *in no wise*, *dergestalt* *in such wise*, *allenthalben* *everywhere*, *allezeit* *always*, *jedenfalls* *in any event*, *einmal* *once*, *vielmals* *often*, *abermals* *again*.

b. Certain nouns are thus used with especial frequency, forming classes of compound adverbs: such are *Ding*, *Fall*, *Halbe*, *Mal*, *Maß*, *Seite*, *Theil* [Teil], *Weg*, *Weile*, *Weise*.

2. Combinations of a preposition with a following or preceding noun, or with a following adjective. These are also fused adverbial phrases.

Examples are *unterwegs* *on the way*, *abhanden* *out of reach*, *zuweilen* *sometimes*, *überhaupt* *in general*, *indessen* *meanwhile*; *bergab* *down hill*, *stromauf* *up stream*; *zuerst* *at first*, *fürwahr* *verily*.

3. Combinations of adverbs with adverbs or prepositions—more proper compounds. These are very numerous, and various in kind; one or two classes require to be especially noticed:

a. Combinations with the words of general direction or motion, such as are also used as compound prefixes to verbs; see 298.2.

b. Combinations of prepositions with the adverbs *da* or *dar*, *wo* or *wor*, and *hie* or *hier*, used commonly as equivalents for the cases of pronouns governed by those prepositions (see 154.2,3; 163.4; 173.2; 180), with a demonstrative, an interrogative, or a relative value.

### 366. *Adverbs of obscure derivation.*

Many adverbs which appear like simple words are traceable to combinations analogous with those explained above.

Examples are *gwar* *to be sure* (*ji ware in truth*), *nur* *only* (*ni ware were it not*), *sonst* *else* (*jo ne išt so it be not*), *heute* *to-day* (*hiu tagu on this day*), *nie* *never* (*ne ie not ever*), *nimmer* *never* (*nie mehr never more*), *nicht* *not* (*ne=miht no aught*).

### 367. *Original Adverbs.*

Besides the classes already treated of, there remain a number of adverbs which, though in part demonstrably forms of inflection of pronominal and other words, may be practically regarded as original. The most important classes of these are—



1. The simple adverbs of place or direction, *aß, an, auf, aus, bei, durch, in* or *ein, ob, um, vor, zu*;—these are all of them commonly employed as prepositions, but retain their adverbial value especially as prefixes to verbs (298.1).

2. Derivatives from pronominal roots: thus—

a. from the demonstrative root (in *der*)—*da, dar, dann, denn, dort, desto, doch*.

b. from the interrogative root (in *wer*)—*wie, wo, wenn, wann*.

c. from an obsolete demonstrative root *hi*—*hie, hier, her, hin, hinter*.

3. Farther derivatives from these classes, with adverbial or prepositional meaning: thus, from *in*, *inne* and *innen*; from *ob*, *ober* and *oben*, *über* and *üben*; from *dann*, *wann*, and *hin*, *dannen*, *wannen*, and *hinnen*; and so on.

a. In several cases, forms in *er* and *en* stand related to one another as corresponding preposition and adverb: thus, *über* and *üben*, *hinter* and *hinten*, *außer* and *außen*, *unter* and *unten*.

### 368. Comparison of Adverbs.

Adverbs, as such, do not generally admit of comparison: comparative and superlative adverbs, so-called, are for the most part comparative and superlative adjectives used adverbially.

a. Only *oft* *often* forms *öfter* and *öftest*; and *eh* (itself used only as conjunction, *ere*, or in a few compounds, as *ehedem*, with prepositional force) forms *eh*er and *am ehesten*.

b. A few words now used only as adverbs have corresponding forms of comparison from other words, adjectives: for example, *gern* *willingly* has *lieber*, *am liebsten*, from *lieb* *dear*.

c. Adverbs whose meaning calls for such treatment may, rarely, form a kind of degrees of comparison with *mehr* *more* and *am meisten* *most*, or other qualifying adverbs of similar meaning: thus, *mehr rechts* *more to the right*, *am meisten vorwärts* *farthest forward*.

### 369. Certain special uses of Adverbs.

1. Some adverbs qualify prepositions—or, rather, prepositional phrases of adverbial meaning: thus, *mitte* *um den Leib* *midway about the body*, *daß er bestände bis auf's Blut, bis in den Tod die Fehde* *that he might maintain his quarrel even to blood, even unto death*.

2. Adverbs are not seldom governed by prepositions: see below, 378.

3. Adverbs are used elliptically with the value of adjectives: thus, *dieser Mann hier this man here*, *Gräber und die Cypressen dran graves and the cypresses thereon*;—or, in predicative relations, *nun war der Abend vorbei now the evening was past*, *die Jahre sind noch nicht um the years are not yet over*, *alles soll anders sein und geschmackvoll everything is to be otherwise, and tasty*, *ist kein Mörder mehr unterwegs is there no longer a murderer on the way?* *aller Wetzeifer wird vergebens all emulation becomes futile*, *ich sah Nebel weit umher I saw mist far about*.

4. An adverb is often added after a preposition and its object, to complete or to make more distinct the relation expressed by the preposition: see below, 379.

### 370. *Place of Adverbs.*

1. An adverb precedes the adjective or adverb which it qualifies.

*a.* Except *genug enough*, which, as in English, follows the word it limits.

2. An adverb qualifying a personal verb is put after it in the regular arrangement of the sentence; one qualifying an infinitive or participle is placed before it.

As to the place of the adverb in relation to other adjuncts of the verb, see 319; as to certain adverbial words which have exceptional freedom of position, see 385.4.

## PREPOSITIONS.

371. A preposition is a word used to define the relation between some person or thing and an action, a quality, or another person or thing with which it stands connected.

*a.* The distinctive characteristic of a preposition is that it governs an oblique case of a noun (or of the equivalent of a noun); and by this it is separated from an adverb: it is a kind of *transitive adverb*, requiring an object in order to the completion of the idea which it signifies. Many words are either adverbs or prepositions, according as they are used without or with such object.

b. Many of the German prepositions are of late formation from nouns or adjectives, or from adverbial phrases containing such. Some examples of these will be noted below.

**372.** Prepositions are most conveniently classified according to the case they govern, as the genitive, the dative, the accusative, and the dative or accusative.

a. A few govern either the dative or genitive, but their difference of use in this respect is not of consequence enough to found a class upon.

**373.** Prepositions governing the genitive are *anstatt* or *statt* *instead of*, *halber* or *halben* *for the sake of*—with the compounds of *halb*, namely *außerhalb* *without, outside*, *innerhalb* *within*, *oberhalb* *above*, *unterhalb* *below*—*trast* *in virtue of*, *längs* *along*, *laut* *according to*, *troß* *in spite of*, *um . . . willen* *on account of*, *ungeachtet* (or *ohngeachtet*) *notwithstanding*, *unfern* and *unweit* *not far from*, *mittels* or *mittels* or *vermittels* *by means of*, *vermöge* *by dint of*, *während* *during*, *wegen* *on account of*, *zufolge* *in consequence of*, and the compounds of *seit*, *diesseit* or *diesseits* *on this side of*, and *jenseit* or *jenseits* *on the further side of, beyond*.

Thus, *statt der goldnen Lieder* *instead of the golden songs*, *um dieser fremden Zeugen willen* *on account of these stranger witnesses*, *Genugthuung wegen der getödteten* [getöteten] *Christen* *satisfaction on account of the slain Christians*, *jenseit des Forstes* *beyond the forest*.

a. Of these prepositions, *längs*, *troß*, and *zufolge* also not infrequently govern the dative; some others do so occasionally.

b. *Halben* or *halber* always follows the noun it governs; *um . . . willen* takes the noun between its two parts; *ungeachtet*, *wegen*, and *zufolge* may either precede or follow (*zufolge* precedes a genitive, but follows a dative).

c. These prepositions are of recent use as such, and all evidently derived from other parts of speech. *Halb* is a noun meaning originally *side*; *wegen* was formerly *von wegen*, which is still in occasional use.

d. The adverbial genitives *Angeichts* *in presence* and *Behufs* *in behalf*, the adverbs *inmitten* *in the midst*, *abseits* *aside*, and some of those formed with *wärts*, as *seitwärts* *sideways*, *nordwärts* *northwards*, also *entlang* *along*, and a few others, antiquated or of rare occurrence, are sometimes used prepositionally with a genitive.

**374.** The prepositions governing the dative are, of more ancient and original words, *aus out*, *bei by*, *mit with*, *ob above*, *for*, *von of*, *zu to*; of recent and derivative or compound words, *nach after*, *to*, *seit since*, *gleich like*, *sammt and nebst along with*, *nächst next*, *binnen within*, *außer outside*, *entgegen against*, *gegenüber opposite*, *gemäß in accordance with*, *zumider contrary to*.

a. For prepositions which more regularly and usually govern the genitive, but are sometimes construed with a dative, see above, **373a**. Of those here mentioned, *ob* (which is now antiquated), when meaning *on account of*, is occasionally used with a genitive; *außer* governs a genitive in the single phrase *außer Landes out of the country*.

b. *Nach*, *gleich*, and *gemäß* either precede or follow the governed noun: thus, *nach der Stadt to the city*, *der Natur nach according to nature*; *gemäß den Urgeſchichten according to the old stories*, *der Zeit und den Umständen gemäß in accordance with the time and the circumstances*; *ſie zieht ſich gleich einem Meeresarme hin it stretches along, after the manner of an arm of the sea*, *ſie flog, einer Sylphide gleich she flew like a sylph*. *Entgegen*, *gegenüber*, and *zumider* follow the noun; but *gegenüber* is sometimes (by a usage no longer approved) divided, and takes the noun between its two parts: thus, *zwei Damen ſißen gegen einander über two ladies sit opposite one another*.

c. Occasionally, by a bold construction, a word which is properly adverb only is construed as if preposition: thus, *voran den ſühnen Reihen in front of the brave ranks*: compare **373d**.

**375.** The prepositions governing the accusative only are *durch through*, *für for*, *gegen or gen against*, *ohne without*, *um about*, *wider against*; also *ſonder without*, *biß unto*, *till*.

a. *Gen* is now nearly out of use, except in certain phrases, like *gen Himmel toward heaven*, *gen Weſten toward the west*. *Sonder* is hardly employed except in a phrase or two, as *ſonder gleichen without equal*. *Biß* usually stands adverbially before a preposition (see **369.1**), but also governs directly specifications of place and time: thus, *biß Antiochien as far as Antioch*, *warte nur biß morgen only wait till tomorrow*.

b. *Um* is very often followed by *her* after the noun: see **379a**.

c. From the case of an accusative governed by a preposition requires to be distinguished that of an absolute accusative of

place followed by an adverb of direction, as *den Berg hinauf up the mountain* (see 230.1b). This construction is interesting as illustrating an intermediate step in the process of conversion of adverbs into prepositions.

**376.** Nine prepositions govern sometimes the dative and sometimes the accusative—the dative, when they indicate locality or situation merely, or answer the question “where?” the accusative, when they imply motion or tendency toward, or answer the question “whither?” They are *an on*, *at*, *auf upon*, *hinter behind*, *in in*, *into*, *neben beside*, *über above*, *across*, *unter under*, *vor before*, *zwischen between*.

Thus, *ich halte an den Schranken, und reiche den Helm an einen Knappen zurück I stop at the barrier, and hand back my helmet to a squire*; *er lag auf der Erde, und hatte das Ohr auf den Rasen gelegt he lay on the ground, and had his ear laid on the turf*; *sie brüten hinter dem Ofen they brood behind the stove*, *er legte sich hinter eine Tabaksdose he laid himself behind a snuff-box*; *er ging ins Haus, und blieb lange in demselben he went into the house, and staid a long time in it*; *dort liegt er neben einem Stein there it lies beside a stone*, *sie setzten sich neben den Baum they seated themselves beside the tree*; *der Rachen schließt sich über dem Schwimmer the abyss closes over the swimmer*, *über diesen Strom bin ich einmal gefahren I once crossed over this stream*; *der Rahn trieb unter eine Brücke, unter dieser Brücke wohnte eine Ratte the boat drove underneath a bridge, under this bridge lived a rat*; *im Augenblick waren sie vor dem Felsen in a moment they were before the rock*, *er trat vor die Königin he came before the queen*; *das Gestricke ruhte zwischen ihren Händen the knitting-work lay between her hands*, *sie schlüpfen zwischen seine Zweige they slipped in among its branches*.

*a.* The difference of meaning determining the use of the dative or accusative after these prepositions is not always an obvious one; sometimes a peculiar liveliness is given to an expression by the employment of the accusative: thus, *er machte eine Oeffnung in die Erde he made a hole in (into) the ground*, *und küßte sie an den Mund and kissed her on the mouth (impressed a kiss)*, *über den Rand der Tiefe gebogen arched over (thrown as arch across) the edge of the abyss*; or, the accusative implies a verb of motion which is not expressed: thus, *er stieg in ein Wirthshaus [Wirtshaus] ab he got down (and entered) into an inn*,

er rettete sich in die Burg *he saved himself (betook himself for safety) into the castle*, sie stehen in die Höhe *they stand up (rise to a standing posture)*; or, the action is a figurative one: thus, an ihn denken *think of him (turn one's thoughts on him)*, er sah auf all die Pracht *he looked upon all the beauty*, sie freueten sich über die schönen Äpfel *they were delighted with the beautiful apples*; or there are phrases, the implication of which seems arbitrarily determined: thus, auf die beste Weise *in the best manner*, über tausend Jahre *after a thousand years*.

b. It is only by its use of *in* and *into* (as also, in colloquial phrase, of *on* and *onto*), that the English makes a corresponding distinction; and even this does not agree in all particulars with the German distinction of *in* with the dative and with the accusative. Hence the ground of the difference of case is the less easily appreciated by us, and needs to be carefully noted at every instance that occurs.

c. The accusative and dative with these prepositions have each its own proper value, the one as the case of directest action, the other as representing the ancient locative (or case denoting the *in* relation).

**377.** 1. Some prepositions govern a substantive clause, introduced usually by *daß*, rarely by a compound relative (179): such are *auf*, *außer*, *bis*, *ohne*, *statt* or *anstatt*, *um*, *ungeachtet*, *während*: thus, *auf daß es dir wohl gehe* *in order that it may go well with thee*, *außer wer seine Mitschuldigen seien* *except who were his accomplices*.

a. This is closely akin with the office of conjunction; and *bis*, *ungeachtet*, and *während* may be used without *daß*, as proper conjunctions: thus, *während wir da blieben* *while we continued there* (compare 439.6c).

2. The prepositions *um*, *ohne*, and *statt* or *anstatt* may govern an infinitive and its adjuncts, as equivalent of a complete clause (compare 346.1).

**378.** An adverb not infrequently takes the place of a noun as object of a preposition. Thus—

a. Many adverbs of time and place: *as*, *nach oben* *upward (toward above)*, *auf immer* *for ever*, *für jetzt* *for now*, *von fern* *from afar*, *in wie fern* *how far*.

b. The adverbs *da* or *dar*, *wo* or *war*, and *hier* or *hie*, as substitutes for the oblique cases of pronouns. These are compounded with

the governing preposition, forming a kind of compound adverb (see 365.3b).

**379.** 1. After the noun governed by a preposition is often added an adverb, to emphasize, or to define more nearly, the relation expressed by the preposition. Thus—

a. The general adverbs of direction, *hin* and *her*: *as*, *um uns her*, *um ihn her* *round about us* or *him*, *hinter ihm her* *along after him*, *nach einer Richtung hin* *in a single direction*, *über das Meer hin* *across the sea*, *von allen Seiten her* *from all sides*.

In these combinations, the distinctive meaning of the adverb, *as* denoting motion *from* and *toward*, is apt to be effaced. *Um . . . her* is the commonest case, and a stereotyped expression for *round about*.

b. The same adverbs, in combination with the preposition itself repeated: thus, *um mich herum* *round about me*, *in den Forst hinein* *into the forest*, *aus dem Walde hinaus* *out of the wood*, *aus der Brust heraus* *forth from the breast*, *durch Gefahren hindurch* *through dangers*.

c. Other adverbs of direction, simple or compound, often adding an essential complement to the meaning of the preposition: thus, *von nun an* *from now on*, *von dort aus* *forth from there*, *von Jugend auf* *from youth up*, *nach der Mitte* *toward the middle*, *sie gingen auf ihn zu* *they fell upon him*, *er hört die Feinde hinter sich drein* *he hears the enemy (coming on) after him*, *hinter Bäumen hervor* *forth from behind trees*, *zur Kammer hinein* *into the room*, *zum Thore hinaus* *out of the gate*.

2. It may sometimes be made a question whether the adverb of direction belongs to the prepositional phrase, or, rather, to the verb of the clause, as its prefix: the two cases pass into one another.

**380.** To what members of the sentence a prepositional phrase forms an adjunct has been pointed out already: namely—

1. To a verb, with very various value: see 318.

2. To a noun: see 112.

3. To an adjective: see 146.

4. Hence, also, to an adverb, when an adjective is used as such.

**381.** 1. The rules for the position of a preposition, whether before or after the noun that it governs, have been given above, in connection with the rules for government.

2. Between the preposition and its following governed noun may intervene the various limiting words which are wont to stand before a noun—as articles, adjective pronouns, adjectives and participles, with their adjuncts—often to an extent discordant with English usage: thus, *aus kleinen, vieredig zugehauenen, ziemlich gleichen Basaltstücken* *of small, squarely hewn, tolerably equal pieces of basalt*; *für dem Kranken geleistete Hülfe* *for help rendered to the sick man*.

Respecting the combination of the preposition with a following definite article into a single word, see 65.

[EXERCISE 33. ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.]

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**382.** Conjunctions are words which connect the clauses or sentences composing a period or paragraph, and show their relation to one another.

*a.* We have hitherto had to do only with the elements which enter into the structure of individual clauses, and among which conjunctions play no part. When, however, clauses themselves are to be put in connection with one another, conjunctions are required.

*b.* If certain conjunctions—especially those meaning *and* and *or*—appear to connect words as well as clauses, it is as such words represent clauses, and may be expanded into them: thus, *er und ich waren da — er war da, und ich war da* *he was there and I was there*, *er ist mächtiger als ich (bin)* *he is mightier than I (am)*.

*c.* Conjunctions, as a class, are the words of latest development in the history of language, coming from other parts of speech, mainly through the medium of adverbial use. A word ceases to be an adverb and becomes a conjunction, when its qualifying influence extends over a whole clause instead of being limited to a particular word in it. Almost all conjunctions in German are also adverbs (or prepositions), and their uses as the one or the other part of speech shade off into one another.

**383.** Conjunctions are most conveniently classified according to the character of the relations they indicate, and their effect upon the arrangement of the clauses they introduce, as—



1. *General connectives*, which do not alter the arrangement of the clause.

2. *Adverbial conjunctions*, causing the inversion of a clause (that is to say, causing its subject to follow, instead of preceding, the verb).

2. *Subordinating conjunctions*, which make the clause dependent, and give it the transposed order (removing the verb to the end).

4. The first two classes, in contradistinction from the third, may be called *co-ordinating conjunctions*.

**384.** The general connectives are those signifying *and, but, for, and or and either*.

Namely *und and*;—*aber, allein, sondern* (and sometimes *doch*) *but*;—*denn for*;—*entweder either* and *oder or*.

*a.* Of the words meaning *but*, *sondern* is more strongly adversative than *aber*, being used only after a negative, and introducing some word which has a like construction with the one on which the force of the negation falls, and which is placed in direct antithesis with it: thus, *weil nicht eigne Macht, sondern Gott, die Könige errettet because not their own might, but God, saves kings*; *er genoß nicht lange seines Ruhms, sondern ward bezwungen he did not long enjoy his fame, but he was subdued*; *mein Retter war kein Mann, sondern ein Bach my preserver was no man, but a brook*;—the combination *nicht nur* (or *bloß*) . . . *sondern auch not only . . . but also* is likewise common: thus, *nicht bloß jene sündigten, sondern auch wir not they alone sinned, but also we*. *Allein* means literally *only*, and is often best so rendered, being more restricted than *aber* to the introduction of a definite objection. For *doch* as *but*, see below, 385.5c.

*b.* These connectives stand always at the head of the clause whose connection they indicate: except *aber*, which has great freedom of position, and may be introduced at any later point—without any notable difference of meaning, although often to be conveniently rendered by *however*.

**385.** 1. The adverbial conjunctions are originally and strictly adverbs, qualifying the verb of the clause which they introduce; and, like any other of the ad-

juncts of the verb (431), when placed at the head of the clause, they give it the *inverted* order, putting the subject after the verb.

2. No distinct boundary separates the conjunctive use of these words from their adverbial use: they are conjunctions when their effect is to determine the relations of clauses to one another, rather than to limit the action of a verb—and these two offices pass insensibly into each other.

3. They may be simply classified as—

*a. Copulative* (related to the general connective *and*), uniting different phrases with no other implication than that of continuation, order, or division: *as, auch also, außerdem besides, dann then, ferner further, erstens, zweitens, drittens, firstly, secondly, thirdly*, and so on, *schließlich finally, weder . . . noch neither . . . nor, theils [teils] . . . theils [teils] partly . . . partly, bald . . . bald now . . . now.*

*b. Adversative* (related to *but*), implying more or less distinctly an opposition of idea, a denial or restriction: *as, doch, jedoch, dennoch yet, though, gleichwohl, dessenungeachtet nevertheless; dagegen, hingegen on the contrary, indessen however, vielmehr rather, zwar to be sure, wohl indeed.*

*c. Causative* (related to *for*), implying a ground, reason, or occasion: *as, daher, deswegen, deshalb therefore, also accordingly, folglich, mithin consequently.*

*d. Adverbs of place and time*, particularly the latter, sometimes assume a conjunctive value: *as, unterdessen meanwhile, vorher previously, darauf thereupon.*

4. Although these words in their conjunctive office tend toward the head of the clause, they do not always take that place; nor are they always conjunctions rather than adverbs when they introduce the clause. Especially *nämlich namely*, and some of the adversative and causative conjunctions—as *doch, jedoch, indessen, zwar, wohl, also*—have a freedom of position like that of *aber* (384*b*).

5. The clause sometimes maintains its normal order, instead of being inverted, after conjunctions of this class: especially—

*a. When the emphasis of the clause, or of the antithesis in two correlative clauses, rests on the subject, so that the conjunction becomes a kind of adjunct of the subject: thus, auch*

dein Bruder hat es gewünscht *thy brother also has wished it*, weder er, noch ich waren da *neither he nor I were there*.

b. When the conjunction represents a clause which is not fully expressed, or is thrown in as it were parenthetically. Conjunctions most often so treated are *zwar*, *überdies*, *folglich*, *audem*, *hingegen*, and ordinals, as *erstens*, *zweitens*.

c. *Doch* sometimes has its adversative force weakened to a mere *but*, and leaves the order of the clause unchanged, like the other words that have that meaning (384).

**386.** 1. The subordinating conjunctions are such as give to the clause which they introduce a dependent (subordinate, accessory) value, making it enter, in the relation of substantive, adjective, or adverb, into the structure of some other clause (435). Such a dependent clause assumes the *transposed* order—that is to say, its personal verb is removed to the end of the clause (see 434 etc.).

2. The conjunctions that introduce a *substantive dependent clause* are *daß* *that*, *ob* *whether*, and those that have a compound relative value, namely *wie* *how*, *wann* *when*, *wo* *where*, and the compounds of *wo*, whether with adverbs of direction, as *wohin* *whither*, *woher* *whence*, or with prepositions, as representing cases of the compound relative pronoun *wer* (180), as *wovon* *whereof*, *womit* *wherewith*.

Thus, *ich weiß, daß er hier war; ob er noch hier bleibt, ist mir unbekannt; fragen Sie nur nach, wohin er sich begeben habe* *I know that he was here; whether he still remains here is unknown to me; only inquire whither he has betaken himself*.

3. The conjunctions that introduce an *adjective dependent clause* are chiefly those made up of prepositions with the adverbs *da* and *wo*, representing cases of the simple relative pronouns *der* and *welcher* (180), or of words of direction with the same adverbs. The simple conjunctions *wo*, *wenn*, *wann*, *da*, *als*, *wie*, following specifications of place, time, or manner, also sometimes perform the same office.

Thus, *das Bett, worauf er lag* *the bed on which he lay*; *ihr Quellen, dahin die welcke Brust sich drängt* *ye fountains toward which the drooping breast presses*; *das Land, wo die Citronen blühen* *the land where the lemons blossom*; *die Art, wie man den Krieg führt* *the way in which the war is carried on*.

4. The conjunctions that introduce an *adverbial dependent clause* are of very various derivation, character, and meaning, namely—

a. Conjunctions indicating *place*: *as, wo, da where*.

b. *Time*: *as, da, als, wenn, wie, wo when, indem, indessen or indeß, weil, während while, nachdem after, seitdem since, bis until, ehe, bevor before*.

c. *Manner*: *as, wie as*.

d. *Cause*: *as, weil, diemeil because, da since, nun now that, daß that*.

e. *Purpose*: *as, damit, daß, auf daß, um daß in order that*.

f. *Condition*: *as, wenn if, so, wo, wofern, dafern, falls in case, indem while*; and, with implication of objection, *ungeachtet, obgleich, obmohl, ob schon, ob zwar, ob auch, wenngleich, wenn schon, wenn auch, wiewohl although*.

The compounds of *ob* and *wenn* with *gleich, mohl, and schon*, meaning *although*, are often separated by intervening words.

g. *Degree*: *as, wie as, je according as, als, denn than*.

h. Besides these, there are numerous conjunctive phrases, of kindred value, composed of conjunctions and other particles: *as, als ob as if, in wie fern so far as, je nachdem according as, so bald as soon as, so lang so long as, etc.*

i. So, especially, with following adverb, forms (as in the last two examples) a great number of conjunctive phrases or compounds, after which the conjunction *als as* is sometimes expressed, but more often implied: thus, *so lang als es nur möglich ist*, or *so lang es nur möglich ist so long as it is in any way possible* (compare 438.3d).

5. Few of these words are exclusively conjunctions: many are adverbs also, or prepositions, or both; some, as *während, ungeachtet*, are participial forms; some, as *falls, weil*, are cases of nouns; many are combined phrases composed of a preposition and a governed case; as *indem, nachdem, seitdem*.

## INTERJECTIONS.

387. The interjections have a character of their own, separate from the other parts of speech, in that they do not enter as elements into the structure of sentences or periods, but are independent outbursts of feeling, or intimations of will, the uttered equivalents of a tone, a grimace, or a gesture.

**388.** Nevertheless, they are not purely natural exclamations, but utterances akin with such, which are now assigned by usage to the expression of certain states of mind or will.

**389.** The interjections most commonly used are—

1. Of those expressing feeling—o or oĥ, used in a great variety of meanings; aĥ, weĥ, expressing painful or disagreeable surprise or grief; pfui, fi, baĥ, expressing disgust or contempt; ei, joyful surprise; ĥa, aĥ, wonder, pleasure, and the like; ĥeiĥa, juĥĥe, exultation; ĥem, ĥm, doubt, hesitation; ĥu, horror, shuddering.

2. Of those intimating will or desire—ĥe, ĥeda, ĥolla, to call attention; pſt, the same, or to command silence; ĥuſĥ, to command silence; topp, to signify the closing of a bargain.

3. Here may be best classed, also, the various imitations of the cries of animals and other natural sounds, directions and call-words for animals, and the more or less artificially composed and unintelligent words which are used as burdens of songs and the like: as, ĥopſaſa, vivaſſera, tumtedum.

**390.** As, on the one hand, the interjections are employed with a degree of conventionality, like the other constituents of language, so, on the other hand, many words that are proper parts of speech are very commonly used in an exclamatory way, quite as if they were interjections. Such are ĥeil *hail!* gott-lob *praise God!* bemahr *God forbid!* fort, weg *away!* ſieh *behold!* brav *well done!* etc.; and the whole series of oaths and adjurations.

a. The ordinary equivalent of our *alas*, *leider*, is an abbreviation of the phrase maſ mir noch leider iſt *what is yet more painful to me* (or something equivalent to this), and is capable of being introduced, parenthetically, at almost any point in the phrase—even, when put first, sometimes causing inversion, like an adverb.

**391.** The exclamatory or interjectional mode of expression prevails to no small extent in the practical use of language, when emotion or eagerness causes that usual set framework of the sentence, the verb and its subject, to be thrown aside, and only the emphatic elements to be presented at all.

Thus, euĥ zur Erbin erſlaren! der verrätheriſche [verräteriſche] Gallſtrid *declare you my heiress! the treacherous snare!* flieh'!

auf! hinaus ins weite Land! *flee! up! out into the wide country!*  
 ich versteh' dich; weiter! *I understand you: further!*

The grammatical forms most frequently thus used are the nominative of address (or "vocative:" 214), and the imperative.

**392.** Some of the interjections are also brought into a kind of connection with the structure of the sentence, being followed by cases, or phrases, such as would suit a more complete expression of the feeling they intimate.

Thus, o, ach, pfui may stand before a genitive expressing the occasion of the exclamation: as in o des Thoren! pfui der Schande! *oh the fool! fie on the shame!*—some may take a prepositional phrase or a substantive clause after them: as, ach daß du da liegst *alas that thou liest there!* pfui über den Feigen *fie on the coward!*—and nouns used interjectionally often admit a dative object, signifying that toward which the feeling is directed; thus, Heil, o Frühling, deinem Schein *hail to thy brilliancy, O Spring!* weh mir, daß ich dir vertraut *woe to me, that I have trusted thee!*

[EXERCISE 34. CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.]

## WORD-FORMATION, DERIVATION.

### *Introductory Explanations.*

**393.** The etymological part of grammar, as thus far treated, deals with the character and uses of the *parts of speech*, and of their *grammatical* or *inflectional forms*, which are made from simple roots or from stems, chiefly by inflectional endings, but in part also by internal change.

a. Such grammatical forms (along with the indeclinable particles, which are ultimately of the same character with them) constitute the most essential part of the grammatical apparatus of a language, its instrumentality for the expression of relations of ideas, the means by which its names of beings, qualities, acts, etc., are placed in connection with one another, in order to express the thoughts of the speaker.

b. *Root* is the name given to an ultimate significant element, itself containing nothing that is recognizably formative. From roots, by the ordinary means of derivation, are made *stems* (or *themes*, or *bases*), from which come inflectional forms, and also other stems.

**394.** Another and only less important part of the same grammatical apparatus is the array of means by which stems of declension and conjugation are formed from roots and from each other. These means are of the same character with those already described, consisting chiefly of suffixes, along with a few prefixes, and supplemented by methods of internal change.

**395.** There is no fundamental diversity between the two instrumentalities. The suffixes and prefixes of inflection and of derivation are equally, by origin, independent words, which were first uttered in connection with other words, then combined with the latter, and finally made to lose their independence and converted into subordinate elements, designating the relations of other more substantial and significant elements.

*a.* The working-out of grammatical apparatus, by the reduction of words once independent to the condition of endings of inflection or derivation, has been a part of the history of inflective languages, from their beginning down to modern times. Of many of the affixes formed in this way, as well as of some that are much more ancient, the origin can still be distinctly traced; but their history is to a great extent obscured by the effects of linguistic change and corruption. Compare what is said above of the derivation of the ending *te*, forming the preterits of the New conjugation (246.3), and of the suffixes *liḥ*, *mārtā*, etc. (363-4).

*b.* The difference between the two classes of endings lies in their mode of application, and in the frequency and regularity of their use. Certain suffixes of derivation are so regularly applied to whole classes of themes, and produce derivatives so analogous with forms of inflection, that they are conveniently and properly treated along with the subject of inflection. Such are the endings *er* and *eṣṭ* of comparatives and superlatives (133 etc.), and those which form the infinitive and participles of verbs.

**396.** Among modern languages commonly studied, the German is the one which most fully and clearly illustrates the processes of word-formation; and the subject ought therefore to receive the attention of every advanced German scholar.

**397.** But no known language (not even such exceptional ones as the Sanskrit) has preserved so much of its primitive structure that we can carry back the analysis of its vocabulary to the actual beginning. By the help, especially, of a careful

and searching comparison of related languages, the processes of word-combination can be traced up until we discover of what sort are the ultimate elements of speech, although we are by no means certain of being able to point them out in their very form and substance.

### *Principles.*

**398.** The words of German, as of other related languages, are traceably derived, in good part, from roots.

**399.** The means of derivation, through the whole history of development, have been chiefly suffixes or derivational endings—with some aid from prefixes.

*a.* The almost exclusive use of suffixes rather than prefixes, as means both of inflection and of derivation, is a characteristic feature of the family of languages to which the German (with our own) belongs. The few prefixes employed have retained much more distinctly the character of independent words, forming proper compounds with those to which they are attached; that character has been lost only by the inseparable prefixes (307) and one or two others (see below, 411.II). The negative *un* is the only German prefix of really ancient character and obscure derivation.

**400.** Besides this, there have come to be in German two other specific auxiliary methods of internal change, affecting the vowel of the root or primitive word. These are—

1. The modification of vowel (14), or change of *a, o, u, au* into *ä, ö, ü, äu*, respectively: thus, *Mann, Männer man, men*; *Ṣuß, Ṣüße foot, feet*; *Maus, Mäuse mouse, mice*; *alt, älter, ältest old, elder, eldest*; *Korn, Körnlein corn, kernel*; *hange, hängt I hang, he hangs*; *flög, flöge I flew, I might fly*; *roth [rot], röthen [röten] red, redder*. This modification is by the Germans called *Umlaut change of sound*.

*a.* This is a euphonic change, coming from the assimilation of a hard or guttural vowel to a soft or palatal one (*e, i*) closely following it—although finally applied by analogy, in many single cases, where no such cause had been present. It is of comparatively recent introduction, although, as the examples show, shared in part by the English. It is quite unknown in one branch of Germanic speech, the *Moeso-Gothic*; and, on the other hand, most highly developed in the *Scandinavian* tongues.



b. In the present condition of the language, the cause of the modification is generally no longer to be seen, the assimilating vowel having been lost.

c. Some derivative words having vowels which are really the effect of modification are now, usually or always, written with the simple vowels *e* (for *ä* or *ö*) or *i* (for *ü*). Again, some words show a modified vowel as the mere result of an irregular variation of utterance, without etymological reason.

2. The variation or gradation of radical vowel: as in *fingen*, *fang*, *gesungen* *sing*, *sang*, *sung*; *werde*, *wird*, *ward*, *wurden*, *geworden*, from *werden* *become*; *breche*, *bricht*, *brach*, *gebrochen*, *Bruch*, from *brechen* *break*. This variation is by the Germans called *Ablaut* *divergence of sound*.

a. This second mode of vowel change is also, like the other, originally of euphonic character, one of the accidents attending the phonetic development of language, under the combined influences of quantity, accent, combination, addition of suffixes, and the like. But it is much more ancient, being one of the characteristic peculiarities of all the Germanic languages; and its specific causes and mode of evolution are in part obscure.

b. The sphere of action of the gradation of radical vowel is in the inflection of the older verbs of the language, and the formation of their earliest derivatives.

401. The modes of consonantal change which accompany the processes of word-formation are too various and irregular to be systematically set forth here. Some of them will be noticed below, in connection with the derivatives whose formation especially calls them out.

402. To carry back the historical analysis of German words to the farthest point attained by the aid of the languages kindred with the German, would take the pupil into regions where he is a stranger, and would be unprofitable. Such study requires a knowledge of the older dialects, and belongs to a higher stage of progress. Only the processes of derivation whose results are traceable in the existing language will be set forth; and those words will be treated as "primitive" which have no German etymons, or more original words whence they are derived, even though evidence from other languages may not only show them to be derivatives, but also exhibit the earlier forms from which they came.

## DERIVATION OF VERBS.

**403. Primitive Verbs.** Verbs to be regarded as primitive are—

1. The verbs of the Old or strong conjugation, nearly two hundred in number (264–7), which constitute the most important body of primitive roots in the language.

*a.* Several verbs of this conjugation, however, are demonstrably derivative: thus, *ſchreiben* (III.2) *write*, from Latin *scribo*; *preiſen* (III.2) *praise*, from *Preiſ* *value* (which comes from Lat. *pretium*), etc. Others are doubtless of the same character; since, down to that period in the history of the language at which the mode of inflection of the New conjugation was introduced, all verbs, whether recent or older, were inflected according to the Old conjugation.

2. Many verbs of the New or weak conjugation: as, *haben* *have*, *ſagen* *say*, *reden* *talk*, *lieben* *love*, *leben* *live*.

*a.* A number of the verbs of the New conjugation formerly belonged to the Old, having changed their mode of inflection under the influence of the tendency to extend a prevailing analogy and reduce more irregular to more regular forms. Others, if originally derivative, have lost the evidence of it. To the root of some there is a corresponding noun, and it may admit of question which is the more original, verb or noun.

*b.* All verbs whose root, or conjugation-stem, is of more than one syllable are to be classed as derivative: even though, as in the case of *ſchmeicheln* *flatter*, *klettern* *climb*, the original from which they come is no longer to be traced.

**404. Verbs derived from Verbs.**

I. By internal change of the root itself:

1. By change (generally, modification or *Umlaut*) of the root vowel, a class of *causative* verbs are formed, taking as their direct object what was the subject of the simple verb: thus, *fallen* *fall*, *fällen* *cause to fall*, *fell*; *trinken* *drink*, *tränken* *cause to drink*, *drench*; *ſitzen* *sit*, *ſetzen* *set*; *liegen* *lie*, *legen* *lay*; *ſaugen* *suck*, *ſäugen* *suckle*; *fahren* *go*, *führen* *lead*.

*a.* As some of the examples show, this class of derivatives has its representatives in English also, but they are much more numerous in German.

b. By change of the final consonant, with or without accompanying change of vowel, a few verbs are made, with various modification of the meaning of the simple verb: thus, *hängen hang*, *hengen execute by hanging*; *biegen bend*, *büden bow*; *neigen incline*, *niden nod*; *wachen wake*, *watch*, *weden awaken, arouse*; *essen eat*, *äßen corrode, etch*.

## II. By additions to the root:

1. The suffix *el* forms a few diminutives, as *lachen laugh*, *lächeln smile*; *lieben love*, *liebeln dally, flirt*; *franken be sick*, *fränkeln be sickly or ailing*.

a. But most of the diminutive verbs in *eln* are derived from nouns and adjectives: see below, 405.II.1.

2. The suffix *er* forms a few iterative, desiderative, or causative verbs, as *flappen flap*, *flappern rattle*; *lachen laugh*, *lächern make inclined to laugh*; *folgen follow*, *folgern infer, conclude*.

a. But most verbs in *ern*, as in *eln*, come from nouns and adjectives; and those which appear to come from verbs are rather to be regarded as formed in imitation of such, or after their analogy.

3. The addition of *ch* gives in a few cases intensive force: as in *hören hear*, *horchén hearken*; *schmarren rattle*, *schmarchéen snore, snort*.

4. *ſr* or *ier*. This is properly a French ending, representing the *er* or *ir* of the infinitive of French verbs; and it forms German verbs from French or Latin roots: thus, *studiren* [*studieren*] *study*, *marſchiren* [*marſchieren*] *march*, *ſpazieren* *expatiate, go abroad for pleasure or exercise*, *regieren rule*.

a. But a few verbs in *iren* [*ieren*] are formed, in imitation of these, from German words: as *buchſtabiren* [*buchſtabieren*] *spell*, (from *Buchſtabe letter*), *ſchattiren* [*ſchattieren*] *shade* (from *Schatten shadow*).

b. At a certain period, about the middle of the last century, the German language was well-nigh swamped by the introduction of a multitude of such foreign verbs in *iren*. The greater part of them have been cast out from dignified and literary use, but they are still rife in low colloquial and humorous styles.

c. The syllable *ir* or *ier* of these verbs receives the accent; and they therefore admit no prefix *ge* in the participle: see 243.3a.

### III. By prefixes to the root:

1. By the inseparable prefixes *be*, *ent* or *emp*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, and *zer*. For the derivative (or compound) verbs formed by means of these prefixes, see above, 302 etc.

2. By separable prefixes.

Verbs formed by means of such prefixes have no real right to be regarded as derivative: they are compounds, rather: see 296 etc.

*Remark.*—Derivative verbs in German coming from other verbs directly are quite rare; and, of those usually regarded as so derived, some admit of explanation as denominatives, or as coming from nouns and adjectives.

### 405. Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives.

Verbs from nouns and adjectives are commonly called *denominatives*. They constitute in German, as in the other related languages, the great mass of derivative verbs. The relation of the verbal idea to the meaning of the primitive word is of the most varied character. Verbs from adjectives usually signify either, as intransitives, to be in or to pass into the condition denoted by the adjective, or else, as transitives, to reduce something to that condition. Verbs from nouns signify either to supply with that which the noun denotes, or to deprive of it, or to use or apply it, or to treat with it, or to be like it, and so on: for examples, see below.

#### I. By the simple addition of the endings of conjugation:

1. From nouns, more usually without modification of the vowel of the primitive word: as, *füßen* *set foot, find footing* (*Fuß* *foot*); *haufen* *house, dwell* (*Haus* *house*); *grasen* *graze* (*Gras* *grass*); *altern* *grow old, age* (*Alter* *age*); *buttern* *make or turn to butter* (*Butter* *butter*); *prunfen* *make a show* (*Prunk* *show*); *arbeiten* *work* (*Arbeit* *labor*): sometimes with modification of the vowel: as, *pflügen* *plough* (*Pflug* *plough*); *hämmern* *hammer* (*Hammer* *hammer*); *stürzen* *fall or hurl headlong* (*Sturz* *fall*).

a. Rarely, a verb is formed from a noun in the plural: as, *blättern* *turn over the leaves of*, etc. (*Blätter* *leaves*, from *Blatt*).

b. Nouns (and adjectives) ending in the unaccented syllable *en* reject the *e* of that syllable in the derivative verb: thus, *regnen* *rain* (*Regen* *rain*), *öffnen* *open* (*offen* *open*).

2. From adjectives, usually with modification of the vowel: thus, *röthen* [*röten*] *red* (*roth* [*rot*] *red*), *stärken* *strengthen*

(*stark strong*), tödten [töten] *kill* (tobt [tot] *dead*), genügen *suffice* (genug *enough*), ändern *alter* (ander *other*), äußern *utter* (außer *out*); rarely, without modification: as, nahen *draw nigh* (nah *nigh*), alten *grow old* (alt *old*).

a. A number of derivative verbs are formed from adjectives in the comparative degree: thus, nähern *come nearer* (näher *nearer*, from nah), mindern *diminish* (minder *less*).

## II. By derivative endings, forming stems of conjugation:

1. The ending *el* forms from both nouns and adjectives (with modification of their vowel) verbs which have a diminutive, disparaging, or reproachful meaning: thus, künsteln *treat in an artificial or affected manner* (Kunst *art*); alterthüme[n] [altertüme[n]] *be foolishly or affectedly fond of antiquity* (Alterthum [Alttertum] *antiquity*); flügel[n] *subtilize, be over-critical* (flug *knowing*); fröme[n] *affect piety, cant* (fromm *pious*).

a. Compare derivatives formed from verbs by the same ending, 404.II.1.

2. The endings *sch*, *z*, and *enz* form a few verbs: *sch* forms only herrschen *rule* (Herr *master*) and feilschen *chaffer* (feil *cheap*); *z* forms duzen *to thee and thou* (du *thou*), and one or two others; *enz* forms faulenz[n] *play the sluggard* (faul *lazy*), etc.

3. The ending *ig* is properly one forming adjectives (below, 415.9); but *i* is sometimes attached both to adjectives and to nouns in order to the formation of a special theme of conjugation, by analogy with the numerous verbs derived from adjectives ending in *ig*: thus, reinigen *purify* (rein *pure*); endigen *end, terminate* (Ende *end*).

4. The ending *ir* or *ier* forms a few verbs from German nouns: see 404.II.4a.

## III. By prefixes (either with or without derivative endings):

1. The inseparable prefixes (except *ge*) form a very large number of denominative verbs, generally without any accompanying derivative ending, but occasionally along with such. In these denominatives, the prefixes have a force analogous to that which belongs to them in composition (see 307): thus—

a. *Be* forms transitives, denoting especially a furnishing, making, or treating: thus, befeelen *endow with a soul* (Seele *soul*); begeistern *inspirit* (Geister *spirits*, from Geist); befreien *free*,

*liberate* (frei *free*); *bereichern enrich* (reicher *richer*, from reich); *beschönigen beautify* (schön *beautiful*); *benachrichtigen inform* (Nachricht *news*).

b. Ent forms especially verbs signifying removal, deprivation, and the like: thus, *entfernen withdraw* (fern *far*); *entblößen strip* (bloß *bare*); *enthaupten behead* (Haupt *head*); *entkräften enervate* (Kraft *power*); *entheiligen desecrate* (heilig *holy*); *entwaffnen disarm* (Waffen *weapon*).

c. Er forms transitives, intransitives, and reflexives, chiefly from adjectives, and signifying a passing into, or a reduction to, the state signified by the adjective: thus, *erhärten grow hard*, *erhärten make hard* (hart *hard*); *ermatten tire* (matt *weary*); *ergänzen complete* (ganz *entire*); *erniedrigen humble* (niedrig *low*); *erlösen release* (loß *loose*); *erweitern extend* (weiter *wider*, from weit); *erklären explain* (klar *clear*);—but sometimes with more irregular meaning, from adjectives or nouns: thus, *erobern conquer* (ober *superior*); *erinnern remind* (inner *interior*); *ergründen fathom, explore* (Grund *bottom*).

d. Ver has nearly the same value and office as er, but is more prevailingly transitive in effect: thus, *verändern alter* (ander *other*); *vereiteln frustrate* (eitel *vain*); *vergnügen gratify* (genug *enough*); *verlängern lengthen* (länger *longer*, from lang); *verglasen vitrify, glaze* (Glas *glass*); *versilbern plate with silver* (Silber *silver*); *veralten become antiquated* (alt *old*).

e. Zer forms a very few derivatives: as, *zerfleischen lacerate* (Fleisch *flesh*); *zergliedern dismember* (Glieder *limbs*, from Glied).

2. A small number of denominatives are formed with the separable prefixes: such are *abdachē unroof* (Dach *roof*); *ausfēren remove the stone or kernel of* (Kern *kernel*); *einfētern imprison* (Fester *prison*); *umarmen embrace* (Arm *arm*); *aufmuntern cheer up* (munter *cheerful*); *ausweiten widen* (weit *wide*).

#### 406. Verbs derived from Particles.

A few verbs are derived from other parts of speech by the same means as from nouns and adjectives.

Such are *empören excite, arouse* (empor *aloft*); *begegnen meet* (gegen *against*); *ermiedern answer* (wieder *again*); *vernichten, zernichten annihilate* (nicht *not*); *verneinen deny* (nein *no*); *bejahen affirm* (ja *yes*); *ächzen groan* (ach *ah!*); *jauchzen exult* (juch, juchhe *hurrah!*).

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

407. *Primitive Nouns.*

1. Primitive nouns are in part monosyllabic words which contain no evident sign of their really derivative nature, and of which the original roots are no longer traceable in German.

Such are *Mann* man, *Haus* house, *Baum* tree, *Kind* child, *Volk* people, *Fuß* foot.

2. In part they are words of more than one syllable, the evident products of composition or derivation, containing elements more or less closely analogous with those by which other recognizable derivatives are formed, but coming from roots of which they are the only remaining representatives.

Such are *Name* name, *Knabe* boy, *Auge* eye, *Erde* earth, *Vater* father, *Tochter* daughter, *Wasser* water, *Vogel* bird, *Nadel* needle, *Segel* sail.

a. Some of the words in both these classes are traceable by comparison of the kindred languages to earlier roots from which they are descended: thus, *Mann* is usually (though doubtfully) referred to a root *MAN* *think* (the same with *meinen* *think*, *mean*); *Kind* comes from the root *GAN* *generate*; *Fuß* is identical with Latin *pes*, Greek *pous*, coming from *PAD* *walk*; *Name* goes back to *GNA* *know*; *Tochter* to *DUH* *draw the breast*, *milk*, and so on.

408. *Nouns derived from Verbs.*

I. By variation or gradation of vowel (Ablaut: see 400.2) alone, without added ending.

Thus, *Band* volume, *Bund* bond, from *binden* *bind*; *Sitz* seat, *Satz* sediment, *Saß* settler, from *sitzen* *sit*; *Zug* draft, from *ziehen* *draw*; *Tritt* step, from *treten* *tread*; *Spruch* speech, from *sprechen* *speak*; *Sprung* spring, from *springen* *spring*.

a. All these words originally had endings of derivation, which have become lost by phonetic corruption. They are prevailingly masculine.

b. In words thus derived appear sometimes irregular alterations of the root, especially of its final consonant, as the examples in part show.

c. The relation of meaning of such derivatives to the idea of action, state, or quality expressed by the verbal root is very various; but they signify in general either the act or quality

itself, or the result of the action, or the person or thing that acts, or to which the state or quality belongs.

II. By brief and obscure endings, relics of earlier fuller forms, and no longer producing distinct classes of derivatives with definable modifications of the radical meaning. Such endings are—

1. *Te, de, t* (*st, ft*), *d*: thus, *Bürde burden*, from *bären bear*; *Scharte notch*, from *scheren shear*; *Fahrt passage*, from *fahren go*; *Schrift document*, from *schreiben write*; *Tracht dress*, from *tragen wear*; *Brunst heat*, from *brennen burn*; *Kunst art*, from *kennen know*; *Kunst coming*, from *kommen come*; *Brand combustion*, from *brennen burn*.

2. *Œ*, which forms a very large number of derivatives: thus, *Binde tie*, from *binden bind*; *Sprache language*, from *sprechen speak*; *Gabe gift*, from *geben give*; *Fliege fly*, from *fliegen fly*.

*a.* The derivatives of this class also share in the gradation of radical vowel, and the irregular alterations of the final consonant of the root, which characterize the older words of the language. They are of as various meaning as those of the preceding class. Their gender is prevailingly feminine—exceptions being appellations of males (persons and animals), and a few that are of anomalous character.

III. By endings of more distinct form, and more uniform and definable meaning.

The most important of these we will take up in alphabetical order, for the sake of more convenient reference.

1. *Œi*. This suffix is of foreign origin, being derived from the Latin and French *ia, ie*. It was used originally only to form derivatives from nouns (see below, 410.2), but has come also to form from verbs ending in *eln* and *ern* abstract nouns of action, often with a disparaging or contemptuous implication: thus, *Schmeichelei flattery*, from *schmeicheln flatter*; *Ländelei trifling*, from *tändeln trifle*; *Plauderei chit-chat*, from *plaudern chatter*; *Zauberei witchcraft*, from *zaubern practise magic*.

*a.* Words formed with *ei* are feminine, and take the accent upon this syllable, as is required by the derivation of the suffix.

2. *Œl*. This suffix forms a considerable class of masculine derivatives, denoting generally an instrument, quite rarely an actor: thus, *Hebel lever*, from *heben raise*; *Deckel cover*, from *decken cover*; *Schlägel mallet*, from *schlagen beat*; *Schlüssel key*, from *schließen lock*; *Flügel wing*, from *fliegen fly*.



a. But a great many nouns in the language ending in *el* are from lost or unknown roots, and therefore have the value of primitive words (407.2); some of these are feminine or neuter: as are also some others, whose gender is determined by their signification.

3. *En*. Besides forming the infinitives of all verbs (237.1a), which, when used as ordinary nouns, are neuter (340), *en* is the suffix of derivation of a considerable class of masculine nouns, as *Bissen bit*, from *beißen bite*; *Graben ditch*, from *graben dig*; *Schaden harm*, from *schaden injure*.

a. Of the numerous words of obscure etymology in *en*, a few are neuter, but none are feminine.

4. *Er*. This suffix forms numerous masculine nouns denoting an actor; thus, *Reiter rider*, from *reiten ride*; *Maler painter*, from *malen paint*; *Tänzer dancer*, from *tanzen dance*; *Bäcker baker*, from *backen bake*. With these are closely akin a few names of instruments, as *Bohrer auger*, from *bohren bore*; *Zeiger pointer*, from *zeigen point*.

a. Of the older words ending in *er*, and requiring to be reckoned as primitives (407.2), many are feminine or neuter.

b. *Er* also forms classes of derivative nouns from nouns: see 410.3.

5. *Ing* forms from verbs chiefly masculine nouns denoting the recipient of the verbal action: thus, *Findling foundling*, from *finden find*; *Lehrling pupil*, from *lehren teach*; *Säugling suckling*, from *säugen suckle*.

a. For the derivatives in *ing* from nouns and adjectives, see 409.II.4, 410.6.

6. *Niß* [niß]. This suffix is chiefly used in German to form abstract nouns from verbs; much less often, like the corresponding English *ness*, to produce similar derivatives from adjectives (see 409.II.5). Such abstracts come especially from derivative verbs and those compounded with inseparable prefixes, as *be*, *er*, *ver*; sometimes seeming to be formed from the participle rather than the simple verbal root. Like all abstract nouns, they may admit of use also as concretes, or pass wholly over into such. Examples are *Zeugniß testimony*, from *zeugen testify*; *Hinderniß hindrance*, from *hindern hinder*; *Begräbniß burial*, from *begraben bury*; *Ereigniß occurrence*, from *ereignen occur*; *Verhältniß relation*, from *verhalten stand related*;

Geständniß *confession*, from *gestehen* (*gestanden*) *confess*; Gefängniß *prison*, from *gefangen* *imprisoned*.

a. The greater number of nouns in niß [ni:] are neuter, but a score or more of them are feminine, especially such as have retained more fully their abstract meaning. A few, as Ersparniß, Erkenntniß, are feminine when used abstractly, but neuter as concretes.

7. Sal, sel. These are two different forms of the same original suffix, which at first and more properly formed nouns from nouns, but whose existing derivatives are to be referred almost exclusively to verbal roots, and are akin in meaning with those in niß. Sel is only used in concretes. Thus, Schicksal *fate*, from *schicken* *send*; Irrsal *error*, from *irren* *wander*; Ueberbleibsel *remnant*, from *überbleiben* *remain over*; Räthsels [Rätsel] *riddle*, from *rathen* [*raten*] *guess*.

a. Derivatives in sal and sel are neuter, excepting two or three in sal (Drangsal, Mühsal, Trübsal), which may also be used as feminine.

8. Ung. This suffix is nearly equivalent in meaning and application with our *ing* forming verbal nouns (infinitives in *ing*), but is peculiar in that it is hardly used except with derivative and transitive verbs. The nouns it forms admit an object (objective genitive: 216.2h) nearly as regularly as the verbs from which they come. Many of the nouns in ung, like other abstracts, pass over into concrete use; and such as come from reflexive verbs have an intransitive force. Examples are Führung *leading, conduct*, Belehrung *instruction*, Erfindung *invention*, Vergebung *forgiveness*, Bemerkung *remark*, Bedeutung *meaning*, Bewegung *motion*, Neigung *affection*—from *führen* *lead*, *belehren* *instruct*, and so on.

a. The derivatives in ung are feminine without exception.

9. Besides the suffixes above detailed, there are a few of infrequent use: such are and (properly the old participial ending), in Heiland *Savior*, from *heilen* *heal*; —icht, in Rehdicht *sweepings*, from *kehren* *sweep*, etc.; —ig, in Essig *vinegar*, from *essen* *eat*; —ath [at], in Zierath [Zierat] *ornament*, from *zieren* *decorate*; —end, in Tugend *virtue*, from *taugen* *be of value*;—and one or two others, of too little consequence to be worth noting. Schaft (410.7) and thum [tum] (410.8) also form from verbal roots two or three derivatives, as Wanderschaft, Wachsthum [Wachstum].

### 409. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

I. 1. That the adjective, of either number and of any gender, is capable of use directly as a noun, still retaining its adjective declension, was pointed out above (at 129), and needs no further notice.

2. A few nouns are derived from adjectives without a suffix, being identical with the adjective theme, but being declined as independent (neuter) substantives: such are *Noth* [Not] *real*, *Grün* *green*, *Recht* *right*, *Gut* *property, goods*.

### II. Nouns derived by the aid of suffixes.

1. *Œ*. The suffix *e* forms feminine abstracts (convertible into concretes) from primitive adjectives, the vowel of which is always modified if capable of it. Thus, *Größe* *greatness*, *Güte* *goodness*, *Treue* *truth*, *Tiefe* *depth*; from *groß* *great*, etc.

2. *heit*. This suffix is the same with our *head* and *hood* (in *Godhead*, *manhood*, etc.), and forms feminine abstracts both from nouns (see below, 410.5) and from adjectives. Thus, *Freiheit* *freedom*, *Blindheit* *blindness*, *Albernheit* *stupidity*; from *frei* *free* etc.

3. *heit* is originally the same suffix with *heit*, taking the place of the latter after most primitive adjectives ending in *el* and *er*, and after all those formed by the suffixes *bar*, *ig*, *lich* and *sam*. Thus, *Eitelheit* *vanity*, *Bitterheit* *bitterness*, *Dankbarkeit* *gratitude*, *Billigkeit* *cheapness*, *Höflichkeit* *courtesy*, *Sparsamkeit* *economy*; from *eitel* *vain*, etc. To many adjectives, the additional adjective suffix *ig* (145.9) is added, with *heit* after it, instead of, or along with, *heit* alone: thus, from *klein* *small* we have both *Kleinheit* and *Kleinigkeit*; from *süß* *sweet*, *Süßigkeit*; from *standhaft* *steadfast*, *Standhaftigkeit*; from *treulos* *faithless*, *Treulosigkeit*.

4. *ling* forms a few masculine personal nouns from adjectives: thus, *Fremdling* *stranger*, *Jüngling* *youth*; from *fremd* *strange*, *jung* *young*. For derivatives with *ling* from verbs and nouns, see 408.III.5, 410.6.

5. *niß* [niß] (see 408.III.6) forms only four nouns from adjectives; namely, *Finsterniß* *darkness*, *Geheimniß* *secrecy*, *Wildniß* *wilderness*, *Gleichniß* *likeness*.

6. *Schaft* is chiefly employed in forming nouns from nouns (see 410.7); only a few adjectives admit it, as *Gemeinschaft* *community*, *Gefangenschaft* *imprisonment*, *Eigenschaft* *peculiarity*; from *gemein* *common*, etc. For the derivation etc. of *schaft* see below, 410.7.

7. *Teil*, from *Theil* [*Teil*] *part*, forms fractional numerals from ordinals; see 207.2.

8. *Thum* [tum], like *ſchaft*, is a suffix applied chiefly to nouns: see below 410.8. A few adjectives take it, as *Reichthum* *wealth*, *Eigenthum* *property*; from *reich* *rich*, *eigen* *own*.

9. Yet rarer suffixes are *ung* (compare 408.III.8, 410.9) in *Festung* *fortress*, from *fest* *strong*; —*icht*, in *Didicht* *thicket*, from *did* *thick*; —*uth* [ut] in *Armuth* *poverty*, from *arm* *poor*; —*end* in *Jugend* *youth*, from *jung* *young*.

#### 410. Nouns derived from Nouns.

1. *Chen*, *lein*. These are equivalent suffixes, forming from nouns (always with modification of the vowel of the latter, if it be one admitting modification) neuter diminutives: thus, *Häuschen* *little house*, *Männchen* *little man*, *mannikin*, *Knäblein* *little boy*, *Büchlein* *little book*.

*a.* These suffixes correspond to the English diminutive endings *kin* and *ling* (in *gosling*, *duckling*, etc.). *Chen* belongs more to the northern dialects of German, *lein* (often shortened in popular use to *el* or *le*) to the southern; but in the literary language their respective use is mainly determined by considerations of euphony, and many words admit the addition of either.

*b.* The words formed by these suffixes often add to their meaning as diminutives, or substitute for it, an implication of intimacy or tenderness. Some of them have a well-established value as independent words: such are *Fräulein* *young lady*, *Miss*, *Mädchen* *girl*, *Männchen* and *Weibchen* *male* and *female of an animal species*.

2. *Ei*. The foreign origin of the suffix *ei* was explained above (408.III.1). As added to nouns, it indicates especially the state, condition, or occupation of a person; also sometimes the place where an occupation is carried on: thus, *Jägerei* *sportsmanship*, from *Jäger* *hunter*; *Druckerei* *printing-establishment*, from *Drucker* *printer*. In a few words it has a collective force: thus, *Reiterei* *cavalry*, from *Reiter* *rider*.

*a.* As it is itself accented, this suffix was added most easily to unaccented terminational syllables, as *el* and *er*; and there are but few words—as *Abtei* *abbacy*, *Bogtei* *bailiwick*—in which it is appended to radical syllables. Being oftenest used after *er*, it has come to assume *er* in many cases as a prefix to itself, forming a kind of compound suffix *erei*, which is freely used with

words accented on the final: thus, *Sklaverei slavery*, *Kinderei childishness*, *Schelmerei roguery*; from *Sklav slave*, etc.

b. Especially in its recent derivatives, *ei* is apt to convey a disparaging implication: for example, *Juristerei lawyer's doings*, as compared with *Jurisprudenz jurisprudence*.

3. *Er*. a. Besides the numerous derivatives which it forms from verbs (408.III.4), *er* makes many names of a personal agent from nouns expressing the thing dealt with or acted upon: as, *Sänger singer*, from *Sang song*; *Schäfer shepherd*, from *Schaf sheep*; *Gärtner gardener*, from *Garten garden*.

b. It is also added to names of countries and towns, to indicate a native or inhabitant of the same: thus, *Schweizer Swiss*, *Berliner inhabitant of Berlin*, *Leipziger man from Leipzig*.

These nouns are then frequently employed as uninflected adjectives: see 415.5.

c. For the same purpose, it is sometimes combined with Latin endings, forming compound suffixes, as *aner* and *enser*: thus, *Amerikaner American*, *Athenienjer Athenian*.

d. After nouns, as after verbs, it is in a few cases irregularly converted into *ner*: thus, *Glockner bell-ringer*, from *Glocke bell*; *Harfner harper*, from *Harfe harp*.

e. It forms a small number of masculines answering to feminines in *e*: thus, *Wittwer [Witwer] widower*, from *Wittwe [Witwe] widow*; *Tauber cock-pigeon*, from *Taube dove*.

4. *In* (sometimes spelt *inn*). This suffix forms feminine from masculine appellations: thus, *Hirtin shepherdess*, from *Hirt shepherd*; *Königin queen*, from *König king*; *Freundin female friend*, *Köchin female cook*, *Löwin lioness*, *Französin French woman*, *Berlinerin woman of Berlin*. It is also added to titles to signify the wife of the person to whom the title belongs: as, *Pfarrerin pastor's wife*, *Professorin Mrs. Professor*.

*In* usually requires modification of the radical vowel, but there are (as the examples show) numerous exceptions.

5. *Heit*, like our *head* and *hood*, forms abstracts, and a few collectives, from nouns as well as from adjectives (409.II.2): thus, *Gottheit Godhead*, *Kindheit childhood*, *Thorheit folly*, *Menschheit humanity*, *Geistlichkeit clergy*.

6. *Ing* forms a few masculine personal names from nouns, as from verbs (408.III.5) and adjectives (409.II.4): such are *Jährling yearling*, *Flüchtling fugitive*, *Günstling favorite*.

7. *a.* *Schaft* is the same with our *ship* (in *lordship*, *worship*, etc.), and is derived from *schaffen* *shape, create*; it signifies primarily the shape or make of anything, then its character, office, rank, and the like: thus, *Freundschaft* *friendship*, *Befanntschaft* *acquaintance*, *Vormundschaft* *guardianship*. All its derivatives are of the feminine gender.

*b.* It forms also a number of collectives: as, *Priesterschaft* *priesthood*, *Dienerschaft* *body of servants*, *Gesellschaft* *company*, *Landschaft* *landscape*.

8. *Thum* [tum], our *dom* (in *kingdom*, *wisdom*, etc.), is also a noun, of obscure derivation, but of meaning and application as a suffix nearly akin with those of *schaft* (above, 7). Its derivatives are neuter, with only two or three exceptions (namely *Irrthum*, *Reichthum*, and, according to the usage of some, *Beweisthum* and *Wachsthum*), which are masculine. It forms nouns signifying character, rank, or authority, which then, in a few cases, come to mean that over which authority is exerted: thus, *Ritterthum* *chivalry*, *Papstthum* *papacy*, *Christenthum* *christendom*, *Rönigthum* *kingdom*, *Fürstenthum* *principality*.

9. Suffixes forming a few isolated words are rich in *Gänserich* *gander*, from *Gans* *goose*; *Fähnrich* *ensign*, from *Fahne* *banner*, etc.; *ung* in one or two collective words like *Waldung* *woodland*, from *Wald* *forest*; *ath* [at] in *Heimath* *home*, from *Heim* *home*. *Niß* [niß] (408.III.6) appears to form a derivative or two from nouns, as in *Bündniß* *covenant*, from *Bund* *tie*; also *sal* (408.III.7), as in *Mühsal* *distress*, from *Mühe* *toil*.

#### 411. Nouns formed by means of prefixes.

I. A very large number of nouns contain as their initial elements the verbal prefixes, both separable and inseparable (297). For the most part, however, they are not formed as nouns by means of those prefixes, but are derivatives, according to the methods explained above (408), from verbs compounded separably or inseparably. The only exceptions are, a considerable class formed by *ge* (below, II.1), and an occasional anomalous case like *Anhöhe* *rising ground*, from *Höhe* *height*.

II. The proper prefixes forming nouns are very few in number, namely as follows:

1. *Ge*. This common prefix forms a large number of derivative nouns, both from nouns and from verbs, having in general a collective or frequentative character. Thus—

a. Collectives from nouns, generally with modification of vowel, sometimes with other more irregular vowel changes: such are *Gesträuch shrubbery*, from *Strauch shrub*; *Gewölk cloud-mass*, from *Wolke cloud*; *Gebirg or Gebirge mountain-range*, from *Berg mountain*; *Gefieder plumage*, from *Feder feather*.

b. A few collective or associative personal appellatives, from nouns or verbs, in which *ge* has nearly its original meaning (407.5) of *with*: thus, *Gespieler playfellow*, from *spielen play*; *Gefährte companion*, from *fahren go*; *Gevatter godfather*, from *Vater father*; *Geschwister brothers and sisters*, from *Schwester sister*.

c. From verbs, nouns signifying either the means or the effect of the verbal action: thus, *Gehör sense of hearing*, from *hören hear*; *Gewehr weapon*, from *wehren defend*; *Gebet prayer*, from *bitten ask*; *Gemälde painting*, from *malen paint*.

d. From verbs, frequentative or intensive abstracts, or nouns significant of the verbal action: thus, *Gespräch conversation*, from *sprechen speak*; *Gespött mockery*, from *spotten mock*; *Gepränge pageantry*, from *prangen make a show*; *Getöse din*, from *toßen roar*.

*Remarks.* e. These are the leading uses of the prefix *ge*; but in not a few of the derivatives it forms, its effect is too indistinct or various to be brought under any classification.

f. As the examples show, the words formed with *ge* exhibit the gradation as well as the modification of vowel, and are either without suffix, or take one of the simpler suffixes (408.II.), especially *e*. In many words, this *e* may be either added or omitted.

g. Excepting the class under *b*, above, which are masculine, the nouns formed with *ge* are nearly all neuter. Masculine are only about a dozen (*Gebrauch, Gedanke, Gefallen, Gehalt, Genuß, Geruch, Gesang, Geschmack, Gestank, Gewinn, Gewinnst [Gewinst]*); feminine, the same number (*Geberde, Gebühr, Geburt, Geduld, Gefahr, Gemeinde, Genüge, Geschichte, Geschwulst, Gestalt, Gewalt, Gewähr*).

h. A few nouns, as *Glück luck, happiness, Glaube belief*, contain the prefix *ge* abbreviated to a simple *g*.

2. *Miß*. This prefix is the same with the English *mis*, and has a similar office. Its value is rather that of a compounded element than of a prefix. It takes always the principal accent, and does not affect the gender of the nouns to which it is



prefixed. Thus, *Mißgriff* *mistake*, *Missethat* *misdeed*, *Mißgunst* *disfavor*, *Mißbehagen* *discomfort*.

3. *Un* is, as in English, the negative prefix. It is used with nouns more often than in our language, always taking the accent, without affecting the gender; it either signifies actual negation, or implies something unnatural, repugnant, or injurious. Thus, *Unrecht* *wrong*, *Undank* *ingratitude*, *Unglück* *misfortune*, *Unsinn* *nonsense*; *Unmensch* *unnatural monster*, *Ungestalt* *misshapen form*, *Unthat* *misdeed*.

4. *Ur*. This is, as has been already pointed out (307.4), the same word originally with the inseparable prefix *er*, and ultimately identical with *aus* *out*. In a few words it still has a meaning akin with that of *er*: thus, *Urtheil* [*Urteil*] *judgment* (*ertheilen* [*erteilen*] *assign*), *Urlaub* *leave* (*erlauben* *permit*), *Urfunde* *document*, *Ursprung* *origin*, and so on. But in most of the derivatives which it forms it has an intensive force, with the distinct implication of originality or primitiveness: thus, *Ursache* *cause* (*original* or *fundamental thing*), *Urmwelt* *primitive world*, *Urbild* *archetype*, *Urgroßvater* *greatgrandfather*.

a. *Ur* always takes the accent, and it leaves unchanged the gender of the word to which it is prefixed.

5. *Erz* is identical in derivation and meaning with our prefix *arch*, and denotes what is eminent or superior in its kind. In respect to accent and gender, it is like the three prefixes last treated of. Thus, *Erzengel* *arch angel*, *Erzherzog* *arch duke*, *Erzdieb* *arch-thief*.

6. *Ant*, originally the same with the inseparable prefix *ent* (307.3), appears in the present language only in *Antwort* *answer* (from *Wort* *word*) and *Antlitz* *countenance*.

412. From other parts of speech than those treated above, nouns are only with the greatest rarity formed directly, or otherwise than through the medium of derivative adjectives or verbs. Such words as *Niederung* *lowland*, from *nieder* (adverb) *down*, and *Zinnung* *guild*, from *in* *in*, are anomalies in the German system of word-derivation.

#### DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

##### 413. *Primitive Adjectives.*

Primitive adjectives, like primitive nouns (407), may be divided into two classes;



1. Simple monosyllabic adjectives, the evidences of whose originally derivative character are effaced: thus, gut *good*, lang *long*, arm *poor*, hart *hard*, grün *green*.

2. Adjectives containing an evident element of derivation, and analogous with those derived from known primitives, but coming from roots which are now lost: thus, träge *lazy*, heiter *cheerful*, eben *even*, dunkel *dark*.

a. Some of these, as of the "primitive" nouns (407.2a), admit of being traced to more primitive roots by the researches of comparative philology.

#### 414. *Adjectives derived without Suffix or Prefix.*

Adjectives coming from verbal roots by simple gradation of the radical vowel (Ablaut), without a suffix (like nouns: see 408.I.), are very few in German: examples are brach *fallow*, from brechen *break up*; glatt *smooth*, from gleiten *slip*; dick *thick*, from the root of gedeihen *thrive*; flüß *fledged*, from fliegen *fly*.

#### 415. *Adjectives derived by Suffix.*

As the various endings forming adjectives are, almost without exception, used in derivation from different parts of speech, it will be more convenient to treat all the uses of each one together, taking the suffixes up in their alphabetical order.

1. Bar. This suffix is regarded as a derivative from the verb bären *bear, carry*. It was of infrequent use in ancient German, and only as attached to nouns.

a. Examples of its use with nouns are dienstbar *serviceable (service-bringing)*, fruchtbar *fruitful (fruit-bearing)*, furchtbar *terrible*, gangbar *current*, sichtbar *visible*.

b. In modern usage, it forms a large class of derivatives from verbs (almost always transitive), having the meaning of our adjectives in *able*, or indicating capability to endure the action of the verb: thus, eßbar *eatable*, genießbar *enjoyable*, theilbar [teilbar] *divisible*, unbemohnbar *uninhabitable*, unfehlbar *incapable of failing*.

c. Very rarely, it is added to an adjective: thus, offenbar *evident*, from offen *open*.

2. En, ern. The suffix en forms (from nouns) adjectives denoting material or kind: thus, golden *golden*, wollen *woolen*, irden *earthen*, eichen *oaken*. To words ending in er, only n is added: thus, kupfern *of copper*, silbern *of silver*, ledern *leathern*. Out of

the frequency of this combination has grown in recent use the form *ern*, which was perhaps at first applied only to nouns forming a plural in *er*: thus, *hölzern* *wooden*, from *Holz* (pl. *Hölzer*) *wood*—but is now used indiscriminately, requiring modification of the vowel of its primitive: thus, *bleiern* *lead*, *thöner* *of clay* (*Thon*), *stählern* *of steel* (*Stahl*).

3. *En, end*. These endings, forming respectively the past participle of verbs of the Old conjugation, and the present participle of all verbs, are proper adjective suffixes, but need only be mentioned here, as their uses form a part of the subject of verbal conjugation, and have been already explained (see 349 etc.).

4. *Er, est*. These are the endings by which are formed, from simple adjectives, adjective themes of the comparative and superlative degree (see 133 etc.): also, *st* forms ordinal numerals from cardinals (see 203).

5. *Er*. The patronymic nouns formed by the suffix *er* from names of countries or towns (410.3b) are very commonly used also with the value of adjectives. When so used, they are not subject to declension, but are treated as if they were compounded with the noun which they qualify. Thus, *Berliner Blau* *Berlin blue*, *das Straßburger Münster* *the Strasburg cathedral*, *der Leipziger Messe* *of the Leipsic fair*.

6. *Et* forms the past participle of verbs of the New or weak conjugation: see 246, 349 etc.

7. *Haft*. This suffix is regarded as derived from *haben* *have*, or *haften* *cling*, indicating primarily the possession or adhesion of the quality designated by the words to which it is attached.

a. It forms derivative adjectives especially from nouns signifying quality: thus, *tugendhaft* *virtuous*, *sündhaft* *sinful*, *schreckhaft* *frightful*, *standhaft* *steadfast*; but also, not infrequently, from names of persons and things: thus, *mannhaft* *manful*, *meisterhaft* *masterly*, *leibhaft* *bodily*.

b. It is added to only a few verbal roots: as in *wohnhaft* *resident*, *schwatzhaft* *loquacious*.

c. Only three adjectives admit it: namely, *boßhaft* *malicious*, *krankhaft* *sickly*, *wahrhaft* *true*.

d. To *haft* is sometimes added the further ending *ig*, as in *leibhaftig*, *wahrhaftig*; and this addition is always made before the suffix *feit*, forming abstract nouns (409.II.3): thus, *Tugendhaftigkeit* *virtuousness*.

8. *ſt* forms adjectives only from concrete nouns, especially such as denote material: thus, *ſteinicht stony*, *dornicht thorny*, *ſalzigſalt*. Its office is hardly distinguishable from that of *ig* (below, 9); and, in present use, its derivatives are almost superseded by those in *ig*, and are but seldom met with. Only *thöricht foolish* is in familiar use, and is also peculiar in exhibiting the modification of vowel, and in being formed from a personal appellation (*Thor fool*).

9. *ſg*. This suffix is the same with our *y* (in *stony*, *holy*, *easy*, etc.), and forms, from every part of speech, a very large number of German adjectives, which are constantly increasing by new derivatives. Thus—

a. From nouns, of every class: thus, *mächtig mighty*, *günſtig favorable*, *ſchuldig guilty*, *durſtig thirsty*, *blutig bloody*, *wäſſerig watery*, *dickeköpfig thickheaded*, *langarmig longarmed*.

b. From verbs: thus, *ſäumig dilatory*, *nachgiebig yielding*, *geſällig obliging*.

c. From adjectives, in a few cases only: thus, *gütig kind*, *völlig complete*; and from the possessive and other pronominal adjectives, as *meinig mine*, etc. (159.5), *ſelbig self-same* (169.3), *jenig yon* (168), *einig only*, *some* (189).

d. From indeclinable words, namely prepositions, adverbs, and adverbial conjunctions of various kinds: thus, *vorig former*, from *vor before*; *übrig remaining*, from *über over*; *jezig present*, from *jezt now*; *heutig of to-day*, from *heute to-day*; *dortig of that place*, from *dort there*; *abermalig repeated*, from *abermalſ again*; *deßfallſig relating to the case in hand*, from *deßfallſ in that case*.

e. The addition of *ig* to other adjective endings before the suffix *ſeit* has been noticed above (409.II.3); also to *haſt* in forming adjectives (above, 7d); to adjectives and nouns in forming derivative verbs (405.II.3); and to certain nouns in forming derivative adjectives (below, 15e,f).

f. *ſg* added to the suffix *ſal* of certain nouns (408.III.7), along with modification of the vowel (written *e* instead of *ä*), forms a combination having the aspect of a separate suffix, *ſelig*: thus, *mühſelig painful*, from *Mühſal distress*; *trübſelig afflictive*, from *Trübſal affliction*. And the combination is in fact treated as an independent suffix, by being added to words which do not form derivatives in *ſal*: thus, *glückſelig blissful*, from *Glück happiness*; *ſeindſelig inimical*, from *ſeind hostile*; *redſelig talkative*, from *reden talk*.

g. A number of adjectives in *ig* are from lost roots, and so have in the present language the value of primitive words: thus, *felig happy*, *üppig luxuriant*.

10. *ſich*. This is the same with our English suffix *ish*, and is used in much the same way.

a. It forms adjectives from nouns of different classes: thus, especially from proper names of persons, places, and peoples: as, *lutheriſch Lutheran*, *preuſſiſch Prussian*, *baieriſch Bavarian*, *ſpaniſch Spanish*;—from appellations of places, persons, and animals: as, *himmliſch heavenly*, *ſtädtiſch townish*, *kindiſch childish*, *diebiſch thievish*, *dichterſch poetical*, *hündiſch doggish*;—and from a few abstracts or verbal nouns: as, *abergläubiſch superstitious*, *argwöhniſch suspicious*, *neidiſch envious*.

b. It often takes, in adjectives derived from the classical languages, the place of our endings *ic*, *ical*, *al*, *ian*, etc.: as, *hiſtoriſch historic* or *historical*, *fritiſch critical*, *logiſch logical*, *indiſch Indian*.

c. In a few words, *iſch* has a somewhat disparaging sense as compared with *lich*, much as in the corresponding English adjectives: thus, *kindiſch childish* and *kindlich childlike*, *weibiſch womanish* and *weiblich feminine*.

d. The use of *iſch* with proper names of places and with foreign words is attended with some irregularities of detail, in respect to the form of the theme to which the suffix is appended: these cannot be dwelt upon here.

11. *ſei* forms indeclinable adjectives from numerals and words related with numerals, which, before it, take the ending *er*: thus, *einerlei of one sort*, *mancherlei of many sorts*, *allerlei of all sorts*.

The *lei* is by origin the genitive of a feminine noun, meaning *sort*, and the preceding *er* is the proper ending of the adjective qualifying it: hence the treatment of its derivatives as indeclinable words.

12. *ſich*. This suffix corresponds with our *like*, *ly* (in *godlike*, *godly*, etc.), and, like these, forms a very large number of derivatives. It is historically the same word with the adjective *like* (German *gleich*): compare 363.3a.

*ſicht* is also added to adjectives, perhaps as a mere variation of *lich*.

a. It is added to nouns of various classes (usually with modification of their vowel): thus, *männlich manly*, *väterlich fatherly*,

tünſtlich *artful*, herzlich *heartly*, glücllich *happy*, jährlich *yearly*, geiſtlich *spiritual*.

b. It forms from other adjectives (always with modified vowel) adjectives that have in general a diminutive meaning: thus, röthlich [rötlich] *reddish*, ſäuerlich *somewhat sour*, länglich *longish*. But some of its derivatives are free from the diminutive implication; and a considerable number (363.3a) are used only in an adverbial sense, the ending having the same value as the English *ly* in similar derivatives from adjectives.

In a few words—as ſoldich, welch, our *such*, *which*—it is greatly corrupted.

c. It is appended to many verbal roots; and either in an active sense (especially with intransitive verbs)—thus, ſchädlich *harmful*, beharrlich *persistent*, ſterblich *mortal*, erfreulich *agreeable*—or, yet more often, in a passive sense: as glaublich *to be believed*, credible, verächtlich *contemptible*, begreiflich *comprehensible*, unſäglich *unspeakable*. Of this class of passive derivatives, many are in use only with the prefix *un*: e. g. there is no ſäglich *speakable*. *ſich*, as thus used, is closely equivalent with *bar* (above, 1b), and it is in part a matter of arbitrary custom, or determined only by euphony, which suffix shall be employed; in other cases, derivatives are formed with both, with a more or less distinct difference of meaning.

13. *ſam* is our *some* (in *wholesome*, *noisome*, etc.), and is supposed to be ultimately the adjective *same* (now lost in German). It forms derivatives—

a. From nouns, mostly of an abstract character: thus, fürchtſam *fearful*, gewaltſam *violent*, mühſam *laborious*.

b. From verbal roots: thus, aufmerſſam *attentive*, ſolgſam *docile*, lenſſam *manageable*.

c. From a few adjectives; thus, einſam *lonely*, gemeinſam *common*, langſam *slow*.

14. *ſ*, besides one or two isolated adjectives, like dīcht *thick*, *close*, from the root of *gedeihen* *thrive*, forms the class of ordinal adjectives from numerals below twenty (203).

15. There are certain words forming classes of derivative adjectives which have not yet (like *bar*, *lich*, *ſam*, above) lost their independence of form and meaning sufficiently to be reckoned as adjective-suffixes, although approaching very near in value to such. The most noticeable of them are—

a. *Loß* loose, our *less*, forming numerous adjectives of deprivation: thus, *endloß* endless, *herzloß* heartless, *treuloß* faithless.

These adjectives, like those ending in *haft*, always add *ig* before *feit*: thus, *Treuloßigkeit* faithlessness.

b. *Voll* full, our *ful*, in *thankful*, *fearful*, etc.: examples are *leidvoll* sorrowful, *gedankenvoll* thoughtful.

c. *Reich* rich: examples are *liebreich* gracious (*Liebe* love), *geistreich* witty, full of ESPRIT.

d. *Fach* compartment, division, forms multiplicatives with numeral words, cardinal or indefinite (204): examples are *zehnfach* tenfold, *vielfach* manifold.

e. *Falt* fold is used in the same manner with *fach*. But multiplicatives with *falt* simply are antiquated and unusual; they now regularly take the additional adjective ending *ig* (above, 9), before which the vowel of *falt* (except in two or three words, as *mannigfaltig*) is modified: thus, *zehnfältig* ten-fold, *vielfältig* manifold.

f. *Artig* is, like *fältig*, an extension of a noun, *Art* manner, kind, by the adjective suffix *ig*, and forms a considerable class of derivatives denoting sort or manner: thus, *nebelartig* cloudlike, *fremdartig* of strange fashion. Other similar formations are *förmig*, from the foreign noun *Form* form (Lat. *forma*): thus, *inselförmig* island-shaped; —*müthig* [*mütig*] from *Muth* [*Mut*] mood, disposition: as, *friedmüthig* [*friedmütig*] disposed to peace; —*mäßig*, from *Maß* measure: as, *rechtmäßig* lawful; etc.

#### 416. Adjectives derived by Prefix.

The prefixes forming adjectives are, in general, the same with those forming nouns (411), namely *ge*, *miß*, *un*, *ur*, *erz*, together with *be*.

1. *Be* forms a very few adjectives, as *bereit* ready, *bequem* convenient.

2. a. *Ge* aids to form past participles (243.3); and sometimes from nouns which do not furnish any other of the parts of a derivative verb: thus, *gestiefelt* booted (*provided with boots*), *gehörnt* horned, *gestittet* mannered, *gestirnt* starred.

3. It also forms, either without suffix or with *ig*, a class of adjectives from verbs: thus, *genehm* acceptable (*nehmen take*), *gewiß* certain (*wissen know*), *geläufig* current (*laufen run*), *gewärtig* expectant (*warten wait*).

c. Ge is prefixed to a few simple adjectives without noteworthy change of their meaning: thus, gerecht *righteous*, getreu *faithful*, gestreng *severe*. Gleich *like* contains the same prefix abbreviated.

The other prefixes have the same value in adjectives as in nouns: thus—

3. Miß forms such adjectives as mißgünstig *grudging*, mißtrauisch *distrustful*.

4. Un forms negative adjectives, as unklar *unclear*, unglücklich *unhappy*.

a. That some of the adjectives formed with un have no corresponding positives has been noticed above (415.12c).

b. According to some authorities, the words formed with un always have the principal accent on that prefix: others except compounds of participles, as unbelohnt *unrewarded*, and of verbal derivatives with the suffixes bar, lich, sam, as undenkbar *inconceivable*, unendlich *unending*, unduldsam *intolerant*.

5. Ur forms directly only a very small number of adjectives, from other adjectives, adding to the latter an intensive meaning, or an implication of primitiveness: thus, urplötzlich *very sudden*, uralt *of primitive antiquity*.

6. Erz is prefixed, in a half-humorous way, to a few adjectives, with intensive force: thus, erzdumm *excessively stupid*, erzfaul *very lazy*.

#### *Derivation of the other Parts of Speech.*

417. Of the remaining parts of speech, the adverbs are the only ones which are to any extent formed in classes, by means analogous with those above explained; and they have been already sufficiently treated (363 etc.) under Adverbs.

The derivation of the rest, so far as it is capable of being shown, is a matter for the lexicon to deal with, under each separate word.

### WORD-COMBINATION, COMPOSITION.

418. A *compound word* is one that is made up of two (or more) independent words, each of which maintains in the composition its separate form and meaning. It is made one word by constancy of combination in prac-

tical use, by the absence of inflection except in the last member, and by being placed under the dominion of a single principal accent.

a. Thus, Jungfrau is distinguished from junge Frau *young woman* by the adjective jung being made indeclinable and receiving a marked accent. By this means a unity of form is given to the word, to which a unity of idea is then further added by attribution of the meaning *virgin*, which naturally grows out of the other, but yet is not the same with it.

b. As will appear hereafter (422.2b etc.), other members of a compound than the final one sometimes take an ending of declension, but irregularly and superfluously, and without liability to further variation in the inflection of the compound. There are also a few words which are arbitrarily written together as if compounds, while both their parts are declined in full, and they are not in fact of a different character from many collocations of words which the language writes separately: such are derselbe and derjenige (168, 169), Hoherpriester *high-priest*, etc. (422.1a).

c. All derivation and inflection begin with composition. The compound becomes in practical use an integral representative of the idea signified by it, its origin is more and more lost sight of, and it becomes liable to such alterations of form as more or less disguise its derivation: thus, Jungfrau has been in popular use abbreviated to Jungfer; and Jungherr (junger Herr *young sir*), in like manner, to Junfer. And if the final member of the compound happens to be one that in practice is added to a large number of words, forming a considerable class of composite words, it may be turned into an ending, of derivation or inflection. Thus, dritter Theil [Teil] became the compound Dritttheil [Dritteil] *third part*, and this was contracted into Drittel; and, the same being done with the other ordinal numerals, tel became a "suffix," forming fractionals from ordinals (207.2). The conjugational ending ten, in wir hatten *we had*, represents in like manner an originally independent conjugational form, tâtumêš (yet older dadûmasî) *we did*, which has gone through a like process of abbreviation. Composition therefore forms, in the grammatical treatment of a language, an appropriate transitional subject between inflection and derivation on the one side, and collocation or arrangement on the other.

419. Compounds are very much more numerous in German than in English, and the liberty of forming new ones, after the model of those already in use, is much more freely conceded than with us. In making practical acquaintance with the lan-



guage, therefore, we are constantly meeting with them, of every class—from those in which the final member has almost acquired the value of a suffix (see above, 415.15), or in which the fact of composition is otherwise disguised (as in *Jungfer* and *Junfer*; or in *folch* and *welch*, see above, 415.12), to the chance combinations which each speaker or writer forms as occasion arises, and which are not to be found explained in any dictionary, however complete.

a. Compounds are often also formed in German of a length and complexity unknown in English: thus, *Feuerversicherungsgesellschaft* *fire insurance company*, *Nordseeschiffahrt* *North Sea navigation*, *Luftröhrenschwindsucht* *bronchial consumption*, *Reichsoberpostamtzeitungsschreiber* *editor of the imperial general postoffice journal*. Such, however, are for the most part met with only in technical and official language.

b. The parts of a compound—especially if it be a long and cumbrous one, or liable to an incorrect division—are sometimes separated by hyphens: thus, *Feuerversicherungsgesellschaft*, or *Feuer=versicherungsgesellschaft*. No rules are to be definitely laid down respecting this division, it being mainly left to the taste and choice of individual writers. Usage is also much at variance as regards the employment of capital letters for the separated parts of a compound noun—some writing, for example, *Feuer=Versicherungsgesellschaft*. The preferable method is to avoid as much as possible the multiplication of capitals.

c. Where two or more compound words having the same final member would follow one another, it is the usage in German often to omit that member except in the last word, noting the omission in the other cases by a hyphen appended to the former member: thus, *alle Sonn= und Festtage eines Jahres* *on all the Sundays and holidays of a year*, *in dieser baum= und quellenleeren Einöde* *in this treeless and waterless desert*, *von der sonn= und festtägigen Spazierfahrt* *of the promenade usual on Sundays and holidays*. A similar liberty is even taken with words of foreign origin: thus, *als Of= und Defensivwaffe* *as offensive and defensive weapon*; but it is not to be approved or imitated.

### *Composition of Verbs.*

420. The importance of compound verbs in the general grammatical system of German has rendered necessary their treatment under the head of verbal conjugation (296–313).

Only a brief recapitulation of the different classes, therefore, is called for here.

1. Verbs are compounded with the inseparable prefixes *be*, *ent* or *emp*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*; being conjugated, in general, in the same manner as when simple, but losing the prefix *ge* of the past participle; retaining, also, their proper accent. See 302-7.

2. Verbs are compounded with a considerable number of separable prefixes, simple and compound—which prefixes, however, stand before the verbal form, and are written with it as one word, only in the infinitive and participles: or in the personal forms of the verb also, when the sentence has the transposed arrangement. The prefix always has the principal accent. See 298-301.

*a.* A few of the separable prefixes, however—namely, *durch*, *hinter*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, and *wider* or *wieder*—form with some verbs inseparable compounds. See 308-11.

3. Verbs are compounded with nouns, adjectives, and adverbs; either closely, forming compound stems which are conjugated like simple roots, or loosely, forming stems which are conjugated after the manner of verbs with separable prefixes. See 312-313.

*a.* There is no fixed line separating compounds of the latter character from verbal phrases, and some combinations are treated indifferently as the one or the other: thus, *Dank sagen* or *dank sagen* *express gratitude*, *Statt finden* or *stattfinden* *take place*.

#### *Composition of Nouns.*

421. With few exceptions (422.6*b* etc.), compound nouns are made up of a noun with a preceding limiting word. The final noun determines the gender and mode of declension of the compound; the preceding member of the compound has the accent.

1. Exceptions as regards gender are—

a. Names of towns, which are neuter (61.2c), even when they are compounds whose final member is masculine or feminine: thus, *das Wittenberg* (der Berg), *das Magdeburg* (die Burg).

b. Many compounds of *der Muth* [Mut] *mood, spirit*, which are feminine: for example, *die Anmuth* [Anmut] *grace*, *die Demuth* [Demut] *humility*, *die Wehmuth* [Wehmut] *sadness*.

These are, by origin, feminine abstracts from compound adjectives, which have lost their suffix of derivation.

c. A few special words: thus, *die Antwort* *answer* (*das Wort* *word*), *der Mittwoch* *Wednesday* (literally *mid-week*, from *die Woche* *week*), which has taken the gender of the other names of week-days (61.2a); *die Neunauge* *lamper-eel* (literally *nine-eyes*, from *das Auge* *eye*); and *Abſcheu* *horror* is masculine, and *Gegentheil* [Gegenteil] *opposite* is neuter, while *Abſcheu* *fear* and *Theil* [Teil] *part* are now respectively used in general as feminine and masculine.

422. The varieties of compound nouns are—

1. Nouns made up of a noun and a preceding qualifying adjective: thus, *Vollmond* *full moon*, *Edelſtein* *precious stone*, *Hochzeit* *wedding* (lit. *high time*), *Kurzweile* *pastime* (lit. *short while*).

a. A very few nouns are written as compounds of this class, although the adjective is declined as an independent word: thus, *Hocherpriester* *high-priest*, *Langweile* *tedium*, *Geheimerrath* [Geheimerrat] *privy-counsellor* (also *Langweile*, *Geheimrath* [Geheimrat], as proper compounds).

2. Nouns made up of a noun and a preceding limiting noun: thus, *Buchdrucker* *bookprinter*, *Geschichtſchreiber* *historian* (lit. *history-writer*), *Schullehrer* *school-teacher*, *Handſchuh* *glove* (lit. *hand-shoe*), *Weinglaß* *wine-glass*, *Baumwolle* *cotton* (lit. *tree-wool*), *Jagdleben* *life by hunting*, *Eichbaum* *oak-tree*.

a. The relation of the first noun to the second is oftenest that of a genitive dependent on it; but it may stand in various other relations, often such as could not be expressed by any simple case, without the use of words of relation; or, the two words may be in apposition with one another.

b. Often the first noun is put formally in the genitive case: thus, *Königsſohn* *king's son*, *Landſmann* *countryman*, *Wirthſhaus* [Wirtshaus] *inn* (lit. *host's house*).

c. And even, by irregular imitation of such forms, the first noun takes an *s* or *es* which does not properly belong to it as an independent word: thus, *Geburtstag birthday*, *Liebesbrief loveletter*.

d. The first noun sometimes takes a plural ending: thus, *Bilderbuch picture-book* (lit. *pictures-book*), *Wörterbuch dictionary* (lit. *words-book*), *kleiderſchrank clothes-press*, *Waiſenhaus orphan asylum* (lit. *orphans' house*), *Tagebuch journal* (lit. *days-book*).

e. These endings of declension are introduced in part for their meaning, in part for euphonic reasons; and insertions of a similar kind are occasionally made quite arbitrarily: as, *Aſchermittwoch Ash-Wednesday*, *Heidelbeere heath-berry*.

3. Nouns made up of a noun and a preceding verbal root, having the value of a qualifying noun or adjective: thus, *Singvogel singing-bird*, *Brennglas burning-glass*, *Schreibfeder writing-pen*, *Studirzimmer* [*Studierzimmer*] *study-room*, *Habſucht covetousness* (lit. *desire of having*).

4. Nouns made up of a noun and a preceding particle, with qualifying force: thus, *Außenſeite outside*, *Inland inland*, *Außlaut final sound (of a word)*, *Mitmenſch fellow-creature*, *Vorthail* [*Vorteil*] *advantage* (lit. *excelling part*).

5. Nouns made up of an infinitive and words dependent upon it: thus, *daß ſich ſein the being by one's self*, *daß Zuſpätkommen the coming too late*. These are unusual cases, and not employed in dignified style.

6. Compounds of a different and peculiar character, which designate an object by describing some peculiarity belonging to it, and which may be called *possessive* or *characterizing* compounds. Such are—

a. A noun with preceding limiting word: as, *Kahlkopf bald-head* (a person or thing having a bald head), *Blauſtrumpf blue-socking* (person wearing such), *Schreihaß bawler* (lit. *scream-neck*), *Viered square* (lit. *four-corners*).

b. An adjective with preceding qualifying word: as, *der Nimmerſatt the greedy-gut* (lit. *never satiated*), *daß Immergrün the evergreen*.

c. A verb with a following object, or other limiting word or phrase: as, *Taugenichts good-for-nothing*, *Störenfried kill-joy* (lit. *disturb-peace*), *Stellbichlein rendezvous* (lit. *make thine ap-*

pearance), *Springinsfeld romp* (lit. *jump into the field*), *Rehraus closing dance* (lit. *turn-out*).

d. One or two more anomalous cases: as, *Garaus end* (lit. *all over*).

### *Composition of Adjectives.*

**423.** Compound adjectives are always made up of an adjective with a preceding limiting or qualifying word. Their treatment, as regards declension, use as adverbs, and the like, is the same with that of simple adjectives. The first member of the compound takes the accent.

**424.** The varieties of compound adjectives are—

1. Adjectives made up of two adjectives, of which the former either is co-ordinate with the latter—as in *taubstumm deaf and dumb*, *kaiferlich=königlich imperial-royal*—or, much more often, limits it in the manner of an adverb: as, *hellblau bright-blue*, *totkrank [totfrank] deadly sick*.

2. Adjectives made up of an adjective (usually a participle) and a preceding adverb: as, *wohlbedeutend right-noble, worshipful*, *wohlmeinend well-meaning*, *so genannt so-called*, *weitaussehend far-looking*.

3. Adjectives made up of an adjective and a preceding limiting noun: as, *schneeweiss snow-white*, *tröstbedürftig needing consolation*, *eiskalt ice-cold*.

a. A very frequent form of this compound is made up of a participle and its dependent noun: as, *heilbringend salutary* (lit. *health-bringing*), *pflichtvergessen duty-forgetting*, *gottergeben god-devoted*.

b. The noun in such compounds, as in compounds with a noun (422.2b-e), often takes the form of a genitive or a plural: thus, *lebensmatt tired of life*, *lobenswürdig praiseworthy*, *hoffnungsvoll hopeful*, *riesengroß gigantic* (lit. *giant-great*), *finderlos childless* (lit. *children-less*).

4. Adjectives made up of an adjective and a preceding verbal root, having the value of a dependent noun: thus, *merkwürdig remarkable* (lit. *worthy of noticing*).

This form of compound is rare and exceptional, the infinitive being generally used, instead of the simple verbal root.

5. Adjectives formed by appending a suffix of derivation, especially *ig* (415.9), to the combination of a noun with a preceding limiting word (which combination is not itself in use as a compound noun): thus, *vierfüßig* *four-footed*, *großherzig* *great-hearted*, *hochnasig* *supercilious* (lit. *high-nosed*).

### *Composition of Particles.*

425. 1. The modes of formation of compound particles have been already sufficiently explained and illustrated, under the head of the different kinds of particles (see especially 365). Such particles are, in part, cases of compound words, analogous with those just treated of; in part, phrases composed of independent and fully inflected words, which have simply run together into one by frequent usage; in part, they are combinations of particles.

2. *a.* Compound particles of the last class, and those of the second which are made up of a governing preposition and its governed case, are accented on the final member: thus, *vorher'* *previously*, *hervor'* *forth*, *audem'* *besides*, *überhaupt'* *in general*, *bergab'* *down hill*.

*b.* Such, on the other hand, as are originally cases of compound words, or phrases composed of a noun and a preceding limiting word, are accented on the first member: thus, *him'melwärts* *heavenwards*, *viel'malß* *often*, *fei'neßwegß* *in no wise*, *der'gestalt* *in such wise*.

*c.* A few are accented on either the first or second member; and either indifferently, or according to a difference of meaning: thus, *alßo'* or *al'ßo* *accordingly*, *et'ma* or *etma'* *perchance*; *cin'mal*, when *ein* means distinctly *one*, rather than *a*; *dar'um*, *war'um*, *hier'mit*, when the emphasis rests on the pronominal element—and so on.

*d.* There are occasional irregular exceptions to these rules of accentuation, which may be left to the dictionary to point out.

## CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES.

*Introductory Explanations.*

**426.** 1. A SENTENCE is a combination of words having completeness in itself as the expression of a thought.

2. It is composed of a SUBJECT, designating that of which something is asserted (inquired, desired), and a PREDICATE, expressing that which is asserted (inquired, desired) of the subject.

a. That a thought cannot be signified or communicated without the combination of a subject and a predicate is not claimed (compare 391); but only that this combination is its full and regular mode of expression, the norm to which all expressed thoughts may be reduced, or of which they are to be regarded as variations.

b. The further division of the predicate, as above defined, into *predicate* and *copula* (the latter being always a person of *sein* *be*: compare 316.1a, remark)—for example, of *er liebt* *he loves* into *er ist liebend* *he is loving*—though of value in the logical analysis of expression, is unimportant in grammatical analysis, and has no bearing upon the construction of the sentence. All verbs except *sein* *be* (and even that, in some of its uses) contain the copula combined with a more or less complete predication of some action, state, or quality: some require more than others a complement, to fill out their idea and make a significant predication: a few (316.1), so especially as to be called “verbs of incomplete predication;” a transitive verb is in itself less complete than an intransitive, and so on. •

c. The completeness of a sentence composed of subject and predicate is a relative one—namely, as compared with a word, or a phrase not containing those two elements. A noun by itself suggests an object of thought; a noun with qualifying adjuncts *implies* certain things as standing in certain relations to one another, an object as invested with qualities: so also a verb by itself, or with adjuncts, calls up an intelligent conception in the mind; and either, in certain circumstances, has all the value of a complete expression, because the mind of the hearer or reader *understands*, or intelligently supplies, whatever is wanting. But we do not feel that anything is really *said* until a verb and its subject are combined, until something is predicated of something.

d. A sentence may signify only a small part of the thought which is in the mind of the speaker, and which he sets out to express; it may require to be set in connection with other sentences in order to perform

its full office, as much as a word with other words to form a sentence. And, in the development of language, a means is found by which individual sentences are so combined as to form a higher unity—by which, instead of being merely set side by side, they are twined together into a complex sentence or period. This means is the conversion of independent sentences into *dependent clauses*, having the formal as well as logical value of parts of a sentence (see below, 435 etc.). For the simple sentence still remains the norm and unit of complete expression: the dependent clauses have value only as they enter into the structure of such a sentence, in the quality of adjuncts either to its subject or to its predicate. They themselves, then, though containing a subject and a predicate, are incomplete, because they distinctly imply a relation to something else, which requires to be also expressed.

**427.** Sentences are of three fundamental kinds, *assertive*, *interrogative*, and *optative* (or *imperative*).

Thus, assertive, *du liebst mich thou lovest me*;—interrogative, *liebst du mich lovest thou me?*—optative, *liebe du mich love thou me!*

*a.* Of only the first of these can it be truly said that it involves the predication of something of a subject. The relations of the three to one another are best developed by reducing them to the common form of dependent clauses, expressing what is affirmed, inquired, or desired by some defined speaker. Thus, we say of another, *er behauptet, daß du ihn liebst he asserts that thou lovest him*; *er fragt (will wissen), ob du ihn liebest he asks (wants to know) whether thou lovest him*; *er verlangt, daß du ihn liebest he requires that thou love him*. When, now, we come to speak in our own persons, we change *ich behaupte, daß du mich liebst I maintain that thou lovest me* into *du liebst mich thou lovest me*, the assertion of the assertion being usually a quite unnecessary formality; *ich will wissen, ob du mich liebest I wish to know whether thou lovest me* becomes *liebst du mich lovest thou me?* the wish to know being intimated by arrangement and tone; and *ich verlange, daß du mich liebest I require that thou love me* is changed into *liebe du mich love thou me!* the desire or demand being expressed by arrangement, tone, and appropriate verbal form. That is to say, the usage of language has established modes of expression by which the speaker can signify his desire to know, or his request or command, directly, without putting it necessarily, as he may do optionally, into the form of an assertion.

*b.* All these kinds of sentence alike consist of a subject and a predicate (save that the subject of the imperative sentence is



often omitted as superfluous, when of the second person, or representing the individual to whom the request or command is directly addressed). And the assertive sentence is properly assumed as the norm or standard, of which the other two may be treated and explained as variations.

c. The formal construction and logical office of the three kinds of sentence do not always correspond. A variety of modes of expression (338) may be used as intimations of a command; a question may be expressed (432.1b) in the form of an assertive sentence; and an assertion may be implied in the asking of a question.

d. The direct assertive force of an assertive sentence may be variously and greatly modified, either by the mode and tense of the verb or by adjuncts, so that the statement is made uncertain or hypothetical to any degree—yet without affecting the grammatical character of the sentence. A negative sentence is only one variety of the assertive, in which, of two opposite and mutually exclusive things, one is affirmed by the denial of the other.

**428.** 1. The subject of a sentence is always a substantive word—that is to say, either a noun, or one of the equivalents of a noun (113)—along with such adjuncts (109 etc.) as may be attached to it for its limitation and qualification.

2. The bare predicate of a sentence is always a personal form of a verb, since this alone has predicative force (232, 314); it may be accompanied by the various modifying adjuncts (314 etc.) which it is capable of taking.

**429.** The arrangement of the sentence, as thus constituted, is subject to stricter and more intricate rules in German than in English: which rules will now be set forth.

a. The difference in construction between the two languages are in good part of comparatively modern growth; some of the peculiar rules which now domineer German sentences were only tendencies and preferences a few centuries ago.

b. Hence, in archaic style, as well as in poetry, the rules are much less strictly observed than in ordinary prose.

*Regular or Normal order of the sentence.*

**430.** 1. In its ordinary and normal arrangement, the German sentence, like the English, requires the subject to be stated first, and to be followed by the predicate.

*a.* This rule has reference to the simple assertive sentence; such a sentence, as explained above (427.*b*), being taken as the standard from which the other forms are deduced. For the arrangement of the interrogative and optative sentences, see below, 432.

*b.* Taken in connection with the rules already given as to the order in which the adjuncts of a noun and verb are respectively arranged (110-12, 319), this rule determines the whole order of the normal sentence; but it is desirable to call especial attention to the peculiarities which distinguish the German order.

2. No one of the adjuncts of the predicate verb is ever allowed to stand between it and the subject.

Thus, for English *he truly loves justice, and never willingly commits a wrong*, the German must say *er liebt treulich das Recht und begeht nie willig ein Unrecht*.

*a.* Rarely, a word or phrase is found inserted between the subject and the verb. Such a one, however, is never an adjunct of the predicate, but one of the conjunctions having exceptional freedom of position (385.4,5), or an asseverative particle, or a phrase of parenthetical force. The words oftenest met with in this position are *aber*, *nämlich*, *also*, *indessen*, and *jedoch*.

3. Since the infinitive (348.2) and the participle (358) are regularly preceded by whatever limits them, and since (319.2) the word most closely combined in idea with the verb as sharing in its predicative quality is put farthest from it, it results that in sentences containing a compound tense, or a simple form of a separably compounded verb, the non-personal part of the verb (prefix, participle, or infinitive) stands at the end of the sentence; and the same place is taken by an infinitive dependent on the verb of the sentence, or by a word, other than a prefix, separably compounded with it, or forming with it a verbal phrase.

Thus, er blickte mit Wohlgefallen auf den emporschauenden Sohn der Erde hernieder *he looked down with complacency upon the upgazing son of earth*, du hast zwar nicht klug, aber doch natürlich und nach kindlicher Weise gehandelt *thou hast acted, not wisely, indeed, but yet naturally, and in childish fashion*, ihr werdet euch so blutig eurer Macht nicht überheben *you will not presume so cruelly upon your power*, ich will mein Leben als ein Geschenk aus eurer Hand empfangen *I will receive my life as a gift from your hand*, ich nahm nichts mehr von der hinter mir liegenden Ebene wahr *I perceived nothing more of the plain that lay behind me*.

a. Where there is more than one non-personal part of the verb in the sentence, the prefix stands before the participle, or the infinitive, or the participle and infinitive; and the participle stands before the infinitive: thus, ich gebe es auf, ich habe es aufgegeben, ich werde es aufgeben, ich werde es aufgegeben haben, es wird aufgegeben worden sein—since each element is prefixed to that to which it is added as a limitation (314b).

b. In the greater number of sentences, therefore, the two parts of the verb, the personal and non-personal, form as it were a frame within which are set all the verbal adjuncts, according to rules of arrangement (319) which are (except the one requiring the personal pronoun to come first) on the whole somewhat loosely observed, and liable to manifold variation. The three fixed points in the normal order of the sentence are the subject, the personal verb, and the non-personal part of the verb (if there be one present).

#### *Inverted order of the sentence.*

431. To arrange all sentences in the manner above described would result in an intolerable monotony. The German enjoys the same privilege as the English, and with even greater freedom, of putting at the head of the sentence any other member of it than the subject—for the general purpose of attaining a euphonious variety; or, more often, in order to lay an emphatic stress upon the member thus removed from its proper place. But, when any part of the predicate is thus put in the place of the subject, the latter is no longer allowed to stand

before the verb, but is put next after it instead. This is called the *inversion* of the sentence.

Thus, in normal order, ein Landmann brachte seinen Kindern aus der Stadt fünf Pfirsiche *a countryman brought his children from the city five peaches*:—inverted, with no other change of meaning than as regards emphasis, fünf Pfirsiche brachte ein Landmann seinen Kindern aus der Stadt; or, again, aus der Stadt brachte ein Landmann seinen Kindern fünf Pfirsiche; or, seinen Kindern brachte ein Landmann aus der Stadt fünf Pfirsiche.

a. This arrangement is styled *inverted*, because, when the sentence consists of only three members, its effect is completely to invert their regular order: thus, er liebt mich *he loves me*: inverted, mich liebt er; er ist gut *he is good*: inverted, gut ist er. In all cases, too, the term is appropriate as denoting an inversion of the natural order of the two essential elements of the sentence, the personal verb and its subject.

b. The same inverted order, as occasioned by the same cause, is in English sentences also more or less usual, only not imperative, except in certain special phrases: thus, we say always “hardly had he gone, when . . .,” but either “thus was it,” or “thus it was;” and “slowly and sadly we laid him down,” but “few and short were the prayers we said.” In such phrases as “said I,” “replied he,” “added they,” interjected in the midst of a quotation of some one’s words, the inversion (made alike in English, German, and French) is best explained as falling under the principle here stated, since the part of the words already quoted is logically the object of the verb in the interjected phrase.

c. The only words (other than the subject) which are allowed to stand at the head of the sentence without causing its inversion are the *general connectives* (384), meaning *and*, *but*, *for*, and *either* or *or*. Even the co-ordinating *adverbial conjunctions* (385) invert the sentence in their conjunctive use, as when proper adverbs.

d. As will appear below (438.3f), an adverbial clause, if placed at the head of the sentence of which it forms a part, has the same inverting force as a simple adverb.

Even an adjective phrase belonging appositively to the subject, if placed at the head of the sentence, inverts it, being treated as if it were an adverbial adjunct of the predicate (as it often logically is so): thus, einstweilen beruhigt, zog nun das Heer Nikopolis vorüber *being for the time tranquillized* (i. e. *since it was so*), *the army now marched past Nikopolis*; zart und edel entsprossen, wuchs die königliche Blume hervor *the royal flower, having*

*tenderly and nobly sprung forth, continued to grow (i. e. after springing forth).*

e. It is not usual, nor in good style, to remove to the head of the sentence more than a single connected member of the predicate: which may, however, consist of any number of words: thus, not seinen Kindern aus der Stadt brachte ein Landmann fünf Pfirsiche; — but dort, hinter diesen Fenstern, verträumt' ich den ersten Traum *yonder, behind those windows, I dreamed my first dream*; jetzt schnell, eh' die Brandung wiederkehrt, befiehlt der Jüngling sich Gott *now quickly, ere the surge returns, the youth commits himself to God*.

f. The members of the predicate most often placed at the head of the sentence for emphasis, with consequent inversion, are the object (direct, indirect, or remote), and the various adverbial adjuncts; less often a predicate noun or adjective (316); least often one of the non-personal parts of the verb. No part of the predicate, however, is exempt from such treatment, and even—

g. The personal verb itself is sometimes placed first in the sentence by inversion, with the effect of emphasizing the predication—that is to say, of strengthening or impressing the general force of the assertion made. In such an inversion, the verb is usually followed by doch *though*; much less often by ja *surely*: but neither of these particles is absolutely necessary.

Thus, sind doch ein wunderlich Volk die Weiber *surely women are a strange race of beings!* hab' ich dich doch mein' Tage nicht gesehen *surely I never saw you in my life!* Ja, so sind sie! schreckt sie alles gleich, was eine Tiefe hat! *Yes, that is the way with them! everything that has any depth straightway terrifies them.*

h. In general, the inversion of the sentence affects the arrangement only of the personal verb and its subject. If, however, the subject be a noun, and there be a personal pronoun in the sentence as object of the verb, the pronoun generally remains next the verb, and is put between it and the subject.

Thus, da verließ mich der Mann Gottes in tiefem Staunen *then the man of God left me in deep astonishment*, danach schlang sich der Lango um sie beide in einen Kreis *after that, the tall fellow twined himself round about both of them.*

The same thing is customary in the interrogative and the optative sentence (432): thus, wie haben euch die schönen Äpfel geschmeckt *how did the beautiful apples taste to you?* bewahre dich der Himmel *may Heaven preserve thee!*

A similar transfer of the pronoun from its proper place is usual also in transposed clauses: see 439.1.

i. When, of two co-ordinate clauses following one another, the first is inverted, the second usually retains its normal order, even though the word or phrase which caused the inversion of the one logically forms a part of the other also: thus, *darauf blieb er sitzen, und ich ging fort thereupon he remained sitting and I went away.*

### 432. Interrogative and Optative sentences.

1. In German, as in English, an interrogative sentence is ordinarily arranged in the inverted order, or with the subject after the verb. In a direct question (one requiring "yes" or "no" as an answer), the verb comes first of all; in an indirect question, the interrogative word (pronoun, pronominal adjective, or particle), or phrase involving such a word, comes first.

Thus, *wird die junge Schöpfung aufhören will the young creation cease? hält sie mich nicht mehr does it not longer confine me?—wo ist er where is he? was sucht ihr what seek ye? welches Buch hat er gelesen what book has he read? mit wessen Geld hat er es gekauft with whose money has he bought it?*

a. When the interrogative word or phrase is itself the subject of the verb, the sentence necessarily retains its normal order: thus, *wer hat mir das gethan who has done that to me? wessen Buch liegt hier whose book lies here?*

b. Often, however (also as in English), a sentence is made interrogative by the tone with which it is uttered, while it has the construction of an assertive sentence: thus, *ihr schweigt? die Ringe wirken nur zurück? you are silent? the rings only work backward? das soll die Antwort sein auf meine Frage? that is to be the answer to my question?*

Often or usually, an interrogative sentence so constructed has a somewhat different force, implying "is it possible that . . . !" or "do you mean that . . . ?" or the like.

c. An exclamatory sentence sometimes has the interrogative form: thus, *wie schön ist der Morgen! wie scheint die Sonne so warm und mild! how beautiful the morning is! how warmly and gently the sun shines!*

2. The optative or imperative sentence takes, as in English, the inverted arrangement: that is to say, in the second persons, singular and plural, of the imperative, and in the various persons of the subjunctive used optatively or imperatively, the subject follows the verb, instead of preceding it.

Thus, *ſprich du, und wir hören do thou speak, and we hear, ſuch' Er den redlichen Gewinn seek thou (lit. let him seek: 153.3) for honest gain! möge nie der Tag erſcheinen may that day never appear! wäre eß hier nur nicht ſo dunkel would that it only were not so dark here! möcht' auch doch die ganze Welt unß hören would that even the whole world might hear us! o wär' ich nie geboren O that I had never been born! Compare 243.1, 331.*

a. But in the third person singular of the present subjunctive (as already pointed out: 331.1b), the subject may also stand before the verb, and more frequently does so: thus, *jeder ſomme wie er iß let each one come as he is.*

### 433. Conditional clauses.

A clause of a sentence is very often inverted in German to express the conditionality of a statement—that is, to add the meaning of *if*.

Thus, *hätte er gerufen, ſo hätten ſie ihn gefunden had he cried out (if he had cried out), they would have found him, hat von euch jeder ſeinen Ring von ſeinem Vater if each of you has his ring from his father, erhebet ein Zwiß ſich if a quarrel arises, hat der Begrabene ſich ſchon erhoben if the buried one hath already arisen, ließ er unß hier zurück if he left us behind here.*

a. This mode of signifying the conditionality of a sentence is (as the first example shows) not unusual also in English, in the past subjunctive tenses *had* and *were*, in the conditional clause (*protasis*) of a complete hypothetical period (332.1); and it is not wholly unknown under other circumstances: but in German the construction is a very common one, with all the different tenses of verbs of every class.

b. The same construction is frequent in the conditional clause (*protasis*) of an incomplete hypothetical period, after an *alß* representing the omitted conclusion (*apodosis*: see 332.2b): thus, *er behandelte ſie, alß wären ſie ſeine Unterthanen he treated them as*

[*he would treat them*] if they were his own subjects; er nickte mit dem Kopfe, als wolle er sagen: Schon recht *he nodded his head, as if he meant to say "quite right!"*

c. Rarely, of two succeeding conditional clauses, only the first is inverted: thus, war es dann Winter, und der Schnee lag rings umher if then it was winter, and the snow lay about: compare 431i.

[EXERCISE 22. NORMAL AND INVERTED SENTENCES.]

*Transposed order of the sentence.*

434. The two modes of arrangement heretofore explained belong to independent or principal sentences or clauses (excepting only the inverted conditional clauses, treated in the last paragraph). The German construction, however, is most peculiar in that it has a special mode of arrangement for dependent (sometimes also called subordinate or accessory) clauses. In these, namely, while the other members of the sentence remain in their normal order, the personal verb is removed from its proper place to the end of the clause. This removal is called *transposition*, and the resulting arrangement is styled the *transposed*.

Thus, in normal order, der Tag neigt sich zu seinem Ende; but, transposed, wir sehen, daß der Tag sich zu seinem Ende neigt *we see that the day is drawing to its close*; — die Dämmerung verhüllt wie ein duftiger Schleier die Höhen und Thäler; but, die Dämmerung, welche wie ein duftiger Schleier die Höhen und Thäler verhüllt *the twilight which envelopes like a misty veil the heights and valleys*; — die Sonne hatte ihre Bahn vollendet; but, als die Sonne ihre Bahn vollendet hatte *when the sun had finished its course*.

a. The name "*transposed order or arrangement*" is abbreviated, for the sake of convenience, from "*arrangement with transposed verb*," which would be more fully and truly descriptive.

435. *Dependent clauses.*

1. A dependent clause is one which enters, with the value of a substantive, an adjective, or an adverb, into the structure of some other clause.



2. Dependent clauses are of three kinds, according to the parts of speech which they represent—namely, substantive clauses, adjective clauses, and adverb clauses.

436. 1. A *substantive dependent clause* is one which has the value and construction of a noun.

2. Such a clause is introduced by *daß that*, *ob whether*, the compound relative pronouns and pronominal adjective *wer, was, and welcher* (179), or the compound relative conjunctions (386.2) *wie, wann, wo* and its compounds, etc.

3. A substantive clause stands in various constructions: thus—

a. As subject of a verb: as, *daß er die Gesandten befreite, ist zwar gut that he has released the ambassadors is, to be sure, well; wann diese Erscheinung sich zutrug, welche Kraft den Einbruch bestimmte, ist tief in das Dunkel der Vorzeit gehüllt when this event happened, what power determined the inroad, is deeply hidden in the darkness of antiquity.*

b. As object of a verb: thus, *sie fragten, ob sie recht wüßte, wer ihr Mann wäre they asked whether she really knew who her husband was; ich will sehen, wo es liegt I will see where it lies; nichts kann ihm wieder ersetzen, was er verloren hat nothing can make up to him what he has lost.*

c. In apposition with a noun or its equivalent: thus, *mit der Entschuldigung, daß er zum Kriege beredet worden sei with the excuse, that he had been persuaded into the war; des Gefühles, daß nichts im Leben recht geschähe, wenn es bloß geschähe of the feeling that nothing in life was done properly if it was simply done;—after es, as preceding indefinite subject (154.4): thus, zweifelhaft blieb es jetzt, welchen Weg man einschlagen sollte it remained doubtful now, which road one was to take;—after other neuter indefinites, pronominal and adjective (see 179.5): thus, allem, was da blüht to everything that blossoms;—explaining a preceding *da* that represents the case of a relative pronoun governed by a preposition: thus, *dies trug ohne Zweifel dazu bei, daß nur billiges verlangt wurde this doubtless contributed to the result that nothing unreasonable was demanded; sie dachte nur darauf, wie**

sie die Menſchen ins Verderben locken könnte *she thought only of how she could entice men to destruction*: see below, *d.*

*d.* As governed by a preposition: thus, ohne daß er ein Glas nöthig hatte *without needing a glass*; harret ihr, bis daß der rechte Ring den Mund eröffne *are you waiting till [the time that] the right ring shall open its mouth?* außer wer seine Mitſchuldigen seien *except whoever were his accomplices*.

Only a few prepositions thus govern a substantive clause directly, and some of these (377.1), the daß being omitted, have assumed the character of conjunctions: thus, bis die Fluthen [Fluten] ſich verliefen *till the floods should subside*;—in general, if such a clause is to be placed under the government of a preposition, it is anticipated by a da in combination with the preposition, and itself follows, as if in apposition with the da: see just above, *c*; and compare 346.2*a*.

*e.* As dependent on a noun: thus, dieß waren die Haupturſachen, daß ſie nirgends Freunde ſahen oder gewannen *these were the chief reasons [for the fact] that they nowhere found or made friends*.

*f.* A substantive clause not infrequently stands in dependence upon a noun or a verb, by a pregnant construction, where a simple substantive could not stand without a preposition, or even sometimes more than that, to explain its relation to the noun or verb: thus, er erlag dem Schmerze, daß ſolch Unglück in ſeinen Tagen einträte *he broke down under his grief [at the fact] that such a misfortune should occur in his time*; ich danke Gott, daß ich meine Söhne wiedergefunden habe *I thank God that I have found my sons again*; ſorgt, daß ſie nicht auß meiner Kammer kommt *take care that she does not leave my room*.

*g.* A conditional clause after als (compare 433*b*) is sometimes used with the value of a substantive clause: thus, die anmuthige [anmutige] Täuſchung, als ſei es die eigene Exiſtenz, die in allen dieſen Anhängen mitſchwebt *the pleasing illusion that (lit. as if) it is our own personality which floats in all these appendages*.

[EXERCISE 24. TRANSPOSED ORDER. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.]

**437.** 1. An *adjective dependent clause* is one which belongs to and qualifies a noun (or its equivalent: 113).

2. Such a clause is introduced by a relative pronoun, der or welcher (or a prepositional phrase containing such),

or by a relative conjunction—namely, the compounds of *da* and *wo* with prepositions or with adverbs of direction, and the simple conjunctions *wo*, *wenn*, *wann*, *da*, *als*, *wie* (compare 386.3).

Thus, ein Wunsch, den auch ich in meinen Jünglingsjahren hatte *a wish which I also had in the years of my youth*; das einzige Märchen, welches er gehört hatte und zu erzählen mußte *the only story which he had heard and knew how to tell*; den Menschen, für dessen Vertheidigung [Verteidigung] ihre Stammväter kämpften *man, in whose defense their ancestors fought*; ihr Quellen, dahin die welle Brust sich drängt *ye fountains toward which the drooping breast presses*; einen Vertrag, wonach die Griechen einen friedlichen Durchzug erlaubten *a treaty by which the Greeks permitted a peaceable transit*; das Land, wo der Brunnquell des Glaubens entsprang *the land where the fountain of faith first sprang up*; in der Regenzeit, wenn das Delta überfluthet ist *in the rainy season, when the delta is inundated*.

a. Any simple qualifying adjective may be converted by means of a relative pronoun into an adjective clause: thus, der gute Mann *the good man* into der Mann, welcher gut ist *the man who is good*;—and, on the other hand, the German often puts into the form of an attributive adjective (especially a participle), with modifying adjuncts, what we more naturally express in English by an adjective clause: thus, er besiegte die zu unvorsichtig und in einzelnen Abtheilungen [Abteilungen] vordringenden Normannen *he vanquished the Normans, who were pressing on too incautiously and in isolated divisions*.

The order of the parts of such a compound adjective is the same with that of an adjective clause: thus, die Normannen, welche zu unvorsichtig und in einzelnen Abtheilungen [Abteilungen] vordrangen.

b. The German not infrequently uses an independent clause, introduced by a demonstrative pronoun, where our idiom requires an adjective clause, with a relative: thus, da ist einer, der kann mehr als ich *there is one—he can do more than I* (for der kann mehr als ich kann *who can do more than I*). The difference of arrangement shows plainly enough what such a clause literally means.

c. An adjective clause is often employed, as in English, not so much to describe or qualify a noun, as to add to the sentence, in a more intimate way than by a simple connective, something

relating to a noun: thus, *die nationale Leidenschaft waffnete sich gegen ihn; der er unterlag, nachdem . . .*, *the national passion armed itself against him; to which he succumbed, after . . .*—instead of *und dieser unterlag er* *and to this he succumbed*. Or, what has logically a different value, as of a ground or reason, is cast into the shape of a descriptive clause: thus, *deshalb beschloß der Kaiser, dem daran lag, schnell zu seinem Sohne zu kommen* *accordingly the emperor, who was desirous of getting quickly to his son, resolved . . .*—instead of *da es ihm daran lag* *since he was desirous*.

[EXERCISE 25. TRANSPOSED ORDER. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.]

**438.** 1. An *adverbial dependent clause* is one which performs the part of an adverb, by qualifying a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

2. It is introduced by one of the subordinating conjunctions mentioned and classified above, under Conjunctions (386.4).

3. *a.* An adverbial clause, in most cases, qualifies a verb.

Thus, as adverb of PLACE, *wo in der Wildniß alles schwieg, vernahm ich das Geläute wieder* *where in the wilderness all was silent, I heard the pealing again*;—of TIME, *als nun die Morgendämmerung begann, berührte Eloah den Schlummernden* *when now the morning twilight began, Eloah touched the slumberer*; *eh' es zwölf schlug, saßen sie wie vorher* *before it struck twelve, they sat as before*;—of MANNER, *du magst alles schauen, wie ich dir gesagt habe* *thou mayest behold everything as I have told it thee*; *es raschelt mit den Ästen, daß mein Gaul toll wird* *it rustles with the branches in such wise that my horse becomes frantic*;—of CAUSE, *ich blieb um sie, weil sie freundlich gegen mich war* *I hung about her, because she was friendly toward me*;—of PURPOSE, *der muß mitgehen, damit wir den Felsen wegschaffen* *he must go along, in order that we may get the rock out of the way*;—of CONDITION, *wenn du mir dienen willst, so komm mit* *if you would like to serve me, then come along*; *obgleich sie ihm nahe waren, konnten sie ihn doch nicht erblicken* *although they were near him, they yet could not espy him*;—of DEGREE, *je heißer es ist, desto mehr frier' ich* *the hotter it is (in proportion as it is hotter), so much the colder am I*.

*b.* An adverbial clause qualifying an adjective is usually one of degree or manner, introduced by *wie* or *als*, *as* or *than*, or by

so daß: thus, solche Bedingungen, wie er sie vorzuschlagen gewagt hat *such conditions as he has dared to propose*; ein Stab, leicht umfaßt, so daß seine Bewegungen einigen Spielraum haben *a staff lightly grasped, so that its movements have some play*; ich habe so helle Augen daß ich durch die ganze Welt sehen kann *I have so clear eyes that I can see through the whole world*; daß ist besser, als ich von ihm erwartet hatte *that is better than I had expected of him*.

Where a *so* is present, it strictly qualifies the adjective as an adverb, and is itself qualified by the adverbial clause.

c. An adverbial clause qualifying an adverb is for the most part either introduced by *daß* as correlative to *so*, or it follows a demonstrative adverb of the same kind with that by which it is itself introduced, and correlative to the latter: thus, sie hob daß eine Bein so hoch empor, daß er es durchaus nicht finden konnte *she lifted one leg so high up that he could not find it at all*; er konnte schon da, wo die Brücke aufhörte, den hellen Tag erblicken *he could already see the bright day at the point where the bridge ended*; nur darum, weil eine Seele vorhanden ist *only for the reason that a soul is present*; er spottete der Idee überall, wo sie nicht seines Sinnes war *he mocked at ideas in all cases in which they were not of his way of thinking*; ich kann sie erst dann stellen, wenn die Griechen andere ausliefern *I can only furnish them at the time when the Greeks deliver up others*.

In the latter class of cases, the preceding adverb is often superfluous, and the adverbial clause logically qualifies the verb.

d. Out of the frequent use of *so* with a following adverb in the principal clause, and limited by a succeeding adverbial clause introduced by *als*—for example, er ist so bald gekommen, als ich ihn rief *he came as soon as I called him*—has grown a very common construction in which the adverbial clause is itself introduced by *so* and the adverb (often combined into one word), and the *als* is usually omitted (compare 386.4i): thus, in Afrika, so weit wir es kennen *in Africa, so far as we know it*; so bald der Mensch sich dem Drucke der äußersten Noth [Not] entmunden hat *as soon as man has relieved himself of the pressure of extreme need*; so lang' ein Aug' noch weinen, ein Herz noch brechen kann, so lange wallt auf Erden die Göttin Poesie *so long as an eye can yet weep, a heart yet break—so long walks upon earth the goddess Poetry*.

e. A similar construction is sometimes made with an adjective, predicative or attributive: thus, aber so großen Ruhm dieser

Sieg auch den Pilgern brachte *but, great as was the fame this victory brought to the pilgrims, or however great fame this victory brought, etc.*—literally, *so great fame as it even brought.*

In both these classes of cases, the implication of the omitted *als* is clearly shown by the transposed arrangement of the clause; and they are thus readily distinguished from the cases where *sobald*, *so lange*, etc., have simply their literal meaning.

f. If an adverbial clause, or an inverted conditional clause (433b), be put at the head of the sentence, the principal clause takes the inverted arrangement, just as after a simple adverb (431): thus, *wie er das hörte, stand er auf* *when he heard that, he arose*; *wenn die Grasdecke in Staub zerfallen ist, klappt der erhärtete Boden auf* *when the covering of grass has fallen into dust, the hardened earth cleaves open*; *ehe sie zur Natur zurückkehrt, kommt sie zur Manier* *before it returns to nature, it becomes mannerism*; *weil mir dies sehr mißbehagte, dankte ich ihm ganz kurz* *as this was very disagreeable to me, I thanked him quite curtly.*

g. After a prefixed adverbial clause, the principal clause is very often introduced by a particle—*so*, *da*, or the like; especially *so*—correlative to the conjunction of the former, and rendering easier the inversion: thus, *wenn das ist, so kann ich dich brauchen* *if that is the case, (then) I can make use of you*; *als er die Hand zurückzog, da hob sich die Scholle* *when he withdrew his hand, (then) the clod rose.*—A *so* stands in like manner as correlative to the implied *wenn* *if* of an inverted conditional clause: thus, *kann euch das nützen, so will ich euch gern dienen* *if that can help you, (then) I will gladly serve you.*

And the inversion of the principal clause comes so to depend in appearance upon the correlative particle, that, when the particle is omitted, the clause not very infrequently retains its normal order: thus, *hätte er den Frieden gewünscht, es wäre seinem Reiche vortheilhaft [vorteilhaft] gewesen* (*for wäre es, or so wäre es*) *had he wished peace, it would have been advantageous to his realm.*

h. An independent clause is often employed in German where our usage requires a dependent adverbial clause. Thus, for example, usually in a clause after one containing *kaum* *hardly*: *as, kaum war der Vater todt [tot], so kommt ein jeder mit seinem Ring* *hardly was the father dead, when (lit. then) each one comes with his ring.*

i. An adverbial clause, like an adjective clause (437c), is sometimes made use of to add something to the sentence—

thus, doch plünderten einige aus Übermuth [Übermut]; weshalb die Zufuhr aufhörte und Mangel entstand *yet some, out of wantonness, committed pillage: on which account the supply ceased and want arose*—or to make an antithesis—or for other purposes not wholly accordant with the office of a simple adverb.

[EXERCISE 26. TRANSPOSED ORDER, ADVERBIAL CLAUSE.]

439. *Additional rules respecting dependent clauses in general.*

1. In the transposed, as in the inverted (431*h*) order of the sentence, a personal pronoun as object of the verb not infrequently stands before the subject: thus, dafür, daß ihnen die christlichen Kirchen in Palästina eingeräumt werden sollten *on condition that the Christian churches in Palestine should be placed in their possession*; ein Land, wo sich alles in Fülle vorfindet *a land where everything is found in abundance*; als wenn sie ihm der Tod geraubt hätte *than if death had snatched her from him*.

2. When a clause ends with two or more infinitives, of which the last is used in place of a participle (240.1*c*), the transposed verb is put next before instead of after them: thus, weil ich nicht habe gehen können *because I have not been able to go*; denn ihr wißt, daß ihr mich habt ermorden lassen wollen *for you know that you have wanted to have me murdered*. Compare 348.2*a*.

By imitation of this construction, the transposed verb is also sometimes placed before a participle and infinitive, or two participles.

3. *a.* In a dependent clause, the transposed auxiliary (haben or sein) of a perfect or pluperfect tense is very frequently omitted, and has to be inferred from the connection: thus, früher als ihr gedacht (hattet) *earlier than you had thought*, daß hier und da ein Glücklicher gewesen (ist) *that here and there has been one happy man*, indem er zwei nicht (hat) drücken mögen *as he had not wished to do injustice to two*, was Feuers Wuth [Wut] ihm auch geraubt (habe) *whatever the fire's fury may have taken from him*.

*b.* Much more rarely, the transposed copula (a form of sein *be*) is in like manner omitted: thus, daß mir es immer unerklärlich (ist) *that it is ever unaccountable to me*, wenn des Fragens ihr nicht müd' (seid) *if ye are not weary of asking*, die Wege, auf welchen das Beste zu haben (ist) *the ways in which the best is to be had*.

4. *a.* An exclamation often has the arrangement of a dependent clause: thus, wer mit euch wanderte *if one could but go*



*with you!* (lit. [how happy he] who should etc.); *wie er sich windet* how he twists himself!

b. A question may be asked in the same manner: thus, *ob sie wohl hört* [*I wonder*] whether she is perhaps listening?

5. Whether a dependent clause shall be placed within the framework of the one upon which it depends, or outside that framework, is determined mainly by rhetorical or euphonic considerations; but it is much more usually placed outside: thus, *das allererste, was sie in dieser Welt hörten, als der Deckel von der Schachtel genommen wurde, in der sie lagen, war das Wort: „Zinnsoldaten!“* the very first thing that they heard in this world, when the cover was taken from the box in which they lay, was the word “tin soldiers!”—not *was sie in dieser Welt, als der Deckel von der Schachtel, in der sie lagen, genommen wurde, hörten*, which would be excessively awkward. But, as the example shows, clauses qualifying the subject of a sentence have to be brought in before the predicate—unless, indeed, as is often done, the principal clause is inverted.

6. In general, no sentence in German takes the transposed arrangement, as a dependent clause, unless it be *grammatically* as well as *logically* dependent—that is to say, unless it be introduced by a word (conjunction or relative pronoun) which gives it distinctly and formally a dependent character. Many a clause is logically dependent (especially as a substantive clause) without being so formally: thus, *ich dachte, es wäre um desto göttlicher* (or, *daß es um desto göttlicher wäre*) *I should think it was so much the more divine* (or, *that it was* etc.).

Exceptions are—

a. A clause following another dependent clause, and implying the same subordinating word by which the former was introduced: thus, *hiezukam, daß die Könige von Sicilien mit Hofränken kämpfen mußten, der Norden zu fern lag, und Spanien sich kaum der näheren Feinde erwehren konnte* to this was added, that the kings of Sicily had to contend with court intrigues, [that] the north lay too far away, and [that] Spain could hardly defend herself against nearer enemies.

b. The cases explained above (438.3d,e), where *als* is omitted after *so* followed by an adverb or adjective.

c. A number of words (adverbs, prepositions, and so on) which were formerly construed with substantive clauses introduced by *daß* *that*—or, in part, are sometimes still so construed—have



now won the character of conjunctions (compare 382c), and themselves introduce a dependent clause directly, the *daß* being omitted: thus, *biß until* (for *biß daß as far as the time that*), *ungeachtet although* (for *ungeachtet daß it being disregarded that*), *nun now* (for *nun daß now that*), and others: compare 377.1.

d. It may be remarked here that an inverted conditional clause (433) is really an adverbial dependent clause, both logically and formally—as much so as if it were introduced by *wenn if*, and had the transposed order of arrangement; only its dependence is shown in another and peculiar manner.

### *Summary of the Rules of Arrangement.*

440. For the convenience of both teacher and learner, the leading rules respecting the arrangement of clauses, those which it is most important to commit to memory and keep constantly ready for application, are presented below in summary. References to the fuller statements above are added.

441. 1. There are three modes of arranging the sentence in German:

- a. The *normal*, or *regular* (430);
- b. The *inverted* (431–3);
- c. The *transposed* (434–9).

2. The first two belong to independent clauses, the third to dependent (434).

3. Their character is determined by the position of the bare predicate, or the personal verb:

a. In the *normal* arrangement, the personal verb immediately follows the subject;

b. In the *inverted* arrangement, it precedes the subject;

c. In the *transposed* arrangement, it is at the end of the clause.

442. The order of the *normal* sentence is—

- 1. The subject;
- 2. The bare predicate, or personal verb;

3. The various modifying adjuncts of the predicate, as objects, adverbs, predicate noun or adjective ;

4. Finally, the non-personal part of the verb (if there be one)—namely, prefix, participle, or infinitive : and, if more than one be present, they follow one another in their order as here mentioned.

Among the modifying adjuncts of the predicate, standing after the personal verb, or between it and the non-personal part of the verb—

*a.* A personal pronoun directly dependent on the verb regularly comes first ;

*b.* An accusative object precedes a genitive, and more usually follows a dative ;

*c.* An adverb of time ordinarily comes before one of place, and both before one of manner ;

*d.* A predicate noun or adjective, especially an objective predicate, usually comes last.

More special rules would be too liable to exceptions to be worth giving.

Examples of a normally arranged sentence :

1.	2.	3.	4.
er	schickt ;		
er	schickt das Buch ;		
er	hat mir das Buch	geschickt ;	
mein Freund wird mir das Buch bald nach Hause zurückgeschickt haben :			
that is, <i>he sends ; he sends the book ; he has sent me the book ;</i>			
<i>my friend will soon have sent the book back home to me.</i>			

**443.** The order of the *inverted* sentence is the same with that of the normal sentence, except that the subject comes next after the personal verb, instead of next before.

The inverted order is followed—

1. When any adjunct of the predicate verb is put in the place of the subject, at the head of the sentence (431*a-f*) ;

2. Rarely, for impressiveness ; with the personal verb first, and usually with *doch* or *ja* *surely*, somewhere after it (431*g*) ;

3. In interrogative sentences, or when a question is asked (432.1) ;

4. In optative or imperative sentences—that is, when a command or desire is expressed (432.2) ;

5. Often in conditional sentences, or to give the meaning of *if* (433).

*Special rules.* a. The general connectives, meaning *and*, *but*, *for*, or *or* (384), are the only words which, save in rare and exceptional cases, are allowed to precede the subject without inverting the sentence.

b. In an inverted sentence, a personal pronoun as object is often put before the subject (431*h*).

Examples of inverted sentences :

1. mir hat er das Buch geschickt ;  
das Buch hat er mir geschickt ;  
geschickt hat er mir das Buch :

that is, *he has sent me the book*—with varying emphasis, first on *me*, then on *the book*, last on *sent*.

2. hat er mir doch das Buch geschickt :  
that is, *surely he has sent me the book*.

3. hat er mir das Buch geschickt ?  
was hat er mir geschickt ?  
wem hat er das Buch geschickt ?

that is, *has he sent me the book? what has he sent me? to whom has he sent the book?*

4. schicke er mir das Buch !  
that is, *let him send me the book!*

5. schickt er mir das Buch, so thut er wohl :  
that is, *if he sends me the book, he does well*.

- b. hat mir mein Freund das Buch geschickt ?  
that is, *has my friend sent me the book?*

**444.** The order of the *transposed* clause is the same with that of the normal sentence, except that the personal verb is removed from its proper place to the very end of the clause.

The transposed order is followed in *dependent clauses*—that is to say, in such as, being introduced by a subordinating word (relative pronoun or conjunction), are made to enter as members into the structure of some other clause (435).

Such a clause has the value either of a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, and is accordingly reckoned as a *substantive, adjective, or adverbial* dependent clause (436–8).

1. A *substantive dependent clause* (436) is either the subject or object of a verb, or in apposition with or dependent upon a noun, or governed by a preposition.

It is introduced by *daß that, ob whether*, or a compound relative pronoun or particle (386.2).

Example of a substantive dependent clause (objective):

ich weiß, daß er mir das Buch geschickt hat:  
that is, *I know that he has sent me the book.*

2. An *adjective dependent clause* (437) belongs to and qualifies a noun.

It is introduced by a relative pronoun or a relative particle (386.3).

Example of an adjective dependent clause:

das Buch, welches er mir geschickt hat:  
that is, *the book which he has sent to me.*

3. An *adverbial dependent clause* (438) qualifies usually a verb, sometimes an adjective or an adverb.

It is introduced by a subordinating conjunction of place, time, manner, cause, purpose, condition, or degree (386.4).

Examples of an adverbial dependent clause :

als er mir das Buch schickte ;

wenn er mir das Buch geschickt hat :

that is, *when he sent me the book ; if he has sent me the book.*

*Special rules.* *a.* In a transposed sentence, a personal pronoun as object is sometimes put before the subject, if the latter be a noun (439.I).

*b.* If the sentence ends with more than one infinitive, the transposed verb is put next before instead of after them (439.2).

Examples :

*a.* ob mir mein Freund das Buch geschickt hat ;

*b.* weil er mir das Buch nicht hat schicken wollen :

that is, *whether my friend has sent me the book ; because he has not wanted to send me the book.*

### *Concluding Remarks.*

**445.** It must not be supposed that the rules of arrangement, as drawn out in the preceding pages, are always and everywhere strictly observed, even in prose. The demands of euphony, the suggestions of style, even sometimes the arbitrary and unexplainable choice of a writer, lead to their not infrequent violation. A few cases of such violation, of sufficiently prevalent occurrence to constitute exceptional classes, have been pointed out above ; but to show in detail the different degree of obligatory force belonging to the different rules, and how and under what circumstances their neglect is permitted, would require a treatise.

**446.** The construction of sentences has been taken up and treated here only on its grammatical side. To treat it on its rhetorical or stylistic side—to explain how and to what extent clauses may be put together so as to form admissible or harmonious sentences and periods—is not the duty of a grammar. There is, in theory, no limitation to the expansion of a simple sentence ; for both its subject and predicate may involve a variety of modifying adjuncts in the shape of words, phrases,

and clauses ; and each part of these clauses may take on further clauses as adjuncts—and so on, *ad infinitum*. The usages of the language, gradually established under the influence of a regard for euphony and for convenient intelligibility, practically set bounds to this indefinite expansion. But the bounds are very differently drawn in different styles of composition, in every language, and the variety in German is notably greater than in most other languages. Between the style of simple narration and that excessive involution and intricacy in which many German writers love to indulge, there is an immense interval. It is because poetry is intolerant of involved periods that German poetry is, upon the whole, decidedly easier to the learner than German prose. No one, of course, can put together German periods which shall be tolerable—much less, elegant—after study of the rules of construction in a grammar ; familiarity with the language as spoken and written, the acquisition of what seems an instinctive feeling for the harmony of construction, but is in fact an educated habit, the product of much reading and hearing, can alone enable one to compose such sentences as Germans compose.

## RELATION OF GERMAN TO ENGLISH.

447. 1. A part, and the most essential part, of our English language—namely, that derived from the Anglo-Saxon—is of near kindred with the German.

*a.* That other and very important part of our language which is more directly akin with the French and Latin was brought in and grafted upon the Anglo-Saxon in consequence of the conquest of England by the Normans, in the 11th century. The Normans were of Germanic (Scandinavian) race, though they had been settled in France long enough to have substituted the French language for their own. Thus our Germanic blood is purer from intermixture than our Germanic speech.

2. This part akin with German includes, along with the most frequently used and familiar words in our vocabulary, nearly the whole of the *grammatical apparatus* of English—that is to say, all its *endings of inflection* (393), most of its *endings of derivation*, its suffixes and prefixes (394–5), and the larger part of its indeclinable particles, or words of relation.

**448.** Kindred in language, as elsewhere, implies descent from a common ancestor: the English and German are modern dialects of one original language.

*a.* That is to say, there was a time when the forefathers of the English-speakers and those of the German-speakers formed together a single community, of uniform speech. By its division, under historical causes, into separate and independent communities, and by the consequently discordant changes which these communities have wrought each upon its own speech, the various dialects now spoken have gradually come to exhibit the differences which characterize them.

*b.* Thus, the Englishman and the German both use the words *sing*, *sang* (jīng', jang) in the same sense, because each has received them with this sense by uninterrupted tradition—going down from father to son just as language goes nowadays—from ancestors who lived together and differed in their talk no more than we ourselves and our immediate neighbors. Thus, on the other hand, the one says *slay*, *slew*, and the other {č}lag', {č}lug (*strike*, *struck*)—words originally identical in pronunciation and meaning, though now different in both—because these words have, in the course of their tradition, become differently altered in the one and the other line, in the same manner as words are altered nowadays.

**449.** The English and German are joint members of a group or sub-family of dialects called the GERMANIC (often also “Teutonic”); which, again, is a member of a larger family, called the INDO-EUROPEAN (also “Indo-Germanic,” or “Aryan”).

**450.** The Indo-European family includes most of the languages of Europe and southwestern Asia. Its divisions are—

1. The *Germanic* (451);
2. The *Slavic* (Russian, Polish, Bohemian, Servian, Bulgarian, etc.) and *Lithuanic*;
3. The *Celtic* (Welsh, Irish, Gaelic, etc.);

4. The *Italic* (Latin, etc.; and, as modern representatives of the Latin, the Italian, French, Spanish, etc.);
5. The *Greek* (ancient and modern);
6. The *Persian* (Zend, Modern Persian, etc.);
7. The *Indian* (ancient Sanskrit, Pali, Prakrit; modern Hindi, Bengali, Marathi, etc.).

a. The resemblances and differences of these languages are of the same kind with those of the English and German, and due to the same causes. If, where we say *six* and the German *ſechs*, the ancient Roman said *sex*, the ancient Greek *hex*, the Hindu *shash*, and so on, it is all for the same reason for which both the Germans and we say *sing* and *sang* (above, 448b). Only, in this wider family, of races whose separation is much more ancient, the remaining correspondences are proportionally fewer and less conspicuous, the discordances more numerous and deeper.

b. Although relationships for the languages here named have been surmised, and are often claimed, on a yet wider scale (for example, with the Hebrew and the other "Semitic" languages), they have not been demonstrated.

**451.** The divisions of the Germanic branch of this great family are as follows:

1. The *Low-German*, occupying the lowlands of northern Germany. To this division belong—the *English*, as modern representative of the Anglo-Saxon, which was carried into England, and made to displace the Celtic, by the invading tribes from the northern shores of Germany, in the fifth century; the *Dutch*, or literary language of the Netherlands; the ancient *Saxon* and *Frisian*, no longer cultivated; and the various dialects now spoken among the people in northern Germany, whose literary language is the cultivated High-German, or "German."

2. The *High-German*, occupying central and southern Germany. The only existing cultivated dialect of this division is the one which we know as "the German" language; its history will be given with a little more fulness farther on (462 etc.).

3. The *Scandinavian*, occupying the peninsulas of Denmark and Sweden and Norway, with the island of Iceland (colonized



from Norway in the ninth century). Its languages are the ancient Icelandic or *Old Norse*, and the *Norwegian*, *Swedish*, and *Danish*.

These are all the divisions represented by existing languages. Besides them, however, is to be noticed—

4. The *Gothic*, represented by parts of a Gothic version of the Bible made in the fourth century of our era in the dialect of the Goths of Moesia (generally called, therefore, the *Mæso-Gothic*), by their bishop Ulfilas. Of all the extant monuments of Germanic language, this is by two or three centuries the oldest, and therefore of the highest value in all inquiries into the history of the whole Germanic family of languages.

452. 1. The more immediate connection of English is with the Low-German languages; but its relation to the German is very near, as compared with that to the other European tongues, and the correspondences of word, grammatical form, and meaning, between the two are numerous and striking.

2. These correspondences—besides their intrinsic interest, and their value as historical evidences bearing upon the development of both languages, the relations of the races speaking them, and the growth of ideas and institutions among those races—have also a practical value, as a help to the scholar to whose attention they are brought in retaining the meaning of the German words he is endeavoring to learn.

3. It is the proper duty of a German-English dictionary to point out in detail the English words which are to be regarded as identical, or of kindred elements, with German words (a duty sought to be fulfilled in the vocabulary to the author's German Reader). But no small part of the correspondences are readily to be discovered by the scholar himself, especially if his researches are guided at first by a judicious and enlightened teacher.

4. The varieties of difference, both of form and meaning, which distinguish German words from their English correspondents, are much too great to allow of their being set forth here. To exhibit with fulness even the more important among them,

and explain their reasons (so far as these admit of explanation), would be the work of a professed comparative grammar of the Germanic languages. There is, however, one set of differences which are so regular in their occurrence, and which are of such prime importance for one who undertakes to compare German words with English, that they may not be passed without notice.

*The Law of Progression of Mutes.*

**453.** In regard to their mutes, the Germanic languages show a very peculiar set of changes as compared with the other branches of the family; and a part of the Germanic languages themselves show, as compared with the rest, another and similar, though less complete, set of changes. These changes were first clearly established and illustrated by the great German grammarian, Jacob Grimm; and their statement is generally called, after him, Grimm's Law—or also the law of progression or rotation of mutes (in German, the Lautverschiebung *pushing of sounds out of place*).

**454.** The original mute letters of the Indo-European languages are nine in number, and of three classes—*lingual* or *t*-mutes, *palatal* or *k*-mutes, and *labial* or *p*-mutes: each class containing a surd mute (*t*, *k*, *p*), an aspirate (*th*, *kh*, *ph*—more originally *dh*, *gh*, *bh*), and a sonant (*d*, *g*, *b*). Thus—

	surd.	aspirate.	sonant.
lingual mutes	<i>t</i>	<i>dh</i> or <i>th</i>	<i>d</i>
palatal mutes	<i>k</i>	<i>gh</i> or <i>kh</i>	<i>g</i>
labial mutes	<i>p</i>	<i>bh</i> or <i>ph</i>	<i>b</i>

*a.* These aspirates are to be understood as uttered in the way they are written—that is to say, with an *h* or aspiration audibly following the mute letter which begins them: and not, for instance, as we are accustomed to pronounce our *th* and *ph*. These last are not aspirated mutes, but *spirants*, simple continuable sounds, which have grown out of the aspirates, but are phonetically of quite another character. Any aspirate in the Germanic languages which had become a spirant was no longer liable to the law of progression.

**455.** It is found now that, as a general rule, in the great body of the Germanic languages (Gothic, Scandinavian, Low-German), each of these mutes has been pushed forward one step in its own class, the surds having become aspirates, the aspirates sonants, and the sonants surds; while, in the High-German languages (including the "German"), each has been pushed forward two steps, the surds having become sonants, the aspirates surds, and the sonants aspirates.

**456.** 1. This rule would in strictness require an

	lingual	labial	palatal	
original	<i>t, th, d</i>	<i>p, ph, b</i>	<i>k, kh, g</i>	to have become
English	<i>th, d, t</i>	<i>ph, b, p</i>	<i>kh, g, k</i>	and
German	<i>d, t, th</i>	<i>b, p, ph</i>	<i>g, k, kh</i>	;

but to the regularity of this result there are many exceptions:

*a.* Original *p* and *k*, in whole classes of words, at their first change were converted into the spirants *f* and *h*, instead of the aspirated mutes *ph* and *kh*, and so remained unaltered by the second change.

*b.* The High-German dialects in general took the second step of progression less completely and less strictly in the labial and palatal than in the lingual series. In the two former classes, some dialects, at a certain period, were more faithful to the requirements of the rule than were others; but, in the modern German, the authority of these other dialects has prevailed. Thus, for *bin* *be* the older monuments give *pim* (*p* for *b*)—and so in a great number of other cases.

*c.* In the lingual series, the German has converted the aspirate *th*, regularly required as the correspondent of English *t*, into a sibilant, *ʃ* or *ʒ*.

2. Hence, the actual correspondence between English and German, so far as concerns the law of progression, is in general as follows:

	lingual	labial	palatal	
to English	<i>th, d, t</i>	<i>f, b, p</i>	<i>h, g, k</i>	correspond
German	<i>ð, t, ʃ, ʒ</i>	<i>b, f, b, ʃ, p</i>	<i>h, g, f</i>	

Even these correspondences, however, do not hold strictly in all cases: thus—

*a.* A mute is often protected from alteration by combination with another letter: thus, *d* by *n* or *l*: as in *Land land*, *wandern wander*, *Gold gold*;—*t* by *s*, *h* (*ch*, *gh*), *f*: as in *Stein stone*, *Haft haste*, *Nacht night*, *Kraft craft*.

*b.* Even the oldest English and German (the Anglo-Saxon and the old High-German) have their irregular exceptions to the rules of correspondence; and these exceptions have become much more numerous in later times, as each language, in the course of its history, has suffered anomalous changes in some of its words and letters.

**457.** Below are given examples of the more important correspondences between German and English consonants—those which result from the law of progression, and a few others.

**458.** *Lingual series.*

1. *Ḑ* in German answers regularly to English *th*: thus, *daß that*, *denken think*, *dicke thick*, *doch though*, *Durst thirst*, *drei three*, *Bad bath*, *Bruder brother*, *Erde earth*.

*a.* The most important exception is that of a *ḑ* after *n* or *l*, as noticed above (456.2*a*).

2. *Ḍ* (or *th*: see 37) in German answers regularly to English *d*: thus, *Tag day*, *tief deep*, *Tod death*, *thun do*, *liebte loved*, *Gottheit godhead*, *selten seldom*, *Wort word*, *unter under*.

*a.* Excepted especially is a *t* after *ſ*, *ch*, *f*, which (as noticed above, 456.2*a*) usually corresponds to an English *t*.

3. The lingual sibilants in German, *s*, *ſſ*, *ß*, *z*, often correspond to English *t*: thus, *daß that*, *heiß hot*, *eß it*, *auß out*, *besser better*, *Fuß foot*, *zwei two*, *zu to*, *Zeit tide*, *Zahl tale*, *Zoll toll*.

*a.* But the sibilants are also in numberless cases the representatives of original sibilants, and are therefore found alike, or with but slight variations, in German and English: thus, *ſing sing*, *ſo so*, *dieß this*, *Stein stone*, *Scham shame*, *Schnee snow*, *ſchelten scold*.

**459.** *Labial series.*

1. *a.* *B*, in German, when initial, regularly answers to English *b*: thus, *Bad bath*, *Bruder brother*, *Blut blood*, *geboren born*.

b. In the middle of a word, or as final, it is usually represented in English by *f* or *v*: thus, *ab off*, *of*, *halb half*, *taub deaf*, *Weib wife*, *lieb lief*;—*Taube dove*, *sterben starve*, *sieben seven*, *Knabe knave*, *über over*, *Fieber fever*.

2. *ß* in German answers, with very few exceptions, to English *p*: thus, *passen pass*, *Bech pitch*, *Blage plague*, *Spieß spit*, *springen spring*.

3. a. *ſ*, like *b*, agrees with English *f* when initial: thus, *fallen fall*, *Fisch fish*, *Fuß foot*, *fliegen fly*, *frei free*.

b. Elsewhere in a word, it usually corresponds to English *p*: thus, *tief deep*, *Schlaf sleep*, *auf up*, *reif ripe*, *ſchaffen shape*, *helfen help*, *werfen warp*, *offen open*.

4. *Pf* is a peculiar German combination, occurring with great frequency in words anciently derived from the Latin, as representing a Latin *p*: thus, *Pflanze plant* (Lat. *planta*), *Pforte door* (Lat. *porta*), *Pfeil arrow* (Lat. *pilum*), *Pfeffer pepper* (Lat. *piper*), *Pfund pound* (Lat. *pondus*). But it is also found in a good many words of Germanic origin: thus, *Apfel apple*, *Pflicht plight*, *Schnepfe snipe*, *hüpfen hop*, *Pfropf prop*.

#### 460. Palatal series.

As a general rule, the letters of this series—namely, *g*, *f*, *h*, also *nt* and *ng*—are the same in German and English: thus, *Gott god*, *vergeſſen forget*, *grün green*, *Wagen wagon*;—*kalt cold*, *dicke thick*, *wirken work*, *klar clear*, *Knabe knave*;—*Haar hair*, *Herz heart*;—*ſinken sink*, *singen sing*.

Exceptions, however, of a more irregular kind, are very numerous. Thus—

a. English *ch* is found not infrequently where the German has *t*: thus, *Kinn chin*, *Strecke stretch*.

b. German *ch* is variously represented in English, by *k*, *gh*, *tch*, etc.: thus, *Buch book*, *doch though*, *leicht light*, *Bech pitch*.

c. An original *g*, which the German has retained, has very often undergone manifold corruption or loss in English: thus, *Tag day*, *liege, lüge lie*, *mag may*, *Weg way*;—*Hügel hill*, *Ziegel tile*, *Vogel fowl*;—*folgen follow*, *Balg bellows*, *Sorge sorrow*, *borgen borrow*;—and so on.

d. *h*, as has been pointed out, is in German very often a mere orthographical device for signifying the long quantity of the neighboring vowel. Of course, where it has this character, nothing corresponding with it in English is to be looked for.

461. Into the discussion of the general tendencies and the special causes which have led to the harmonies and discrepancies of German and English words, and have produced either classes of correspondences or single and apparently anomalous cases of difference, we cannot here enter: such subjects would be in place in a historical grammar of German, or a comparative grammar of the Germanic languages in general.

#### BRIEF HISTORY OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

462. The German language is, as has been seen, one of the dialects of the High-German sub-division of the Germanic division or branch of the Indo-European family of languages.

a. Every cultivated or literary language is, in the same way, by origin one of a group of more or less discordant dialects—one to which external circumstances have given prominence above the rest.

b. Since unity of speech cannot be maintained over a wide extent of country, or through a numerous community, except by aid of the unifying influences of high civilization and literature, it is only a matter of course that Germany, at the beginning of the historical era, was filled with a variety of dialects—many of which are yet far from being extinct.

c. Germany was first brought to the knowledge of the rest of the world by the Romans, whose attempts to conquer the country, as they had conquered Gaul (France), proved in vain, partly owing to the stubborn resistance of the German tribes, partly because of the remoteness of the country, and the decay of the aggressive force of the Roman empire. Later, nearly all the European provinces of the empire were overwhelmed, one after another, by roving hordes of Germans; but these nowhere established themselves in sufficient numbers to maintain their own speech. Thus the dialects of the Goths, the Vandals, and other noted German races, became extinct, by the absorption of those races into the communities of other speech among whom they settled.

d. The introduction of Roman Christianity, civilization, and letters into Germany (beginning in the fifth century), the establishment of the Frankish empire under Chlodowig over nearly

all the German tribes (about the end of that century), and its yet more brilliant renewal under Charlemagne, three centuries later (A. D. 742-814), produced in the country a state of things favorable to a unity of customs, institutions, and language. It remained then for circumstances to determine which of the many existing dialects should win such importance in the eyes of all the German peoples as to be accepted by them as their literary language.

**463.** The history of the High-German dialects falls into three periods:

1. The *Old High-German* period (*Althochdeutsch*), down to the twelfth century;

2. The *Middle High-German* period (*Mittelhochdeutsch*), covering four centuries, from the beginning of the twelfth to the time of Luther;

3. The *New High-German* period (*Neuhochdeutsch*), from the Reformation down to our own days.

**464.** 1. The Old High-German period commences with the eighth century; from which, however, only fragments have come down to us.

*a.* As the oldest of these is regarded the *Hildbrandslied*, a pre-Christian poem, in the alliterative verse which appears to have been the original form of poetic expression of the whole Germanic race.

2. The literature of this period is chiefly Christian, and consists of versions from the Latin, collections of words or glosses, paraphrases and comments of Scripture, and the like.

*a.* The most noteworthy productions of this class are Otfried's *Krist* (A. D. 868), a harmony of the four Gospels, in the first rhymed verse; a prose version of Tatian's harmony of the Gospels, of about the same period; the works of the monk Notker (about A. D. 1000) and his school, especially his prose version and explanation of the Psalms; Williram's (about A. D. 1075) prose paraphrase and explanation of Solomon's Song.

b. Besides these, there are a few songs, forms of imprecation, and other like remnants of a more popular and native class of productions.

3. The leading Old High-German dialect was the Frankish, as being the language of the ruling race and dynasty; but there was no prevailing literary dialect accepted through the whole country; each writer used his own native idiom.

a. Other dialects represented in this period are the Alemanic and Swabian, and the Bavarian and Austrian.

**465.** 1. In the Middle High-German period, the literary dialect was the Swabian.

a. Because it was the court-language of the empire under the Swabian emperors, Conrad and Frederick Barbarossa and their successors (A. D. 1138–1268).

b. The grand difference distinguishing the language of the Middle period from that of the Old, is the reduction of the former full and distinct vowels of the endings of words to the indifferent and monotonous *e*. Thus, *gebe* *I give* was in the first period *gibu*, *geben* *to give* was *gēban*, *ḡiſchen* *to fishes* was *viscum*, *blindeſ* *blind* (neut. sing.) was *blindaz*, *blinden* (gen. pl.) was *blindôno*, and so on. In this respect the Middle and New High-German stand nearly upon the same level.

2. The literature is abundant and various, and of a very high order of merit.

It may be divided into—

a. The works of the *Minnesänger* (*love-singers*), of whom more than three hundred are more or less known. Some of the most eminent among them were Hartmann von Aue, Wolfram von Eschenbach, Heinrich von Ofterdingen, Walther von der Vogelweide, and Gottfried von Strassburg. They wrote songs of love and chivalry, epics (chiefly founded on French and Provençal subjects), didactic poems, fables—almost everything excepting dramas.

b. The popular legendary epics, new workings-up of stories—half-mythical, half-historical—which had long been current among the German races, and even in part belonged to the whole Germanic race. Their authors are unknown. Chief



among them is the Lay of the Nibelungen (*Nibelungenlied*), a magnificent poem; others are Gudrun, and the lesser tales which make up the *Heldenbuch* (*Book of Heroes*).

c. The works of the *Meisterjänger* (*master-singers*). These were poets by trade, organized into guilds, and carrying on their handicraft in a very regular and very uninteresting manner, in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries (and later), after the decay of the national literature which had flourished under the Swabian emperors. Their productions have mostly gone into merited oblivion.

**466.** During the time of literary depression which occupied the last century or two of the Middle period, the foundations were laying for the New. The wearing-out of the feudal system; the rise of the cities to importance and wealth; the awakened sense for Art, both in architecture and in painting; the establishment of universities; the impulse given to classical learning through Europe in consequence of the capture of Constantinople by the Turks; the invention of printing, which put literature within the reach of a vastly increased class—all these circumstances prepared the way for a national culture which should be as much wider and deeper-reaching than that of the preceding period, as this than that of the first. And whereas in the Old period literature had been the property chiefly of the church and the priests, with complete diversity of dialects; and, in the Middle, the property of courts and the great, with acknowledged pre-eminence of the court-dialect; so now it was to be shared in by the great body of the people, and to possess for its use something like a true national language.

**467.** The New High-German period begins with the grand national movement of the Reformation, and especially with the writings of Luther.

a. The dialect which Luther used was not a continuation of the Swabian, which had long since sunk into insignificance, while each author had again begun to write in his own idiom; nor was it the precise spoken language of any part of the country: it was, as he himself states, the language of public affairs in Saxony, and used by the various courts throughout Germany. It had grown up in a measure on paper, in learned and literary use, and united in itself some discordant dialectic elements.

b. It was the nationality of Germany that created the possibility of a national language; it was the excited and receptive state of the national mind at the time of the Reformation, the inherent force and vigor of style in the writings of Luther and his coadjutors, the immense and immediate circulation which they won among all classes of the people, and the adoption of his version of the Bible as a household book through nearly the whole country, that gave to the particular form of speech used by him an impulse toward universality which nothing has since been able to check or interfere with. It has become more and more exclusively the language of education and learning, of the courts, the pulpit, the lecture-room, the school, the press: and in the large towns and cities it has to some extent extirpated or deeply affected the old popular dialects, which are now hardly met in purity except among the rude country population. Thus—

**468.** The language of Luther, not a little modified in spelling, utterance, and construction, and greatly enriched by new formations and additions, is now the speech of the educated in all Germany (both High-Germany and Low-Germany), and therefore entitled to be called the GERMAN LANGUAGE.

a. To illustrate the alteration which it has undergone during the three centuries and a half of its existence, is here added Luther's version of the Lord's Prayer, as given in his first edition of the German New Testament (1522): *Vnser Vater ynn dem Hymel, Dein Name sey heylig; Deyn Reich kome; Deyn Wille geschehe. auff Erden wie ynn dem Hymel; Vnser teglich Brott gib vnns heutt; Vnd bergib uns unsere Schulde, wie wir unsern Schuldigern vergeben; Vnd fure uns nitt ynn Versuchung; Sondern erlose uns von dem Vbel; Denn deyn ist das Reich, und die Krafft, vnnnd die Ewelickeit in Ewickeyt. Amen.*

b. The former dialects not only still subsist in Germany among the uneducated, but their influence more or less affects the literary speech, especially as regards its pronunciation; so that the educated even, from different parts of the country, do not speak precisely alike.

**469.** To give any history of the language, its cultivation, and its literature, during this its modern period, will not be

attempted here: even to mention the names of the principal writers who have distinguished themselves by their contributions in German to literature and science would require pages. Such are their merits that to possess no knowledge of German is to be cut off from one of the most important sources of knowledge and culture within our reach.

## GERMAN WRITTEN CHARACTER.

The German written letters are as follows:

Cap.	small.	equiv't.	Cap.	small.	equiv't.	Cap.	small.	equiv't.
A	a	a	J	j	j	ſ	ſ	s
B	b	b	K	k	k	T	t	t
C	c	c	L	l	l	U	u	u
D	d	d	M	m	m	V	v	v
E	e	e	N	n	n	W	w	w
F	f	f	O	o	o	X	x	x
G	g	g	P	p	p	Y	y	y
H	h	h	Q	q	q	Z	z	z
I	i	i	R	r	r	—	ß	sz

The general peculiarity requiring especial notice in this character is the prevalence of angular instead of rounded strokes among the small letters. Owing to this, *i* is distinguished from *c* only by its dot; also *u* from *n* only by the round stroke above the former (which stroke, however, is omitted as unnecessary when the *u* is modified). Further, *e* is distinguished from *n* only by the strokes being made much closer together. For the same reason, the *a*, *g*, *o*, *q* are not entirely closed at the top.

The use of the forms of small *s* corresponds precisely with that of the two forms of the same letter in printed text: the first is to be everywhere written for *ſ*, and the other for *ß*.

For *sz* is written a peculiar character (as shown in the table), instead of a combination of those for *s* and *z*. Special forms of combination of *ss* and *st* are also sometimes made.

## Examples :

Apfel. Liefersandt. Liefstüb.  
 Dürstet. Frän. Fluß. Jubirgen.  
 Jammern. Ihr. Jammern. Kränz.  
 Längen. Mädeln. Nachbar. Oeffen.  
 Kraußen. Rörten. Zinzanzig. Zerstern.  
 Unberuflich. Naturlandeb. Mafsfait.  
 Farnen. Zoffeln. Zimmern.

---

Fila mit Mailn. Außensofobarn  
 ist nicht außensofobarn. Jeder weiß  
 am besten, was der Teufel ist und thut.  
 Jeder ist sich selbst der Herr. Kräfte.  
 Morgens früh hat Gold im Mund.  
 Mein Lachen Lachen sehr. Wenn  
 das Herz voll ist, geht der Mund  
 über. Allzumal ist ungut.

Du bist ein reine Lüge,  
 Du fährst, und fohst, und ein,  
 Ist fahrst dich an, und Mufmüß  
 Biflucht mir ins Lutz fimmir.

Mir ist's, als ob ich die Lüge  
 Auf's Lutz die Lüge sollt,  
 Luth, daß Gott dich anfallen  
 Du fährst, und ein, und fohst.

Seine.

Über allen Giffeln — Ist Rief;  
 In allen Wiffeln — Zümpst die  
 Duim nimm Luf;  
 Die Kögeln fefenigen im Muf;  
 Muf mir, baf  
 Riefst die an.

Goethe.

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS,

Including all the Verbs of the Old or Strong Conjugation.

*Explanations.*—In the following table are given the principal parts of all the verbs of the Old or strong conjugation, together with the preterit subjunctive; also the second and third singular indicative present and the second singular imperative, whenever these are otherwise formed than they would be in the New or weak conjugation. Forms given in full-faced type (thus, **gebissen**) are those which are alone in use; for those in ordinary type (thus, *büßst, büßt*) the more regular forms, or those made after the manner of the New or weak conjugation, are also allowed; forms enclosed in parenthesis are especially unusual, poetical, or dialectic; where two forms are given, the one placed first (above the other) is the more usual or approved one; a subjoined remark gives additional explanation, if any is needed.

The forms of the modal auxiliaries, as well as of the other irregular verbs of the New conjugation, are included in the List. They are distinguished by being put in ordinary type throughout.

*No verb is given in the list as a compound.* If it is used only in composition, hyphens are prefixed to all its forms, and an added note gives its compounds.

Infinitive.	pres't indic. sing.	pret. indic.	pret. subj.	imper.	past part.
<b>Baden</b> <i>bake</i>	büßst, büßt	bat	bäte	—	gebaden
usually of New conj., especially when transitive.					
<b>Barren</b>	barst, bart	bar	bäre	bar	boren
only in gebären <i>bear, bring forth</i> (formerly <i>geben</i> ).					
<b>Beißen</b> <i>bite</i>	— —	bis	bisse	—	gebissen
<b>Bergen</b> <i>hide</i>	birgst, birgt	barg	bärge bürge	birg	geborgen
<b>Bersten</b> <i>burst</i>	birstest, birst	barst borst	börste bärste	birst	geborsten
<b>Biegen</b> <i>bend</i>	— —	bog	böge	—	gebogen
<b>Bieten</b> <i>offer</i>	(beutst, beut)	bot	böte	(beut)	geboten
<b>Binden</b> <i>bind</i>	— —	band	bände	—	gebunden
<b>Bitten</b> <i>beg</i>	— —	bat	bäte	—	gebeten
<b>Blasen</b> <i>blow</i>	blä(ße)st, bläst	blies	bliese	—	geblasen
<b>Bleiben</b> <i>remain</i>	— —	blieb	bliebe	—	geblieben
<b>Bleichen</b> <i>bleach</i>	— —	blieh	bliehe	—	gebliehen
as intransitive, of either conj.; as transitive, of New only.					

Infinitive.	pres't indic. sing.	pret. indic.	pret. subj.	imper.	past part.
<b>Braten</b> <i>roast</i>	brätst, brät	briet	briete	—	gebraten
<b>Brächen</b> <i>break</i>	brichst, bricht	brach	bräche	brich	gebrochen
<b>Brennen</b> <i>burn</i>	— —	brannte	brennte	—	gebrannt
<b>Bringen</b> <i>bring</i>	— —	brachte	brächte	—	gebracht
<b>=breihen</b> obsolete, except in <i>gebreihen thrive</i> .	— —	=dich	=diehe	—	=dichen
<b>Denken</b> <i>think</i>	— —	dachte	dächte	—	gedacht
<b>=derben</b>	=dirbst, =dirbt	=darb	=dürbe =därbe	=dirb	=dorben
only in <i>verderben perish</i> ; which as transitive, <i>destroy</i> , is usually of New conj.					
<b>Dingen</b> <i>engage</i>	— —	bang (bung)	(bünge)	—	gedungen
<b>Dreschen</b> <i>thresh</i>	drischest, drischt	drasch drasch	drösche dräsche	drisch	gedroschen
<b>=drichen</b> only in <i>verdrichen vex</i> .	— (=dreußt)	=droß	=dröffe	(=dreuß)	=droffen
<b>Dringen</b> <i>press</i>	— —	drang	dränge	—	gedrungen
<b>Dürfen</b> <i>be permitted</i>	darf, darfst, darf	durfte	dürfte	wanting	geburt
<b>Essen</b> <i>eat</i>	isst, ißt	aß	äße	iß	gegessen
<b>Fahren</b> <i>go</i>	fährst, fährt	fuhr	führe	—	gefahren
<b>Fallen</b> <i>fall</i>	fällst, fällt	fiel	fielen	—	gefallen
<b>Fangen</b> <i>catch</i>	fängst, fängt	fieng (fieng)	finge fienge)	—	gefangen
<b>Fechten</b> <i>fight</i> forms of New conj. occasionally occur.	sich t)st, sichts	focht	föchte	sicht	gefochten
<b>=fehlen</b>	=fehlt, =fehlt	=fahl	=föhle =fähle	=fehl	=fohlen
only in <i>befehlen command</i> , <i>empfehlen commend</i> ; <i>fehlen sail</i> is another word.					
<b>Finden</b> <i>find</i>	— —	fand	fände	—	gefunden
<b>Flechten</b> <i>twine</i>	flucht, flucht	flocht	föchte	flucht	geflochten
<b>Fleihen</b> <i>apply</i> antiquated except in <i>sich befeihen exert one's self</i> .	— —	fieh	fiene	—	gefloffen
<b>Fliegen</b> <i>fly</i>	(fleugt, flucht)	flog	föge	(fleug)	geflogen
<b>Fliehen</b> <i>flee</i>	(fleucht, flucht)	floh	föhe	(fleuch)	geflohen
<b>Fließen</b> <i>flow</i>	(fließt, flucht)	floss	föffe	(fließ)	geflossen
<b>Fragen</b> <i>ask</i> properly a verb of the New conj. only.	fragst, fragt	frag	früge	—	gefragt
<b>Fressen</b> <i>d'vour</i>	frißest, frißt	fraß	fräße	friß	gefressen
<b>Frieren</b> <i>freeze</i>	— —	fror	fröre	—	gefroren
<b>Gären</b> <i>ferment</i> also spelt <i>gähren</i> etc., with <i>h</i> .	— —	gor	göre	—	gegoren
<b>Geben</b> <i>give</i>	giebst, giebt gibst, gibt	gab	gäbe	gieb gib	gegeben
<b>Gehen</b> <i>go</i>	— —	ging	ginge	—	gegangen
<b>Gelten</b> <i>be worth</i>	giltst, gilt	galt	gälte gölte	gilt	gegolten
<b>=gessen</b> only in <i>vergessen forget</i> .	=gissest, =gicht	=gab	=gäße	=gih	=gessen
<b>Gießen</b>	(gießest, gießt)	goß	göße	(gieß)	gegossen
<b>=ginnen</b>	— —	=gann	=gönne =gänne	—	=gonnen
only in <i>beginnen begin</i> .					



Infinitive.	pres't indic. sing.	pret. indic.	pret. subj.	imper.	past part.
<b>Gleichen</b> <i>resemble</i> usually of New conj. when transitive, <i>make similar</i> .	— —	glich	gliche	—	geglichen
<b>Gleiten</b> <i>glide</i>	— —	glitt	gltte	—	geglichen
<b>Glimmen</b> <i>gleam</i>	— —	glomm	glömme	—	geglommen
<b>Graben</b> <i>dig</i>	gräbſt, gräbt	grub	grübe	—	gegraben
<b>Greifen</b> <i>gripe</i>	— —	griff	griffe	—	gegriffen
<b>haben</b> <i>have</i>	haſt, hat	hatte	hätte	—	gehabt
<b>Halten</b> <i>ho'd</i>	hältſt, hält	hielt	hielte	—	gehalten
<b>Hängen</b> <i>hang</i> sometimes confounded in its forms with <i>hängen hang</i> (trans.), New conj.	hängſt, hängt	hing	hinge	—	gehangen
<b>Hauen</b> <i>h'w</i>	— —	hieb	hiebe	—	gehauen
<b>Heben</b> <i>raise</i>	— —	hob hub	höbe hübe	—	gehoben
<b>Heißen</b> <i>call</i>	— —	hieß	hieße	—	geheißen
<b>Helfen</b> <i>help</i>	hilſt, hilft	half	hälfe hälfe	hilf	geholfen
<b>Reißen</b> <i>chide</i>	— —	riß	riße	—	gerißen
<b>Kennen</b> <i>know</i>	— —	kante	kennte	—	gekannt
<b>Klemmen</b> <i>press</i> forms of Old conj. very rare except from <i>bellemmen oppress</i> .	— —	komm	kömme	—	geklemmen
<b>Kleben</b> <i>cleave</i>	— —	klob	klobe	—	gekleben
<b>Klimmen</b> <i>climb</i>	— —	komm	kömme	—	geklimmen
<b>Klingen</b> <i>sound</i> rarely of New conj., especially when transitive.	— —	klang	känge känge	—	geklingen
<b>Kneifen</b> <i>pinch</i>	— —	kniff	kniffe	—	gekniffen
<b>Kneipen</b> <i>pinch</i>	— —	knipp	knippe	—	geknippen
<b>Kommen</b> <i>come</i>	(kömmt, kömmt)	kam	käme	—	gekommen
<b>Können</b> <i>can</i>	kann, kannſt, kann	konnte	könnte	wanting	gekonnt
<b>Kriechen</b> <i>creep</i>	(kreichſt, krecht)	kroch	kröche	(kreich)	gekrochen
<b>Küren</b> <i>choose</i>	— —	kor	köre	—	gekoren
<b>Laden</b> <i>load</i>	lädſt, lädt	lud	lube	—	geladen
<b>Lassen</b> <i>let</i>	läßeſt, läßt	ließ	ließe	—	gelassen
<b>Laufen</b> <i>run</i>	läuſt, läuft	lief	liefe	—	gelaufen
<b>Leiden</b> <i>suffer</i>	— —	litt	litte	—	gelitten
<b>Leihen</b> <i>lend</i>	— —	lieh	liehe	—	geliehen
<b>Lesen</b> <i>read</i>	leſeſt, lieſt	laß	läße	ließ	gelesen
<b>Legen</b> <i>lie</i>	— —	lag	läge	—	gelegt
<b>Lieren</b> only in <i>verlieren lose</i> .	— —	lor	löre	—	lören
<b>Lingen</b> only found in <i>gelingen succeed</i> , <i>mißlingen fail</i> : used in third person only.	— —	lang	länge	—	lungen
<b>Löſchen</b> <i>extinguish</i> the forms of New conj. preferably limited to transitive meaning.	löſcheſt, löſcht	lösch	löſche	lösch	gelöschen
<b>Lügen</b> <i>lie</i>	(leugſt, leugt)	log	löge	(leug)	gelogen
<b>Mahlen</b> <i>grind</i> the forms of Old conj. now in use only in the participle.	mähſt, mählt	mahl	mühle	—	gemahlen
<b>Meiden</b> <i>shun</i>	— —	mied	miede	—	gemieden
<b>Melken</b> <i>milk</i>	(milſt, milkt)	molt	mölte	(milf)	gemolken

Infinitive.	pres't indic. sing.	pret. indic.	pret. subj.	imper.	past part.
<b>Messen</b> <i>measure</i>	<b>mißest, mißt</b>	<b>maß</b>	<b>mäße</b>	<b>miß</b>	<b>gemessen</b>
<b>Mögen</b> <i>may</i>	mag, magst, mag	mochte	möchte	wanting	gemocht
<b>Müssen</b> <i>must</i>	muß, mußt, muß	mußte	müßte	wanting	gemußt
<b>Nehmen</b> <i>take</i>	<b>nimmst, nimmt</b>	<b>nahm</b>	<b>nähme</b>	<b>nimm</b>	<b>genommen</b>
<b>Nennen</b> <i>name</i>	— —	nannte	nennte	—	genannt
<b>=nesen</b>	— —	<b>=nas</b>	<b>=näse</b>	—	<b>=nesen</b>
only in <i>genesen</i> <i>recover, get well.</i>					
<b>=nießen</b>	(=neußeßt, =neußt)	<b>=noß</b>	<b>=nöffe</b>	(=neuß)	<b>=noffen</b>
obsolete, except in <i>genießen</i> <i>enjoy.</i>					
<b>Pfeifen</b> <i>whistle</i>	— —	<b>pfiff</b>	<b>pfiffe</b>	—	<b>gepfiffen</b>
<b>Pflegen</b> <i>cherish</i>	— —	pflog pflag	pflog pflog	—	gepflogen
<b>Preisen</b> <i>praise</i>	— —	<b>pries</b>	<b>prieße</b>	—	<b>gepriesen</b>
forms of the New conj. are occasionally met with.					
<b>Quellen</b> <i>gush</i>	quillst, quillt	quoll	quölle	quill	gequollen
usually of New conj. when transitive, <i>swell, soak.</i>					
<b>Rächen</b> <i>avenge</i>	— —	(roch)	(röche)	—	gerochen
forms of Old conj. very rare, except the participle.					
<b>Rathen</b> <i>advise</i>	räthst, räth	rieth	riethe	—	gerathen
New conj. forms mostly limited to the sense <i>hold council.</i>					
<b>Reiben</b> <i>rub</i>	— —	<b>rieb</b>	<b>riebe</b>	—	<b>gerieben</b>
<b>Reißen</b> <i>tear</i>	— —	<b>riß</b>	<b>riße</b>	—	<b>gerissen</b>
<b>Reiten</b> <i>ride</i>	— —	<b>ritt</b>	<b>ritte</b>	—	<b>geritten</b>
<b>Rennen</b> <i>run</i>	— —	rannte (rennte)	rennte	—	gerannt (gerennt)
<b>Riechen</b> <i>smell</i>	(reuchst, reucht)	<b>roch</b>	<b>röche</b>	(reuch)	<b>gerochen</b>
<b>Ring(en)</b> <i>wring</i>	— —	<b>rang</b> <b>rung</b>	<b>ränge</b> <b>rünge</b>	—	<b>gerungen</b>
<b>Rinnen</b> <i>run</i>	— —	<b>rann</b>	<b>ränne</b> <b>rönne</b>	—	<b>geronnen</b>
<b>Rufen</b> <i>call</i>	— —	<b>rief</b>	<b>riefe</b>	—	<b>gerufen</b>
very rarely of New conj.					
<b>Saufen</b> <i>drink</i>	sauffst, sauft	<b>soff</b>	<b>söffe</b>	—	<b>gesoffen</b>
<b>Saugen</b> <i>suck</i>	— —	<b>sog</b>	<b>söge</b>	—	<b>gesogen</b>
forms of New conj. occasional: sometimes confounded with <i>saugen</i> <i>suckle.</i>					
<b>Schaffen</b> <i>create</i>	— —	<b>schuf</b>	<b>schöfe</b>	—	<b>geschaffen</b>
generally of New conj. when meaning <i>be busy, or procure.</i>					
<b>Schallen</b> <i>sound</i>	— —	<b>scholl</b>	<b>schölle</b>	—	<b>geschollen</b>
<b>=scheien</b>	<b>=schieht</b>	<b>=schah</b>	<b>=schähe</b>	—	<b>=scheiden</b>
only in <i>geschehen</i> <i>happen</i> : used in third person alone.					
<b>Scheiden</b> <i>part</i>	— —	<b>schieb</b>	<b>schiebe</b>	—	<b>geschieden</b>
of New conj. when transitive, <i>disjoin.</i>					
<b>Scheinen</b> <i>appear</i>	— —	<b>schien</b>	<b>schiene</b>	—	<b>geschienen</b>
<b>Schelten</b> <i>scold</i>	<b>schiltst, schilt</b>	<b>schalt</b>	<b>schölte</b> <b>schälte</b>	<b>schilt</b>	<b>gescholten</b>
<b>Scheren</b> <i>shear</i>	<b>schierst, schiert</b>	<b>schor</b>	<b>schöre</b>	<b>schier</b>	<b>geschoren</b>
<b>Schieben</b> <i>shove</i>	— —	<b>schob</b>	<b>schöbe</b>	—	<b>geschoben</b>
<b>Schießen</b> <i>shoot</i>	(scheußest, scheußt)	<b>schuß</b>	<b>schöffe</b>	(scheuß)	<b>geschossen</b>
<b>Schinden</b> <i>flay</i>	— —	<b>schund</b>	<b>schünde</b>	—	<b>geschunden</b>
<b>Schlafen</b> <i>sleep</i>	<b>schläfst, schläft</b>	<b>schief</b>	<b>schließe</b>	—	<b>geschlafen</b>
<b>Schlagen</b> <i>strike</i>	<b>schlägst, schlägt</b>	<b>schlug</b>	<b>schläge</b>	—	<b>geschlagen</b>

Infinitive.	pres't ind'c. sing.	pret. indic.	p-ct. subj.	imper.	past part.
<b>Schleichen</b> <i>sneak</i>	— —	schlich	schliche	—	geschlichen
<b>Schleifen</b> <i>whet</i> in other senses than <i>whet</i> , s'arp n, properly of New conj.	— —	schliff	schliffe	—	geschliffen
<b>Schleihen</b> <i>slit</i>	— —	schliß	schliffe	—	geschliffen
<b>Schließen</b> <i>slip</i>	— —	schloß	schlösse	—	geschloffen
<b>Schließen</b> <i>shut</i>	(schleußest, schleußt)	schloß	schlösse (schleuß)	—	geschloffen
<b>Schlingen</b> <i>sling</i>	— —	schlang	schlänge	—	geschlungen
<b>Schmeißen</b> <i>smite</i>	— —	schmiß	schmitze	—	geschmissen
<b>Schmelzen</b> <i>me't</i>	schmilz(ef)t, schmilzt	schmolz	schmolze	schmilz	geschmolzen
usually and properly of New conj. when transitive.					
<b>Schnauben</b> <i>snort</i> (Schnieben)	— —	schnob	schnöbe	—	geschnoben
<b>Schneiden</b> <i>cut</i>	— —	schnitt	schnitte	—	geschnitten
<b>Schrauben</b> <i>screw</i>	— —	schrob	schrobe	—	geschroben
<b>Schrecken</b> <i>be afraid</i>	schrickst, schrickt	schrak	schraße	schrick	geschrocken
of New conj. as transitive, frighten.					
<b>Schreiben</b> <i>write</i>	— —	schrieb	schriebe	—	geschrieben
<b>Schreien</b> <i>cry</i>	— —	schrie	schree	—	geschrien
<b>Schreiten</b> <i>stride</i>	— —	schritt	schritte	—	geschritten
<b>Schwären</b> <i>suppurate</i>	(schwierst, schwiert)	schwor schwur	schwöre schwüre	—	geschworen
<b>Schweigen</b> <i>be silent</i>	— —	schwieg	schwiege	—	geschwiegen
regularly of New conj. as transitive, silence.					
<b>Schwellen</b> <i>sw ll</i>	schwillst, schwillt	schwell	schwölle	schwill	geschwollen
of New conj. as transitive.					
<b>Schwimmen</b> <i>swim</i>	— —	schwamm schwamm	schwämme schwämme	—	geschwommen
<b>Schwinden</b> <i>vanish</i>	— —	schwand schwund	schwände schwände	—	geschwunden
<b>Schwingen</b> <i>swing</i>	— —	schwang schwung	schwänge schwänge	—	geschwungen
schwingen furnish with wings is of the New conj.					
<b>Schwören</b> <i>sw ar</i>	— —	schwor schwur	schwüre schwüre	—	geschworen
<b>Sehen</b> <i>see</i>	siehst, sieht	sah	sähe	sieh	gesehen
<b>Sein</b> <i>be</i>	bin, bist, ist &c.	war	wäre	sei	gewesen
<b>Senden</b> <i>send</i>	— —	sandte sendete	sendete	—	gesandt gesendet
<b>Sieden</b> <i>boil</i>	— —	sott	siebete	—	gesotten
<b>Singen</b> <i>sing</i>	— —	sang	sänge	—	gesungen
<b>Sinken</b> <i>sink</i>	— —	sank	sänke	—	gesunken
<b>Sinnen</b> <i>think</i>	— —	sann	sönne sänne	—	gesonnen
<b>Sitzen</b> <i>sit</i>	— —	sah	säße	—	gesessen
<b>Sollen</b> <i>shall</i>	soll, sollst, soll	sollte	sollte	wanting	gesollt
<b>Speien</b> <i>spit</i>	— —	spie	spiee	—	gespieen
rarely of the New conj.					
<b>Spinnen</b> <i>spin</i>	— —	spann	spönnne spänne	—	gesponnen
<b>Spalten</b> <i>split</i>	— —	spliß	splisse	—	gesplissen
<b>Sprechen</b> <i>speak</i>	sprichst, spricht	sprach	spräche	sprich	gesprochen

Infinitive.	pres't indic. sing.	pret. indic.	pret subj.	imper.	past part.
<b>Sprechen</b> <i>sprout</i>	(spreuchst, spreuchst)	sprach	spreche	(spreuch)	gesprochen
<b>Springen</b> <i>spring</i>	— —	sprang	spränge	—	gesprungen
<b>Stechen</b> <i>prick</i>	stichst, sticht	stach	stäche	stich	gestochen
<b>Stechen</b> <i>stick</i> usually of New conj., especially when transitive.	stichst, sticht	stach	stäche	stich	gestochen
<b>Stehen</b> <i>stand</i>	— —	stand stund	stünde	—	gestanden
<b>Stehlen</b> <i>steal</i>	stichlſt, stiehlſt	stahl stohl	stöhle stähle	stiehl	gestohlen
<b>Steigen</b> <i>ascend</i>	— —	stieg	stiege	—	gestiegen
<b>Sterben</b> <i>die</i>	stirbst, stirbt	starb	stürbe stärbe	stirb	gestorben
<b>Stieben</b> <i>disperse</i>	— —	stob	stöbe	—	gestoben
<b>Stinken</b> <i>stink</i>	— —	stank (stunſt)	stänke stünke)	—	gestunken
<b>Stoßen</b> <i>push</i>	stöß(ſt), stößt	stieß	stieße	—	gestoßen
<b>Streichen</b> <i>stroke</i>	— —	strich	striche	—	gestrichen
<b>Streiten</b> <i>strive</i>	— —	stritt	stritte	—	gestritten
<b>Thun</b> <i>do</i> the pret. indic. thāt is common in dialectic German, especially as auxiliary.	— —	that	thäte	—	gethan
<b>Tragen</b> <i>carry</i>	trägst, trägt	trug	trüge	—	getragen
<b>Treffen</b> <i>hit</i>	triffst, trifft	traf	träfe	triff	getroffen
<b>Treiben</b> <i>drive</i>	— —	trieb	triebe	—	getrieben
<b>Treten</b> <i>tread</i>	trittst, tritt	trat	träte	tritt	getreten
<b>Triesen</b> <i>drip</i>	(treuſt, treuſt)	troff	tröffe	(treuſ)	getroffen
<b>Trinken</b> <i>drink</i>	— —	trank (trunſt)	tränke trünke)	—	getrunken
<b>Trügen</b> <i>deceive</i> (Triegen)	— —	trog	tröge	—	getrogen
<b>Wachsen</b> <i>grow</i>	wäch(ſe)ſt, wächst	wuchs	wüchse	—	gewachsen
<b>Wägen</b> <i>wigh</i> sometimes of New conj. ; compare <i>=wegen</i> and <i>wiegen</i> , which are the same word.	— —	wog	wöge	—	gewogen
<b>Waschen</b> <i>wash</i>	wāsch(e)ſt, wāschſt	wusch	wüſche	—	gewaschen
<b>Wegen</b> <i>weave</i>	— —	wob	wöbe	—	gewoben
<b>=wegen</b> only in <i>bewegen</i> , which is of New conj., except in the sense <i>induce</i> .	— —	=wog	=wöge	—	=wogen
<b>Weichen</b> <i>yield</i> of New conj. when meaning <i>soften</i> (as trans. or intrans.).	— —	wich	wiche	—	gewichen
<b>Weisen</b> <i>show</i>	— —	wies	wiese	—	gewiesen
<b>Wenden</b> <i>turn</i>	— —	wandte wendete	wendete	—	gewandt gewendet
<b>Werben</b> <i>sue</i>	wirbst, wirbt	warb	würbe wärbe	wirb	geworben
<b>Werden</b> <i>become</i>	wirkt, wird	ward etc.	würde	—	geworden
<b>Werfen</b> <i>throw</i>	wirfst, wirft	warf	würfe wärfe	wirf	geworfen
<b>Wiegen</b> <i>weigh</i> the same word with <i>wägen</i> and <i>=wegen</i> ; <i>wiegen</i> <i>rock</i> is of New conj.	— —	wog	wöge	—	gewogen
<b>Winden</b> <i>wind</i>	— —	wand	wände	—	gewunden

Infinitive.	pres't indic. sing.	pret. indic.	pret. subj.	imper.	past part.
<b>swinnen</b>	— —	<b>swann</b>	<b>swänne</b> <b>swönne</b>	—	<b>gewonnen</b>
only used in gewinnen win.					
<b>Wissen know</b>	weiß, weißt, weiß	wußte	wüßte	—	gewußt
<b>Wollen will</b>	will, willst, will	wollte	wollte	—	gewollt
<b>Zeihen accuse</b>	— —	zieh	ziehe	—	gezichen
<b>Ziehen draw</b>	(zeuchst, zeucht)	zog	zöge	(zeuch)	gezogen
<b>Zwingen force</b>	— —	zwang	zwänge	—	gezwungen

# EXERCISES.

## FIRST SERIES.

### EXERCISE 1.

ARTICLES AND NOUNS OF 1ST DECLENSION, 1ST CLASS.

[63-65 and 68-80.]

#### *Vocabulary.*

der Vater	<i>the father</i>	der Bruder	<i>the brother</i>
die Mutter	<i>the mother</i>	die Tochter	<i>the daughter</i>
der Lehrer	<i>the teacher</i>	der Schüler	<i>the pupil</i>
der Apfel	<i>the apple</i>	der Vogel	<i>the bird</i>
der Garten	<i>the garden</i>	das Zimmer	<i>the room</i>
das Messer	<i>the knife</i>	der Löffel	<i>the spoon</i>
das Kloster	<i>the cloister, monastery</i>	das Gebäude	<i>the building</i>
der Engländer	<i>the Englishman</i>	das Vöglein	<i>the little bird</i>
und	<i>and</i>	das Mädchen	<i>the girl</i>

(Present tense of the verb *haben* *have*, see 239.)

#### L

1. Der Bruder des Vaters.
2. Die Töchter der Mütter.
3. Einen Lehrer des Mädchens.
4. Die Gebäude des Klosters.
5. Die Vöglein des Mädchens.
6. Der Vater hat die Äpfel.
7. Hat der Schüler ein Messer?
8. Der Lehrer hat die Messer der Schüler.
9. Der Lehrer hat ein Zimmer.
10. Das Kloster hat einen Garten.
11. Die Mädchen haben die Messer und die Löffel.
12. Der Bruder hat den Apfel des Schülers und das Messer des Engländer.
13. Die Mutter hat einen Vogel.
14. Die Zimmer und Gärten des Klosters.
15. Hast du eine Tochter?
16. Ich habe einen Vater und eine Mutter.
17. Die Engländer haben Gärten und Gebäude.

## II.

1. A father's daughter. 2. To the Englishman's brother and father. 3. The mother's brother. 4. To the gardens of the monastery. 5. Of the birds of the garden. 6. Of the buildings of the monasteries. 7. The knife and spoon of the teacher. 8. The little bird of the pupil. 9. The Englishman's gardens and buildings. 10. The teachers of the monastery have pupils. 11. I have a brother and a father. 12. Have you the apple? 13. The pupil has the apple and the Englishman's knife. 14. The pupils have apples, and the teacher has the knife. 15. I have the girl's little birds. 16. We have the teacher's room. 17. The monastery has gardens and buildings. 18. We have brothers, mothers, and fathers. 19. Have they the spoons? 20. The Englishmen have the spoons and they have the knives.

## EXERCISE 2.

## NOUNS OF 1ST DECLENSION, 2ND CLASS.

[81-86.]

*Vocabulary.*

der Sohn	<i>the son</i>	der Freund	<i>the friend</i>
der Gast	<i>the guest</i>	die Magd	<i>the maid</i>
die Hand	<i>the hand</i>	der Fuß	<i>the foot</i>
der Arm	<i>the arm</i>	der Schuh	<i>the shoe</i>
der Baum	<i>the tree</i>	die Frucht	<i>the fruit</i>
das Thier [Tier]	<i>the animal</i>	der Theil [Teil]	<i>the part</i>
der Rock	<i>the coat</i>	die Stadt	<i>the city</i>
der Ring	<i>the ring</i>	der Ohrring	<i>the earring</i>
aber	<i>but</i>	in (prep. taking dative)	<i>in</i>

(Present tense of the verb *sein* be, see 239.)

## I.

1. Die Gäste sind Freunde der Mutter. 2. Der Sohn ist der Gast des Freundes. 3. Die Freunde des Lehrers sind Brüder. 4. Die Magd hat die Röcke der Freunde. 5. Die Thiere haben Füße, aber wir haben Hände, Arme und Füße. 6. Der Sohn des Freundes hat einen Theil des Apfels in der\* Hand. 7. Die Freunde sind in der Stadt. 8. Der Ring ist in dem Zim-

\* See 66.3.

mer der Mägde. 9. Die Ohrringe sind in den Händen der Töchter. 10. Der Garten des Vaters ist in der Stadt. 11. In dem Garten sind Bäume und Früchte. 12. Sind die Schuhe des Gastes in dem Zimmer? 13. Die Magd hat die Schuhe und Röcke in der Hand. 14. Bist du der Sohn des Freundes? 15. Ich bin die Magd des Lehrers. 17. Wir sind Freunde des Gastes und wir haben Freunde in der Stadt.

## II.

1. The fruits of the trees. 2. To the trees in the gardens. 3. To the teacher's friend. 4. Of the shoes of the maids. 5. The animal's feet. 6. The hands ; of the foot ; the arms and the hands. 7. A part of the fruit. 8. The guest of the teacher is the pupil's friend. 9. The son's friend is the father's guest. 10. The guests are in the garden. 11. In the garden (there) are animals and trees. 12. I am a friend of the guest. 13. The pupils' coats and shoes are in the maids' hands. 14. The maids have the daughter's room. 15. The daughter has the maid's rings and earrings. 16. Have the animals hands and feet? 17. The birds and the animals have feet, but we have hands, feet, and arms. 18. The trees are in the city's gardens. 19. Art thou the son's teacher? 20. I am a friend of the father. 21. Thou art in the garden, but we are in the mother's room. 22. The pupil's coat is in the teacher's room.

## EXERCISE 3.

## NOUNS OF 1ST DECLENSION, 3RD CLASS.

[87-90.]

*Vocabulary.*

der Mann	<i>the man</i>	das Weib	<i>the woman</i>
das Kind	<i>the child</i>	das Haus	<i>the house</i>
das Buch	<i>the book</i>	das Bild	<i>the picture</i>
das Feld	<i>the field</i>	das Thal	<i>the valley</i>
der Wald	<i>the forest</i>	das Kleid	<i>the dress</i>
das Dorf	<i>the village</i>	das Dach	<i>the roof</i>
das Land	<i>the land, country</i>	das Schloß	<i>the castle</i>
ein	<i>one</i>	zwei	<i>two</i>
drei	<i>three</i>	vier	<i>four</i>

(Present tense of the verb *geben* give, see 236.2.)



## I

1. Das Weib ist die Mutter der Kinder. 2. Der Mann gibt dem Kinde\* ein Buch. 3. Die Männer sind in dem Felde und die Weiber sind in den Häusern. 4. Das Haus des Vaters ist in dem Dorfe. 5. Das Bild des Hauses ist in dem Buche des Kindes. 6. Die Kinder des Dorfes sind im Walde. 7. Des Freundes Haus ist in dem Thale, aber das Schloß des Vaters ist in dem Walde. 8. Hast du die Bilder der Schlösser? 9. Ich gebe den Kindern die Bilder. 10. Hat der Mann ein Feld? 11. Die drei Felder des Mannes sind in dem Thale. 12. Wir geben dem Kinde das Kleid und die Schuhe. 13. Sie geben den Männern Bücher und Bilder. 14. Das Weib hat die Früchte. 15. Der Mann hat drei Kinder, zwei Söhne und eine Tochter.

## II

1. The castles and villages of the country. 2. To the roofs of the houses ; of the man's fields. 3. Of the men's clothes. 4. In the woods and to the valleys of the country. 5. Are the men in the village? 6. The women and children are in the village, but the men are in the fields. 7. Are the fields in the valley? 8. The fields are in the valleys. 9. I have three houses in the village and a castle in the forest. 10. Have ye a picture of the castle? 11. I have a picture of the village. 12. Givest thou a book to the child? 13. I give the children books and pictures. 14. The man gives the women a picture of the house in the valley. 15. We give the child two dresses and a book. 16. In the book are pictures of the castles of the country. 17. I have four children, three daughters and one son. 18. The friend's house is in the city, but the fields are in the village. 19. Art thou the child of the woman? 20. I am the friend of the woman. 21. The child's dress is in the woman's room. 22. The woman gives the child the dress and the shoes.

---

\* 222.Ia. † 65.65.

## EXERCISE 4.

## NOUNS OF THE 2ND DECLENSION.

[91-95.]

## Vocabulary.

der Fürst	<i>the prince</i>	die Fürstin	<i>the princess</i>
der Graf	<i>the count</i>	der Knabe	<i>the boy</i>
der Student	<i>the student</i>	der Offizier	<i>the officer</i>
der Gefelle	<i>the comrade</i>	der Preuße	<i>the Prussian</i>
der Franzose	<i>the Frenchman</i>	die Franzöfin	<i>the Frenchwoman</i>
der Herr	<i>the gentleman</i>	der Gatte	<i>the husband</i>
die Frau	<i>the woman, wife</i>	die Schwester	<i>the sister</i>
die Blume	<i>the flower</i>	die Uhr	<i>the watch</i>
	nicht	not	

(Possessive pronouns *mein mine*, *dein thine*, *sein his*, *unser our*, *euer your*, *ihr their or her*, declined like *der* : see 159.2.)

## I

1. Die Frau ist eine Franzöfin und ihr Gatte ist ein Preuße.  
 2. Die Söhne der Fürstinnen sind Offiziere. 3. Sind die Studenten deine Freunde? 4. Ich bin nicht der Freund des Studenten, aber er ist mein Gefelle. 5. Der Vater des Knaben ist ein Graf.  
 6. Der Graf gibt seinem Sohne eine Uhr. 7. Ich gebe meinen Schwestern zwei Uhren. 8. Haben die Frauen Blumen in ihren Händen? 9. Ich habe eine Blume in meiner Hand, aber die Frauen haben die Blumen der Knaben. 10. Ich habe die Bilder der Fürsten und der Fürstinnen des Landes. 11. Der Vater des Soldaten ist Offizier\*. 12. Er ist im Schlosse des Fürsten. 13. Die Fürsten und Grafen sind seine Freunde und Gefellen. 14. Meine Söhne sind die Schüler des Franzosen. 15. Die Franzosen sind nicht die Freunde der Preußen.

## II

1. The boy's father is a count and his mother is a princess. 2. My companions are the count's sons. 3. The students are Frenchmen, and their companions are Prussians. 4. My mother is a sister of the princess. 5. The gentleman's son is an officer\*. 6. He is a Prussian, but his

---

\* 66.8,

wife is a Frenchwoman. 7. The student gives his sisters books and flowers. 8. Has he your watch? 9. He has the officer's watch. 10. We are Frenchmen, but the Prussians are our friends and companions. 11. The student's friend is the officer's son. 12. The gentlemen are friends of the prince. 13. Are the women in your house? 14. They are not in my house, they are in their garden. 15. Our maids are Frenchwomen.

### EXERCISE 5.

#### NOUNS OF MIXED DECLENSION, PROPER NAMES, ETC.

[96-108.]

#### Vocabulary.

der Nachbar	<i>the neighbor</i>	der Vetter	<i>the cousin</i>
der Doctor	<i>the doctor</i>	der Professor	<i>the professor</i>
der Name	<i>the name</i>	das Studium	<i>the study</i>
die Geschichte	<i>the history</i>	Deutschland	<i>Germany</i>
Schmidt	<i>Smith</i>	Müller	<i>Miller</i>
Friedrich	<i>Frederick</i>	Karl	<i>Charles</i>
Sophie	<i>Sophy</i>	auch	<i>also</i>
ja	<i>yes</i>	nein	<i>no</i>
der Kaufmann	<i>the merchant</i>	die Kaufleute	<i>the merchants</i>

(Present tense of the verb *lieben* love, like, see 236.)

#### L

1. Liebst du deine Nachbarn? 2. Ich liebe die Kinder meines Nachbarn, aber ich liebe meinen Nachbar nicht. 3. Die Studenten lieben ihren Professor, aber sie lieben ihre Studien nicht. 4. Die Doctoren sind Freunde des Herrn Müller. 5. Der Name des Knaben ist Friedrich. 6. Ich liebe den Namen Friedrich nicht. 7. Der Vater Friedrichs ist ein Freund des Doctors. 8. Das Buch Karls ist eine Geschichte Deutschlands. 9. Herrn Müllers Haus ist in der Stadt. 10. Meine Vettern sind im Hause des Herrn Schmidt. 11. Hast du das Buch Sophiens? 12. Ja, und Sophie hat meine Bücher. 13. Unsere Freunde sind nicht Kaufleute, sie sind Professoren. 14. Die Namen der Professoren sind Schmidt und Müller.

## II.

1. Are your cousins merchants? 2. No, but my son is a merchant. 3. Mr. Miller's son has Frederick's book. 4. Frederick is in Mr. Smith's house. 5. Charles gives his brother a history of Germany. 6. Charles is in Germany with the professor's brother. 7. Does Charles love his studies? 8. He loves his studies and his professors. 9. My neighbor's name is Smith. 10. Sophy's father is my cousin, and Sophy is my cousin's daughter. 11. The doctor's sons are also doctors. 12. The names of his sons are Charles and Frederick. 13. Do you like the name of Charles? 14. I love Charles, but I do not love his name.

## EXERCISE 6.

## ADJECTIVES OF 1ST DECLENSION.

[114-122.]

*Vocabulary.*

schön	<i>beautiful</i>	roth [rot]	<i>red</i>
bunt	<i>gayly colored</i>	klein	<i>little, small</i>
frisch	<i>fresh</i>	arm	<i>poor</i>
neu	<i>new</i>	häßlich	<i>ugly</i>
gut	<i>good</i>	warm	<i>warm</i>
fleißig	<i>industrious</i>	lieb	<i>dear</i>
groß	<i>big</i>	glücklich	<i>happy</i>
grün	<i>green</i>	die Freude	<i>pleasure</i>
blau	<i>blue</i>	die Eltern	<i>the parents</i>
die Milch	<i>the milk</i>	die Leute	<i>the people</i>

## I.

1. Der Kaufmann hat schöne Äpfel und bunte Blumen. 2. Die Kinder lieben frische Milch. 3. Der Lehrer gibt den Schülern neue, schöne Bücher. 4. In den Büchern sind schöne, bunte Bilder. 5. Gute Kinder sind die Freude ihres Lehrers. 6. Sind die Kinder ihres Sohnes gut und fleißig? 7. In dem Garten sind große, grüne Bäume und blaue und rothe [rote] Blumen. 8. Ich habe blaue Blumen und du hast rothe [rote]. 9. Die Häuser armer Leute sind klein und häßlich. 10. Gute Frauen geben armen Kindern schöne, warme Kleider. 11. Die Eltern guter, fleißiger Knaben sind glücklich. 12. Liebes Kind, du bist arm, aber du bist glücklich. 13. Die Studenten haben rothe [rote] und blaue Röcke. 14. Deutschland hat große, schöne Städte.

## II

1. Good, industrious children are the joy of their parents. 2. The mother gives her children warm fresh milk. 3. In the garden are beautiful red apples and little blue flowers. 4. Poor little children have ugly dresses. 5. The professor's sons are big ugly boys. 6. The child is good and industrious. 7. My garden is large and beautiful. 8. I have blue and red flowers and big apples. 9. I give warm clothes and red apples to poor little children. 10. The trees of my garden are large and green, but my house is small and ugly. 11. In the town are beautiful large houses and green trees. 12. The teachers of industrious, good boys are happy. 13. Good teachers love their pupils and good pupils have happy teachers. 14. The merchants have gay new ribbons. 15. Dear friend, you have beautiful good daughters. 16. The cities of Germany are large and handsome. 17. My children have good books and gay pictures. 18. Have you fresh milk? 19. I have fresh warm milk. 20. Good teachers have good pupils.

## EXERCISE 7.

## ADJECTIVES OF 2ND DECLENSION.

[118-128.]

*Vocabulary.*

hoch	high	niedrig	low
alt	old	krank	sick
weiß	white	schwarz	black
edel	noble	reich	rich
barmherzig	charitable	unartig	naughty
träge	lazy	hübsch	pretty
golden	golden	silber	silver
das Brod	the bread	der Wein	the wine
die Tasse	the cup	sehr	very

(Dieser *this*, jener *that*, declined like *der*, see 165.)

## I

1. Dieser Baum ist sehr hoch. 2. Der hohe, schöne Baum ist in dem großen Garten meines reichen Nachbarn. 3. Diese guten,

fleißigen Kinder sind die Schüler des alten Lehrers. 4. Ich gebe diesem alten, kranken Manne guten, rothen Wein und weißes Brod. 5. Wir lieben das weiße Brod, aber wir haben nur schwarzes. 6. Ist das hübsche Kind unartig? 7. Dieses hübsche Mädchen ist unartig und träge, aber jene häßlichen Kinder sind gut und fleißig. 8. Der Graf ist ein edler Mann; er ist sehr reich und hat schöne, große Schlösser, aber er ist gut und barmherzig. 9. Seine gute Frau gibt den armen, kranken Kindern gutes Brod und warme Kleider. 10. Das Haus dieses alten Mannes ist ein niedriges, kleines Haus in einer großen, schönen Stadt. 11. Er ist sehr arm, aber er hat gute, fleißige Söhne. 12. Dieser gute Sohn gibt seiner armen Mutter ein neues, warmes Kleid und eine goldene Uhr. 13. Haben diese armen Leute silberne Löffel? 14. Nein, sie haben gute Löffel aber nicht silberne. 15. Der kleine Sohn jenes reichen Grafen hat seine frische Milch in einer silbernen Tasse.

## II.

1. I love these pretty little children. 2. The old father of these little children is a poor sick man. 3. My charitable mother gives the poor man warm clothes and good black bread. 4. Do you love this red wine? 5. No, but I love that good fresh milk. 6. My rich cousin has a very pretty house in the beautiful valley. 7. That high white castle is the castle of his noble friend. 8. We have a little low house, but our trees are high and beautiful and our new garden is very large. 9. This happy man has seven good handsome sons. 10. These pretty little girls are his daughters. 11. My rich neighbor has silver spoons and golden watches, but his children are naughty and lazy and he is not happy. 12. My little son has a silver cup and a silver spoon. 13. This pretty little girl gives her poor, sick brother her gay pictures and her pretty books. 14. My neighbor's trees are high and beautiful, but I have a beautiful high tree in my little garden. 15. I love the beautiful green forest and the gay flowers and the little birds, but I do not love this great ugly city.

## EXERCISE 8.

## ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES AND AS ADVERBS.

[129-130.]

*Vocabulary.*

das Auge	<i>the eye</i>	das Haar	<i>the hair</i>
das Dorf	<i>the village</i>	die Hütte	<i>the hut</i>
die Schleife	<i>the bow</i>	schlecht	<i>bad</i>
etwas	<i>something</i>	nichts	<i>nothing</i>
viel	<i>much, many</i>	ganz	<i>whole, quite</i>
dunkel	<i>dark</i>	hell	<i>bright</i>
link	<i>left</i>	recht	<i>right</i>
bläß	<i>pale</i>	nur	<i>only</i>

(Preterit tense of *haben* *have*, see 239.)

## I.

1. Der Arme ist der Bruder des Reichen. 2. Die Guten lieben das Gute, aber die Schlechten lieben nur das Schlechte. 3. Die Schöne hatte eine schöne rothe Rose in der schönen Hand. 4. Hastest du ein ganzes Haus? 5. Nein, aber ich hatte drei ganz schöne Zimmer im Hause meines Vaters. 6. Er gibt dem Kleinen etwas schönes, aber er gibt dem Alten nichts. 7. Diese Dame hat dunkles Haar und dunkelblaue Augen. 8. Hat sie ein dunkles oder ein helles Kleid? 9. Sie hat ein dunkelrothes [rotes] Kleid mit blaßblauen Schleifen. 10. Das Kind hatte ein ganz kleines Vöglein in der Linken. 11. Der Arme hat nur eine ganz niedrige Hütte, aber der Reiche hat ein schönes Schloß und viele Felder und Dörfer. 12. Wir hatten viele\* dunkelrothe [rote] Rosen, aber sie hatten nur weiße.

## II.

1. The rich and the poor are brothers. 2. I love good, but they love evil. 3. Has your little brother dark eyes? 4. No, he has bright blue eyes and quite golden hair. 5. His coat is dark green, but mine is quite black. 6. This whole great building is a monastery. 7. Had he anything pretty in his right hand? 8. He had nothing new; he had only a pale blue flower. 9. We had many dark and light

dresses, but this pretty girl had only wholly black dresses. 10. The beauty has black hair and dark blue eyes. 11. The little one is pretty, but he is very naughty. 12. The whole village is very poor and ugly, but this little hut is quite pretty. 13. We love the good and the beautiful.

## EXERCISE 9.

## COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE OF ADJECTIVES.

[133-142.]

*Vocabulary.*

England	<i>England</i>	Europa	<i>Europe</i>
Frankreich	<i>France</i>	die Schweiz	<i>Switzerland</i>
die Lilie	<i>the lily</i>	das Veilchen	<i>the violet</i>
klug	<i>clever</i>	stolz	<i>proud</i>
alt	<i>old</i>	jung	<i>young</i>
süß	<i>sweet</i>	oft	<i>often</i>
noch (adv.)	<i>still</i>	als	<i>than</i>

## I

1. Deine Blumen sind schön, aber meine Rosen sind noch schöner. 2. Die schönsten Rosen sind in unserem Garten. 3. Der Graf ist reicher als der Professor, aber der Kaufmann ist am allerreichsten. 4. Die Söhne des Grafen sind schöner und stolzer als meine Söhne, aber meine Söhne sind am besten und am klügsten. 5. Hat der Graf auch jüngere Söhne? 6. Er hat nur drei Söhne; der Älteste ist Offizier, der Jüngere ist Student, aber der Jüngste ist noch zu Hause. 7. Die Rose ist schöner als die Lilie, aber das Veilchen ist die schönste der Blumen. 8. Die Armen sind oft glücklicher als die Reichen, aber die Guten sind am allerglücklichsten. 9. Dieses Mädchen ist viel blasser als ihre Schwester. 10. Ja, sie ist krank, aber die kleine ist noch kränker. 11. Dieser Knabe ist höchst unartig, er ist viel schlechter als seine jüngeren Brüder. 12. Kleine Knaben sind oft artiger als ältere. 13. Ich liebe meine Freunde sehr, aber ich liebe am meisten meine Brüder und meine Eltern. 14. Frankreich ist kleiner als Deutschland, aber die Schweiz ist das kleinste Land Europa's. 15. Frankreich und Deutschland sind große und reiche Länder, aber England ist am allerreichsten.



## II

1. This child is larger than his brother, but Charles is the largest. 2. Charles is better than the older pupils, but Frederick is the most industrious of the boys. 3. These younger boys are cleverer than the older ones. 4. The reddest apples are the prettiest, but these green apples are sweeter than the red ones. 5. These flowers are very bright and pretty. 6. Yes; but the pale red roses are prettier, and these blue violets are the prettiest flowers in my garden. 7. The rose is the most beautiful flower, the lily is the proudest; but the violet is the prettiest of all. 8. England is a smaller country than Germany, but the Englishmen are prouder and richer than the Germans. 9. Is Switzerland larger than England? 10. No; Switzerland is still smaller than England. 11. These poor children are sick and unhappy, but the smallest one is the most unhappy. 12. She is poorer and sicker than her brother, and she is also the youngest. 13. The biggest of these girls is ugly; but the younger is prettier, and the youngest is the prettiest. 14. She is quite beautiful. 15. We love our friends more than our teachers. 16. I love the rose more than the lily, but I love the violet most.

## EXERCISE 10.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

[149-156.]

*Vocabulary.*

mit (prep. with dative) *with*  
das Stück *the piece*

von (prep. with dative) *cf, from*  
die Flasche *the bottle*

(Preterit tense of *sein* *be*, 239.2.)

## I

1. Liebt diese Frau ihre Kinder? 2. Ja, sie liebt sie und sie lieben sie. 3. Sie lieben Ihre Söhne, aber sie lieben Sie nicht. 4. Gibt Ihnen Ihr Bruder dieß Buch? 5. Nein, meine Schwester gibt es mir. 6. Hatte er die Feder? 7. Er hatte sie in der Hand. 8. Warst du im Garten? 9. Ich war mit ihm im Garten. 10. Haben Sie die Bilder von Ihren Kindern in diesem Buche? 11. Ich habe sie darin. 12. Ich gebe sie Ihnen. 13. Karl, du bist

ein schlechter Knabe, aber Sophie und Friedrich, ihr seid gute Kinder. 14. Wir sind Schwestern und wir lieben uns. 15. Ich gebe euch diese zwei Äpfel. 16. Sind Sie sein Bruder? 17. Ich bin es. 18. Hastest du den Löffel? 19. Ich hatte ihn in der rechten Hand. 20. Gibt er dir ein Stück von seinem Brode? 21. Er gibt mir ein Stück davon und auch eine Flasche Wein\*. 22. Das Mädchen war mit mir in der Stadt, und ihr Bruder war auch mit uns. 23. Er war glücklich, und wir waren es auch. 24. Es waren viele Leute in der Stadt.

## II.

1. Dost thou love me, my brother? 2. I love thee and thou lovest me. 3. Does his sister give him the flowers? 4. She gives them to him. 5. Was your sister in the garden too? 6. She was with me in the garden. 7. Children, were you good and industrious? 8. We were so. 9. I have a picture of you in my book. 10. No, it is not in it; it is in my hand. 11. This picture is not a picture of me, it is a picture of my mother. 12. There were many pupils in the school. 13. Were you a pupil of the old man? 14. I was. 15. I have a picture of the Englishman in my room. 16. I was in your room, but it was not in it. 17. Have you the apple? 18. I have it and a piece of bread also. 19. Do you love her or me? 20. I love her, but I do not love you. 21. Your friends love you and you love them, but I do not love you. 22. I have your pen and I give it to you. 23. Were these boys with you in the monastery? 24. They were with us, but we do not love them. 25. Have you the bottle of wine in your hand? 26. I have it in it. 27. That girl has my ring. 28. No, she hasn't it; your brother has it.

## EXERCISE 11.

## POSSESSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

[157-171.]

*Vocabulary.*

der Oheim	<i>the uncle</i>	der Vormund	<i>the guardian</i>
die Tante	<i>the aunt</i>	das Theater	<i>the theatre</i>
das Pferd	<i>the horse</i>	der Hund	<i>the dog</i>
der Brief	<i>the letter</i>	das Spiel	<i>the game</i>

\* 216.5a.

## I

1. Sind die Männer Freunde von Ihnen? 2. Der ist mein Oheim, und jener ist mein Vormund. 3. Sind diese zwei Pferde die seinigen? 4. Das ist mein Pferd, aber jenes ist ein Pferd des Herrn Schmidt. 5. Sein Pferd ist größer als das meinige, aber das Ihrige ist am größten. 6. Waren Sie in der Stadt? 7. Ich war in Berlin mit dem Grafen und einem Freunde desselben. 8. Seine Freunde sind nicht die meinigen. 9. Wir waren im Theater mit seiner Tante und deren hübscher Tochter. 10. Das ist ein schönes Theater. 11. Unsere Kinder und die unseres Nachbarn sind Schüler jenes Mannes. 12. Meine Kinder sind die Freunde der seinigen. 13. Sie sind in derselben Schule und haben immer dieselben Bücher und dieselben Studien. 14. Mein Hund und der meines Oheims waren mit mir im Walde. 15. Meiner war ganz unartig, aber der seinige ist ein hübscher, artiger Hund. 16. Sind die zwei Briefe dein? 17. Der ist mein, aber jener ist der deinige. 18. Das sind die Briefe meines Oheims.

## II

1. Were you in Berlin with your brother? 2. I was in Berlin with my friends and those of my brother. 3. Our friends are always the same. 4. I love his and he loves mine. 5. Is this your dog or that of your uncle? 6. My uncle's dog is much handsomer than that. 7. Had you your horses or your guardian's? 8. We had my guardian's, his are much better than ours. 9. This is my horse, but that is my brother's. 10. This boy was in the forest with our neighbor and his son. 11. He (that one) is a pretty little boy. 12. Have you my letter or my aunt's? 13. I have our letter and yours and hers. 14. I give you them. 15. That is his, but I have also a letter from my mother. 16. I have a picture of her (the same). 17. I do not like dogs. 18. Yours are bad, but your uncle's are the worst.

## EXERCISE 12.

## INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

[172-195.]

## Vocabulary.

gestern	<i>yesterday</i>	heute	<i>to-day</i>
jetzt	<i>now</i>	berühmt	<i>famous</i>
der Maler	<i>the painter</i>	das Geld	<i>the money</i>
der Kaiser	<i>the Emperor</i>	das Rathhaus [Rathaus]	<i>the town-hall</i>
Gott	<i>God</i>	das Portrait	<i>the portrait</i>

## I

1. Wer ist dieser Mann? 2. Er ist derselbe,\* der gestern hier war. 3. Wem geben Sie den Brief, den Sie in der Hand haben? 4. Ich gebe ihn demjenigen, den ich am meisten liebe. 5. Wer kein Geld hat, ist glücklicher als derjenige, der keine Freunde hat. 6. Der, der mich nicht liebt, ist nicht mein Freund. 7. Was für ein Mann ist sein Gast? 8. Er ist ein junger Maler, dessen Bilder sehr berühmt sind. 9. Sind seine Bilder schöner als die des alten Malers, der gestern hier war? 10. Der ist auch ein berühmter Maler, aber der jüngere ist am berühmtesten. 11. Welche Bilder sind von Ihrem Freunde? 12. Das Portrait des Kaisers, welches im Rathhaus ist, ist von ihm. 13. Welch' ein schönes Bild! 14. Wessen sind diese Pferde? 15. Es sind die Pferde des jungen Offiziers, der jetzt in unserem Hause ist. 16. Wer solche Pferde hat, ist ein Glücklicher. 17. Wer gibt uns alles, was wir haben? 18. Der gute Gott gibt uns alles, was wir haben. 19. Gibt dein Vormund dir etwas schönes? 20. Er gibt mir immer viele schöne Sachen, aber er gibt mir heute nichts Neues.

## II

1. From whom is this letter? 2. The letter which you have in your hand is from my sister who is now in Germany. 3. In which city is she? 4. She is in the same city in which I was. 5. Whom do you love? 6. I love those who love me and who are my friends. 7. He who

has no friends is unhappy. 8. Whose horses have you? 9. I have the horses of my uncle who is now sick. 10. He is at the house of the doctor whose best friend he is. 11. What sort of pictures have you in your book? 12. That is a picture of the painter whose portraits are so famous, and this is a picture of our good Emperor whom we love so much. 13. What a pretty book! 14. Whoever has money gives something to the poor who have nothing. 15. This good man gives all he has to the poor and sick. 16. What does he give them? 17. He gives them warm clothes which rich people give to him. 18. He who has no friends is more unhappy than he who has no money. 19. Those who do not love me are not my friends. 20. Whose children are we? 21. We are the children of God, who loves us and who gives us all we have. 22. Some have much money and some have no money. 23. Several of my friends were in our house to-day. 24. We have many fine pictures in our town-hall, but the portrait of the Emperor is the finest.

## EXERCISE 13.

## CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMERALS.

[196-203.]

*Vocabulary.*

der Tag	<i>the day</i>	der Monat	<i>the month</i>
das Jahr	<i>the year</i>	die Stunde	<i>the hour</i>
die Minute	<i>the minute</i>	der Geburtstag	<i>the birthday</i>
die Woche	<i>the week</i>	die Bibliothek	<i>the library</i>
Januar	<i>January</i>	Februar	<i>February</i>
März	<i>March</i>	April	<i>April</i>
Mai	<i>May</i>	Juni	<i>June</i>
Juli	<i>July</i>	August	<i>August</i>
September	<i>September</i>	October	<i>October</i>
November	<i>November</i>	December	<i>December</i>
die Mark	<i>mark (coin worth 24 cts.)</i>		

## I

1. Heute ist der fünf und zwanzigste März, achtzehn hundert sieben und achtzig. 2. Das Jahr hat 12 Monate, jeder Monat

hat 30 oder 31 Tage, jeder Tag hat 24 Stunden, und jede Stunde hat 60 Minuten. 3. März ist der dritte Monat des Jahres. 4. Gestern war der 16te Tag des 9ten Monats des 25ten Jahres meines Lebens. 5. Mein Geburtstag ist den 9ten Februar, der-deine ist den 29ten August. 6. Wie viele Bücher haben Sie in Ihrer Bibliothek? 7. Ich habe ungefähr 2450 Bücher, aber mein Oheim hat viel Tausend Bücher in seiner Bibliothek. 8. Wir sind drei Brüder, Söhne eines Vaters, der erste ist 20 Jahre alt, der 2te ist 18 Jahre alt, der dritte ist in seinem 16ten Jahre. 9. Wir waren den 25ten Juli 1878 mit unseren 10 Kindern in Berlin. 10. Die drei ältesten der Kinder sind Knaben, das vierte und fünfte sind Mädchen, und die fünf anderen sind auch Söhne. 11. Der Reiche hat 1,000,000 Mark,\* aber sein armer Nachbar hat kein Geld.

## II.

1. Yesterday was the 16th of July, 1887. 2. Was yesterday your birthday? 3. No, my birthday is the 19th of November, and my sister's birthday is the 6th of February. 4. I have three sisters, the first is 25 years old, the second is 22, and the third is in her 20th year. 5. June is the 6th month of the year. 6. The year has 12 months, 52 weeks, and 365 days. 7. The Emperor's birthday was the 22nd of March. 8. He is 90 years old, and his son is 48. 9. In the city's library are 52,973 books. 10. Have you much money? I had many thousand marks, but now I have only 57 marks. 11. My guardian is very rich; he has 5,787,320 marks. 12. Whose are these seven children? 13. Two are my brother's children, and the other five are mine. 14. July 4th, 1776. 15. Oct. 17th, 1519.

## EXERCISE 14.

## SIMPLE FORMS OF VERBS.

[231-237.]

*Vocabulary.*

like lieben conjugate :  
 wohnen      dwell, live  
 malen      paint

like geben conjugate :  
 sehen      see  
 lesen      read

\* 211.2.

laufen      *buy*  
wünschen    *wish, want*  
weil (conj.), *because*

früher      *formerly*  
der Hut     *the hat*  
als (conj.), *when*

(See 386.4b, 434.)

## I

1. Wer gab Ihnen das Buch? 2. Ich gab es ihm, weil ich ihn liebte. 3. Wo wohnen Ihre Freunde? 4. Sie wohnten früher in der Stadt, aber sie wohnen jetzt hier im Walde. 5. Was kaufte die Frau, als der Kaufmann hier war? 6. Sie kaufte Röcke und Hüte für ihre Kinder. 7. Was für ein Buch lesen Sie? 8. Er liest eine Geschichte von Deutschland. 9. Gib sie mir, ich lese sie auch. 10. Was sagte er, als Sie es ihm gaben? 11. Er sagte nichts, weil ich ihn nicht sah. 12. Was siehst du, geliebtes Kind? 13. Ich sehe zwei schön gemalte Bilder. 14. Wer malte das Portrait von Ihrem Vater? 15. Der junge Maler, der in unserem Hause wohnt, malte es. 16. Sage mir was du wünschst, und ich gebe es dir. 17. Gib mir nichts, ich habe alles was ich wünsche. 18. Was für ein Bild malten Sie? 19. Ich malte ein Bild von dem Hause worin ich wohne.

## II

1. Love me because I love you. 2. Why did you give her your picture? 3. I gave it to her because she loved me. 4. What did you say to the merchant when you saw him? 5. We bought books and pictures. 6. What sort of books are you reading? 7. I am reading the history which my uncle gave me. 8. Read it and give it to me. 9. This painter lived seven years in Berlin, but now he lives in our city. 10. He paints very beautiful pictures. 11. He painted the portrait of the Emperor which you saw in Berlin. 12. This rich man bought the picture which I saw. 13. We saw the Emperor the 15th of February 1879, when we were in Berlin. 14. What did he want? 15. He wanted nothing more, he bought all he wanted. 16. I am cold because I have no hat. 17. Buy a hat when the merchant is here. 18. I do not buy a hat because I have no money. 19. Give

me money. 20. I have three loved and loving daughters. 21. Thou mayest love, he may live, you might paint, he might see, we may read, give, he might buy, we might see, you may paint.

## EXERCISE 15.

## SIMPLE AND COMPOUND FORMS OF THE AUXILIARIES.

[238-244.]

*Vocabulary.*

der General	<i>the general</i>	der Soldat	<i>the soldier</i>
der Frühling	<i>the spring</i>	der Herbst	<i>autumn</i>
der Sommer	<i>summer</i>	der Winter	<i>winter</i>
die Jahreszeit	<i>the season</i>	das Wetter	<i>the weather</i>
kalt	<i>cold</i>	heiß	<i>hot</i>
kühl	<i>cool</i>	zufrieden	<i>contented</i>
tot [tot]	<i>dead</i>	wenn, conj.	<i>if, when</i>
zu, adv.	<i>too</i>	zu, prep. (with dative or infin.)	<i>to</i>

## I

1. Diese Kinder wurden krank, weil sie keine warmen Kleider hatten. 2. Das Wetter wird jetzt kühler und die Kinder werden gesund. 3. Im Sommer ist das Wetter sehr heiß, aber im Herbst wird es kühler, und im Winter ist es am allerkältesten. 4. Der Frühling ist sehr schön gewesen, aber der Sommer ist die schönste Jahreszeit. 5. Warum ist der alte Mann so berühmt? 6. Er ist berühmt, weil er ein großer General gewesen ist. 7. Ich wäre\* auch Soldat geworden, wenn† ich nicht krank gewesen wäre. 8. Der arme Knabe ward immer kränker, und er ist jetzt tot [tot]. 9. Ich habe viele Freunde gehabt, aber du bist mein bester Freund. 10. Der alte Maler hat viele Freunde und Bekannte gehabt, als er reich und berühmt war. 11. Jetzt hat er keine Freunde, weil er arm geworden ist. 12. Es ist gut reich zu sein, aber es ist besser gute Freunde zu haben. 13. Sei gut und du wirst glücklich sein. 14. Du bist klein, mein Kind, aber du wirst jeden Tag größer. 15. Der Vater des Knaben ist ein reicher Mann gewesen, und jener wird viel Geld haben, wenn er älter ist. 16. Sie werden morgen sechs Monate in Berlin gewesen sein.

---

\* 332.1. † 386.46. 434.



## II.

1. You were, they became, she might have, we had, they might become, we may have been, had you had? they had become, we shall be, we should have had, you shall have been, he shall be, she had had, I have been, thou mightest have been, we may have had, to have had, to have been, to have become. 2. Be diligent, become good, have all that you want. 3. It becomes warmer in the spring. 4. We were too hot in summer\* and we are too cold in winter. 5. We have had beautiful weather to-day, but to-morrow will be more beautiful. 6. If I were rich, I should be happy. 7. Be diligent and good, and you will become rich and happy. 8. I have been very happy, but I am become poor and old, and I have no friends. 9. I shall have been happy if you have been my friend. 10. Why did this man become so rich? 11. He has been a poor soldier, but he became a famous general. 12. His sons will also be soldiers when they are older. 13. He would have been happier if he had had a son. 14. It is good to be a famous general, but it is better to be a good man. 15. It is good to have money, but it is better to have good friends. 16. The children would be happy if they had warm clothes. 17. The weather becomes warmer every day.

## EXERCISE 16.

## VERBS OF THE NEW CONJUGATION.

[245-250.]

*Vocabulary.*

lehren	<i>teach</i>	lernen	<i>learn</i>
schicken	<i>send</i>	spielen	<i>play</i>
reden	<i>talk</i>	hören	<i>hear</i>
sagen	<i>say</i>	loben	<i>praise</i>
leben	<i>live</i>	reisen	<i>journey, go by travelling</i>
arbeiten	<i>work</i>	zeigen	<i>show</i>
erzählen	<i>tell</i>	bringen	<i>bring</i>
kennen	<i>know (be acquainted with)</i>	morgen	<i>to-morrow</i>
dort	<i>there, yonder</i>	lange, adv.	<i>long</i>

\* 66.4a.

## I

1. Haben die Kinder gut gearbeitet? 2. Der Lehrer lobt sie, weil sie gut arbeiten. 3. Er hat sie alles gelehrt was sie gelernt haben. 4. Ich lobe ihn, weil er die Kinder so vieles gelehrt hat. 5. Die Kinder werden im Garten spielen, wenn sie zwei Stunden gearbeitet haben. 6. Sage mir, was dir Herr Schmidt gesagt hat. 7. Ich redete lange mit ihm, er erzählte mir von seinem Vetter, der nach Amerika gereist ist. 8. Der reiste nach Amerika, weil er so arm war, aber er hat viel gearbeitet, und er ist jetzt reich geworden. 9. Er hat ein großes Haus gekauft und wird in Amerika leben. 10. Er hat seinem Vetter ein Bild davon geschickt, welches er mir gezeigt hat. 11. Er hätte es dir gezeigt, wenn du dort gewesen wärest. 12. Hörten Sie was der Professor sagte? 13. Er hat die Bilder gelobt, die ich ihm gezeigt habe. 14. Er liebt auch die schönen Bilder, und hat viele davon gesehen, als er nach Paris reiste. 15. Zeigen Sie ihm auch meine Bücher, und sagen Sie mir, was er davon denkt. 16. Er hätte die Bücher gelobt, wenn er sie gesehen hätte. 17. Ich kenne den Professor nicht. 18. Was brachte er dir gestern? 19. Er hat mir nichts gebracht, aber er wird mir morgen etwas schönes bringen. 20. Er kannte meine Eltern, als sie in Berlin lebten.

## II

1. What did you buy when you were in the city? 2. I bought books and sent them to my uncle. 3. Have you read the books which you bought? 4. I had read many of the books, and I shall have read them all. 5. Did the professor teach you much? 6. He taught me all that I have learned. 7. Have you talked with him? 8. No, but I heard all he said. 9. The professor had travelled much and he bought many books and pictures. 10. He has showed me his whole library, and he told me where he bought the books. 11. He would not have journeyed to Paris if he had not been rich. 12. Did you hear what the children said when they were playing in the garden? 13. They had played in the garden, but they were working when I was in the garden. 14. Show them the pictures

which your brother brought you. 15. When they have worked two hours I will show them the pictures. 16. He told the children a story, and showed them pictures of the country in which she had lived. 17. Tell me with whom you have talked. 18. We were talking with Mr. Smith, but he said nothing. 19. I know him, but I do not like him. 20. It is better to work than to talk. 21. I shall bring you a new book to-morrow.

### EXERCISE 17.

#### MODAL AUXILIARIES.

[251-260.]

#### I.

1. Willst du nach Paris? 2. Ich möchte nach Paris reisen, aber ich kann es nicht. 3. Wir konnten nicht nach Paris, weil wir nach Berlin haben reisen müssen. 4. Ich mag nicht allein reisen, aber ich werde es jetzt müssen. 5. Was hat er dem Manne gesagt? 6. Er durfte nicht mit ihm reden, weil er ein schlechter Mann sein soll. 7. Ich sollte mit ihm reden, aber ich habe es nicht gewollt. 8. Er soll noch hier sein, man will ihn gesehen haben. 9. Können die Kinder Deutsch? 10. Ich habe es ihnen gelehrt, aber sie mögen es nicht. 11. Sie müssen arbeiten, wenn sie lernen wollen. 12. Man kann alles was man will. 13. Das Mädchen hat nicht spielen können, weil es hat arbeiten müssen. 14. Die Kinder dürfen nicht reden, sie sollen arbeiten. 15. Darf ich spielen? 16. Nein, mein Kind, du sollst jetzt arbeiten, aber du wirst später spielen können. 17. Er mußte nicht was er uns sagen sollte. 18. Ich soll das Buch lesen und ich mag es nicht. 19. Wir mußten die schönen Äpfel kaufen, als der Kaufmann sie mir zeigte.

#### II.

1. Why do you go to Berlin? 2. I am obliged to go to Berlin, but I should like to go to Paris. 3. I do not like to travel. 4. These poor children cannot learn anything, because they have to work. 5. They want to learn German,

but they cannot. 6. We should like to give them some money. 7. This boy is said to be very lazy; he is not to play in the garden, because he was not willing to work. 8. He played when he should have worked, and he must now work when he might have played. 9. Do they know what he said? 10. They do not know it, because they could not hear him. 11. We had to live in the town, but we shall now be able to live here. 12. I am to show you the book which you are to read. 13. May I show it to the children? 14. No, you must not show it to them, because they ought not to see it. 15. I wanted to show it to him, because he knows German. 16. He would have been able to read it. 17. You ought not to have read the book. 18. I could not but read it, it was so pretty. 19. One must not read everything that one wishes. 20. The child claims to have read the book, but she could not (do it). 21. Do you know what she wanted to say to him? 22. I know it, but I may not say it to you. 23. Children, you must be very industrious. 24. You do not like to learn, but you will be obliged (to do it).

## EXERCISE 18.

## VERBS OF THE OLD CONJUGATION.

[261-273.]

*Vocabulary.*

laufen	<i>run</i>	fallen	<i>fall</i>
kommen	<i>come</i>	gehen	<i>go</i>
sprechen	<i>speak</i>	rufen	<i>call</i>
brechen	<i>break</i>	binden	<i>bind</i>
trinken	<i>drink</i>	finden	<i>find</i>
singen	<i>sing</i>	beißen	<i>bite</i>
genug	<i>enough</i>	nie	<i>never</i>
der Teller	<i>the plate</i>	das Lied	<i>the song</i>

## I

1. Was für Lieder haben Sie gesungen? 2. Wir sangen die Lieder, die wir in diesem alten Buche gefunden haben. 3. Warum singen Ihre Schwestern nicht? 4. Sie sind noch nicht gekommen, und sie können nicht singen. 5. Warum lief das Kind, als wir es

sahen? 6. Es ist gelaufen, weil der Hund es gebissen hat. 7. Werden Sie den Hund nicht schlagen? 8. Nein, er biß das Kind, weil es ihn schlug. 9. Er beißt nur die Kinder, welche ihn geschlagen haben. 10. Rufen Sie den Knaben und binden sie ihm die Hand, die der Hund gebissen hat. 11. Mein Kind, was hast du gethan? 12. Ich habe den Teller gebrochen, den mir die Schwester gab. 13. Wie hast du ihn gebrochen? 14. Ich fiel, und der Teller brach. 15. Du wärest nicht gefallen, wenn du nicht gelaufen hättest. 16. Warum kamen Sie nicht, als ich Sie rief? 17. Ich sprach mit meinem Vetter und konnte nicht kommen. 18. Er kommt nie, wenn man ihn ruft. 19. Fand deine Schwester ihre Tante, als sie nach Berlin ging? 20. Sie ist nicht nach Berlin gegangen, aber die Tante wird zu uns kommen.

## II

1. Have you called the dog? 2. I called him, but he did not come. 3. Why do you call him? 4. I am going to strike him, because he has bitten the little girl. 5. She fell down and he bit her. 6. Does he always bite the children? 7. Yes, he is a bad dog; I have not beaten him enough. 8. The boys fell down when they were going to school. 9. They fell because they always run. 10. Children, do not run. 11. Where are the plates? 12. The maids have broken them. 13. Plates always break when they fall. 14. Have you found your knife? 15. I found it in your room, but now I have broken it. 16. The little boys cannot sing, because they cannot find their books. 17. Do they sing well? 18. The little one sings very beautifully. 19. The teacher gave her this book when she could not find hers, and she sang with the children. 20. I should like to drink some milk, but I find nothing. 21. I will call the maid. 22. Sophy, find some fresh milk. 23. The children have drunk the milk, but I have found some good red wine. 24. He drank the wine, but he ought not to have drunk it. 25. Call that man; I want to speak with him. 26. I have spoken with him, but he will not come. 27. I will go with you, and I will speak with him when you have found him. 28. Dear child, sing me a pretty song.

## EXERCISE 19.

## PREPOSITIONS.

[371-378.]

*Vocabulary.*

setzen	<i>set</i>	sitzen	<i>sit</i>
legen	<i>lay</i>	liegen	<i>lie</i>
schreiben	<i>write</i>	springen	<i>spring</i>
essen	<i>eat</i>	die Brücke	<i>the bridge</i>
der Bach	<i>the brook</i>	die Kirche	<i>the church</i>
der Pfarrer	<i>the pastor</i>	der Nachmittag	<i>the afternoon</i>
das Mittagessen	<i>the dinner</i>		

## I.

1. Wo sind die Bücher, von denen wir sprachen? 2. Sie liegen auf dem Tische in meinem Zimmer. 3. Gehen Sie in das Zimmer, und legen Sie die Briefe auf den Tisch neben die Bücher. 4. Wir lagen unter den Bäumen in meinem Garten und sprachen von unseren Freunden. 5. Sie kamen in den Garten, als wir von ihnen sprachen. 6. Die Magd brachte einen Tisch in den Garten und setzte ihn unter die Bäume. 7. Sie setzte unser Mittagessen darauf, und wir saßen um den Tisch und aßen davon. 8. Die Knaben liefen durch den Wald und sprangen über den Bach. 9. Es war keine Brücke über dem Bache. 10. Unweit des Baches steht eine kleine Hütte. 11. Ich gehe oft nach der Hütte und bringe mein Mittagessen den armen Leuten, die dort wohnen. 12. An wen schreibst du? 13. Ich schreibe an den Pfarrer, der in der Stadt wohnt. 14. Du sollst den Brief in die Stadt bringen, und ihn dem Pfarrer geben. 15. Wo wohnt er? 16. Er wohnt jenseits der Stadt, der großen Kirche gegenüber. 17. Wir sind gestern trotz des heißen Wetters in die Kirche gegangen. 18. Es war sehr heiß, als wir in der Kirche waren; aber während des Mittags ist es kühl geworden. 19. Nach dem Mittagessen werden wir nach dem Walde außerhalb der Stadt gehen. 20. Wir werden binnen einer Stunde gehen.

## II.

1. Come into the wood with me. 2. Why do you go into the wood? 3. We will lie under the trees, and I will read

the book of which we were speaking. 4. The pastor left the book in his room. 5. Go into his house, you will find it on the table. 6. I stood on the bridge over the brook, and the children played around me. 7. The hut of this poor man stood outside of the city, not far from the bridge. 8. Do you often go to church? 9. I go to church every Sunday\*, but during the summer I do not go. 10. I cannot go on account of the hot weather. 11. Do you know the Pastor of this church? 12. He lives opposite to me, and he will come after dinner. 13. Set the apples on the table, and lay the plates and the knives beside me. 14. I will lay an apple on your plate. 15. Did you go into his room? 16. Yes, he was sitting at his table and was writing a letter to his mother. 17. I laid the books beside him and went out of the room. 18. I must buy a warm coat on account of the cold weather. 19. We have had very hot weather during this week.

## EXERCISE 20.

## PASSIVE, REFLEXIVE, AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

[274-295.]

*Vocabulary.*

sich freuen	rejoice	sich fürchten	be afraid
regnen	rain	donnern	thunder
hungern	be hungry	dürsten	thirst
sich schämen	be ashamed	töbten [töten]	kill
tadeln	blame	tragen	carry
der Morgen	the morning	der Abend	the evening
die Post	the post	die Aufgabe	the task
vor, prep.	before, for, on account of	der Diener	the servant

## I.

1. Warum wird der Knabe gelobt? 2. Er wird gelobt, weil seine Aufgabe so gut geschrieben ist. 3. Seine Aufgaben werden immer gut geschrieben, aber die der anderen Knaben werden gewöhnlich sehr schlecht geschrieben. 4. Sie fürchten sich vor

\* 230.2.

ihrem Lehrer, denn sie sind immer von ihm getadelt worden. 5. Ich möchte den Brief lesen, den du geschrieben hast. 6. Er ist schon nach der Post getragen worden. 7. Wir wollten in die Stadt gehen, aber es regnete und donnerte den ganzen Nachmittag\*. 8. Fürchten Sie sich vor dem Donner? 9. Nein, aber ich freue mich, weil es nicht mehr regnet. 10. Mich hungert 's; gib mir ein Stück Brod. 11. Ich schäme mich, weil ich kein gutes Brod habe. 12. Gibt es keinen Wein im Hause? 13. Hier wird nicht getrunken. 14. Setzen Sie sich auf diesen Stuhl, man wird Ihnen etwas Milch geben. 15. Mein kleiner Hund ist von einem schlechten Knaben getödtet [getötet] worden. 16. Ist er vom Hunde gebissen worden? 17. Nein, aber er hat sich immer vor den Hunden gefürchtet. 18. Er wird von seinem Vater getadelt werden, weil er den Hund getödtet [getötet] hat. 19. Gestern wurde in der Kirche gesungen. 20. Wärest du dort gewesen, du hättest ein neues Lied gehört, welches von allen gelobt worden ist. 21. Mir war nicht ganz wohl, ich durfte nicht in die Kirche gehen. 22. Es freut mich, Sie zu sehen. 23. Dieser Brief ist von ihm geschrieben worden und wurde mir von seinem Diener gebracht.

## II.

1. Has the letter been carried to the post? 2. It has not yet been written, but it will be carried into the city this afternoon. 3. The servant was blamed because the plates were broken. 4. We were very hungry, but nothing was given us. 5. We rejoiced when the dinner was set upon the table by the servant. 6. Seat yourself and eat. 7. This boy is ashamed because he has eaten so much, but we are glad of it. 8. How was the child killed? 9. He was bitten by his dog. 10. I was very much afraid when I saw the big dog with the child. 11. Are you not well? 12. I always am afraid when† it rains and thunders. 13. It rains this evening,‡ but it will not thunder. 14. We could not come because it rained, but it will not rain any more, and I will come to-morrow. 15. I want to see the pictures which have been praised by every one. 16. They were praised by

---

\* 230.1a. † wenn. ‡ 230.2.



the friends of the painter. 17. Are there no fine pictures in this city? 18. There are many beautiful paintings in the library. 19. Where were you yesterday when you were called? 20. There was singing and dancing here yesterday. 21. We should have rejoiced if you had been able to come. 22. The children will be very much ashamed when they are blamed by their father. 23. They will be blamed because the exercises which were written by them are so bad.

### EXERCISE 21.

#### COMPOUND VERBS.—SEPARABLE.

[296-301.]

#### *Vocabulary.*

anfangen	<i>begin</i>	aufhören	<i>stop</i>
aufstehen	<i>get up</i>	sich anziehen	<i>dress</i>
aufgehen	<i>rise (the sun)</i>	untergehen	<i>go under, set</i>
hinausgehen	<i>go out</i>	zurückkommen	<i>come back</i>
zumachen	<i>shut</i>	aufmachen	<i>open</i>
abreisen	<i>go or journey away</i>	mitnehmen	<i>take along</i>
abschreiben	<i>copy</i>	die Nacht	<i>the night</i>
die Sonne	<i>the sun</i>	der Mond	<i>the moon</i>
die Thür	<i>the door</i>	das Fenster	<i>the window</i>
die Eisenbahn	<i>the railroad</i>	das Mittagessen	<i>the dinner</i>
balb	<i>soon</i>	sobald, conj.	<i>as soon as</i>

### I.

1. Die Sonne ist untergegangen und der Mond geht auf.  
 2. Die Arbeiter, die den ganzen Tag\* gearbeitet haben, kommen jetzt aus dem Felde zurück. 3. Mache die Thür auf, der Vater wird bald zurückkommen. 4. Ich war hinausgegangen, als er zurückkam. 5. Warum gehen Sie jetzt hinaus? 6. Ich werde nicht hinausgehen, ich will nur die Thüre und Fenster zumachen. 7. Wir müssen morgen früh aufstehen, weil wir unsere Aufgabe nicht abgeschrieben haben. 8. Er stand auf, zog sich an und schrieb seine Aufgabe ab. 9. Wird die Sonne bald aufgehen? 10. Ich

---

\* 230.I.

weiß nicht, es fängt an zu regnen, und ich habe die Fenster zugemacht. 11. Ist dein Vater mit der Eisenbahn abgereist? 12. Er reiste gestern ab, aber er ist heute zurückgekommen. 13. Die Arbeiter nahmen ihr Mittagessen mit, als sie in die Felder hinausgingen. 14. Warum haben Sie Ihren Diener nicht mitgenommen, als Sie abreisten? 15. Ich wünschte ihn mitzunehmen, aber er wurde krank und konnte nicht mitgehen. 16. Er ist noch nicht aufgestanden, weil die Sonne nicht aufgegangen ist. 17. Er fängt an zu arbeiten, wenn die Sonne aufgeht, und hört auf, wenn sie untergeht. 18. Wir fürchteten uns sehr, als es zu donnern anfang, aber wir schämen uns jetzt, weil wir uns gefürchtet haben. 19. Ich machte die Thüre und Fenster auf, sobald der Regen aufhörte. 20. Wen werden Sie mitnehmen, wenn Sie in die Stadt gehen? 21. Ich werde euch mitnehmen, Kinder; stehet auf und ziehet euch hübsch an. 22. Darf die Kleine auch mitgehen? 23. Nein, sie darf nicht mit;\* aber wir werden ihr etwas schönes geben, wenn wir zurückkommen.

## II.

1. When do the workmen come back? 2. They come back when the sun sets. 3. The sun has already set, and they will soon come back. 4. It is growing cold; shut the doors and windows. 5. The moon will soon rise; do you see it? 6. The rain has begun, and we cannot go out. 7. Have you copied the letters which you had begun? 8. Yes, I got up early and copied them. 9. Get up and dress yourself; we must go away. 10. Why did they not take the child along when they went away? 11. They did not take it along, because it had not dressed itself. 12. The servant will go out as soon as it stops raining. 13. He will go into the city, and will take along the letters which we have copied. 14. He did not shut the door when he went out. 15. Get up and shut it. 16. My aunt will not go away to-day, because it has begun to rain and she is afraid of the thunder. 17. She went away on† the railroad as soon as it stopped thundering. 18. The night has come, and the

---

\* 259.3. † mit.

moon will soon rise. 19. I want to go out. 20. Go, but come back soon. 21 I began to work, but it became too hot and I had to stop. 22. Why did the child not get up? 23. It was not allowed to get up, because it was sick. 24. They went out into the forest, and took the books with them which they had begun. 25. They will come back as soon as the sun has set. 26. We must go away to-morrow, but we shall soon come back.

### EXERCISE 22.

#### COMPOUND VERBS.—INSEPARABLE.

[300-313.]

#### *Vocabulary.*

vergeffen	<i>forget</i>	versprechen	<i>promise</i>
verstehen	<i>understand</i>	empfangen	<i>receive</i>
verändern	<i>change</i>	versuchen	<i>try</i>
wegnehmen	<i>take away</i>	verlieren	<i>lose</i>
übersetzen	<i>translate, set over</i>	wiederholen	<i>repeat, bring back</i>
bezahlen	<i>pay</i>	verkaufen	<i>sell</i>
sich erinnern	<i>remember</i>	gefallen	<i>please</i>
das Versprechen	<i>the promise</i>	die Sache	<i>the thing</i>
französisch	<i>French</i>	englisch	<i>English</i>
der Laden	<i>the shop</i>	das Gedicht	<i>the poem</i>

### I.

1. Haben Sie schon vergessen, was sie mir versprochen haben? 2. Nein, ich erinnere mich meines Versprechens\* und ich wiederhole es Ihnen. 3. Was hat Ihnen† dieser Kaufmann verkauft? 4. Er verkaufte mir Röcke und Schuhe für meine Kinder und einen Hut für mich. 5. Ist alles bezahlt worden, was er Ihnen verkauft hat? 6. Es ist noch nicht bezahlt worden, weil ich mein Geld verloren habe, aber ich werde morgen alles‡ bezahlen. 7. Gefallen Ihnen die Sachen, die Sie in seinem Laden gesehen haben? 8. Es gefällt mir alles ganz gut, aber ich muß das Kleid verändern, weil es zu groß ist. 9. Hat Karl seine französische

\*219.3. † 222.I,1b. ‡ 227.Ib.

Aufgabe übersezt? 10. Er hat sie ins Deutsche und ins Englische übersezt. 11. Karl, hole mir das Buch wieder und wiederhole mir dein Gedicht. 12. Ich weiß es nicht mehr, ich habe es vergessen. 13. Du vergißt alles was man dich lehrt; du gefällst mir gar nicht. 14. Ich werde versuchen, jetzt fleißiger zu werden. 15. Haben Sie die Bücher empfangen, die er Ihnen versprochen hat? 16. Nein, aber ich werde sie empfangen, sobald er zurückkommt. 17. Ich verstehe gar nicht, was sie mir gesagt hat. 18. Er hat sie nicht verstanden, weil er nicht Deutsch sprechen kann. 19. Ich habe den Brief nicht verstehen können, den ich gestern empfing, weil ich nicht Deutsch lesen kann. 20. Wir haben angefangen, den Brief zu übersezen, aber wir haben noch nicht angefangen, ihn abzuschreiben. 21. Ich werde dir\* das Buch wegnehmen, wenn du es wieder verlierst.

## II

1. In what shop did they sell you these books? 2. I forget who sold them to me; do they please you? 3. They please me quite well. 4. You cannot buy any, because they have all been sold already. 5. I do not want to buy any, for I could not understand them. 6. Do you not understand German? 7. I have quite forgotten German, but I understand French. 8. Promise me to learn† German. 9. I will try to learn it, but I cannot speak it at all, I can only translate it. 10. I remember a German book, which I read when I was in Germany. 11. It pleased me, but I do not remember its name. 12. Why did I not receive the letter yesterday? 13. You did not receive it because I forgot to copy it, but you will receive it to-morrow. 14. Did the child lose his book? 15. The teacher took it away from him, because he was lazy; but the boy repeated his promise, and the teacher brought him back the book. 16. The merchant wanted to sell me many pretty things when I was in his shop, but I had lost my money and could buy nothing. 17. He will lose much money if he cannot sell these things. 18. These things do not please me; I will not pay for them. 19. My cousin is much changed, and has

---

\* 222.I,3.    † 348.2.

quite forgotten me. 20. Children change very quickly, and easily forget their friends. 21. They tried to translate the poem which they had received, but they could not understand it. 22. I received a German letter, and I understood it quite well. 23. I understand all that I read, but I can not translate it into English.

**NOTE.** It is thought best, before taking up the special uses of the moods, tenses, etc., to give the pupil some exercise in the formation of the German sentence, it being quite impossible to introduce the subjunctive, infinitive, etc., without making use of longer and more involved sentences than the pupil is as yet prepared for.

### EXERCISE 23.

#### NORMAL AND INVERTED SENTENCES.

[430-433.]

#### Vocabulary.

Amerika	<i>America</i>	der Amerikaner	<i>the American</i>
die Wohnung	<i>the dwelling</i>	die Restauration	<i>the restaurant</i>
meubliren [meublieren]	<i>to furnish</i>	miethen [mieten]	<i>hire</i>
frühstücken	<i>breakfast</i>	speisen	<i>eat</i>
theuer [teuer]	<i>dear</i>	billig	<i>cheap</i>
der König	<i>the king</i>	die Königin	<i>the queen</i>
machen	<i>make</i>	der Präsident	<i>the president</i>
der Fremde	<i>the stranger</i>	die Erde	<i>the earth</i>
der Preis	<i>the price</i>	einmal, zweimal	<i>once, twice, etc.</i>
lange, adv.	<i>long</i>	wohl, adv.	<i>well, perhaps</i>

#### I.

1. Der Fremde will sich eine schöne Wohnung in der Stadt miethen. 2. Eine Wohnung hat er schon gefunden, aber sie ist ihm\* zu theuer. 3. Ich habe in der† Friedrichstraße eine schön meublierte Wohnung zu einem sehr billigen Preise gemiethet. 4. Werden Sie lange hier bleiben? 5. Den ganzen Winter werde ich in Berlin bleiben, aber im Frühling‡ werde ich nach Paris abreisen. 6. Werden Sie Ihre Familie nach Paris mitnehmen? 7. Meine Frau und meinen ältesten Sohn werde ich wohl mitnehmen, die anderen aber müssen in Berlin bleiben.

\* 223.5. † 66.4b. ‡ 66.3a.

8. Schön ist Berlin nicht, aber eine reiche und große Stadt ist es. 9. Viermal bin ich nach Frankreich gereist, zweimal habe ich England gesehen, und ich bin auch oft in Amerika gewesen. 10. Bald werde ich eine Reise um die Erde machen. 11. Die Engländer und die Amerikaner reisen sehr viel, viel weniger reisen die Deutschen, und am allerwenigsten die Franzosen. 12. Hast du den König gesehen, als du in Paris warst? 13. Einen Präsident habe ich in Paris gesehen, aber keinen König. 14. Einen Kaiser haben wir in Deutschland, aber in England hat man nur eine Königin. 15. Im letzten Jahre, als wir in Paris waren, haben wir in einem meublirten Zimmer gewohnt. 16. Wir haben in unserem Zimmer gefrühstückt, und zu Mittag speisten wir in einer Restauration. 17. O, wäre\* ich in Paris! 18. Warum sind Sie nicht mit uns gegangen? 19. Hätte ich nur etwas Geld, so ginge ich gewiß nach Paris. 20. Hast du noch nicht gefrühstückt, so komm' mit mir. 21. In dieser Restauration kann man sehr gut und zu einem billigen Preise frühstücken.

## II.

1. Has your friend hired a beautiful dwelling? 2. Beautiful it is not, but good and cheap it is said† to be. 3. Has your brother come back from Paris? 4. Yesterday he came with his two friends and his servant. 5. These three Americans have come from France to Germany. 6. The queen of England they have already seen, and they wish to see the Emperor of Germany too. 7. In Berlin they cannot see the Emperor now. 8. He went away last month with his whole family to Ems. 9. Have the Americans never had a king in their country? 10. Formerly the king of England was also their king, but now there is no king. 11. A president they have, but no king. 12. Old our Emperor is, but strong and handsome he is also. 13. Where do the Americans live? 14. In a furnished apartment in Frederick street they live. 15. If they live in Frederick street they must pay a good deal. 16. Such a dwelling one cannot find for a cheap price. 17. Every thing

---

\* 331.2. † soll, 257.3.

they pay for very dearly. 18. In the dearest restaurants they eat, and they buy many beautiful things in the shops. 19. Oh, were I only rich. 20. Were we only rich, we would buy every thing we want. 21. Whom do you wish to see? 22. No one do I wish to see, only I want the book\* I have lost. 23. If you do not see the stranger, he is not here. 24. Last Monday, when I was in the city, I breakfasted in a restaurant. 25. In Berlin I always breakfast in a restaurant in Frederick street. 26. If you came with me, I would show you a much better restaurant. 27. Are you living in a furnished room? 28. A room I have, but furnished it is not.

### EXERCISE 24.

#### TRANSPOSED SENTENCES.—SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

[434-436.]

#### Vocabulary.

einladen	<i>invite</i>	besuchen	<i>visit</i>
drucken	<i>print</i>	verderben	<i>spoil</i>
erzählen	<i>tell</i>	annehmen	<i>accept</i>
der Verfasser	<i>the author</i>	das Werk	<i>the work</i>
das Vergnügen	<i>the pleasure</i>	das Geheimniß	<i>the secret</i>
der Roman	<i>the novel</i>	der Gedanke	<i>the thought</i>
die Einladung	<i>the invitation</i>	unbekannt	<i>unknown</i>
bekannt	<i>known</i>	einerlei, adv.	<i>indifferent</i>

### I.

1. Haben Sie den Roman gelesen, von dem ich Ihnen erzählt habe? 2. Nein, ich habe ihn nicht gelesen; kennen Sie den Verfasser desselben? 3. Wer ihn geschrieben hat, ist mir unbekannt; aber ich weiß, daß er in dieser Stadt gedruckt worden ist. 4. Ich verspreche Ihnen, daß sie den Roman morgen erhalten sollen. 5. Wissen Sie, ob ich bezahlt habe, was Sie mir verkauft haben? 6. Ob Sie bezahlt haben oder nicht, ist mir einerlei; ich weiß, daß Sie alles bezahlen werden. 7. Es freut mich, daß sie mich ein-

geladen hat ; aber sie weiß, daß ich ihre Einladung nicht annehmen kann. 8. Warum du die Einladung nicht annimmst, ist mir unbekannt. 9. Wissen Sie nicht, daß ich heute mit der Eisenbahn abreisen werde. 10. Der Gedanke, daß du nicht mitkommen konntest, verdarb mir das ganze Vergnügen. 11. Hat er Ihnen gesagt, wohin er jetzt geht ? 12. Ich verstehe gar nicht, was er mir gesagt hat. 13. Es ist eine Frage, ob sie dich besuchen sollte, oder du sie. 14. Wüßte ich nur, wo sie lebt, und wo ich sie finden könnte, so würde ich sie besuchen. 15. Es ist kein Geheimniß, daß sie morgen abreisen will.

## II

1. Did she tell you that he had gone away? 2. She told me that he had gone away, but she did not tell me where he had gone. 3. Had he not visited you? 4. Whether he visited me, I do not know, but I know that I invited him. 5. Did he give you that of which he spoke? 6. What he sent is unknown to me, but he knew that I could not accept it. 7. The merchant tells me that he has sold all the works of this author. 8. I am rejoiced that he has sold them all ; but will he not print this novel again? 9. Whether he will print it or not is not known. 10. I am glad that I have not paid for these books. 11. You told me where you had bought them, and to whom you had given them. 12. Whether you read them or not is indifferent to me, but you know that you must pay for them. 13. It delights me that you will visit me. 14. Will you come to-day or to-morrow? 15. When I can come I cannot tell you, but I will come soon. 16. It is a secret who has written this book, but it has been read by every one. 17. The thought that you are certainly coming makes me quite happy. 18. It rejoices me that I can accept your invitation. 19. All that we have made is now spoilt.



## EXERCISE 25.

## TRANSPOSED SENTENCES, — ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

[437.]

*Vocabulary.*

sterben	<i>die</i>	leiden	<i>suffer</i>
beweinen	<i>lament, mourn</i>	aufgeben	<i>give up</i>
fragen	<i>ask</i>	zubringen	<i>pass (time)</i>
der Erbe	<i>the heir</i>	die Krankheit	<i>sickness</i>
die Hoffnung	<i>hope</i>	die Fremde	<i>foreign lands</i>
einsam	<i>lonely</i>	furchtbar	<i>fearful</i>
darum	<i>therefore</i>		

## I.

1. Der Fremde, der gestern in unserer Stadt gestorben ist, war ein Engländer. 2. Er starb an einer Krankheit, an der er schon lange gelitten hatte. 3. Der älteste Sohn des Engländers, welcher auch sein Erbe ist, wird hierher kommen. 4. Warum beweinen Sie einen Menschen, den sie gar nicht gekannt haben? 5. Ich beweine jeden, der einsam in der Fremde leiden und sterben muß. 6. In der Zeit, da ich auf Reisen war, bin ich in England gewesen. 7. In London, wo ich einige Wochen zubrachte, bin ich krank geworden. 8. Eine Stadt, worin ich so sehr gelitten habe, werde ich nie vergessen können. 9. Der Mann ist ein Unglücklicher; der hat viel gelitten. 10. Der Name dessen, von dem ich euch erzählt habe, ist mir unbekannt. 11. Er spricht von einem ihm unbekannten Manne. 12. Er fragte nach dem Manne, dessen Vater so krank ist. 13. Die Krankheit, an der er leidet, ist eine so furchtbare, daß man alle Hoffnung hat aufgeben müssen. 14. Darum ist sein Sohn, der den Vater noch einmal sehen wollte, aus Paris zurückgekommen.

## II.

1. The gentleman of whom he was telling you was my uncle. 2. He died in the house in which we now live. 3. He was a noble man and we still lament him. 4. Were you not the heir of him of whom we are speaking? 5. Yes,

I am the heir of his name, and I also suffer from the sickness of which he died. 6. He was asking about a novel which he wanted to read. 7. It is a book of which I have heard much, but it is written by a man who is quite unknown to me. 8. The poor stranger who died here yesterday was the author of the novels of which so much has been said. 9. He died in a city where he was quite unknown. 10. In the time when he was still rich and happy he lived in Berlin, but when he became poor he went into a foreign land, where he died. 11. He had long suffered from a fearful sickness, and had given up all hope. 12. He had no children who will mourn for him. 13. He is an unhappy man, who must live and die so lonely.

## EXERCISE 26.

## TRANSPOSED SENTENCES.—ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

[438-439.]

*Vocabulary.*

reiten	<i>ride</i>	jagen	<i>hunt</i>
versammeln	<i>assemble</i>	begleiten	<i>accompany</i>
fortreiten	<i>ride away</i>	fortsein	<i>be away</i>
bewundern	<i>admire</i>	die Jagd	<i>the hunt</i>
der Anfang	<i>the beginning</i>	das Ende	<i>the end</i>
die Gesellschaft	<i>the company</i>	gleich	<i>like</i>
schnell	<i>quick</i>	müde	<i>tired</i>
ehe	<i>ere, before</i>	wie	<i>how, as</i>
je . . . , desto	<i>the . . . , the</i>	so lange	<i>as long as</i>

## I

1. Als die Sonne aufging, ritten sie alle nach dem Walde. 2. Die Jagd wird anfangen, sobald die Gesellschaft sich versammelt hat. 3. Ich werde Sie begleiten, damit ich das Ende der Jagd sehe. 4. Ehe sie zurückkommen, wird es ganz dunkel sein. 5. Wenn Sie müde sind, werden wir gleich nach Hause gehen. 6. Den ganzen Tag waren sie im Walde, und als sie nach Hause kamen, waren sie sehr müde. 7. Diese Dame ist nicht schön, warum bewundern Sie sie? 8. Ich bewundere sie nur darum, weil sie so

schön reitet und ein so schönes Pferd hat. 9. Wollen Sie etwas schönes sehen, so kommen Sie mit mir. 10. So lange er fort ist, so lange muß ich hier bleiben, aber sobald er zurückkommt, darf ich fortgehen. 11. Es ist hier so schön, daß ich nicht fortgehen will. 12. Wo ich jetzt bin, da werde ich den ganzen Tag bleiben. 13. Ich bin so müde, daß ich nicht in die Gesellschaft gehen kann. 14. Er liebt sie gar nicht, wie wir sie geliebt haben; er bewundert sie nur, weil sie so schön ist. 15. Je mehr wir ihn kennen, desto weniger lieben wir ihn. 16. Sagst du nicht, so werde ich nicht jagen. 17. Wie der Alte reitet, so möchte auch ich reiten.

## II.

1. We must ride to the forest before the sun rises. 2. If you want to hunt, then accompany me. 3. Where the forest begins, there the company assembled. 4. They only assembled in order† to see the hunt. 5. If you want to see the hunt, you must ride fast. 6. When the hunt was at an end, the hunters rode home. 7. Hardly had he come home, when he rode away again. 8. Because he is old he hunts no more. 9. The older I am, the more I hunt. 10. The lady was so beautiful that we had to\* admire her. 11. Although she is the wife of my friend, I have never seen her. 12. Where she now is, I do not know, but I will tell you how you can see her. 13. As soon as she came home, I saw her. 14. She is beautiful; but the more I admire her, the less I love her. 15. The company is larger than I had thought. 16. As long as she is away I cannot visit you, but as soon as she comes back we will come to you. 17. When he visited us we were not at home, but we shall see him before he goes away. 18. He rides so fast that we cannot accompany him. 19. As he lived, so he died.

---

\* müssen, 256. † 332.5b.

## EXERCISE 27.

## USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

[323-329.]

## Vocabulary.

weden	wake	schlafen	sleep
aufwachen	awake	befinden	be (as to health, etc.)
brennen	burn	retten	save
überleben	survive	zusammenstürzen	fall together
verlezen	injure	das Bett	the bed
die Flamme	the flame	tot [tot]	dead
schwer	hard, difficult	plötzlich	suddenly
unwohl	unwell	seit, prep.	since

## I

1. Wie befinden Sie sich? 2. Ich befinde mich seit gestern sehr unwohl. 3. Erzählen Sie mir, wie Sie sich verletzt haben. 4. Ich war gestern sehr müde und ging früh zu Bett. 5. Plötzlich wache ich auf, ich sehe Flammen, das Haus brennt. 6. Ich stehe auf, wecke meine Frau und meine Kinder, und sie laufen aus dem Hause. 7. Als wir alle draußen sind, erinnere ich mich, daß ich das jüngste Kind vergessen habe. 8. Ich will zurück laufen und es retten, aber das Haus stürzt über mir zusammen. 9. Man hat mich gerettet, aber ich bin schwer verletzt und ich überlebe es gewiß nicht. 10. Dein Bruder wird wohl verreist sein? 11. Ja, aber er kommt schon Morgen zurück. 12. Ist das Kind schon lange krank? 13. Es ist seit einer Woche tot. 14. Befand der Mann sich schon lange in Berlin, als Sie ihn sahen? 15. Als ich in Berlin war, sah ich ihn nicht, aber später habe ich ihn gesehen. 16. Kommt er nicht, so gehe ich gleich fort. 17. Er schläft seit drei Stunden, und ich kann ihn nicht wecken.

## II

1. Have you seen the poor man? 2. I saw him when his house was burning. 3. What did he do? 4. He was in the town. 5. Suddenly they tell him that his house is burning. 6. He runs back, he calls his wife and his children. 7. But they are asleep, he cannot wake them. 8. He wishes to

save them, but the house falls in. 9. Was no one saved? 10. One child was saved, but it is much injured. 11. If the child dies, he will die too. 12. Yes, he will probably not survive his family. 13. Have the children been long asleep? 14. They have been sleeping for five hours. 15. They will certainly wake up soon. 16. Were you in the church yesterday? 17. When you were in the church I was also there. 18. Had he been long unwell when he died? 19. He had lain in bed for 5 years. 20. Now he has been dead for two years. 21. I am going into the city to-morrow, but I am coming back early. 22. If you go, I shall go along.

## EXERCISE 28.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AS OPTATIVE, CONDITIONAL AND POTENTIAL.

[329—332.]

*Vocabulary.*

ansehen	<i>look at</i>	aussehen	<i>look, appear</i>
tanzen	<i>dance</i>	eilen	<i>hurry</i>
mitsingen	<i>sing (at the same time)</i>	ankommen	<i>arrive</i>
die Musik	<i>music</i>	die Stimme	<i>the voice</i>
der Jüngling	<i>the youth</i>	die Dame	<i>the lady</i>
müde	<i>tired</i>	spät	<i>late</i>
gern	<i>willingly</i>	doch, (adv.)	<i>still, nevertheless</i>
allein (adv. and conj.)	<i>alone, but, only</i>	sonst	<i>otherwise</i>

## I.

1. Wärest du nur gestern hier gewesen! 2. Wäre ich auch eingeladen worden, so wäre ich doch nicht gekommen. 3. Wären Sie gekommen, so hätten Sie viel schöne Musik gehört und da hätten Sie auch mitsingen können. 4. Er spricht, als fänge er nie. 5. Er hat eine sehr schöne Stimme, sonst hätte man ihn gar nicht eingeladen. 6. Der Jüngling sieht aus, als wäre er sehr müde. 7. Er hätte gern getanzt, allein er war zu müde. 8. Er eilt nur, damit er früh hinfomme. 9. Komme er, oder komme er nicht, es ist mir einerlei. 10. Und wäre es noch später, ich käme doch zu Ihnen. 11. Ich möchte gern diese Bilder ansehen, allein ich habe keine Zeit. 12. Eile er, so viel er kann, er kommt doch zu spät an. 13. Oh, wären diese Bilder nur die meinigen, dann sähe ich sie

den ganzen Tag an. 14. Der Jüngling sieht die junge Dame an, als bewundere er sie. 15. Sie wird ihn nie lieben, so viel er sie auch bewundert. 16. Wir möchten sie auch sehen, aber sie ist nicht hier.

## II

1. Why do you not sing with us? 2. I would gladly sing too, only I have no voice. 3. If you do not love music, you ought not to have come.\* 4. I love music very much, otherwise I should not have come. 5. Oh, that I had a fine voice! 6. Why are you hurrying so much? 7. I am hurrying in order that I may not arrive too late. 8. If you arrive too late, you will not be able to dance. 9. I should like to dance, but I am too tired. 10. Oh, were I only young again, then I could dance. 11. Look at this lady; she looks as if she had danced too much. 12. If I were tired I would not dance any more. 13. How could you have danced if she had not come. 14. This youth is hurrying as if it were very late. 15. He is only hurrying in order that he may hear the beautiful music. 16. Let him hurry as much as he will, he will still arrive too late. 17. I should like to see the beautiful ladies, but they are already gone.† 18. Had you only hurried yourself, then you would have seen them all.

## EXERCISE 29.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT STATEMENT.

[333.]

*Vocabulary.*

die Zeitung	<i>the newspaper</i>	die Nachricht	<i>the news</i>
der Arzt	<i>the doctor</i>	der Glaube	<i>belief, faith</i>
bedauern	<i>pity</i>	enthalten	<i>contain</i>
hoffen	<i>hope</i>	antworten	<i>answer</i>
wichtig	<i>important</i>	heutig	<i>of to-day</i>
beschäftigt	<i>busy</i>	gesund	<i>healthy</i>
traurig	<i>sad</i>	wahr	<i>true</i>
der Hunger	<i>hunger</i>	die Wahrheit	<i>the truth</i>

\* sollen 251.6. † fort.

## I.

1. Haben Sie die heutige Zeitung gelesen? Man sagt, sie enthalte wichtige Nachrichten. 2. Ich habe gelesen, daß der Kaiser gestorben sei, aber ich glaube es nicht. 3. Ich fragte meinen Vater, ob er diese Nachricht glaube, und er antwortete, er glaube niemals das, was er in der Zeitung lese. 4. Er fragte die Dame, ob sie mitgehen wolle, aber sie antwortete, sie sei sehr müde und dürfe nicht ausgehen. 5. Sie schreibt uns, sie sei nicht zu uns gekommen, weil sie geglaubt habe, daß wir abgereist wären; sie bedaure sehr, daß sie uns nicht gesehen habe und hoffe, wir werden bald zu ihr kommen; sie könne uns nicht wieder besuchen, weil sie zu beschäftigt sei. 6. Er glaubt, daß sein Sohn krank sei und wünscht, daß ich nach dem Arzt schicke. 7. Der meint, er habe zu viel gearbeitet, darum sei er krank geworden. 8. Der Gedanke, daß er nicht mehr arbeiten könne, macht ihn sehr traurig. 9. Der Arzt glaubt nicht, daß er wieder gesund wird. 10. Wir gaben ihr das Geld, weil sie uns erzählte, daß ihr Mann gestorben sei, und daß sie kein Geld habe. 11. Glauben Sie, daß sie die Wahrheit spricht? 12. Ob sie die Wahrheit spricht, weiß ich nicht, ich wollte aber nicht, daß sie an Hunger stirbe.

## II.

1. Have you heard the great news? 2. They say the Emperor is coming to-morrow. 3. Do you believe that it is true? 4. My mother said she had read it in the paper, but she did not believe it. 5. The belief that he is coming makes the whole city glad. 6. What news did his letter contain? 7. He wrote he was still in Berlin and working as usual; he was sending me a book which he had read, and hoped I should read it also; he did not know when he was coming home, but he hoped he could come soon. 8. I came back in the belief that he was very ill, but I find him quite well. 9. I asked him whether he was ill, but he was only tired because he had worked too much. 10. I asked the young man who he was and where he was going, but he only answered he did not know me and would not tell me. 11. I think I am going away to-morrow, but my friend wishes that I remain longer. 12. His father

said he must come home to-morrow; but he says he cannot and will not go away before his friend has arrived. 13. The lady said she was very sorry that he was so sick, and hoped he would soon be better again. 14. The doctor thinks he will soon die, but I think he is not so sick as they believe. 15. The story that he is busy and therefore does not come I do not believe.

## EXERCISE 30.

## INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OR OBJECT.

[339-344.]

*Vocabulary.*

rauchen	<i>smoke</i>	trinken	<i>drink</i>
heißen	<i>command, call</i>	lassen	<i>allow, cause</i>
befehlen	<i>order</i>	schweigen	<i>be silent</i>
vorlesen	<i>read aloud</i>	verbieten	<i>forbid</i>
spazieren gehen	<i>go to walk</i>	spazieren fahren	<i>go to drive</i>
vorfahren	<i>drive up</i>	fahren	<i>drive</i>
der Wagen	<i>the carriage</i>	der Kutscher	<i>the coachman</i>
gefährlich	<i>dangerous</i>	zornig	<i>angry</i>
leicht	<i>easy</i>	weit	<i>far, distant</i>

## I

1. Daß Lesen habe ich gelernt, aber daß Schreiben ist mir noch schwer. 2. Erinnern Sie sich seines Schweigens, als wir ihn sahen. 3. Es ist schwer zu schweigen, wenn man zornig ist. 4. Es ist mir nicht leicht, seine Geschichte zu glauben, aber ich werde versuchen, ihm zu helfen. 5. Einem solchen Menschen Geld zu geben, ist sehr gefährlich, aber Essen und Trinken darf man ihm geben. 6. Ich höre singen. 7. Sie hören den jungen Mann singen, den Ihr Bruder mitgebracht hat. 8. Wo hat er den Jüngling kennen gelernt? 9. Er lernte ihn in Berlin kennen. 10. Er ließ ihn jeden Tag zu sich kommen und lehrte ihn singen. 11. Er hieß den jungen Mann heute kommen und befahl ihm,\* uns etwas vorzusingen. 12. Er läßt sich die Gedichte vorlesen. 13. Ich wollte spazieren gehen, aber er blieb im Garten sitzen und

\* 222.II, 1a.



wünschte nicht auszugehen. 14. Er ist zu müde, spazieren zu gehen, aber er will gern spazieren fahren. 15. Karl, laß den Kutscher rufen und den Wagen vorfahren, wir wollen nach der Stadt fahren. 16. Wir haben den Arzt noch zu besuchen. 17. Ihn zu besuchen, müssen Sie sehr weit fahren. 18. Wir haben weiter nichts zu sagen, aber er hört nicht auf, uns zu rufen. 19. Trinken und Rauchen sind im Theater verboten.

## II

1. I do not like writing, but I like reading very much. 2. Why do you not smoke? 3. The doctor has forbidden\* me smoking. 4. To be silent is better than to talk when one is angry. 5. I ordered him to be silent, but he wished to talk. 6. To tell the truth is impossible to him. 7. I tried to help him, but he would not tell the truth, and I could not give him anything. We became acquainted with him in Paris. 8. Will you go to drive with me? 9. I rejoice to go with you. 10. I will have the coachman called. 11. When I called him he remained standing and did not come. 12. Do you not hear talking? 13. I hear talking and singing. 14. Have you heard the children sing? 15. I tried to hear them sing, but the teacher forbade me to come into the school. 16. He teaches them to sing and to read aloud. 17. Let Sophy be called; I see her coming and I want to ask her something.† 18. I had her called, but she was reading aloud to her sister and could not come. 19. We will have them work an hour, then they can go to drive with us. 20. Have the carriage come, the children want to go to drive, but I shall go to walk.

## EXERCISE 31.

## INFINITIVE AS ADJUNCT AND WITH PREPOSITIONS.

[344-348.]

*Vocabulary.*

benutzen  
anhören

use  
listen to

lachen  
sich zurückziehen

laugh  
withdraw

\* 222.I, 1a. † 227.3a.

bereit	<i>ready</i>	ruhig	<i>quiet</i>
kurz	<i>short</i>	schwach	<i>weak</i>
die Gelegenheit	<i>the opportunity</i>	das Schauspiel	<i>the play</i>
der Gelehrte	<i>the scholar</i>	die Universität	<i>the university</i>
amüsiren	<i>amuse</i>	amüsant	<i>amusing</i>

## L

1. Er sagte mir, er habe keine Gelegenheit gehabt, mit Ihnen zu sprechen. 2. Ich bin bereit, ihm alles zu erzählen, aber er ist zu zornig, mich anhören zu wollen. 3. Die Hoffnung, bald wieder abreisen zu können, macht sie sehr glücklich. 4. Sie kam nach Berlin, um ihre Eltern zu besuchen. 5. Anstatt nach Berlin zu kommen, wäre es ihr leichter gewesen, gleich nach Hause zu gehen. 6. Ich werde diese Gelegenheit benutzen, um ins Theater zu gehen. 7. Wir möchten nicht ins Theater gehen, ohne das Schauspiel vorher gelesen zu haben. 8. Die Zeit ist zu kurz, als daß sie das Schauspiel lesen können. 9. Er sprach davon, uns nach dem Theater zu begleiten, aber er mußte noch arbeiten. 10. Ich kann das Lied nicht singen hören, ohne zu weinen. 11. Anstatt mit seinen Freunden ins Theater zu gehen, hat er sich zurückgezogen, um in seinem Zimmer ruhig arbeiten zu können. 12. Er denkt nur daran, ein großer Gelehrter zu werden. 13. Er wünscht nach der Universität zu gehen, und sein Vater ist reich genug, ihm Zeit und Gelegenheit dazu zu geben. 14. Ich habe den Roman gelesen, um mich zu amüsiren, aber er ist gar nicht amüsant. 15. Anstatt zu lachen, habe ich ihn nicht lesen können, ohne zu weinen. 16. Ich habe ihn ins Theater gehen lassen wollen, aber er hat nicht gehen können.

## II

1. Are you ready to go with us to the theatre? 2. I have no time to go to the theatre. 3. I have seen this play too often to want to see it again. 4. I cannot see any play without having read it before. 5. What will you do in order to amuse yourself? 6. Instead of staying here, I shall go to the university in order to see the learned professor. 7. He thinks only of seeing learned men and reading learned books, but we think only of amusing ourselves.

8. Why did he withdraw instead of going to walk with us? 9. He said he was always ready to go to walk with you, but to-day he was too tired to be able to go out. 10. We came in the hope of hearing him sing. 11. I cannot go away without hearing him sing. 12. I have no time to listen to him, but I hope to hear him sing later. 13. You cannot help this poor man without giving him much money. 14. I let him tell his story in order to know whether he spoke the truth. 15. I have no hope of being able to help him. 16. Instead of listening to my story he forbade me to speak. 17. They will not go away without having spoken. 18. We have used every opportunity of helping them, but they are bad enough to be dangerous. 19. This novel is too amusing for me to read it without laughing. 20. I had wished to teach him to read aloud, but he had too weak a voice to be able to read aloud.

## EXERCISE 32.

## PARTICIPLES.

[349-359.]

*Vocabulary.*

ehren	<i>honor</i>	vollenben	<i>complete</i>
föhren	<i>lend</i>	besprechen	<i>talk over</i>
mittheilen	<i>communicate</i>	empfangen	<i>receive</i>
geboren	<i>born</i>	erwarten	<i>await</i>
fertig	<i>finished</i>	eilig	<i>hasty</i>
der Dom	<i>the cathedral</i>	Rom	<i>Rome</i>
Köln	<i>Cologne</i>		

## I

1. Wer wird die ankommenden Gäste empfangen? 2. Meine Mutter empfängt die Herankommenden. 3. Hast Du den angefangenen Brief vollendet? 4. Sobald wir ihn fertig haben, sollen Sie das Geschriebene lesen. 4. Haben Sie den Gestorbenen gekannt? 6. Er war mein geliebter Freund. 7. Er ging, das Kind an der Hand führend, in die Kirche hinein. 8. Wir gingen auch mit, um die schön gemalten Bilder zu sehen. 9. Haben

Sie früher so vollendet schöne Bilder gesehen? 10. Er sah sie bewundernd an und ging schweigend fort. 11. Alle Versprechungen vergessend reiste er gestern ab. 12. Wann werden die Reisenden zurückkommen? 13. Er kam eiligst hingefahren, um uns die Nachricht mitzutheilen. 14. Uns den empfangenen Brief vorlesend und mit uns die Nachricht besprechend, blieb er lange bei uns. 15. Die aufgehende Sonne fand ihn noch im Bette liegen. 16. Der im Jahre 1248 angefangene Dom zu Köln ist erst 638 Jahre später vollendet worden. 17. Der arme, in einer niedrigen Hütte geborene Knabe, ist später ein berühmter Professor geworden. 18. Die weinende Frau ist die Mutter des gestern aus dem brennenden Hause geretteten Kindes, welches heute gestorben ist.

## II.

1. Have you found the lost book? 2. They have brought it back to me quite spoiled. 3. Why does she go weeping into the church? 4. Her most beloved son is dead. 5. I knew the dead, he was a beautiful boy. 6. The child came running in order to give me the long expected letter. 7. Talking over with me the news, he forgot to give me the paper. 8. She looked admiringly at the beautifully painted pictures, but she said nothing. 9. Do you know this much admired lady? 10. She is the daughter of my beloved uncle, she is a beautiful woman. 11. We remained a week in Rome looking at the great churches and admiring the beautiful paintings. 12. As soon as the expected newspaper arrives, I will communicate to you the news contained in it. 13. Having lost my paper I shall have to read yours. 14. I have found your lost paper. 15. The emperor Napoleon I., born in Corsica in the year 1769, died at St. Helena in 1821. 16. They were not able to save those sleeping in the burning house, because they could not wake them. 17. The traveller arrived too late to see the dying man. 18. Arrived in Cologne I went at once to their house, but I found the house shut and the whole family away. 19. She went away weeping without having seen her beloved ones.

## EXERCISE 33.

## ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

[361-381.]

## Vocabulary.

der Berg	<i>the mountain</i>	das Gewitter	<i>the thunder-storm</i>
der Pfad	<i>the path</i>	die Bank	<i>the bench</i>
die Wolke	<i>the cloud</i>	die Erziehung	<i>the education</i>
das Geschäft	<i>business</i>	der Stern	<i>the star</i>
steigen	<i>climb</i>	blicken	<i>look</i>
einziehen	<i>move in</i>	ausziehen	<i>move out</i>
verschwinden	<i>disappear</i>	bitten	<i>beg</i>
unterwegs (adv.)	<i>on the way</i>		

## I

1. Ich bin unterwegs, meine Freunde zu besuchen, die der Kirche gegenüber wohnen. 2. Früher wohnten sie auf dem Lande jenseits des Flusses, aber sie sind wegen der Erziehung ihrer Kinder in die Stadt gezogen und wohnen jetzt unweit der Schule. 3. Trotz des heißen Wetters bin ich heute sammt meinen Kindern spazieren gegangen. 4. Wir gingen tief in den Wald hinein, ich setzte mich unter die Bäume auf eine Bank, und die Kinder spielten um mich herum. 5. Plötzlich wurde es dunkel, ich sah nach oben, die Sonne war hinter den schwarzen Wolken verschwunden, und binnen kurzer Zeit fing es an zu regnen. 6. Wir liefen eiligst aus dem Walde hinaus. 7. Bald aber war der Sturm vorbei, und die Sonne kam wieder hinter den Wolken hervor. 8. Ich wollte auf den Berg hinauf steigen, um die untergehende Sonne zu sehen, aber er wünschte, längs des Flusses spazieren zu gehen. 9. Ich bat ihn, zu mir herüber zu kommen, aber er wollte es nicht. 10. Wir standen auf dem kleinen, längs des Flusses führenden Pfade und sahen nach oben hinauf, und alle Sterne des Himmels blickten auf uns hernieder. 11. Ich kann nicht an ihrem Hause vorbeigehen, ohne hinein zu gehen. 12. Sie hat mich oft eingeladen, herein zu kommen, aber ich mußte des Geschäfts wegen in die Stadt hinein.

## II

1. Why does your friend now live outside of the town?
2. He has a sick child, and for its sake he has moved out

of the town. 3. They have planted trees along the path by the river, and have set benches under the trees. 4. The horseman who rode past us was riding on a very beautiful horse, and two dogs were running round about him. 5. I looked long after him as he rode away into the woods. 6. The sun has come out from behind the black clouds, and in spite of the storm the evening will be fine. 7. We will climb up upon the mountain and look down upon the city. 8. When the sun disappears behind the mountains the stars will look down upon us from above. 9. As I went by his house he was looking out of the window. 10. He called me over to him and invited me to come into the house. 11. He said he could not (go) out of the house, and wished to speak to me concerning business. 12. I went in to him and remained with him during two whole hours.

## EXERCISE 34.

## CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

[382-392.]

*Vocabulary.*

der Kaffee	<i>the coffee</i>	der Thee	<i>the tea</i>
das Fleisch	<i>the meat</i>	das Gemüse	<i>the vegetable</i>
die Kartoffel	<i>the potato</i>	das Wasser	<i>the water</i>
das Feuer	<i>the fire</i>	das Holz	<i>the wood</i>
kochen	<i>cook</i>	backen	<i>bake</i>
anzünden	<i>light</i>	verbrennen	<i>burn</i>
holen	<i>fetch</i>	zubereiten	<i>prepare</i>
sich erkälten	<i>catch cold</i>	pflücken	<i>pluck</i>

## I

1. Ich möchte das Frühstück zubereiten, allein man hat das Feuer noch nicht angezündet. 2. Die Magd ist hinausgegangen, entweder um Holz zu suchen oder um Gemüse zu pflücken. 3. Zünden Sie das Feuer an, unterdessen werde ich Wasser holen und den Kaffee machen. 4. Du trinkst immer Kaffee, ich dagegen trinke nur Thee. 5. Also machen wir nicht nur Kaffee, sondern auch Thee. 6. Sobald das Wasser kocht, thun Sie die Kartoffeln

hinein. 7. Das Wasser kocht zwar schon, allein ich habe keine Kartoffeln, deshalb werde ich in den Garten gehen müssen. 8. Wo Sie die Kartoffeln finden werden, weiß ich nicht, aber indem Sie sie suchen, werde ich das Fleisch zubereiten. 9. Während ich im Garten war, ist das Fleisch verbrannt. 10. O weh, daß es verbrannt ist, jetzt werde ich nichts zu essen haben. 11. Obgleich es verbrannt ist, werde ich doch versuchen, ein Stück davon zu essen. 12. Pfui des schlechten Fleisches, weg mit ihm. 13. Weder du noch ich werden es essen können, aber diese Armen werden es gerne essen. 14. Seitdem sie sich erkältet hat, ist sie immer krank gewesen, aber dessen ungeachtet arbeitet sie nach wie vor den ganzen Tag. 15. Da sie arm und krank ist, wollen wir ihr Geld geben, sie will es aber nicht haben, sondern sagt, sie wolle lieber sterben, als daß sie meine Hülfe annehmen wollte.

## II.

1. Alas for these poor people! 2. Although the weather is so cold, they have no warm clothes. 3. Not only have they no warm clothes, but they have also no bread and no fire. 4. I should like to give them something, only I do not know whether they would accept it. 5. They would to be sure accept no money; nevertheless you can help them. 6. Either you can give them potatoes, or you can look for wood and make a fire. 7. I will get some potatoes; meantime you light the fire. 8. Neither you nor I can cook potatoes without burning them. 9. It is true, I can not cook potatoes; on the other hand I can bake meat very well. 10. While the meat is cooking, give the children these vegetables, in order that they may have something to eat at once. 11. Since I have caught cold I have not been able to eat anything. 12. Try nevertheless to drink this coffee; besides I have some white bread, which you can eat. 13. Alas for me, that I cannot work! 14. Until I can work again the children will have nothing to eat. 15. Although we have little money, we will nevertheless help you as long as you are sick. 16. Accordingly I will take the children with me, as I promised you.

## SECOND SERIES.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES.

#### USE OF THE ARTICLES.

(66.) 1. Das Kartenspiel ist ein Krieg. (Hippel.) 2. Die Geschichte soll keine Lobrednerin sein. (Sch.) 3. Die Menschen sind geschaffen für die Menschen. (Sch.) 4. Am Baum des Schweigens hängt seine Frucht, der Friede. (Spr.) 5. Die Religion, diese Tochter des Himmels, ist die getreue Gefährtin des Menschen. (Kess.) 6. Die Furcht des Todes ist des Lebens scharfe Würze. (Rück.) 7. Die Mutter lag auf den Knien vor dem Bette und hatte den Arm um ihr stöhnendes Kind geschlagen. (Hey.) 8. Thränen standen dem alten Manne in den Augen. (Hauff.) 9. Als nun der Mai sich zu Ende neigte, und der Wald im ersten Grün stand, kam ein Brief. (Hey.) 10. Die Elegien hoffe ich auf den Sonnabend zu schicken, und denke den Montag darauf selbst zu kommen. (G.) 11. Wenn ich nur im Winter einige Zeit bei Ihnen sein kann! (G.) 12. In dem Kamin des uns wohlbekannten Salons, in der Rheinstraße No. 27, brannte ein helles Feuer. (Hey.) 13. Mein Vater schien mit den Seinigen in der Schweiz nicht im besten Einverständniß [Einverständniß] zu leben. (Hauff.) 14. Sie verlangen ihren Oberst, den Max, zurück. (Sch.) 15. Lilli lehnte das Bild des Drestes, das sie eben in der Hand hielt, stillschweigend an die Wand. (Marlitt.) 16. Die kleine achtjährige Ellen stand blaß und stumm dabei. (Hey.) 17. Das glückliche alte Paar verbringt die Flitterwochen abwechselnd im blühenden Italien und im lustigen Paris. (Renau.) 18. Er wandelte, in seinen schmerzlichen Gedanken vertieft, über die Rheinbrücke dem alten Straßburg zu. (Hey.) 19. Die Stadt lag bereits im Schlafe, und auch im Hause des Kommandanten war schon alles zur Ruhe gegangen. (Werner.) 20. Ganz ebenso stand Michelangelo zwischen



Vergangenheit und Zukunft. (G.) 21. Das war in der That Gottes Finger. (Sch.) 22. Ich muß hundert von diesen neu drucken lassen. (Sch.) 23. Anfang März zieht der Kaiser nordwärts, während Clemens nach Rom zurückkehrt. (S. Gr.) 24. Zur Vorgeschichte dieses Aufsatzes habe ich Folgendes zu bemerken. (Karpeles.) 25. Es freut mich, daß Sie jetzt vollständig gerechtfertigt dastehen, sagte er zu Ersterem. (Winterfeld.) 26. Des Morgens denk' an deinen Gott, des Abends denk' an deinen Tod. (Spr.) 27. Liebe macht den Klügsten zum Narren. (Spr.) 28. Mein Vater bestimmte mich, als ich 20 Jahre alt und gut gewachsen war, zum Soldaten. (Hauff.) 29. Er war 48 Jahre alt, als er Cardinal wurde. (S. Gr.) 30. Dieß ist Ursache, daß ich den Meister¶ so lange behielt. (Sch.) 31. Er war schon längst Wittwer [Witwer] geworden. (Hauff.) 32. Sie sind Soldat wie ich, und zu unserem Berufe gehört nun einmal die Gefahr. (Werner.)

(67.) 1. Mit festem Schritt ging er wohl eine halbe Stunde in seinem Zelte auf und nieder. (Ebers.) 2. Ich hätte nie\* gedacht, daß in dem ernstesten, stillen Mann ein solcher Quell von Humor sprudle.† (Sch.)

### THEME I

#### USE OF THE ARTICLES.

1. Life is an eternal war, and only death brings us peace. 2. I do not like history, for it tells only of war and of death. 3. Man was not created for war, but for peace and for happiness. 4. The old woman held the child in her arms, while I was reading the letter. 5. Her son wrote the letter Wednesday and he will come himself Sunday. 6. He went away in February. 7. In summer my friends are in Switzerland, but in winter they live in Rhine street. 8. Have you seen the picture of little Henry? 9. Old Charles sent it to me, when I was in Southern Germany. 10. I love the good and wise books, and I am now reading Goethe. 11. When I was in Italy I spent several weeks‡ in old Rome and in beautiful Florence.

¶ Wilhelm Meister, a novel by Goethe.

\* See 332.3. † 333.3b. ‡ 230.

12. Italy is the most beautiful country on earth. 13. The children go early to bed, and when we came back, they already lay asleep. 14. We have at least a hundred of his letters, in the first we read the following. 15. He was 70 years old when the death of his wife made him a widower. 16. We visit him twice a week. 17. We always find him at home of a morning. 18. He is the brother of my old master, and he was formerly a soldier. 19. I have never known so good a man. 20. He has been very ill, but such a man does not fear\* death. 21. We passed half the winter in Berlin.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES II.

### ADJECTIVES.

(115.) 1. An demselben Abend fand noch ein Abschied statt, aber nur ein brieflicher. (Fey.) 2. Die ganze alte Welt setzt die mütterliche Liebe über die väterliche. (F. P. R.)

(116.) 1. Die Welt wird alt und wird wieder jung, doch der Mensch hofft immer Verbesserung. (Sch.) 2. Edel sei der Mensch, hilfreich und gut. (G.) 3. Unermeßlich und unendlich, liegst du vor mir ausgebreitet, altes, heiliges, ewiges Meer. (A. Gr.) 4. Ich will mich frei und glücklich träumen. (Sch.) 5. Der Alte war fremd in dieser Stadt, er fühlte sich einsam. (Hauff.) 6. Doch hatt' ich einen Bruder, den Bruder schlugt Ihr todt [tot]. (Seidl.) 7. So bleich hatte sie der Künstler selten gesehen.. (Ebers.) 8. In einem Thal, bei armen Hirten, erschien ....ein Mädchen, schön und wunderbar. (Sch.) 9. Er setzt die Krone golden ihr ins nußbraune Haar. (Uh.)

(121.) 1. Es war ihnen immer zweifellos, daß er eine geistige Macht ersten Ranges ... sei. (Raabe.) 2. Hilfe ist jedesmal das Kind eifrigen Bestrebens. (Benzel-Sternau.)

(123.) 1. Ein solcher düntelhafter und unbaterländischer Mensch hat Hochverrath [=rat] begangen. (Kloß.) 2. Der Fremde erkundigte sich nach den Besitzern verschiedener großen Gebäude. (G.)

---

\*sich fürchten vor.

(124.) 1. O, könntest du in meinem Innern lesen, wie wenig Vater und Sohn solch eines Ruhmes werth gewesen! (G.) 2. Viel goldene Bilder sah ich um mich schweben. (Körner.) 3. Welch anderer Schuld\* verklagt dich dein Gewissen? (Sch.) 4. Sie verlebten manchen saueren Tag. (Sch.) 5. Du wolltest allen diesen Glanz verlassen! (Sch.)

(125.) 1. Er war beim König zwei volle Stunden. (Sch.) 2. Da möcht' ich hinsinken auf die Kniee und rufen: du unendlicher lieber Vater, wie ist deine Welt so schön! (Koch.) 3. Günstig ist diese Lage für uns europäischen Räuber. (Herder.) 4. Du im Himmel, hilf mir armen, schwarzen Mann! (Claudius.) 5. Ja, und du wirfst auch mich armen Krüppel nicht ganz vergessen. (Ebers.)

(126.) 1. Er bringt sein treu altenglisch Herz zurück. (Sch.) 2. Es ist der Krieg ein roh, gewaltiam Handwerk. (Sch.)

(127.) 1. Wir sollen keine eigene Könige mehr haben, keinen eingeborenen Herrn. (Sch.) 2. Viele weiße Schwäne schwimmen still auf des Eurotas Wogen. (Müller.)

(128.) 1. Geendigt nach langem, verderblichen Streit, war die kaiserlose, die schreckliche Zeit. (Sch.) 2. Ueber Byrgos und Laranda hatte man die Besitzungen des christlich armenischen Fürsten Leo erreicht. (Raumer.) 3. Das ist ein seltsam wunderbares Zeichen! Es leben Viele, die das nicht gesehen. (Sch.)

(129.) 1. Liebe die Guten mit treuem Muth (Mute), dann hast du das Gute. (Hammer.) 2. Jeder Künstler ist ein Priester: das heißt, ein Verkündiger des Göttlichen. (Burton.) 3. Der Weise bekommt alles von sich, der Thor alles von anderen. (F. P. R.) 4. Reicher, frage nicht den Armen, wie er arm geworden ist. (Müller.) 5. Der Trieb der Selbsterhaltung erwacht, da ich etwas Kostbareres zu erhalten habe als mich. (Less.) 6. Ich bring' dir auch was Hübsches mit vom Thni. (Sch.) 7. Sie treten unter die Fenster, und empfangen, statt Almosen, Zuckerwerk, Nüsse und was man ihnen sonst Artiges geben mag. (G.)

(130.) 1. Nun trugen uns die Wellen still und sanft herunter. (Körner.) 2. Es ist leicht den Haß, schwer die Liebe, am schwersten die Gleichgültigkeit zu ertragen. (Börne.)

(140.) 1. Der Güter höchstes dürfen wir vertheidigen [ver-

\*See 219. 2.

theidigen] gegen Gewalt. (Sch.) 2. Alles Schöne ist sanft, daher sind die schönsten Völker die ruhigsten. (J. P. R.) 3. Der Haß zwischen zerfallenen Freunden ist gewöhnlich der grimmigste und unveröhnlichste. (Sch.) 4. Tapfer ist der Löwensieger, tapferer ist der Weltbezwinger, doch am tapfersten ist, wer sich selbst bezwang. (Herder.) 5. Ein edler Held ist, der fürs Vaterland, ein edlerer, der für des Landes Wohl, der edelste, der für die Menschheit kämpft. (Herder.) 6. In den Tropen sind die Gewächse von frischerem Grün, mit größeren und glänzenderen Blättern geziert, als in den nördlicheren Erdstrichen. (Hum.) 7. Der klare Bach scheint am schönsten in seinem ruhigen Lauf, das tiefe Meer am erhabensten in seiner Bewegung. (Sch.) 8. Ich sterbe! das ist bald gesagt und bald noch gethan. (G.) 9. Diese jungen Bäume, und es waren gerade die allerschönsten, behielten immer alle ihre Zweige. (Anderson.) 10. Jedes der Menschheit\* erwiesene Unrecht rächet aufs fürchterlichste sich selbst. (Herder.) 11. Allerliebst schossen die goldenen Sonnenlichter durch das dichte Tangengrün. (Hei.)

(144.) 1. Ich bin doch erschrecklich neugierig wie sie nur aussehen mag. (Körner.)

(145.) 1. Der Kronen würdig sein, ist mehr als Kronen tragen. (Kronegl.) 2. Die Bettler sind den Hunden feind, und die Hunde den Bettlern. (Spr.) 3. Es ist dem Menschen leichter und geläufiger zu schmeicheln als zu loben. (J. P. R.) 4. Den Wein aber trank er gleich aus den Fässern, ohne daß er ein Glas nöthig [nötig] hatte. (J. Gr.)

(146.) 1. Florenz ist reich an seinen Werken. (J. Gr.) 2. Er fühlte sich nun so arm an Gnade, an Gütern, und fremd in dem, was er von Jugend auf als sein Eigenthum [Eigenthum] betrachten konnte. (G.)

(147.) 1. Er kannte die Namen der auf dem Wege nach Valencia liegenden Städte. (Ebers.) 2. Außer den von Spanien mitgebrachten Soldaten, hatte Karl die vor Mailand siegreichen Truppen bei sich. (J. Gr.) 3. Diese Stadt lag auf der am nördlichsten ins Meer hervorragenden Spitze Afrika's, da, wo jetzt Tunis liegt. (Grube.)

---

\*See 222. 1b.

## THEME II.

## ADJECTIVES.

1. Who does not love old friends more than new ones? 2. The young man had to\* leave the city and go into a strange one. 3. Never had his home appeared to him so beautiful. 4. Now he was alone among strangers, and he felt himself sad and lonely. 5. But he found new friends, good and helpful (ones). 6. He had often dreamed himself rich and powerful; now he had become rich, but he was also old and unhappy. 7. He gave us a glass of good beer and a piece of black bread. 8. With the help of eager endeavor he became a very learned man. 9. What a spiritual power this man has been. 10. Has he truly committed such a treason? 11. Several strange men have asked after the owner of this building. 12. Such beautiful maidens appear seldom in our valley. 13. Many a noble man have these soldiers struck dead. 14. O, ye poor shepherds, what a happy year have I passed in your valley. 15. We poor men never see our king. 16. The king is good; he will surely help thee, poor unhappy man.

17. Forget not the poor and unhappy. 18. Only the eternal, the unending, is godlike. 19. The true artist must only love the eternally beautiful. 20. Have you brought me anything pretty? 21. You foolish children always want to have something new. 22. The fool does not understand anything, whatever wise thing one may say to him. 23. The most costly thing which I have to preserve is not my own life.

24. The two enemies look at each † other grimly. 25. I bear more easily the hatred of my enemy than his indifference. 26. The noblest man fights, not only for his fatherland, but for humanity. 27. The brave man vanquishes his enemies, but only the bravest can vanquish himself. 28. In the more northern countries the plants are smaller and less beautiful than in the tropics. 29. The

---

\*See 256. †155.4.

most terrible movements of the ocean are the most sublime. 20. The ocean is not always most beautiful when it is quietest. 31. These little trees which have kept all their twigs are charming. 32. I cannot praise a man quite unknown to me. 33. The brother, by three years younger, is taller than the older one. 34. The troops victorious at Tunis now had to go to the city lying on the most northern point of Africa.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES, III.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(152.) 1. Der Herr hat mein noch nie vergessen, vergiß, mein Herz, auch seiner nicht. (Gellert.) 2. Nicht meinethalben, sondern meiner Söhne wegen, seufzte ich in der finsternen Nacht: Herr, erhalte uns! (Less.)

(154.) 1. Da ist der Ring..... Geben sie her, sagte ich hastig und steckte ihn in der Zerstreuung an den Finger, ordentlich froh, ihn wieder zu haben. (Hey.) 2. Die Nelke soll man nicht verschmähen, sie ist des Gärtners Wonne. (G.) 3. Der Brief den du geschrieben, er macht mich gar nicht bang. (Hei.) 4. Alles ging durch ein gutes Weib, welches nicht fern wohnte. (G.) 5. Denn mein Liebchen, sie schreibt was ich ihr dichtete. (G.) 6. Der Wille ist gut, aber Wind und Wetter kämpfen dagegen. (Sch.) 7. Mancher ist ein Bösewicht geworden, weil er sah, daß man ihn dafür hielt. (Campe.) 8. Hier ein Exemplar des Almanachs. Humboldt sendet mir derer drei aus Berlin. (Sch.) 9. Erlauben Sie mir eine Frage, vielleicht macht die Beantwortung derselben das Weitere überflüssig. (Spiel.) 10. Schon fängt es an zu dämmern. (Geibel.) 11. Es regnet! Gott segnet die Erde, die so durstig ist. (Enslin.) 12. Es waren einmal fünfundzwanzig Zinnsoldaten. (Anderson.) 13. Es war aber eine Art von Verwirrung über die Dienerschaft gekommen. (Kewald.) 14. Da war es kalt und finster, es schriegen die Raben vom Dach. (Müller.) 15. Die Leute, welche im Dorfe wohnten, ahnten gar nichts davon; denn es waren ganz gewöhnliche Leute. (Reander.) 16. Der Haß ist partiisch, aber die Liebe ist es noch mehr. (Less.) 17. Mit meinen

Arbeiten darin bin ich viel besser zufrieden, als ich es mit denen im vorigen Jahre bin. (Sch.) 18. Dann wären wir Sklaven, und verdienten es zu sein. (Sch.) 19. Ist's jener Tantalus, den Jupiter zu Rath und Tafel zog? Er ist es. (G.) 20. Wer ist da? fragte er. Ich bin es, antwortete die Königin. (Kander.)

(155.) 1. Nichts Wahres läßt \* sich von der Zukunft wissen. (Sch.) 2. Er selbst rückte sich den zweiten Fauteuil heran. (Spiel.) 3. Nach der Juli-Revolution erwählte er sich Paris zum Wohnorte. (Raube.) 4. Und nun müssen wir uns trennen. Wann wir uns wiedersehen—wer weiß es? (Spiel.) 5. Man würde einander besser kennen, wenn sich nicht immer einer dem anderen gleichstellen möchte. (G.) 6. Sie hielten sich lange fest aneinander gedrückt und schämten sich ihrer Thränen nicht. (Sch.) 7. Verliere dich selbst nur nicht, dann bleibst du bei jedem Verluste reich genug. (Gebauer.) 8. Der Geizige gönnt sich selber die unschuldigsten Vergnügungen nicht. (Krügge.)

(156.) 1. Wiegt die Glock' mir aus der Gruft. (Sch.) 2. Wer verdarb mir wieder dieses Kapitel? (Koch.) 3. Der Fremde warf die Cigarre weg, die ihm längst ausgegangen war. (Sch.) 4. Nun greift mir zu und seid nicht faul. (G.)

### THEME III.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. If you have the ring, do not forget to give it to me. 2. I gave it to the child and he put it on his finger. 3. I was very much rejoiced to receive your letter; if it was not long, it was very well written. 4. The young girl wrote it, and she writes me many letters. 5. Give it to me. I want to read what is † in it. 6. You may read it, but you must not speak of it. 7. Is not this man a scamp? I have always held him for one. 8. Allow me a question about it. 9. Not this man, but a brother of his is the scamp. 10. I know his history, do not speak to me of it. 11. It began to rain and it became so cold and dark that we were afraid. 12. There were many people in the

\* See 343. L5d. † steht.

house, but they only screamed and did nothing, for they were very stupid people. 13. They were afraid, and I was \* too, but I said nothing of it. 14. He is not contented with his work, but we are. 15. When I asked: is it you? he answered: it is not I, it is we. 16. If you are unhappy, you deserve to be so. 17. He chose himself a friend who was worthy of his love. 18. But now they have parted, and they are ashamed of their friendship. 19. They hate each other and wish never to see each other again. 20. He is a bad man; he is only a friend to himself. 21. When one loses ones self one has lost every thing. 22. Don't be lazy and don't spoil my work for me.

#### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES IV.

##### POSSESSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

(159.) 1. Dieß Frauenschicksal ist vor allen meinß. (G.) 2. Thue deine Pflicht, ich werde meine thun. (G.) 3. Mein Geheimniß [=niß] kann euch gar nichts nützen, wenn ich nicht zuvor daß eure habe. (Reff.) 4. Ich freue mich meines Lebens † in dieser Gegend, die für solche Seelen geschaffen ist, wie die meine. (G.)

(160.) 1. Seitdem der König seinen Sohn verloren, vertraut er Wenigen‡ der Seinen mehr. (G.) 2. Warum sollten wir nicht wünschen, neben den Unfrigen zu ruhen? (G.) 3. Da bin ich wieder! Daß ist meine Hütte! Ich stehe wieder auf dem Meinigen! (Sch.)

(161.) 1. Der Ernst, welcher ihm auf der Stirn lag und aus den Augen schaute, gab ihm das Ansehen eines Mannes. (Ebers.) 2. Todt [tot] lag er da in seinem Palaste, ihm zu Häupten stand das unvollendete Gemälde. (H. Gr.) 3. Noch zittert ihr der Schreck durch jede Nerve. (Reff.) 4. Kurz vorher war einem in Florenz der Kopf abgeschlagen worden. (H. Gr.)

(166.) 1. (Sie sind) meine Kinder und die meiner lieben Schwägerin, antwortete der Geistliche. (Frei.) 2. Der hat den Schild, deß ist die Kron', der wird das Kleinod bringen! (Uh.)

---

\* that es. † 219.3. ‡ 222.II.



3. Die Bescheidenheit sollte die Tugend derer sein, denen die anderen fehlen. (Brümmer.) 4. Der ist's, daß ist er! Der rettete die Königin. (Sch.) 6. Viele verwechseln gar die Mittel und den Zweck, erfreuen sich an jenen, ohne diesen im Auge zu behalten. (G.) 6. Nur einzelnen Günstlingen theilte [teilte] er Dies oder Jenes zur Ansicht mit. (F. Gr.) 7. Waren das die Lippen,\* die er so oft geküßt,\* dieß die goldigen Haare, die er so oft um seine Hand gewickelt? (Frenzel.) 8. Die beweine nicht mehr, die schon zur Ruhe gegangen, die beweine, die fürchten den kommenden Tod. (Herder.) 9. Die in seiner Straße wohnten, kannten ihn alle. (Hey.) 10. Ja, das waren die Augen, die treuen klaren Augen, die er vorher gesehen. (Spiel.) 11. Das wollen alle Heroen sein, und keiner ist Herr von sich. (G.) 12. Bauer: „Gnädige Herren, einen Bissen und Trunk.“ Soldat: „Ei, das muß immer saufen und fressen.“ (Sch.)

(168-71.) 1. Demjenigen, der das Schreiben der Regierung überbringt, stößt er seinen Dolch in die Brust. (F. Gr.) 2. Sie (die Religion) ist wie das Meer, je mehr man dasselbe beobachtet, desto unendlicher scheint es. (Brümmer.) 3. Am meisten schadet der böse Rath [Rat] demselben, der ihn gegeben hat. (Spr.) 4. Roland ritt hinterm Vater her, mit dessen Speer und Schilde. (Uh.) 5. Die Jugend überwindet den Sturm der Leidenschaften, das Alter unterliegt demselben. (Spr.)

#### THEME IV.

##### POSSESSIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. He does not do his duty and I will not do mine. 2. The secret is ours, it cannot be of use to you, and it will never become yours. 3. I rejoice in the beauty † of this country, which seems to be created for me and mine. 4. Each one loves his own (people), his own (possession) best. 5. We travel no more, we live quietly among our own people. 6. He had the appearance of deep earnestness, but when I looked into his eyes I saw that he was

---

\* 439.3a. † 219.3.

laughing. 7. My hands tremble, fear penetrates every nerve, I cannot look him in the face. 8. What do you fear; he cannot cut off your head? 9. The fright has spoiled my pleasure, too. 10. These are my children, the others are those of my brother. 11. This (man) has all the virtues, to this one they are all lacking, even modesty. 12. He is always promising to tell us this or that thing, but he really has nothing to say to us. 13. These weep, because they fear death, those because they are not already gone to rest. 14. No, those are not my true friends, those I do not know. 15. These (fellows) want to be the friends of every one,\* but not one of them knows what friendship is. 16. That is the one who gave the bad advice to the government. 17. He is the same who brought us the writing. 18. His head will be cut off. 19. Youth rejoices in life,† age contemplates it.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES V.

#### INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

(173.) 1. Was ist der Erdenraum? Des Fleißigen. Was ist die Herrschaft? Des Verständigen. (Herder.) 2. Was verkürzt mir die Zeit? Thätigkeit. Was macht sie unerträglich lang? Müßiggang. (G.) 3. Wer ist ein unbrauchbarer Mann? Der nicht befehlen und nicht gehorchen kann. (G.) 4. Wodurch wird Würd' und Glück erhalten lange Zeit? Ich meine: durch nichts mehr als durch Bescheidenheit. (Kogau.)

(174.) 1. Welches Auge wacht über die Schicksale der Menschen? Welche gerechte Hand theilt [teilt] die Güter des Lebens aus? (Engel.) 2. Welch' ein Gefühl mußt du, o großer Mann, bei der Verehrung dieser Menge haben. (G.)

(175.) 1. Was wecken aus dem Schlummer mich für süße Klänge doch? (Uh.) 2. Was für ein göttlicher Mensch müßte der nicht werden, der sich entschloß,‡ immer treu zu sein! (Jacobi.)

(176.) 1. Willst du, mein Sohn, frei bleiben, so lerne was Rechtes! (G.) 2. Wer keine Plage hat, der macht sich welche.

---

\* eines Jeden. † genitive case. ‡ 332.3.

(Kotzebue.) 3. Er wird Geld von mir borgen, wenn er selbst welches zu verleihen hat. (Reff.) 4. Was sitzt Ihr hier auf dem nassen Stein, Mutter Sami? fragte ich. (Fey.) 5. Was weint ihr, Mädchen? Was klagt ihr, Weiber? (Körner.) 6. O Cloti, was ist das Kind schön! (Fey.) 7. Was dieses Mädchen Weinerlich wird, dachte sie. (Frei.)

(178.) 1. Nathalie hatte verschiedene Blumen von seltsamer Gestalt gebrochen, die Wilhelmen völlig unbekannt waren, und nach deren Namen er fragte. (G.) 2. Die Heldengröße, mit der sie starben, nahm für den Glauben ein, für welchen sie starben. (Sch.) 3. Nicht an die Güter hänge dein Herz, die das Leben vergänglich zieren! (Sch.) 4. Man kannte den Feind vollkommen, dem man jetzt gegenüber stand. (Sch.)

(179.) 1. Wer allzuviel begehrt, hat alles oft verloren. (Nichtwer.) 2. Die Menschen sind nicht immer, was sie scheinen. (Reff.) 3. Was ich vermochte, hab' ich gern gethan. (G.) 4. Wem sie erscheint, wird aus sich selbst entrückt. Wem sie gehörte, ward zu hoch beglückt. (G.) 5. Laß vor allen Dingen dir erzählen . . . was in Babylon für einen schönen Stoff ich dir gekauft. (Reff.) 6. Ich liebe, wer mir Gutes thut. (Sch.) 7. Wer sie (die Nachricht) hörte, schreibt Basari, dem begann der Boden unter den Füßen zu wanken, der wurde bleich wie der Tod. (F. Gr.) 8. Wen das Glück zu stürzen denkt, der wird oft erst von ihm erhoben. (Kogan.) 9. Wer nie sein Brod mit Thränen aß . . . der kennt euch nicht, ihr himmlischen Mächte! (G.) 10. Nun, lieben Freunde, wer rathen [raten] kann, der rathe [rate]. (Reisewitz.) 11. Was dem Herzen gefällt, das suchen die Augen. (Spr.) 12. Wessen Leben keinen freut, wessen Umgang jeder scheut, der hat nicht viel frohe Zeit. (Spr.) 13. Wer mir bringt die Kron', er soll sie tragen. (Sch.) 14. In der Hütte steht ein Lehnstuhl . . . der darauf sitzt, der ist glücklich. (Fey.) 15. Der ist der Herr der Erde, wer ihre Tiefe mißt. (Novalis.) 16. Wer uns bezahlt, das ist der Kaiser. (Sch.) 17. Da fing er an zu laufen, was er laufen konnte. (Veander.) 18. Was ihrer auch warten mag, und wo ihr sie wieder sehen werdet, ihr werdet sie in Frieden wiedersehen. (Fey.) 19. Was ich auch in diesem Jahre verloren habe, meine Selbstachtung habe ich nicht verloren. (Frei.) 20. Wer du auch seist,\* ich

wünsche Rettung dir. (Sch.) 21. Das Beste, was du wissen kannst, darfst du dem Buben doch nicht sagen. (G.) 22. Alles ist zu ertragen,\* was nur einen Augenblick dauert. (J. P. R.) 23. Das Wenige, was er sprach, wurde mit einem widrigen Ton ausgestoßen. (Sch.) 24. Es ist nicht irdische Musik, was mich so freudig macht. (Uh.) 25. Es ist nur eins, was uns retten kann. (Sch.)

(180.) 1. Hier liegt mir etwas auf dem Herzen, worüber ich aufgeklärt zu sein wünschte.† (G.) 2. Wer weiß woraus das Brunnlein quillt, woraus wir trinken werden. (Reim.) 3. Ich stehe von dem Krankenbette auf, auf das mich der Schmerz über den Verlust meines Mannes warf. (Vess.) 4. Womit einer sündigt, damit wird er gestraft. (Spr.) 5. Hochmuth [Hochmut] ist's, wodurch die Engel fielen, woran der Höllegeist den Menschen faßt. (Sch.)

(181.) 1. Warum bin ich's allein, der ungeliebt, auf ewig liebt? (Kloß.) 2. Seid mir begrüßt, befreundete Schaaren, die mir zur See Begleiter waren! (Sch.) 3. Du Echo, holde Stimme dieses Thals, die oft mir Antwort gab auf meine Lieder, Johanna geht! (Sch.) 3. Und Sie selbst, der Sie den Feiertag an Ihrem Schreibtisch zu heiligen pflegen, wie steht es mit Ihrem großen Werke? (Heg.)

(182.) Ein Reiter, so nur ein Pferd hat, soll nicht Hafer nehmen für zwei. (Spr.) 2. Heilig ist das Gesetz, so dem Künstler Schönheit gebietet. (Sch.) 3. Wer da tadelt, der fühlt sich demjenigen überlegen, gegen den er sich auf den Richterstuhl setzt. (Ebers.) 4. Lebe wohl, du heilige Schwelle, wo da wandelt Liebchen traut. (Hei.)

### THEME V.

#### INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Who are the happy? the industrious. 2. What are the greatest virtues? Industry and modesty. 3. For what did you hold him; who told you that he was a useless man? 4. Of what did he command you to speak?

\* 343.III.1b. † 332.3a.

5. What sweet tones wake me from my slumber! 6. Whose eye watches over the fates of men? 7. What a feeling of freedom I had, when I came out of the crowd! 8. What kind of feelings did you have when they waked you? 9. What kind of a man will this boy become, if he learns nothing right? 10. What can he learn when he has no books? 11. Why does he weep and complain? If he has no books I will give him some. 12. How stupid he is becoming; he will never learn anything right. 13. The gentleman, after whose name you ask, is quite unknown to me. 14. All those whom I loved and with whom I have lived, have died. 15. The people among whom I now live, are the children of those whom I knew formerly. 16. He who has lost his friends is unhappy and lonely. 17. What I have bought for you I will give you. 18. I love those who love me. 19. I will tell you what it is and to whom it belongs. 20. Tell me what sort of beautiful things you saw in Babylon. 21. What I have seen, that I am unable to tell you. 22. He who brings me the bad news, he must advise me. 23. What he advises, that does not please me. 24. He whom fortune has never lifted up, he will never be cast down. 25. He who has lost his self-respect, has lost everything. 26. Whatever the emperor may pay me, I shall be contented. 27. Whoever may have come,\* I wish to see him. 28. We have lost all that which made us happy. 29. He told us nothing we did not know already. 30. There is only one thing which is not to be borne. 31. It is not my self-respect which I have lost this year. 32. You will soon see the brook of which you have heard, and from which you can drink. 33. The arm-chair in which I was sitting stood beside the sick-bed in which the poor woman lay. 34. It was pride through which she sinned. 35. I, who have lost my husband, have been sufficiently punished. 36. Why am I punished, who am already so unhappy? 37. Happy man, who has never yet lost a friend. 38. Was

---

\* 332.5a.

it you, who gave me the answer to my questions. 39. And you yourself, who have always lived in this valley, why do you now leave it? 40. You I blame who seat yourself upon a judgment seat.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES VI.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND NUMERALS.

(185.) 1. Man hatte ihn gewählt, ohne recht zu wissen was man that. (§. Gr.) 2. Was man nicht weiß, das eben braucht man, und was man weiß, kann man nicht brauchen. (G.) 3. Dem Nächsten muß man helfen. (Sch.) 4. Ein lieber Weg wird einem nicht lang; gern geht man gewohnte Straßen. (Kud.)

(186.) 1. Niemand lebt so, wie er möchte, jeder lebt nur, wie er kann. (Ortlepp.) 2. Aller Welt Freund ist Niemandes Freund. (Spr.) 3. Verschlüssener Mund und offene Augen haben noch Niemandem geschadet. (Spr.)

(188.) 1. Ja, dann kommt etwas Besseres, noch weit Schöneres! (Andersen.) 2. Nichts Wahres läßt sich von der Zukunft wissen.\* (Sch.) 3. Wer Nichts aus sich macht, ist Nichts. (Spr.)

(189.) 1. So lebte ich etliche glückliche Jahre. (Wieland.)

(190.) 1. Er (der Soldat) muß sich alles nehmen, man giebt ihm nichts; und jeglichem† gezwungen zu nehmen, ist er jeglichem ein Greuel. (Sch.) 2. Das ist der größte Vortheil [Vorteil] für die Menschheit, daß jeder für die anderen alles thue.‡ (Schefer.)

(191.) 1. Dann muß ich mein Leben lassen, ich und mancher Kamerad. (Uh.) 2. Wer vieles bringt, wird manchem etwas bringen. (G.)

(192.) 1. In bunten Bildern wenig Klarheit, viel Irrthum [Irrtum] und ein Fünkchen Wahrheit, so wird der beste Trank gebraut. (G.) 2. Vieles wünscht sich der Mensch, und doch bedarf er nur wenig. (G.) 3. Ich könnte ihm recht viel Böses dafür thun. (Sch.) 4. Mehrere neue Dörfer kamen zum Vorschein. (G.)

---

\* 848.I.5d. † 222.I.3 and 357. ‡ 333.3c.

(193.) 1. Aus all den fremden Stämmen . . . finden die Schwyzer Männer sich heraus. (Sch.) 2. Ich grub's mit allen den Würzlein aus. (G.) 3. Sie könnten mir mit all Ihrem guten Willen nicht helfen. (Fey.) 4. Alles beugte sich vor dem Bilde des Gekreuzigten, und auch Zeit warf sich nieder. (Körner.) 5. Grüßen Sie alles, was Sie umgiebt. (Sch.) 6. Sind das alle eure Kinder? fragte der König. (Frei.) 7. Die Nacht ist eingetreten, und ein jeder wünscht sich zu eigener Ruhe Glück. (G.) 8. Wir müssen jetzt alle fünf Jahre umlernen, wenn wir nicht ganz aus der Mode kommen wollen. (G.)

(194–195.) 1. Was dem einen recht ist, ist dem anderen billig. (Sch.) 2. Bis das Essen fertig wird, wollen wir eins trinken. (G.) 3. Trink aus dem bekränzten Becher. So! noch eins! (Kleist.) 4. Der Winter ist ein düsterer Gast, und enget einem das Herz. (Sch.) 5. Ich arbeite gar nichts, und kann keine sechs Zeilen hintereinander schreiben. (Frei.) 6. Wenn ich nur selbst kein Teufel wär! (G.) 7. Wir sind in keine schlechten Hände gefallen. (Sch.)

## THEME VI.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND NUMERALS.

1. One lives as one can, not as one would like to. 2. People do not always say what they think. 3. What we need, we never have. 4. They have chosen no one yet, but they must soon choose some one. 5. The good man will always help one, even when he is himself unhappy. 6. This man helps no one, he has injured every one.\*

7. One does not need to say anything true, if one only can say something interesting. 8. Each one takes what he can for himself. 9. We have lost many a comrade and this day will again bring death to many a one. 10. They say much evil of the soldier, but the soldier needs little and is contented with little. 11. I have known several soldiers; they were all good men. 12. Of all the pic-

---

\* einen Jeden.

tures I like only one. 13. Every one admires the pictures, but not all understand them. 14. I buy every year a few pictures. 15. All these old clothes have gone quite out of style. 16. I love this little village with all its old houses. 17. We have drank two glasses of beer already, but we will drink another. 18. I always drink another beer. 19. The one drinks too much, the other will not drink at all. 20. I have not written him a single line ; I am no friend of his.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES VII

#### FORMS OF DECLENSION. NUMBERS.

(211.) 1. Weder von Mäſern noch Windblattern blieb ich verſchont. (G.) 2. Die Mütter erſchienen, den Säugling im Arme. (G.) 3. Drei Tag und drei Nacht hat die Schlacht geſtrach. (Rück.) 4. Im ſüdindiſchen Archipel hat die Blüthe [Blüte] der Rafflesia faſt drei Fuß Durchmeſſer und wiegt über 14 Pfund. (Sum.) 5. Im April ſind die 10,000 Mann Malateſta's auf die Hälſte zuſammengeſchmolzen. (S. Gr.) 6. In der Mitte bleibt für die Wagen nur der Raum von zwölf biß vierzehn Schritten. (G.) 7. Dieſe Dame hat einen Ohrring von ungefähr 3,400 Thaler Werth [Wert] verloren. (Seh.) 8. Die größeren Jungen hatten beim Rektor von 10 biß 11, und wir kleinen von 11 biß 12 Uhr Privatſtunde. (Noch.)

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES VIII

#### THE NOMINATIVE.

(212.) 1. Maria Stuart wird als eine Königin und Heldin ſterben! (Sch.) 2. Sie ſind das Höchſte, waß Michelangelo als Bildhauer geſchaffen hat. (S. Gr.) 3. Seine Abſicht war, daß Alexandro, ſein Sohn oder Neffe, Herzog von Florenz würde.\* (S. Gr.)

(213.) 1. Ich heiße der reichſte Mann in der getauften Welt. (Sch.) 2. Karloß iſt geſonnen, der Unglückſeligſte in dieſer Welt

---

\* §33.3e.



zu bleiben. (Sch.) 3. Ich wähle, was das Bessere mich dünkt. (Sch.) 4. Sie hätt'\* es nie von ihm erfahren, daß sie eine Christin geboren sei, und keine Jüdin? (Löff.) 5. Nicht ein Kind bin ich erschienen. (G.) 6. Das Leben ist kein Traum, es wird nur zum Traume durch die Schuld des Menschen. (Feuchtersleben.) 7. Dein Vater ist zum Schelm an mir geworden. (Sch.) 8. Im Ackerbau ist der Mensch zum Menschen geworden. (Masino.)

(214.) 1. Glückseliger Mensch, der ruhig an der Seite des Freundes schlummert, ohne Ahnung von Verräther [Verräter]. (Benzel-Sternau.) 2. Willkommen, o silberner Mond, schöner, stiller Gefährte der Nacht! (Klop.)

### THEME VII.

#### NUMBERS AND THE NOMINATIVE.

1. The small-pox did not spare me. 2. These blossoms are several feet long and weigh many pounds. 3. Malatesta left Florence with 10,000 men; in April he had only 5,000 men. 4. The street is only 30 paces broad and 3 miles long. 5. We remained in the wagon from 2 to 3 o'clock. 6. Elizabeth, queen of England and cousin of † Mary Stuart, was her bitterest enemy. 7. Carlos, the son of the king of Spain, was a most unhappy prince. 8. The duke appears to be a great hero. 9. Michael Angelo was born a poor boy, but he became the most famous sculptor of Italy. 10. This man is called a Christian, but he will always remain a Jew. 11. He has become the betrayer of his friend. 12. Happy man, who has chosen the highest. 13. Beautiful, unhappy queen, thou didst die like a heroine and a Christian.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES IX.

#### THE GENITIVE.

(216.) 1. Des Fürstens Schatz liegt am sichersten in des Volkes Händen. (G.) 2. Bei Gott und Menschen sind verhaßt

---

\* 333.7. † 66.4c.

des Hochmuths [Hochmuts] Zeichen. (Rüd.) 3. Vollkommenes Glück ist nicht des Menschen Loos [Los]. (Wieland.) 4. Die Schrift ist die jüngere Schwester der Sprache. (Benzel-Sternau.) 5. Ein großer Theil [Teil] unserer Fehler läßt sich verbessern und wieder gut machen. (Reinhard.) 6. Das Leben ist der Güter höchstes nicht, der Uebel größtes aber ist die Schuld. (Sch.) 7. Der Worte sind genug gewechselt. (G.) 8. Leonardo erhielt den Titel eines Malers Seiner Aller-christlichsten Majestät. (H. Gr.) 9. Andrea del Sarto\* fehlte wenig, um ein Genie ersten Ranges zu heißen. (H. Gr.) 10. Nach Krieg und Brand kommt Gottes Segen ins Land. (Spr.) 11. Es ist an dir, das Werk talentvoller Schüler zu bessern. (Ebers.) 12. Die Erkenntniß [Erkenntniß] des Irrthums [Irrtums] ist der erste Schritt zur Wahrheit. (Krummacker.) 13. Da sind ihrer viele, große und kleine, rief sie. (Frei.) 14. Es waren ihrer sieben. (Ebers.) 15. Lieber Conti, wie darf unser einer seinen Augen trauen? (Reff.) 16. Die schönsten Träume von Freiheit werden im Kerker geträumt. (Sch.) 17. Alles in der Welt läßt sich ertragen, nur nicht eine Reihe von guten Tagen. (G.) 18. O, das ist ein Freund von unserm Herrn Major. (Reff.) 19. Nun holt mir eine Kanne Wein. (Freiligrath.) 20. Besser ein Loth [Lot] Freiheit, als zehn Pfund Gold. (Spr.) 21. Ich setzte mich zu den Bauern unten in der Schenkstube und trank mein Glas Bier. (Seh.) 22. Das Stück Tapete ist eine Elle breit und hält 20 Ellen. (G.) 23. Da ich wenig Glauben habe, muß ich darauf sehen, mich mit ein bißchen guten Werke in den Himmel hinauszuschwindeln.† (Seh.) 24. Ich gebe jedem dreißig Acker Landes. (Sch.) 25. Ich brachte die Flaschen Weins und Bieres hervor. (G.) 26. Am zwanzigsten Oktober fiel Mastrecht in die Hände der Spanier. (Ebers.)

(217.) 1. Er stand da wie ein Verbrecher, keines Wortes mächtig. (Seh.) 2. Wenn Ihr mich Eueres Vertrauens würdig achtet, so möget Ihr mir mit Eurer Geschichte vergelten. (Hauff.) 3. Die Edelste bleibt nicht der Fesseln frei. (Seume.) 4. Ihr seid unwürdig des hohen Genusses der Elternfreude, die ihr euren Eltern statt Freude nur Jammer geboten. (Bischoffe.) 5. Jeder Bittende ist seines Beistandes gewiß. (Ebers.) 6. Die ganze

\* dative case. † 346.2

Weisheit von jungen Thoren ist keinen Tag Erfahrung werth [wert]. (Pfeffel.) 7. Da steht von schönen Blumen die ganze Wiese so voll. (G.)

(219.) 1. Wie viele Menschen klagt man der Bosheit an, indes man sie nur der Dummheit anklagen sollte. (Jacobs.) 2. Weil ihr mich meines Lebens habt gesichert, so will ich euch die Wahrheit gründlich sagen. (Sch.) 3. Ihr zwingt die Ritter, den Schuldigen des Mordes loszusprechen. (Sch.) 4. Nichts kann ihn seines Schwurs entbinden. ( Wieland.) 5. Man nöthigte [nötigte] ihn, seine Unterthanen aller ihrer Pflichten zu entlassen. (Sch.) 6. Leben Sie recht wohl, freuen Sie sich des Lebens und Ihres Werkes. (Sch.) 7. Seines Handwerks soll sich keiner schämen. (Spr.) 8. Es haben die Großen dieser Welt sich der Erde bemächtigt. (G.) 9. Der Herzog kann sich des Gedränges kaum entledigen. (Sch.) 10. Er freute sich seiner raschen That. (Ebers.) 11. Ich schäme mich der Unerfahrenheit und meiner Jugend nicht. (G.) 12. Darob erbarmt's den Hirten des alten, hohen Herrn. (Uh.) 13. Gott erbarme sich des Landes! (Sch.) 14. Sie bedürfen in der That der Ruhe. (Eindau.) 15. Ein tugendhafter Mann denkt nie des Todes, er denkt des Lebens. (Rüd.) 16. Die Welt könnte seiner Wohlthaten genießen, und des Gebers vergessen? (G.) 17. Die Dienste der Großen sind gefährlich und lohnen der Mühe, des Zwanges, der Erniedrigung nicht, die sie kosten. (Less.) 18. Ich weiß, daß Sie im Ernst sprechen, und doch ist es mir fast, als\* wollten Sie meiner spotten. (Spiel.) 19. Laß mich der neuen Freiheit genießen. (Sch.) 20. Gedenk der Armen zu jeder Frist. (Claudius.) 21. Er achtete nicht der warmen Sonne und der frischen Luft. (Anderson.) 22. Es schont der Krieg auch nicht das zarte Kindlein in der Wiege. (Sch.) 23. Des Morgens denk an deinen Gott. (Spr.)

(220.) 1. Ich habe dieser Tage den Homer zur Hand genommen. (Sch.) 2. Leider weiß ich noch nicht, ob ich Montags kommen kann. (G.) 3. Der Prinz hatte eines Tages mit seinem Gefolge die Gallerie besucht. (Hauff.) 4. Flavio stürzte hinein in schauderhafter Gestalt, verworrenes Hauptes, zersehten Kleides. (G.) 5. Er will eilenden Fußes vorüber fliehen. (Sch.) 6.

Bei dem Pfarrhose pflegte der Herr jedesmal anzuhalten, so oft er des Weges fuhr. (Frei.) 7. Leichten Kaufs ist der Ruhm nicht zu haben. (Herder.) 8. Siehe wie schwebenden Schwungs im Tanze die Paare sich drehen. (Sch.) 9. Deine Arbeiten sind mehr eines Bildhauers, als eines Goldschmieds. (G.) 10. Elizabeth ist meines Stammes, meines Geschlechts und Ranges. (Sch.) 11. Ich habe ihn ausgeschlagen, und nun ist meines Bleibens hier nicht länger. (Sch.) 12. Meyer hat geschrieben und ist recht gutes Muths [Muts]. (G.) 13. Im ersten Augenblick war er Willens abzuschreiben. (Sch.) 14. Sie tranken des köstlichen Bischofs. (Boß.) 15. Gebraucht der Zeit, sie flieht so schnell von hinnen. (Sch.) 16. Ein fleißiger Mann stirbt niemals Hungers. (Claudius.) 17. Sei guten Muths [Muts], sprach der Greis, Ihr werdet nicht dieses Lagers sterben. (Grube.) 18. Wir thun, was unsers Amtes. Fort mit ihm! (Sch.) 19. Dieses Haus ist meines Herrn, des Kaisers. (Sch.) 20. Böse Zunge und böse Ohren sind des Teufels. (Spr.) 21. Eduards werd' ich nie. (G.) 22. O des Glücklichen, dem es vergönnt ist, eine Lust mit euch zu athmen [atmen]! (Sch.) 23. Psui des Bösewichts! (Herder.)

### THEME VIII.

#### THE GENITIVE.

1. The prince's life lies in the hand of God. 2. Joy and sorrow are the companions of mankind through life. 3. Each one of our faults is hateful. 4. Pride is the greatest of faults. 5. The name of the greatest painter of Italy was Leonardo. 6. He was a painter of the first rank. 7. Italy is the country of painters and of sculptors. 8. The greatest part of his work is\* in Paris. 9. The description of these paintings is very interesting to me. 10. There are only a few of them in my country. 11. The friends of my children are also my friends. 12. The young man's dreams were dreams of freedom and of happiness. 13. He drank several glasses of beer and ate two pounds of meat as he sat in the bar-room. 14. Get me a bit of

---

\* befindet sich.

bread. 15. Each one had twenty acres of good land. 16. The first of February he went to Berlin. 17. He was unworthy of freedom. 18. We are weary of this man's stories. 19. The best man never remains free from faults. 20. Every young fool is sure of his own wisdom. 21. He is my enemy, for he robbed me of hope. 22. I rejoice in his friendship and love. 23. Why did you release him from his work. 24. They accused him of murder, but the prince has secured him his life. 25. The duke gained possession of his confidence and then forced him to tell him all. 26. He is not ashamed of his deeds. 27. The duke took pity on his youth and inexperience. 28. He needed his kindnesses, for he was poor and ill. 29. You can never quietly enjoy your good fortune, unless you remember the poor and wretched. 30. He heeded not the words of his parents, and mocked at their love. 31. Our happiness in this world does not reward (us) the trouble which it costs. 32. The young man rejoices in life and thinks not of death, but death does not spare even the youngest. 33. In summer we can travel, but in winter we must stay at home. 34. We went one day to see the old man, but we did not find him. 35. With fresh courage he went on his way. 36. Our friends are not all of the same age with us. 37. Your words are more an enemy's than a friend's. 38. This lady is of high rank and noble race. 39. They were of good courage when we went away. 40. I do not believe that they will die of hunger. 41. Alas for the friends whom I have lost! 42. Alas for the happy days which are now past.\*

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES X.

#### THE DATIVE.

(222.) 1. Den eignen Glauben sollst du dir nicht lassen rauben; allein auch rauben sollst du keinem seinen Glauben.

---

\* vorbei.

(Müd.) 2. Königin Sophie Charlotte zählte 37 Jahre, als sie der Tod 1705 ihrem königlichen Gemahl, ihrem einzigen Sohn raubte. (Koser.) 3. Dem Friedlichen gewährt man gern den Frieden. (Sch.) 4. Der rechte Heldensinn reicht fest, kühn und ruhig der Gefahr die Hand. (Benzel-Sternau.) 5. Der gute König leihet dem Weisen gern sein Ohr. (Klinger.) 6. Ich wollte ihr den Vogel wiederbringen. (Sch.) 7. Wenn du das thust, so wird Gott deinem Manne seine Sünden vergeben. (Leander.) 8. Gesang und Liebe in schönem Verein, sie erhalten dem Leben den Jugendschein. (Sch.) 9. Wer widersezt sich dem Befehl des Vogtes? (Sch.) 10. Wer sich dem Nothwendigsten [Nothwendigsten] widmet, geht am sichersten zum Ziele. (G.) 11. Du kannst dir jeden Feind versöhnen und verbinden. (Tscherning.) 12. Glaube nur, du hast viel gethan, wenn dir Geduld du gewöhnest an. (G.) 13. Ich habe mir's oft vorgenommen, ihr Herz zu reinigen. (Schlegel.) 14. Laß dir eine Kleinigkeit nicht näher treten, als sie werth [wert] ist. (Less.) 15. Da du der Welt nicht kannst entsagen, erobere sie dir mit Gewalt. (Platen.) 16. Er soll mir nicht lebendig gehen. (G.) 17. Diese gastfreien Männer hatten dem jungen Manne erlaubt, ihre Bilder so oft zu besuchen, als er immer wollte. (Hauff.) 18. Ich entließ den Freund und dankte ihm. (Hauff.) 19. Alle Könige Europas huldigten dem spanischen Namen. (Sch.) 20. Ich folge gern dem edlen Beispiel, das der jüngere giebt. (Sch.) 21. Wer Allen gefallen will, wird den Bessern immer mißfallen. (Schelling.) 22. Unser Gefühl für die Natur gleicht der Empfindung des Kranken für die Gesundheit. (Sch.) 23. Das Glück hilft denen, die sich selbst helfen. (Engel.) 24. Ich horche vergebens ihrer Stimme und ihrem kommenden Fußtritt. (Boß.) 25. Ich sehe dem Tode ruhig, oder vielmehr mit stillem Verlangen entgegen. (Wieland.) 26. Michelangelos Familie gehörte dem hohen Adel der Stadt nicht an. (H. Gr.) 27. Nur durch die dunkle Pforte geht man der Heimath [Heimat] zu. (Höltz.) 28. Wer dem Henker entläuft, entläuft darum dem Teufel noch nicht. (Spr.) 29. Vertrau dem guten Geist auch in der schlechten Stunde. (Müd.) 30. Eine innere Nothwendigkeit [Nothwendigkeit] treibt uns, in allem nach Wahrheit zu streben, auch wenn sie unseren Neigungen und Wünschen entgegensteht.

- ( Wieland.) 31. Welch gräßlichem Entschlusse gibst du Raum? (G.)  
 32. Ich habe Ihnen übrigens nicht Rede zu stehen, sondern Sie mir. (Winterfeld.) 33. Die Wahrheit hat von jeher nur den Schurken weh gethan. (Platen.) 34. Des Lebens ungemischte Freude ward keinem Irdischen zu Theil. (Sch.) 35. Wer ist ein Bruder mir? Der in der Noth [Not] mir zu Hilfe kommt. (Herder.)  
 36. Großen Steinen geht jederman aus dem Wege. (Hippel.) 37. Unser schnelles Glück hat uns dem Haß der Menschen bloßgestellt. (Sch.) 38. Noch gestern kündigt' man den Tod euch an, und heute wird euch plötzlich solche Freiheit! (Sch.) 39. Dem Vater grauset's, er reitet geschwind. (G.) 40. Guten ergeht es am Ende doch gut. (Sch.) 41. Es ziemt dem edlen Mann, der Frauen Wort zu achten. (G.) 42. Wie geht es dir denn? Wie geht es denn deinem Herrn Vater und deiner Frau Mutter? (Leander.) 43. Mir ist's, als hörte ich die Linden vor dem Fenster rauschen. (Körner.) 44. Wie ward mir, als ich ins Innere der Kirche trat! (Sch.) 45. Der eine sprach, wie weh wird mir! (Hei.) 46. Ich habe mir im Stillen gelobt, nur meinen Erinnerungen zu leben, und meinem Kinde. (Heh.) 47. Ein heilend Kraut wächst jeder Wunde. (Novalis.) 48. Dem Verbrecher glänzen, wie dem Besten, der Mond und die Sonne. (G.) 49. Gastfreundlich tönt dem Wanderer im friedlichen Dorfe die Abendglocke. (Hölderlin.) 50. Nun aber kamen dem Papste ganz andere Dinge zu Ohren. (F. Gr.) 51. Thränen standen dem alten Manne in den Augen, als er mit heftigen, dröhnenden Schritten die Gallerie verließ. (Hauff.) 52. Am 24ten Februar wurde dem Kaiser die Krone auf's Haupt gesetzt. (F. Gr.) 53. Seine Füße trugen ihn wie ein wackeres Pferd, dem der Reiter den Zügel über den Hals gehängt hat. (Heh.) 54. Die Reise nach Rom bot jetzt die Gelegenheit, dem neuen Herrn aus dem Wege zu gehen. (F. Gr.) 55. Leicht sei dir das Herz! (Schäfer.) 56. Sie wissen nicht, wie voll mir das Herz ist. (Heh.) 57. Er stört mich, weil ich ihm die Angst ansehe. (Koch.) 58. Ich zündete ihm sein Licht an, und stellte es auf den Tisch. (Heh.) 59. Sei mir gegrüßt, du ewiges Meer! wie Sprache der Heimath [Heimat] rauscht mir dein Wasser. (Hei.) 60. Es soll im Reiche keine fremde Macht mir Wurzel fassen. (Sch.)

(223.) 1. Verstellung ist der offenen Seele fremd. (Sch.) 2. Wahrheit ist der Seele nothwendig [notwendig]. (Less.) 3. Dem wahren Weltweisen muß der Tod niemals schrecklich sein. (Mendelssohn.) 4. Die Höflichkeit war dem Edlen, dem Bürger wie dem Bauer gemein. (G.) 5. Theuer [teuer] ist mir der Freund, doch auch den Feind kann ich nützen. (Sch.) 6. Sein Herz ist nicht dem Volke geneigt; warum ist alle Welt dem Grafen Egmont so hold? (G.) 7. Was ihn euch widrig macht, macht ihn mir werth [wert]. (Sch.) 8. Dem müden Wandermann ist doch die Nacht willkommen. (Rück.) 9. Der weltregierenden Macht ist kein einziger Mann unersetzlich. (Less.) 10. Aber daß ich mit der Zeit ihm unentbehrlich geworden bin, ist nicht wenig. (Her.) 11. Dennoch wurden dem Reisenden die Meilen des Weges zu lang. (Frei.) 12. Es ward mir schwer, mich von dem Weibe loszumachen. (G.) 13. Unser Herrgott kann's nicht allen recht machen. (Spr.) 14. Wie sich der Luß endlich umfah in der niedrigen Mansarde, ward's ihm schwül und furchtbar, wie in einer Todtenkammer [Totenkammer.] (Her.) 15. Einen Ton aus der Kehle zu bringen, war mir unmöglich. (Her.)

(225.) 1. Ach, mir zum Fluche wird mein Flehen erhört! (Sch.) 2. Dieser Umstand, welcher die Meinigen in große Noth [Not] versetzte, gerieth jedoch meinen Mitbürgern zum Vortheil [Vorteil]. (G.) 3. Mir zur Lust schuf er diese Gegend zum Paradiese. (Sch.) 4. Hoffnung ist Labsal dem wundesten Herzen. (Salis.) 5. Ich bin ein Diener dem Gebot des allergrößten Mannes. (Schlegel.) 6. Der Königliche Einnehmer blieb dem Doctor der liebste und vertraueste Umgang. (Frei.) 7. Heil den unbekannten, höheren Wesen, die wir ahnen! (G.) 8. Weh dir, verlassenes, armes Schiff! Weh allen Passagieren. (Grün.) 9. Dank diesen freundlich grünen Bäumen, die meines Kerfers Mauern mir verdecken! (Sch.)

### THEME IX.

#### THE DATIVE.

1. Death has robbed the king of all his children. 2. He forgave him and gave him his hand. 3. This youth has devoted himself to the service of God. 4. He op-



posed himself to the commands of the king, and now the king has undertaken to punish him. 5. He who reconciles his enemy to himself has done much. 6. I shall conquer the world for myself, or I shall give it up entirely. 7. He who opposes my commands shall not go from me alive. 8. He thanked me because I allowed him to see the pictures. 9. In vain does one help those who do not help themselves. 10. Nothing pleases him, and none can help him. 11. I wish to be like this noble man, and I will follow his example. 12. One cannot run away from death. 13. Trust not to others, but help yourself. 14. America belonged formerly to the Spanish kings. 15. He came to your help, and now you trust him no longer. 16. Health has never been my portion. 17. It does not beseem a noble man to explain himself to such a scamp. 18. I feel as if I were\* in a church. 19. How is she? 20. How glad I was when I heard of her happiness! 21. Tears stood in his eyes as he fell upon my neck. 22. The emperor's head was cut off. 23. We hung a beautiful necklace around the young girl's neck. 24. Quite other things have come to my ears. 25. My heart is too full, I cannot speak. 26. She lighted the old man's lamp and set it on the table for him. 27. This man is quite strange to me. 28. To the true philosopher no one is indispensable, although his friends are dear to him. 29. Politeness is necessary for the nobleman as for the peasant. 30. The way was too long for the weary wanderer, and it was hard for him to reach the village. 31. It was impossible for him to get away from the boy. 32. I was not inclined to him, but with time he has become dear to me. 33. It was hard for him to see about in the low mansard. 34. For thy honor I have done it. 35. The need of his fellow-citizens became an advantage for him. 36. Alas for me, poor, weary wanderer! 37. Thanks to my friends, who even in danger remained true to me.

---

\* See 332.2a.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XI

## THE ACCUSATIVE.

(227.) 1. Er that einige kräftige Schläge an die festgefugte Hofthür. (Heg.) 2. Sie wollten mich auch allein sprechen. (Sch.) 3. Er stirbt den langen Martertod. (Wieland.) 4. Und so ziehet hinaus, ihr Jünglinge, und kämpfet einen guten Kampf mit guten Waffen. (Heg.) 5. Thränen süßer Sehnsucht wirfst du weinen. (Sch.) 6. Er schläft den Schlaf des Gerechten. (Spr.) 7. Ja, du sonnest noch den Gram aus der Seele mir. (Rüd.) 8. Erhebet Gott, ihr Meere! Braust sein Lob! Ihr Flüße, rauschet es! (Meist.) 9. Sie nickte ihm kühl einen Gruß zu, und sah wieder von ihm weg. (Heg.) 10. Ein Hahn kräht den Morgen wach. (Rüd.) 11. Ich wähnte mich verlassen von aller Welt. (Sch.) 12. Du schiltst dich selbst, wenn du dein Kind schiltst ungezogen. (Rüd.) 13. Er rief mit lechzender Zunge: Vater, mich dürstet! (Klop.) 14. Sie kommt von ihrem Pfaffen, er sprach sie aller Sünden frei. (G.) 15. Den Wolf gelüstete nach dem fetten Bissen. (G.) 16. Mich wundert, daß ich dabei nicht noch träger und eitler geworden bin. (Heg.) 17. Es dünkt ihn, als läge er im Fieber. (G.) 18. Dieser Tag dünkte ihm der glorreichste seines Lebens. (G.) 19. Sag an, mein Ritter werth [wert], wer hat dich solche Streiche gelehrt? (Uh.) 20. Gleichwohl belohnte Peter diesen Mann, weil er ihn eine Kunst lehrte, welche ihm viel Vergnügen machte. (Engelien.) 21. Sie können denken, wie ich überrascht war, als er mir eine ältliche Dame vorstellte, und sie seine Gemahlin nannte. (Hauff.) 22. Man nennt den Storch, wegen seiner Ruhe und Besonnenheit, den Philosophen unter den Vögeln. (Masius.) 23. Man hieß ihn nur den tapferen Walthar, dort liegt sein Gut am Rhein. (Pfeffel.) 24. Während dieser gräßlichen Woche hörte er nicht auf, sich selbst einen Verräther [Verräter] zu schelten. (Ebers.) 25. Ein Esel schimpft den anderen einen Langohren. (Spr.) 26. Keinen Reimer wird man finden, der sich nicht den besten hielte. (G.) 27. Mache nicht schnell jemanden deinen Freund. (Claudius.) 28. Er war zum Cardinal gemacht worden im Jahre 20. (S. Gr.) 29. Auch den Eltern ist die Zeit rasch zur Sage geworden. (Frei.) 30. Scherzend erklärte

er ihn für seinen Gefangenen, und verlangte als Lösegeld das Versprechen, ein Bild für ihn zu malen. (S. Gr.) 31. Ihr habt mich stets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet. (Sch.) 32. Wähle nicht die Fliehende zum Freund, nicht die Bleibende zum Feind. (Sch.)

(229.) 1. Da ich den Roman los bin, so habe ich wieder zu tausend andern Dingen Lust. (G.) 2. Ein laufender Feind ist keinen Schuß Pulver werth [wert]. (Hippel.) 3. Die Durchmärsche der Franzosen war man zwar gewohnt. (G.) 4. Der Mann konnte in einer Viertelstunde zurück sein; Paul war es zufrieden. (Spiel.) 5. Also traten sie nebeneinander in das Stübchen und blieben beide den Gruß schuldig. (Heg.) 6. Etwas Rausch hält warm, und das Bier sind wir einmal gewohnt. (Frei.)

(230.) 1. In dieser ganzen Zeit verließ die Tochter sie nicht einen einzigen Tag. (Heg.) 2. Sie blieb den Abend still und feierlich. (Frei.) 3. Hat sie mir nicht meines Vaters Liebe schon gekostet? (Sch.) 4. So viele Ströme Bluts es den Barbaren gekostet hatte, ewige Königreiche in Europa zu gründen, so viel kostete es jetzt ihren christlichen Nachkommen, einige Städte in Syrien zu erobern. (Sch.) 5. Ich sah, daß er ein paar Mal die Lippen öffnete, und dann doch wieder schwieg. (Heg.) 6. Liebe Charlotte, sagte er, ich tanze heute keinen Schritt, als nur mit Ihnen. (Heg.) 7. Sie scherzen muthig [mutig] ihre Jahre hin, bis daß ein Elend kommt, dann zittern Sie den Rest der Tage. (Immerman.) 8. Jahre lang, Jahrhunderte lang, mag die Mumie dauern. (Sch.) 9. Weißt du noch, wie wir einmal eine Stunde lang über den Satz stritten, der mir so sehr gefiel? (Heg.) 10. Das unglückliche Weib ward gefragt, womit sie sich die vier Tage über genährt habe. (Humb.) 11. Sie reisen die Nacht durch, und kommen schon Morgen früh. (Heg.) 12. Den Bergpfad stieg ich steil hinauf. (Ebert.) 13. Er ging mit unsicheren, langsamen Schritten den Weg hinab. (Heg.) 14. Munter fährt der Frohe das Leben hinunter. (Tied.) 15. Herr Graf, es kommt ein Haufe das obere Thal hinab. (Uh.) 16. Es war wenige Jahre nach dem französischen Kriege. (Heg.) 17. Eine halbe Stunde darauf wurde die Thür von außen geöffnet. (Winterfeld.) 18. Von Goßlar ging ich den anderen Morgen weiter. (Heg.) 19. Gleich.

darauf trat der König ein, den Hut auf dem Haupte, den Stod in der Hand, offenbar nicht in guter Laune. (Frei.) 20. Stille Hoffnung im Gesicht, saß er da allein. (Sch.) 21. Ein Mann steht oben, krank und blaß, die Haare wild, das Auge naß. (Ebert.) 22. Ich eile fort.... vor mir den Tag und hinter mir die Nacht, den Himmel über mir und unter mir die Wellen. (G.) 23. Raum die Augen ausgerieben, Kinder, langweilt ihr euch schon. (G.) 24. Dieses gesagt, entblöpte der redliche Vater die Scheitel. (Boß.) 25. Dieses nun auf den Laotoon angewendet, so ist die Ursache klar. (Reff.)

### THEME X.

#### THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. I wish to speak to thee; come with me. 2. Why do you weep such bitter tears? Did he not die the death of the righteous? 3. I dreamed myself happy and gay; but when I awoke, I found myself deserted and alone. 4. Why does he scold the boy as rude? He is a very good boy. 5. He was hungry, but he had nothing to eat. 6. Methought I was lying\* sick. 7. Who taught you this art? 8. This old philosopher has taught me much, which gives me pleasure. 9. They call her the most beautiful of women, but she seems to me idle and vain. 10. Why did he choose me for his friend if he did not trust me? 11. Now he reviles me as a betrayer, but I am nevertheless true to him. 12. I still regard him as my friend, but he has declared me his enemy. 13. War made me his prisoner, but he always regarded me as a friend. 14. Now that we are rid of the war, we shall have time for other things. 15. They are accustomed to beer-drinking† and smoking, but we are tired of it.‡ 16. If he has read my novel, I am contented. 17. He remained here only a quarter of an hour. 18. It cost the Christians streams of blood to conquer a few small cities in Syria. 19. The visit cost me a whole day, but I shall visit her a couple of times

---

\* 333.3. † 340. ‡ haben es satt.

more. 20. She was silent a moment, then she said: I will not go a step, if you do not go along. 21. Thirty years did the war last. 22. I climbed up the mountain and remained an hour up there.\* 23. They asked me where I had remained over the hour. 24. A few moments after I saw the man coming down the valley. 25. The next evening I went away and on the seventh day I arrived at Goslar. 26. Hat in hand, he awaited the king. 27. On the mountain stands the old, deserted house, the doors and windows shut, the rooms empty, everything cold and sad.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XII

#### MODAL AUXILIARIES.

(253.) 1. Die Tugend darf des Ruhmes nicht. (Wieland.) 2. Gott gebe mir nur jeden Tag so viel ich darf zum Leben. (Claudius.) 3. Darf eine solche Menschenstimme hier ertönen? (G.) 4. Sie gehörten zu der feineren Art (von Spielleuten), wie sie sich auch vor Fürsten und Grafen hören lassen durften. (Ebers.) 5. Ich möchte gern reisen, aber ich darf in diesem Jahre nicht ans Reisen denken. (G.) 6. Der Glaub' ist ewig, irdisch ist die Form; sie dürfen wir verbessern, ja, wir sollen's. (Raupach.) 7. In einer solchen Tasche darf schon ein Loch sein, es fällt nichts heraus. (Hebel.) 8. Der Schwiegervater dürfte ihm nicht wieder vor Augen. (G.) 9. Keine Meinung ist gefährlich, sobald ein jeder die seinige frei sagen darf. (Jacobi.) 10. Es dürfte wohl so kommen, wie ich gedacht habe. (G.) 11. Es dürfte nicht schwer sein, das nachzuweisen. (G.) 12. Er erzählte sich Geschichten, wie sein Freund Werner ihn überraschen könnte, daß Mariane vielleicht erscheinen dürfte. (G.)

(254.) 1. Verachtung hab' ich nie ertragen können. (G.) 2. Liebe Francisca, ich habe dich noch nicht willkommen heißen können. (Reff.) 3. Ein treuer Rath [Rat], ein tröstend Wort, kann manche Thräne trocknen. (Franz.) 4. Der Mann war alt, und sah zu ehrwürdig aus, als daß man diesen Ausbruch des

---

\* dort oben.

Gefühls hätte lächerlich finden können. (Hauff.) 5. Bei meiner armen Seele, ich kann's vergessen haben. (Less.)

(255.) 1. Kein Sacrament mag Leben dem Todten wiedergeben. (B.) 2. Ehe die Frau es hindern mochte, stieß er mit dem Schwert sich durch und durch. (Wieland.) 3. Die Leute mögen es immer wissen, daß ich nichts mehr habe. (Less.) 4. Ein christlicher Mann mag stecken in welchem Kleid er will, man muß ihn lieben. (Less.) 5. Wohl mag es euch beängstigen, ich glaub's, vor eurem Richter zu erscheinen. (Sch.) 6. Die Bögte wollen wir verjagen und die festen Schlösser brechen; doch, wenn es sein mag, ohne Blut. (Sch.) 7. Er mochte aus einem guten Hause sein. (Less.) 8. Zwar weiß ich viel, doch möcht' ich alles wissen. (G.) 9. In dieser Kunst möcht' ich was profitiren. (G.) 10. Auf die Berge möcht' ich fliegen, möchte seh'n ein grünes Thal. (Fallerleben.) 11. Dem habe ich bitter Unrecht gethan in meinem Herzen, Gott mag es mir verzeihen! (Hauff.) 12. Ich wünsche in gar vielen Rücksichten, daß Ihr Wallenstein bald fertig werden möge. (G.) 13. Alle großen Gebäude verfallen mit der Zeit, sie mögen mit Kunst oder ohne Kunst gebaut sein. (Less.) 14. Darum mag, was will und kann, geschehen. (G.) 15. Keine Thorheit, wie unschuldig sie auch sein mag, kann einen Freibrief gegen den Spott verlangen. (Wieland.)

(256.) 1. Heut' müssen Sie mir gestatten, daß auch ich den Ritt mitmache. (Frei.) 2. Wider Willen mußte ich stehen bleiben, und ihr nachstarren. (Körner.) 3. In seinem Hause mußte alles solid und massiv sein. (G.) 4. Ein spanischer König mußte ein rechtgläubiger Prinz sein, oder er mußte von diesem Throne steigen. (Sch.) 5. Es mußte nicht vieles darin stehen, denn sie war im Augenblicke zu Ende. (Frei.) 6. Das letzte hatte Mondragon auf Befehl des Herzogs von Alba erbauen müssen. (Sch.) 7. Bis jetzt muß' ich, der Erbprinz Spaniens, in Spanien ein Fremder sein. (Sch.) 8. Ich muß lachen, wenn ich an den Ton der Unfehlbarkeit denke, mit dem er sprach. (Wieland.)

(257.) 1. Der Gärtner hat bestochen werden sollen. (Sch.) 2. Wer das Rechte kann, der soll es wollen. (G.) 3. Die Portraitmaler sollen nicht bloß darstellen, wie sie einen Menschen fassen, sondern wie jeder ihn fassen würde. (G.) 4. Das einfach

Schöne soll der Kenner schätzen. (G.) 5. Und kam' die Hölle selber in die Schranken, mir soll der Muth [Mut] nicht weichen und nicht wanken. (Sch.) 6. Ich ging ihn zu besuchen, weil ich hoffte, er solle mir helfen. (G.) 7. Dankend preis' ich meines Gottes Gnade, der nicht gewollt, daß ich zu eueren Füßen so liegen sollte, wie ihr jetzt zu meinen. (Sch.) 8. Es steht in den Sternen geschrieben, daß wir alle Beide nicht sitzen bleiben sollen. (Sch.) 9. Ein glorreicher Empfang sollte dem jungen Sieger bereitet werden. (Ebers.) 10. Da war es, wo ich die große Entdeckung machte, die für mein ganzes Leben verhängnißvoll werden sollte. (Sch.) 11. Soll einst die Nachwelt dich mit Segen nennen, mußt du den Fluch der Mitwelt tragen können. (Raupach.) 12. Die Charlotte Kalb, hör' ich, soll wirklich in Gefahr sein, blind zu werden. (Sch.) 13. Es stammt aus dem Nachlaß des Blutarchs, ich kann es beweisen, und es soll ein Geschenk des Kaisers Trajan sein. (Ebers.) 14. Der Tapfere streitet für das Recht, für das Gesetz, für Gott, und sollte es sein auf Leben und Sterben. (Jakobs.)

(258.) 1. Man muß nicht reicher scheinen wollen, als man ist. (Less.) 2. Will man einen Begriff von der Kunst Giotto's und seiner Schüler haben, so muß man das Camposanto von Pisa betreten. (G. Gr.) 3. Ich selbst wollte sie bitten, mir einige Minuten zu schenken. (Frei.) 4. Viele behaupten, daß sie sich nach Montmartre zurückgezogen habe, wo man sie noch im Jahre 1760 gesehen haben will. (Zschok.) 5. Aber was sind denn das für Dienste, die der Wirth unserem Herrn Major will erwiesen haben? (Less.) 6. Er blieb wieder einige Augenblicke stehen, wie einer der einschlafen will. (Frei.) 7. Du riffest mich von der Verzweiflung los, die mir die Sinne schon zerstören wollte. (G.)

(259.) 1. So weit geht niemand, der nicht muß. (Sch.) 2. Folge ihm willig und froh; willst du nicht folgen, du mußt. (Herder.) 3. Jeder will gern leben, falls er nur dürfte. (F. P. R.) 4. Du gehst nun fort; o Heinrich, könnt' ich mit! (G.) 5. Ich will nicht ins Loch, ich will fort, und bis ich fort kann, sollst du mich verstecken. (Frei.) 6. Vorwärts mußt du, denn rückwärts kannst du jetzt nicht mehr. (Sch.) 7. Mein Pferd scheute, wie ich zum Schloßthor herein wollte. (G.) 8. Wo soll ich hin? Ich kann

doch nicht Betteln gehen. (Seander.) 9. Auch der alte Glaubens-  
 satz, daß Geben\* seliger sei, als Nehmen, wollte mir nie in den  
 Kopf. (Seh.) 10. Sie kann nicht durch und mag nicht zurück. (Sch.)  
 11. Was soll mir das? Wozu soll das alles? (G.) 12. Was  
 konnte sie auch dafür, daß ich nicht auch der Mutter ähnlich sah.  
 (Seh.) 13. Das hätte er gar nicht gekonnt, auch wenn er gewollt  
 hätte. (Raube.) 14. Ich kann die Erzieher nicht loben, die solche  
 Gegenstände nicht vor ihren Augen verheimlichten. Um Verzeih-  
 ung! wie hätten sie das sollen? und wie hätten sie es gekonnt?  
 (G.) 15. Nicht deinen Arm bloß will ich, auch dein Auge. (Sch.)  
 16. Wollen Sie wieder einen Platz in meinem Contoir, oder  
 wollen Sie, wie es den Anschein hat, noch mehr? (Frei.) 17. Ich  
 habe die Menschen nie verstanden und noch weniger beneidet,  
 die eine Art Ehre darein setzen, zu sagen: magst du mich nicht,  
 mag ich dich auch nicht! (Seh.)

## THEME XI

### MODAL AUXILIARIES.

1. May these players appear before you? 2. I should like to see the players, but I must not think of it. 3. No one is allowed to tell his opinion freely to the king. 4. Who dares try to improve the laws? 5. It may be as you say, but it will be hard to prove it. 6. I have never been able to advise him. 7. Who could think such an outbreak of feeling laughable? 8. I may possibly have seen him already. 9. He may be rich, but he is not an honorable man. 10. I should like to appear soon before my judge, but, if it may be, not alone. 11. I should like to do him no wrong, but I do not want to see him. 12. I do not demand† to see the queen, however beautiful she may be. 13. The French have driven out their emperor, may God forgive them for it! 14. To-day I must read your Wallenstein,‡ whether it be finished or not finished. 15. I was obliged to allow

---

\* 340. † darnach, 346.2. ‡ A play by Schiller.



him to read my new book. 16. We had to take the ride too, or to stay at home alone. 17. I could not help weeping when I saw the poor Spanish prince. 18. He cannot have been an orthodox prince, for he was obliged to descend from the throne. 19. This painter had to paint his portrait on command of the king. 20. Everything in his house ought to have been massive and solid, for he was very rich. 21. He ought to love the right, but he does not. 22. This portrait painter shall paint me a portrait of my wife. 23. Every rich man ought to cherish art and to help artists. 24. I was to have visited you, but I could not. 25. How am I to make a great discovery? 26. If I am to paint his portrait, he must visit me every day. 27. The young victor is, I hear, in great danger. 28. The gardener is said to have been bribed. 29. If I am to believe his story, he must prove it. 30. I must have the Plutarch, even if it should be very dear. 31. I do not wish to appear richer than I am. 32. We wanted to help her, but we did not want to give her money. 33. She claims to have eaten nothing to-day. 34. The landlord claims to have given her something, but we cannot believe what he says. 35. We must help her, even if she should deceive us. 36. I was on the point of giving her something when you came. 37. We gave her something, for we had to. 38. You may go with him, but I may not (go) too. 39. What am I (to do) here? 40. I cannot (go) back and I am not allowed (to go) forward. 41. I should like (to go) into the house, but we must (go) away. 42. If you like the horse, I will give it to you. 43. I should like to praise your teacher, but I cannot. 44. I dare not (go) away, although I want to. 45. I do not like him and he does not like me. 46. Do you know English? 47. I do not know it and I do not like it.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XIII.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE.

(279.) 1. Rings um ihn her wurde geweint, gesungen und gebetet, aber Antinous sah und hörte nichts von alledem. (Ebers.) 2. Eine Welt schwingt sich in ewigen Kreisen um die anderen. Auf jeder wird gekämpft und gerungen und geliebt und gehofft. (Roch.) 3. Wo wir erschienen und pochten an, ward nicht begrüßt noch aufgethan. (Sch.) 4. Bis zum letzten Blutstropfen wird gekämpft. (F. Gr.) 5. In Leipzig war Ed beinahe todt [tot] geschlagen worden. (Grube.)

(280.) 1. Am 10. November 1483 ward zu Eisleben einem armen Bergmanne Hans Luther ein Söhnlein geboren, das am folgenden Tage getauft und Martinus genannt wurde. (Grube.) 2. Und wie die sittlichen, so waren dem Volke auch die geistigen Fortschritte auf diesem Wege versagt. (Gervinus.) 3. Und so ward mir das Versprechen abgenommen, daß ich nach Mainz folgen sollte. (G.) 4. Hält er die Medaille für ähnlich, die Arbeit für gut, so ist vielleicht der Platz für Wittig gefunden und der Kunstschule und dem jungen Manne gedient. (Lewald.)

(281.) 1. Man hält mich hier gefangen, wider alle Völkerrechte. (Sch.) 2. Für todt [tot] hob man mich auf. (G.) 3. Es klingelte, die Thür öffnete sich, die Verwandtschaft erschien. (Frei.) 4. So weit war ich gestern gekommen, als man mich abrief. (G.) 5. Hier zündete sich froh das schöne Licht der Wissenschaft, des freien Denkens an. (G.) 6. Aus Stiefeln machen sich leicht Pantoffeln. (G.)

(282.) 1. Ich werde eben zum Mittagessen gerufen. (Sch.) 2. Ferrara ward, mit Rom und mit Florenz, von meinem Vater viel gepriesen. (G.) 3. Durch eine hintere Pforte führ' ich euch, die nur durch einen Mann vertheidigt [verteidigt] wird. (Sch.) 4. Leonardo's Gemälde im Saale des Palastes ist nie vollendet worden. (F. Gr.) 5. Ottilie erinnerte sich jedes Wortes, was gesprochen ward. (G.) 6. Nicht eher denk' ich dieses Blatt zu brauchen, bis eine That gethan ist, die unwiderstehlich den Hochverrath [Hochverrat] bezeugt. (Sch.) 7. Die Buchdruckerkunst

war schon über hundert Jahre erfunden; dessenungeachtet erschien ein Buch noch als ein Heiliges. (G.) 8. Der Brief ist ja erbrochen! Das kann wohl sein. (Leff.)

## THEME XII.

### THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. When I was in Europe there was fighting in France.
2. Wherever we appeared there was singing and dancing.
3. On the 12th of August the Pope was found dead in his bed.
4. Luther is called the greatest son of Germany.
5. The right of preaching\* was denied him by the Pope, and he was called an enemy of God.
6. If he goes to Leipzig he will be killed.
7. He was told that there was fighting in Leipzig, but he would go.
8. A place was found for Wittig in the art school, and he was helped†.
9. The place was given him because his work was considered good.
10. The door opened and I was called away.
11. This medal was given my father by the artist, and it has been much praised.
12. The painting was begun by Leonardo, but it was never finished by him.
13. Science and free thought were denied to the people.
14. He was led through a back door into the hall of the palace.
15. The letter had been found in his hands, but it had not been broken open.
16. The painting had been finished before Leonardo went to Rome.
17. When the child was baptized, the relations appeared.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XIV.

### REFLEXIVES.

- (286-87.) 1. Eine nach der anderen also verheiratheten [=rateten] sich alle ihre Jugendfreundinnen. (Sch.) 2. Es streckt sich eine Ebene bis nach Antwerp. (Sch.) 3. Doch wie vergeht sich

---

\* 345. † dadurch geholfen.

Gram und Sehnen; ich wagte mich, an dich zu schreiben. (Gottsched.) 4. Es haben die Großen dieser Welt sich der Erde bemächtigt. (Sch.)

(288.) 1. Könnt' \* ich doch in deinem Thau gesund mich baden! (G.) 2. Ich will mich frei und glücklich träumen. (Sch.) 3. Da will ich mich wieder gesund oder völlig rasend gaffen. (G.) 4. Niemand schlummert sich fromm. (Spr.) 5. Des Sonntags in der Morgenstunde wie wandert's sich am Rhein so schön. (Müller.) 6. Von eurer Fahrt kehrt's sich nicht immer wieder. (Sch.) 7. Es ziemt sich nicht, daß ich dein Schuldner bin. (Less.)

(289.) 1. Ich erinnere mich mit Freuden meiner Jugend. (G.) 2. Er wunderte sich auch über den Lauf der Welt, denn er hatte die ganze französische Revolution erlebt. (Frei.) 3. Ich habe mich über Fernow's Aussehen wirklich erschrocken, so veraltet erschien er mir. (Sch.) 4. Kein Ehrenmann wird sich der Schmach bequemen. (Sch.) 5. Der rechte Schüler lernt aus dem Bekannten das Unbekannte entwickeln, und nähert sich dem Meister. (G.) 6. Ich will mich nicht der Nechenschaft entziehen; die Richter sind es nur, die ich verwerfe. (Sch.)

(290.) 1. Ein junger Rater wünscht sich Mäuse. (Spr.) 2. Ich habe mir diesen Menschen zum Ziele gemacht, habe mir vorgesetzt, ihn nicht aufzugeben, also hab' ich ihn gewiß. (Sch.) 3. Was sich der Teufel getraut, das könntet Ihr nicht wagen? (Sch.)

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XV.

### IMPERSONALS.

(292.) 1. O wie ist es kalt geworden, und so traurig, öd' und leer! (Fallerleben.) 2. Es regnet! Gott segnet die Erde, die so durstig ist. (Enslin.) 3. Der Wind geht kalt und mich fröstelt durch den Pelz. (Frei.) 4. Mit den Zähnen gelang es ihr, die Bande völlig zu lösen. (Hum.) 5. Mir ahnt ein unglückseliger Augenblick. (Sch.) 6. Heinrich, mir graut vor dir! (G.) 7. Höhnen † sie uns, es reuet sie morgen. ( Wieland.) 8. Mich dünkt,

\* 331.2. † 332.1d. 324.4.

ich weiß aus welchen Fehlern unsere Tugend keimt. (Reff.) 9. Tief dauert mich euer. (Boß.) 10. Sie sind ungerecht, wenn Sie einen solchen Verdacht aussprechen, und mir ziemt nicht, ihn zu ertragen. (Frei.) 11. Auch brauchte es eigentlich immer zwei Menschen, einen, der's sähe, und einen, der's beschreibe.\* (G.) 12. Jetzt treibt es mich unwiderstehlich in Ihre Nähe, und ich muß Ihnen sagen, wie es in mir aussieht. (Frei.) 13. Mir hat von diesen Königen und Schlachten und Kriegesthaten nur geträumt. (Sch.) 14. Als er wieder in das Helle trat, glänzte es feucht in seinen Augen. (Frei.) 15. Dem Müßiggänger fehlt es stets an Zeit zum Thun. (Rüd.) 16. Wenn es klopft, so kann es ein Gläubiger sein. (Ebers.) 17. Horch, Marthe, draußen pocht es! (Seidl.) 18. Einen fürchterlichen Krieg gibt es. (G.) 19. Auch im Lager gibt es der braven Männer genug. (Sch.) 20. Aber einen schöneren (Hengst) kann es nicht geben, rief der Prinz. (Ebers.) 21. Mir war es Ernst mit meiner Seligkeit. (Sch.) 22. Wem zu wohl ist, den gelüstet immer nach neuen Dingen. (F. Gr.) 23. Nun wirst du begreifen, wie mir war, als ich nach Jahren der Trennung ihn zuerst wieder sah. (Heg.) 24. Mir ist zu Muth [Mute], begann der Doctor, als wäre ich hier nicht fremd. (Frei.) 25. Mir ist, als ob ich die Hände auf's Haupt dir legen sollt'! (Hei.) 26. Wie ward mir, als ich in's Innere der Kirche trat! (Sch.) 27. Aus Coburg wird geschrieben, daß die Franzosen in wenig Tagen darin einrücken werden. (Sch.) 28. Denn gemalt wurde in Venedig wie überall auch im fünfzehnten Jahrhundert. (F. Gr.) 29. Wir debattiren [=tieren] über den Begriff des Rechtes und da wird zuweilen ordentlich vernünftig gesprochen. (Sch.) 30. Mußt' es so rasch gehorcht sein? (Sch.)

(294–95.) 1. Es läßt sich im Einzelnen über die Schrift nichts sagen. (Sch.) 2. Es mußte ein anderer Weg gefunden werden. (F. Gr.) 3. Es war der Riese Goliath ein ganz gefährlich Mann. (Claudius.) 4. Es hat ihn nie in die Fremde gezogen. (Böhlau.) 5. Es soll mich wundern, was dieses Buch eigentlich enthalten wird. (Koch.) 6. Es fürchte † die Götter das Menschengeschlecht! (G.)

\* 332.5d. † 331.a.

## THEME XIII.

## REFLEXIVES AND IMPERSONALS.

1. She did not dare to take that way. 2. The enemy have gained possession of the whole city. 3. This man has worked himself dead tired. 4. The poor old woman dreams herself young and beautiful again. 5. Do you remember the morning hour when we wandered together by the Rhine? 6. We were wondering about your journey. 7. He drew near to me, and I rejoiced in his friendly words. 8. He was really frightened at the news, for he remembers the French Revolution, and he fears to experience another. 9. I do not trust myself to write to him. 10. I wish for myself no better judge than he is. 11. When we went out it was raining, and later it snowed. 12. It became cold and he was chilly. 13. I am horrorstruck at his treason, but I am deeply sorry for him. 14. You will regret having spoken out such a suspicion. 15. It is not suitable for me to describe it to you. 16. You have certainly not seen that; you have dreamed it. 17. I pity the poor king, but I pity more his unhappy people. 18. There is need of several good men in the camp, for there is always a lack of soldiers. 19. There was knocking, and Martha went to the door. 20. How she felt when she saw him again! 21. She felt as if he were not a stranger to her. 22. There are many who debate over the idea of right, but there are few who understand it. 23. There was no one who spoke sensibly about it. 24. In the church there was singing and praying, and I felt as if I must sing too. 25. It was told him that he must obey quickly. 26. It delights me to hear what he says about the writing. 27. I wonder what is written from France.

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XVI.

## PERSON AND NUMBER.

(321.) 1. Wir oben und ihr unten sollen eins sein in der Liebe. (Görres.) 2. Was kann es mir nun helfen, daß du und

mein Vater einst Freunde waren? (Lef.) 3. Prinz Karlos und ich begegnen diesen Mittag uns im Vorgemach der Königin. (Sch.) 4. Der da und ich, wir sind aus Eger. (Sch.) 5. O du, der die Himmel schuf! (Klop.) 6. Du, der auf den Wolken thront in der Nacht. (Arndt.) 7. Wir anderen, die wir von der Gesellschaft abhängen, müssen uns nach ihr bilden. (G.) 8. Wäret ihr auch bei uns, die ihr mich ferne liebt: o so bauten wir hier Hütten der Freundschaft uns. (Klop.)

(322.) 1. Er sowohl als der Herzog zeigten sich milde und zugänglich. (F. Gr.) 2. Ein Harfner mit seiner Tochter gingen vor mir her. (G.) 3. Nicht Liebe bloß, auch Zorn und Heftigkeit trägt eine dunkle Binde vor den Augen. (Ohlenschläger.) 4. Noch Stand, noch Alter wird gespart. (Wieland.) 5. Gefahr und Preis und auch der Ruhm sei mein. (G.) 6. Schönheit, Reichthum [Reichtum], Ehr' und Macht sinkt mit der Zeit in öde Nacht. (Boß.) 7. Daneben wohnt die fromme Pilgerschaar. (G.) 8. Darauf kam des Weges eine Christenschaar, die auch zurückgeblieben war. (Uh.) 9. Ein Trupp Männer stand am Grenzstein. (Frei.) 10. Eine Anzahl Soldaten hatten sich gesetzt. (G.) 11. Ich griff sogleich nach dem Beutel, in welchem eine gute Menge (Goldstücke) sich befanden. (G.) 12. Ein halb Hundert solcher Bemerkungen machen einen Philologen. (Lef.) 13. Da kommen ein Paar aus der Küche. (Sch.) 14. Das sind meine Richter. (Sch.) 15. Es waren nur hundert Thaler, sagte der Alte. (Frei.) 16. Ja, das waren die Augen, die treuen, klaren Augen, die er vorher gesehen. (Spiel.) 17. Eure königliche Majestät sind außer sich, und scheinen tief bewegt. (Sch.) 18. Euer Excellenz haben Ihre Dienerschaft überrascht. (G.) 19. Der Herr Bevollmächtigte haben die letzten Nächte wenig geschlafen, sagte Karl. (Frei.)

#### THEME XIV.

##### PERSON AND NUMBER.

1. He and I will help you, for we were friends of your father. 2. I, who am poorest of all, cannot help you. 3.

Charitable man, thou who helpest every one, help me also. 4. You and the prince are to \* meet me to-morrow in the ante-chamber of the queen. 5. The Duke and Prince Charles went into the hall first; my father and I followed them. 6. The king and queen met us and showed themselves kind and gracious. 7. Beauty, riches, and friendship have deserted me, but my self-respect I have not lost. 8. A troop of pilgrims met us on the way. 9. A crowd of men had remained behind, and a pair of them had seated themselves. 10. A couple of gold pieces were found in the bag after he had gone. 11. There were a number of gold pieces in the bag when I gave it to him. 12. Those were the thalers which the old woman gave me.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XVII.

#### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

(324.) 1. Das Wasser rauscht', das Wasser schwoll, ein Fischer saß daran. . . . Und wie er sitzt, und wie er lauscht, theilt [teilt] sich die Fluth [Flut] empor; aus dem bewegten Wasser rauscht ein feuchtes Weib hervor. (G.) 2. Als ich Bahn mir mache durchs Gewühl, da tritt ein braun' Bohemerweib mich an, faßt mich ins Auge scharf und spricht. (Sch.) 3. Die trauernde Germania fragt seit Jahren, wann soll die rechte Zeit kommen. (Frei.) 4. Ich liebe Hedda seit zwei Jahren, seitdem ich sie zuerst in S. kennen lernte. (Spiel.) 5. Sie kennen mich dort seit vielen Jahren als einen redlichen Bürger. (Frei.) 6. Morgen ist sie meine Frau und übermorgen gehe ich mit ihr fort. (Less.) 7. Aber ich gehe herum, sie aufzusuchen, und komme wieder, sobald ich sie finde. (G.) Das Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser Nacht, der Schlüssel bin ich mächtig. Wir ermorden die Hüter, reißen dich aus deiner Kammer. (Sch.) 9. Verlaß dich darauf, sagte er, ich komme euch nach. (Sen.)

(325.) 1. Und als ich traurig durch die Säle ging, da sah ich Herzog Hansen in einem Kerker weinend stehn.† (Sch.) 2. Seit

\* sollen. † 343.5.



acht Tagen und länger fehlte es mir sowohl an Lust und Laune als an Gesundheit zu meinen Geschäften. (Sch.) 3. Der zweite Stock des Vorderhauses war seit vielen Jahren unbewohnt. (Frei.) 4. Was er thun wollte an diesem Tage, stand seit Monaten wie eine unabänderliche Nothwendigkeit [Notwendigkeit] vor seiner Seele. (Seh.) 5. Der Fürst nachher verschaffte mir in drei Tagen, was ich zu Wien in dreißig nicht erlangte. (Sch.) 6. Er selbst vertraute mir, was ich zwar längst auf anderem Weg schon in Erfahrung brachte. (Sch.)

(326.) 1. Er kommt mir nicht zurück, wie er gegangen. (Sch.) 2. Die bleiche Frau aus der Fremde ist in der Nacht gestorben. (Frei.) 3. Was ich vermochte, hab' ich gern gethan. (Sch.) 4. Da haben hingeworfne Worte mich belehrt, daß seine Seele fest der Wunsch ergriffen hat, dich zu besitzen. (G.) 5. Einige Monate verstrichen, ehe aus Madrid eine Antwort kam. (Sch.) 6. Bist du nicht mehr Minister? Ich bin's gewesen, wie du siehst. (Sch.) 7. Ich habe sie gekannt, in Valencia, vor zwanzig Jahren. (Hauff.) 8. Mit fünf Gefellen war er ausgezogen, mit zweien kehrte er zurück. (Ebers.)

(327.) 1. Was der Abscheu der ganzen niederländischen Nation nicht vermocht hatte, war dem geringschätzigen Betragen des Adels gelungen. (Sch.) 2. Zur Schmiede ging ein junger Held, er hatte ein gutes Schwert bestellt. (Uh.)

(328.) 1. Ich bringe die letzten Worte meiner Freundin, die Sie nicht ohne Rührung lesen werden. (G.) 2. Er wird auf mich fluchen, wenn ich ihm das Buch nicht bald bringe. (Reff.) 3. Es wird wohl Geld im Koffer sein, dachten die Leute. (Reander.) 4. Man wird ungefähr auf eben die Art verfahren sein. (Winkelman.) 5. Ihr Schreiben soll zugleich mein Creditiv sein, mit dem ich mich einstelle, sobald ich es erhalten.\* (G.) 6. Wer immer finstere Miene macht, hat bald die Gunst verloren. (G.) 7. Dieser Februar ist also hingegangen, ohne Sie zu mir zu bringen, und ich habe, erwartend und hoffend, bald den Winter überstanden. (Sch.) 8. Und wenn es (das Unternehmen) glückt, so ist es vergeben. (Sch.) 9. Wenn ich gestorben bin, findet er den

---

\* 439.3.

Schlüssel in meiner Westentasche. (Frei.) 10. Fräulein, er (der Brief) ist unfehlbar zerrissen, wenn Sie sich nicht bald anders erklären. (Leß.) 11. Wenn du dich aufrichdest, bist du mit ein paar Schritten dort. (S. Gr.)

### THEME XV.

#### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

1. My friend and I were walking slowly through the city. 2. Suddenly a strange man stands before him, he looks at him, says something to him, and they both leave me. 3. I try to follow them, but they are soon lost in the crowd. 4. I have been seeking them for two hours, but I do not find them. 5. As soon as I find them, I will bring the man to you. 6. Do you know the man? 7. I have known him for years. 8. She has been my wife for two weeks. 9. Had you known her long when she became your wife? 10. I had known her twenty years, and I had loved her since the first day. 11. As soon as she asks me I shall tell her the truth. 12. If I see that man now I shall murder him. 13. He had not been long in the prison, when his friends murdered the keeper and freed him. 14. The duke wrote me, what he wanted in \* Vienna. 15. I procured for him everything which he had been wanting. 16. Have all your friends gone away? 17. One went yesterday, the other will go to-morrow. 18. Several months have passed since his letter came. 19. He went to Vienna, but he did not do all that he promised. 20. I knew the minister in Madrid. 21. As soon as he came into the church I knew him. 22. He had been minister, but he was so no more. 23. We had brought him the letter as soon as we had received it. 24. He had cursed us because we had not brought it sooner. 25. The young hero cannot receive his sword until he has ordered it. 26. You will weep when

---

\* zu.

you hear the last words of my friend. 27. I presume they are very interesting. 28. In February my friend will probably come, thought I. 29. If I do not find him soon, I am lost. 30. When he is dead, I have not a single friend.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XVIII

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AS OPTATIVE, CONDITIONAL AND POTENTIAL

(331.) 1. Weh euch, ihr stolzen Hallen! Nie töne süßer Klang durch eure Räume wieder! (Uh.) 2. Das wolle Gott nicht, daß du das vollbringst! (Sch.) 3. Bilden wir uns ein, wir wären auf der Eisenbahn; plaudern wir wie in einem Coupé. (Femald.) 4. Wer Geduld hat, der warte. (Ebers.) 5. Möge nie der Tag erscheinen, wo des rauhen Krieges Horden dieses stille Thal durchtoben! (Sch.) 6. Dürft' ich wohl diesmal mich entfernen? (G.) 7. Ach! lieber, guter Mann, nähm Er\* mich wohl auf seinen Wagen. (Mühler.) 8. Ich sei, gewährt mir die Bitte, in eurem Bunde der dritte. (Sch.) 9. Wir mögen die Welt kennen lernen, wie wir wollen, sie wird immer eine Tag- und Nachtseite haben. (G.) 10. Und wer der Dichtkunst Stimme nicht vernimmt, ist ein Barbar, er sei auch, wer er sei. (G.) 11. Die Finsterniß [=niß] sei noch so dicht, dem Lichte widersteht sie nicht. (Spr.) 12. (Er sagte) daß niemand weder Gefängniß [=niß] noch Landesverweisung zu fürchten haben sollte, er hätte sich denn eines politischen Verbrechens schuldig gemacht. (Sch.) 13. Man soll die alten Schuhe nicht fortwerfen, man habe denn neue. (Spr.) 14. Die Sonne sinkt, bald leuchten mir die Sterne; o, wärst du da. (G.) 15. Frommer Stab! o hätt' ich nimmer mit dem Schwerte dich vertauscht. (Sch.)

(332.) 1. Gewisse Menschen hätten Tugenden, wenn sie Geld hätten. (F. P. R.) 2. Hätt' ich dich früher so gerecht erkannt, es wäre Vieles ungescheh'n geblieben. (Sch.) 3. Wenn wir allen helfen könnten, dann wären wir zu beneiden.† (Vess.) 4. Wenn Gina hier wäre, sagte er ganz laut zu sich, sie machte ein Gedicht,

\* 153.3. † 343.III,1b.

oder auch zwei. (Sen.) 5. Könnt ich doch den Ausgang finden, ach, wie fühlt' ich mich beglückt! (Sch.) 6. Wie stünd's um euch, zög' ich mein Heer zurück. (Sch.) 7. Du könntest Gott danken, und dich vor der Welt groß machen, wenn du in deinem Leben eine so edle That gethan hättest, wie die ist, um welcher willen ich gefangen siße. (G.) 8. Müßt' ich zehn Reiche mit dem Rücken schauen, ich rette mich nicht mit des Freundes Leben. (Sch.) 9. Sind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand, sie sind in unseren Herzen eingeschrieben. (Sch.) 10. Unter den Menschen wird man nicht besser, wenn man nicht schon gut unter sie kommt. (F. B. R.) 11. Wenn dieser starke Arm euch nicht hereingeführt, ihr sahet nie den Rauch von einem frankischen Kamine steigen. (Sch.) 12. O könnt ich doch den Streit in der Natur versöhnen, und zur Verträglichkeit die Menschen auch gewöhnen! (Müd.) 13. O hätten wir's mit frischer That vollendet! (Sch.) 14. Hätte ich doch immer geschwiegen! (G.) 15. Er war so stolz darauf, als wenn die Empfindung sein gewesen wäre. (G.) 16. Kommt, setzt euch, thut, als wenn ihr zu Hause wärt! (G.) 17. Ueberm\* Herrscher vergißt er nur den Diener ganz und gar, als wär' mit seiner Würd' er schon geboren. (Sch.) 18. Der Schluß (des Briefes) war ganz, als wenn er ihn selbst geschrieben hätte. (G.) 19. Es gilt die Lebenspflicht zu erfüllen, als ob man ewig lebe, und wiederum, als ob man stündlich stirbe. (Auerbach.) 20. Sie nickte nur leise, als ob dieser Wunsch ihr gefalle. (Ebers.) 21. Bete, als hülfe kein Arbeiten. Arbeite, als hülfe kein Beten. (Spr.) 22. Das verschloß mir den Mund, und hätt' ich den Tod des Verbrechers darum leiden müssen. (Hoffmann.) 23. Das Recht zur Krone war nicht erblich, und doch hätte ein längeres Leben seines Vaters die Ansprüche seines einzigen Sohnes mehr befestigt, und die Hoffnung zur Krone gesichert. (G.) 24. Bei längerem Leben des großen Kaisers, wäre er (der Kreuzzug) gewiß nicht in diesem Maße vereitelt worden. (Raumer.) 25. Unter sechs Augen macht man die dümmsten Streiche, die man unter viere gar nicht zu Stande brächte. (Sen.) 26. Das ist ein Freund, der sich für ihn todtschlagen ließe. (Less.) 27. Aber sagen Sie

selbst, Herr; was hätte es geholfen? (Seb.) 28. Es ist kein Mensch so arm, daß er nicht sterben könnte. (Krüger.) 29. Welcher Undankbare hätte sich nicht zu entschuldigen gewußt! (Less.) 30. Gestern Abend entstand auf einmal ein lebhafter Friedensruf. Inwiefern er gegründet sei, muß sich bald zeigen. (G.) 31. Ohne Liebe ginge die thierische Welt zu Grunde. (Salob.) 32. Ei, Daja, warum wäre denn das so unglaublich? (Less.) 33. So möcht' ich leben, daß ich hätte, wenn ich scheide, gelebet mir zur Lust und anderen nicht zu Leide. (Müd.) 34. Die Freude überrascht uns oft auf einer Spur, wo wir sie nicht erwartet hätten. ( Wieland.) 35. Ich wünschte, daß bei Ihnen in Weimar die Geschäfte besser gehen mögen, als bei mir. (Sch.) 36. Warum sollten wir nicht wünschen, neben den Unserigen zu ruhen, und wenn es auch nur für ein Jahrhundert wäre. (G.) 37. Der Mensch ist frei geschaffen, ist frei, und wär' er in Ketten geboren. (Sch.) 38. Wer du auch seist, ich wünsche Rettung dir. (G.) 39. Wie sehr auch euer Inn'reß widerstrebe, gehorcht der Zeit und dem Gesetz der Stunde. (Sch.) 40. Nur eines weiß ich sicher, ich werde unglücklich, wie diese Wahl auch ausfällt. (Frei.) 41. Unter allen Umständen mußte er verhindern, daß die Stadt in fremde Gewalt käme. (F. Gr.) 42. Von den Füßen zieht er die Schuhe behend, damit er das Bächlein durchschreite. (Sch.) 43. Verzeihen wir, damit man uns verzeihe. (Seume.) 44. Der alte Mensch in uns soll sterben, damit eine neue Tugend in uns emporkeime. (Herder.) 45. Etwas fürchten und hoffen und sorgen muß der Mensch für den kommenden Morgen, daß er die Schwere des Daseins ertrage, und das ermüdende Gleichmaß der Tage. (Sch.) 46. Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht, und wenn er auch die Wahrheit spricht. (Spr.) 47. Wie groß dich auch die Königin zu machen verspricht trau' ihrer Schmeichelrede nicht. (Sch.) 48. Harret ihr, bis daß der rechte Ring den Mund eröffne? (Less.) 49. Schickt einen sicheren Boten ihm entgegen, der auf geheimen Weg ihn zu mir führe. (Sch.) 50. Du findest keinen, der sich seines Nachbarn zu schämen brauche. (G.) 51. Es ist unmöglich, daß ein und derselbe Mensch dieser Welt und zugleich Gott diene. (Claudius.) 52. Ich war nicht so eingenommen, daß

ich nicht bemerkt hätte, wie nur wenige den Sinn der zarten Worte fühlten. (G.) 53. Dem thätigen Menschen kommt es darauf an, daß er das Rechte thue; ob das Rechte geschehe, soll ihn nicht kümmern. (G.)

### THEME XVI

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AS OPTATIVE, CONDITIONAL AND POTENTIAL.

1. He who has anything to say, let him speak. 2. Let him rejoice who hears the voice of poetry. 3. May war never appear to this peaceful valley. 4. May he never finish what he has begun. 5. Come when you can; be it morning or evening, you will be welcome. 6. Let him think what he will, I shall still love him. 7. Let us sit down and chat until he comes back. 8. May the world never become worse than it is already. 9. He has not been guilty of any crime, unless it be of a political one. 10. I will bless him, unless he opposes me. 11. O, that I were not guilty of this crime! 12. Would that I had never beheld this man! 13. Had we not exchanged peace for war. 14. We should not have been afraid, had we not been guilty. 15. Had you known the world better, you would never have trusted this man. 16. He would not be imprisoned here had he not done that noble deed. 17. Had I been able to help him, I should have felt myself happy. 18. How could I have saved myself, if his strong arm had not led me out? 19. If I can find the outlet, I will thank God. 20. He will make a poem if he hears of this noble deed. 21. O, that all had remained undone! 22. If we could but help everyone! 23. He knows that poem as if it were written in his heart. 24. She nodded, as if she understood everything. 25. They acted quite as if they were at home here. 26. He is as proud as if he were forgetting that he was not born with this rank. 27. He certainly would have worked well, only he was ill. 28. O, that he had lived longer, then my

hopes would not have been frustrated. 29. A longer life of the great emperor might have secured the crown to his son. 30. No; it certainly would not have helped him. 31. I should not like to suffer the death of a criminal. 32. He may have written the letter himself; but that would be incredible. 33. I should like to know why business does not go better. 34. They will certainly come, were it only for a few hours. 35. We shall surprise them, especially if they have not expected us. 36. However ungrateful he may be, he will know how to \* excuse himself. 37. Whoever he may be, and whatever he may do, she will excuse him and love him. 38. Man was created that he might work and pray. 39. Man must fear and sorrow, so that he may not love life too much. 40. He wishes to be rich that he may help everyone. 41. He will find not one who does not obey the law. 42. He had to wait until the city should come into his power. 43. It does not matter to me whether they forgive me; I only hope that I may not need to be ashamed.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XIX.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT STATEMENT.

(333.) 1. Er fühlte, daß er ein anderer Mensch zu werden begünne. (G.) 2. Du solltest nicht denken, ich sei über Nacht ein Feigling und ein Verräther [Verräter] geworden. (Fey.) 3. Körner schreibt mir, daß er 14 Tage hier zuzubringen hoffe. (Sch.) 4. Meinst du, ich sei ein Kind? (G.) 5. Ich bestehe darauf, daß sich der Lord entferne. (Sch.) 6. Sie verlangen ihren Oberst, den Max, zurück; er sei hier auf dem Schloß, behaupten sie, du haltest ihn mit Zwang, und wenn du ihn nicht losgebst, werde man ihn mit dem Schwerte zu befreien wissen. (Sch.) 7. Er erblickte die alte Magd, die ihm mit ganz verstörtem Gesicht zuflüsterte, sie suche ihn seit einer halben Stunde, er müsse

heimkommen. (Heg.) 8. Die Signorie\* entschuldigte sich, der Papst lasse Michelangelo nicht fort; sobald man seiner habhaft werden könne, würde das Werk abgeliefert werden. (H. Gr.) 9. Den Vorschlag, bloß seine Söhne nach dem Morgenlande abzusenden, wies der Kaiser als unpassend zurück, denn er habe, obgleich im siebenundsechzigsten Jahre des Alters, noch Kraft genug, sich, wie es sein Beruf erheische, an die Spitze der Christenheit zu stellen. (Raumer.) 10. Von entscheidender Wichtigkeit war es, welchen Entschluß Kaiser Friedrich in diesem Augenblick ergreifen werde. (Raumer.) 11. Er dachte nicht anders, als daß der Schauspieler das Theater auffuchen werde. (G.) 12. Es geht die Rede, daß es ihm Lust bereite, sterben zu sehen. (Ebers.) 13. Dennoch erschreckte die Nachricht, daß der Krieg erklärt sei. (Frei.) 14. Die Vermuthung [Vermutung], daß ein Waldhüter hier seine Wohnung habe, gab ich auf. (Heg.) 15. Wenigstens finde ich es nicht billig, daß Ottilie aufgeopfert werde. (G.) 16. Wer spricht ihm ab, daß er die Menschen kenne, sie zu gebrauchen wisse? (Sch.) 17. Also befahl er uns zu thun und dir zu melden, es sei dein Sohn Don Caesar, der sie sende. (Sch.) 18. Man fühlte, daß ohne die Freiheit alles verloren sei. (H. Gr.) 19. Er sagte dem zaudernden Amtmann heimlich, er möchte doch der Sache ein Ende machen. (G.) 20. Ich wollte, sie hätten tausendmal Recht, du aber lebstest noch. (Raube.) 21. Wie sehr wünschte ich, daß Sie in diesen Tagen bei uns wären. (G.) 22. Saladin antwortete . . . : Der Kaiser möge bedenken, daß es weniger Christen gäbe als Saracenen, und daß nicht große Landstrecken und unsichere Meere die Macht der letzten trennten und schnelle Hülfsleistung verhinderten. Dennoch wolle er, gegen Erneuerung des Friedens, Tyrus, Tripolis und Antiochien, welche Städte die Christen noch besäßen, nicht angreifen. (Raumer.) 23. Mir meldet er aus Linz, er läge krank. (Sch.) 24. Er fragte so ängstlich, ob Ihr nicht versehrt wäret. (G.) 25. Ich fürchte, Oberst Butler, man hat mit euch ein schändlich Spiel getrieben. (Sch.) 26. Er wollte nicht kommen und wir mußten doch, er war auf dem Wege. (G.) 27. Daß ich ihren Namen nie gehört hätte! (Reff.) 28. D

---

\* Governing body of Florence in the 16th century.



daß er sein Gemüth [Gemüt] wie seine Kunst an deinen Lehren bilde! (G.) 29. Sie wüßte nicht, was sie geboren sei? Sie hätte es nie von ihm erfahren, daß sie eine Christin geboren sei, und keine Jüdin? Nic. (Lef.) 30. Was sagst du da? fragte er betroffen. Als ich zu Weihnachten hier war, hätte ich nicht mehr an dich gedacht? (Heg.)

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XX.

### CONDITIONAL TENSES.

(334–36.) 1. Wenn ich nur an mich selbst denken dürfte, würde ich mich hartnäckig weigern, deine Gabe anzunehmen. (G.) 2. Würden so oft neue Beispiele zur Warnung dienen, wenn die Warnung älterer Beispiele gefruchtet hätte? (Engel.) 3. Wie glücklich würde mancher leben, wenn er sich um anderer Leute Sachen so wenig bekümmerte, als um seine eigenen. (Lichtenberg.) 4. Du verdienst, Premierminister im Lande zu sein; es würde dann wohl ganz anders im ganzen Kurfürstenthum [=tum] stehen (Bscholle.) 5. Man glaubte die Böhmen zum Schweigen zu bringen, wenn Fuß'ens\* Lehre durch den Freund selber verdammt würde. (Grube.) 6. Gesezt, Leander würde durch sie glücklich — werde ich sein Freund bleiben können? (Lef.) 7. Die doppelten Bindungen der Schlangen würden den ganzen Leib verdeckt haben. (Lef.) 8. Dieses Singen, Blumenmalen und Komödien spielen würde mich nicht einen Augenblick glücklich machen können. (Heg.) 9. Er freute sich daran in der Hoffnung, daß der Frühling bald alles noch reichlicher beleben würde. (G.) 10. Die Unruhe und Ungewißheit, wie ich's hier finden würde, hat mir unterwegs allen Hunger vertrieben. (Heg.)

## THEME XVII

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF INDIRECT STATEMENT, AND CONDITIONAL TENSES.

1. He asked me whether I had become a coward. 2. I answered I was not afraid of him, and would soon show

him that I was no child more. 3. Max wrote he did not demand that I should deliver the work now, but he hoped to receive it as soon as it was finished. 4. When I found him he excused himself; he had been looking for me also, and could not find me. 5. They say the emperor will send his sons alone to France; for he is\* in his 76th year, and has not strength enough to put himself at the head of the army. 6. The prince told me that war had been declared, and that everything would be lost without the emperor. 7. The emperor answered: he wished for peace and would like to make an end to the war. 8. But he could not forget that the French themselves had begun the war. 9. He would not lead back the army unless the enemy should give up all the German cities which they had possessed before. 10. I do not think it just that the French should pay so much. 11. I thought they still lived there. 12. Did you believe I was afraid? I believed he was lying sick at Berlin, and did not know that he was on his way to England. 13. O, that he would soon appear! 14. What do you say? I had ordered you to do that? I never did so. 15. If you heard my warnings you would be happy. 16. We would not take your gifts if we were richer. 17. I should like to be rich, then I would help everyone. 18. If you had only concerned yourself with your own affairs, you would be rich already. 19. Such a hope would not make me happy. 20. A wise king would not have condemned the teaching of Huss. 21. They did not know how they would find it here. 22. He wrote me in the hope that they would soon arrive.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XXI.

#### THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND OBJECT OF VERBS.

(341.) 1. Ein Essen wird gegeben auf dem Schloß. (Sch.) 2. Das Leben der Frau ist ein ewiges Gehen und Kommen, oder

---

\* stehe.

Heben und Tragen, oder Bereiten und Schaffen für Andere. (G.) 3. Frei will ich sein im Handeln und im Dichten. (G.) 4. Ans Gutbehren, Wissen, Verlieren, Nichtshaben gewöhnt der Himmel seine Geliebten. (Lavater.) 5. O, segne, Herr, mein Werk, mein Reden und mein Denken. (. . .) 6. Jetzt rede mir Keiner mehr von Bleiben, von Verbergen! (Sch.)

(342.) 1. Sterben ist nichts, doch leben und nicht sehen, das ist ein Unglück. (Sch.) 2. Menschenliebe üben, heißt gut sein. (Ebers.) 3. Unrecht leiden schmeichelt großen Seelen. (Sch.) 4. Er liebte die Pferde und es that ihm weh, die edlen Thiere [Tiere] tödten zu sehen. (Ebers.) 5. Die braunen, flugen Augen zu malen war nichts Leichtes. (Ebers.) 6. Ich begriff es freilich, aber mich darüber zu trösten, wollte mir trotzdem nicht gelingen. (Sen.) 7. Es ist so elend betteln zu müssen. (G.) 8. Es schmerzte mich lebhaft, diese schönen Sachen verkaufen zu sehen. (G.) 9. Es verstand sich von selbst, daß trotz allem einem solchen Manne zu thun gegeben werden mußte. (H. Gr.)

(343.) 1. Anerkennen thun wir die Wichtigkeit der Forderung. (G.) 2. Mir war's, als thät' sein Auge hinab ins Herz mir sehen. (Müller.) 3. Der Glückliche, der Behagliche, hat gut reden. (G.) 4. Wem das fehlt, der hat gut im Winkel sitzen und weise die Achseln zucken. (Sen.) 5. Denn ach, die Menschen lieben lernen, es ist das einzige wahre Glück. (Platen.) 6. Erfahrung und Uebung im Unglück lernt schweigen. (Hebel.) 7. Die Batavier hatten ihm diese Inseln erobern helfen. (Sch.) 8. Ich danke dir, Gott, daß du mich ihn hast sehen lassen. (G.) 9. Oftmals ließ er ihn in den Tiziansaal berufen. (Ebers.) 10. Alles, was der Kaiser über seine Siege schreiben läßt, ist erlogen. (Frei.) 11. Ich höre den Wagen vorfahren. Lebe wohl. (Sen.) 12. Da hieß der Doktor mich bleiben. (Ebers.) 13. Schnell wirst du die Nothwendigkeit [Notwendigkeit] verschwinden, und Recht in Unrecht sich verwandeln sehen. (Sch.) 14. Ich fühle junges, heiliges Lebensglück neuglühend mir durch Nerv und Adern rinnen. (G.) 15. Von Jugend auf hab' ich gelernt gehorchen. (G.) 16. So bitte ich Sie mir 4 Stück von der grünen Tapete aus Frankfurt kommen zu lassen. (Sch.) 17. Der Graf hat mich sitzen sehen. (G.)

18. Man hatte das Kofferchen in der Mitte des Zimmers stehen gelassen. (G.) 19. Das heißt nicht Gott vertrauen, das heißt Gott versuchen. (Sch.) 20. Still! sagte sie, hast du nicht klopfen hören? (Fey.) 21. Ich habe nie fürchterlicher fluchen hören, als Sie lachen. (Lest.) 22. Wir hatten seit mehreren Wochen von einem Baume sprechen gehört, dessen Saft eine nährende Milch ist. (Hum.) 23. Laß singen, Gesell, laß rauschen, und stimmen munter drein. ( ) 24. Sprechen Sie nicht davon, lieber Freund, es ist mir tödtlich [tötlich], wenn ich darüber sprechen hören muß. (Lindau.) 25. Auch in Meissen hört man Euch Herren nicht besonders preisen. (Sch.) 26. Vom sicheren Port läßt's sich gemüthlich [gemütlich] rathen [raten]. (Sch.) 27. Laß fliehn, was sich nicht halten läßt. (Arndt.) 28. Läßt sich aus einem Derwisch denn nichts machen? (Lest.) 29. Wer blieb nicht stehen, wenn diese Beiden langsam durch die Promenade wandelten? (Hauff.) 30. Die Braut war auf ihrem Platz mitten an der langen Tafel sitzen geblieben. (Fey.) 31. Der Herzog Milon schlafen lag. (Uh.) 32. Neben sich hatte sie einen hohen Korb stehen. (G.) 33. Ich hab' im tiefsten Grunde der Seele ruh'n ein Lied. (Müß.) 34. Legt mich hin, wo kein Liebender kommt weinen. (Herder.) 35. Endlich verzweifelte er an dem Gelingen seiner Arbeit, warf den unvollendeten Brief in die Kiste, und legte sich schlafen. (Ebers.) 36. Kommt, laßt uns geh'n spazieren in den vielgrünen Wald. (Opitz.) 37. Nie vergißt der Frühling wiederzukommen. (Tied.) 38. Der Alte lud Adam ein, den achten Platz im Fuhrwerk einzunehmen. (Ebers.) 39. Ihr Muge gebot verständig zu reden. (G.) 40. Keraunus befahl seiner Tochter, ihm einen Becher Wein zu reichen. (Ebers.) 41. Die letzten Worte Ruth's hatten ihm zu denken gegeben. (Ebers.) 42. Dem freien Manne hat Gott empor zu schauen erlaubt. (Müß.) 43. Es lebt ein Gott, zu strafen und zu rächen. (Sch.) 44. Den Freund zu erkennen, mußst du erst einen Scheffel Salz mit ihm gegessen haben. (Spr.) 45. Den Preis des Wettlaufs zu gewinnen, darfst du nicht stehn und dich besinnen. (Gleim.) 46. Vier Bretter braucht's nur, dünn und schmal, ein müdes Menschenherz zu betten. (Träger.) 47. Er ist eben ausgegangen, mit ein wenig

Wand zu handeln. (F. Gr.) 48. Und doch, der Jude war nicht zu retten, und hatte verdient, was ihm drohte. (Ebers.) 49. Wenig oder nichts steht zu gewinnen. (F. Gr.) 50. Der Fehler bleibt deiner Gnade zu verzeihen. (G.) 51. Raum scheint es zu glauben. (G.) 52. Ich blickte in den unsäuberlichen Flur hinein, es war keine Menschenseele drinnen zu sehen oder zu hören. (Fey.) 53. Das Beste, was man von ihm lernt, ist nicht mitzutheilen [=teilen]. (G.) 54. Die Zeit wurde ihm nicht lang, denn auch er hatte viel zu denken. (Fey.) 55. Basari scheint mit der Natur nie zu thun gehabt zu haben. (F. Gr.) 56. Wer es jetzt nicht merkt, daß die Xenien ein poetisches Product sind, dem ist nicht zu helfen. (Sch.) 57. Langsam kommendes Glück pflegt am längsten zu bleiben. (Herder.) 58. Darüber schlief ich ein, und als ich erwachte, glaubte ich eben nur geträumt zu haben. (G.) 59. Hier gilt's, mein Sohn, dem Kaiser wohl zu dienen. (Sch.) 60. Seine Bärtlichkeit gegen seine Kinder hinderte ihn nicht, sie in guter Zucht zu halten. (Grube.) 61. Man mußte sich hüten, seine bedeutigen Ausdrücke nicht für eine Gewährung zu nehmen. (Ranke.) 62. Er fand Lotten beschäftigt, dem Alten zuzureden. (G.) 63. Er besann sich nicht lange, von seinen im Felde stehenden Heeren sogleich achtzehntausend Mann abzudanken. (Sch.)

## ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XXII.

### THE INFINITIVE AS ADJUNCT, ETC.

(344.) 1. Der Irrthum [Irrtum] ist viel leichter zu erkennen, als die Wahrheit zu finden. (G.) 2. Daß Sie mit einigen Partieen aus dem Cellini\* anfangen werden, ist mir lieb zu hören. (Sch.) 3. Säuerlich war das Wasser, gesund zu trinken. (G.) 4. Sie ist schön zugleich und schrecklich anzusehen. (Sch.) 5. Ich bin nicht jung genug, vor Gözen mich zu neigen, und Troß mit Troß zu bändigen, alt genug. (G.) 6. Ich war gestern so unvorsichtig, ein paar Kapitel im Herodot zu lesen. (Fey.) 7. Der Alte, der auch sonst schwer zu lenken war, hatte sich fest gewei-

\* The life of Benvenuto Cellini: see 66.4c.

gert. (Heg.) 8. Eure Versöhnung war ein wenig zu schnell, als daß sie dauerhaft hätte sein sollen. (G.) 9. Die Knaben waren zu jung, um selbst eine Rolle zu spielen. (S. Gr.)

(345.) 1. Vorgestern hatte ich eine halbe Hoffnung, Sie vielleicht hier zu sehen. (Sch.) 2. Sein plötzlicher Wunsch, Florenz zu verlassen, hatte vielleicht aber noch andere Gründe. (S. Gr.) 3. Auf der Folterbank hatte er das Recht zurückgewonnen, sich selbst zu achten. (Ebers.) 4. Ich bin in der Lage, mir in der Fremde als Dienender erst Zutrauen und gute Gesinnung erwerben zu müssen. (Frei.) 5. Die üble Empfindung, trotz der redlichsten Mühe zurückzubleiben, verdarb ihm das Dasein. (Ebers.) 6. Die größte Beredsamkeit besteht in der Kunst zu schweigen. (Hippel.) 7. Die Pflicht zu bessern gibt uns das Recht zu tadeln. (Schefer.) 8. Dann habe ich die Pflicht, ihn zu rächen. (Frei.)

(346.) 1. Die Weiber lieben die Stärke, ohne sie nachzuahmen, die Männer die Zartheit, ohne sie zu erwidern. (J. P. R.) 2. Mancherlei hast du versäumt; statt zu handeln, hast geträumet, statt zu denken, hast geschwiegen. (G.) 3. Natur gab uns Verstand, um recht zu denken; um recht zu handeln, gab sie uns das Herz. (Blumauer.) 4. Sie begnügten sich damit, die umliegenden Klöster zu plündern. (Sch.) 5. Sie kam gar nicht dazu, gegen ihn den Gram und Zorn auszulassen. (Auerbach.) 6. Ich konnte mich nicht daran gewöhnen, mir die fromme Augustine so zu denken. (Bischoffe.)

(347.) 1. Ich meines Bruders Kinder nicht erkennen! (Less.) 2. Ich eines Mannes Bild in meinem Busen tragen! (Sch.) 3. Lieber, tausendmal lieber, Bettelbrod essen und in der Kunst Großes erreichen, als im Glücke prassen und schwelgen. (Ebers.) 4. Barmherziger Gott — diese Stunde nur überleben und dann dich preisen, ewig. (Heg.) 5. Sie sprach: nur aus dem Vaterland nicht reisen! (Müß.) 6. Der kleine Paul ist hinübergelaufen und hat gerufen: Aufwachen, liebe Mutter, aufwachen! Aber die Mutter ist nicht aufgewacht. (Koch.)

(348.) 1. Mitten in dem Glück, Papa wieder zu umarmen und mein Schwesterchen, noch viel reizender, als ich sie mir vorgestellt, in Empfang zu nehmen, dachte ich hundertmal daran.

(Seq.) 2. Hier bat ich ihn, sich niederzusetzen, bis ich im Stande gewesen sein würde, aus der Schlucht, wo ein ziemlich reichlicher Quell zum Meere floß, und wo wir bereits einen kurzen Halt gemacht hatten, abermals Wasser zu holen. (Spiel.) 3. Ach, freilich werden sie ihn haben umbringen wollen. (Leff.)

### THEME XVIII.

#### THE INFINITIVE.

1. I am accustomed to this eternal coming and going, and standing still is hard for me. 2. The selling of all these beautiful things pained me much. 3. I have no time for painting or reading, I must accustom myself to working. 4. To suffer wrong is a misfortune, but to do wrong is a greater one. 5. To do without is easier than to beg. 6. To remain quiet and to hide myself was quite impossible. 7. It pained the child to see such a noble animal killed, and I did not succeed in comforting him for it. 8. He can well be contented, for he has already all that he wants. 9. We taught him to obey his parents and to love all men. 10. He bade me come to him and helped me write my letter. 11. You will soon see the wagon drive up and the doctor go away. 12. I saw him go away, and I felt all my hopes disappear. 13. I heard the emperor tell of his victories, and he thanked God that he had let him conquer\* this country. 14. He had seen his only son killed in this war. 15. We had her buy several pieces of the green carpet. 16. I hear laughing and singing, who is it? 17. Now they are coming, I hear a knocking. 18. She caused work to be done for the poor in her house, and I heard her charity praised everywhere. 19. Yes, we have also heard her praised. 20. She does not suffer herself to be hindered by her illness. 21. Nothing bad can be said of her. 22. Nothing can be made of this man. 23. Why did

---

\* 439.2.

you remain sitting at the table? 24. I had a good friend sitting beside me, and I wanted to talk with him. 25. When we went to walk together he often remained standing, in order to look after the people. 26. He invited me to go to drive and allowed me to take my sister with me. 27. He commanded me to speak, but to speak sensibly. 28. He did not forget to offer his guest a cup of wine. 29. We have come to visit you, will you allow us to come again? 30. Spring comes to make us happy again. 31. Your story is not to be believed. You have not heard the whole; the best still remains to be told. 32. There is not one soul to be saved out of this house. 33. You have only to command, we will do anything. 34. He is accustomed to going to sleep over his book, and I take heed not to wake him. 35. Nothing now hinders us from going away. 36. What hindered you from seeing the emperor? 37. I was busied in helping the old man, and did not believe I could leave him. 38. Everything you say is pleasant to me. 39. Truth is hard to find, but it is still harder to recognize it, when one has found it. 40. I am too young to read Herodotus. 41. He was too old to find new friends, but he was still too young to die, therefore he lives lonely and alone. 42. I have no wish to blame him, but I have also no wish of seeing him again. 43. The hope of improving him gives me the courage to blame him. 44. I had not time enough to earn his confidence for myself. 45. He had not the courage to avenge his father, so he lost the right of respecting himself. 46. He has the misfortune to have survived all his friends. 47. They praise the virtues of this great man without imitating them. 48. Instead of telling me the truth he was silent, and I went away without recognizing him. 49. I did not think of blaming him. 50. They had to content themselves with drinking some water. 51. I eat his bread and live in his house? Never! 52. Better be quite poor than not to live in one's fatherland. 53. Oh, to avenge my emperor! then I can die



happy. 54. I have no wish to survive my emperor, who was killed in the last war. 55. I hope never to leave the country where I was born, and where all my friends have lived and died.

### ILLUSTRATIVE SENTENCES XXIII

#### PARTICIPLES.

(350.) 1. Jede handelnde Nation dient sich und anderen Völkern. (Göppinger.) 2. Du bist kein Schüler mehr, sondern ein werdender Meister. (Ebers.) 3. Dann folg' ich der weidenden Heerde. (G.) 4. Warum sollte ich einen tanzenden Thee besuchen? (Hauff.) 5. Gestern mußte ich mich wundern, wie Sie sich nach einer schlechtschlafenden Nacht, und unter Wolken von Tabakrauch, noch so ganz gut und bei Humor hielten. (Sch.) 6. Das Buch würde mir bei den vorhabenden Arbeiten gute Dienste thun. (Sch.)

(351.) 1. Der Dichter schweigt von tausend durchgeweinten Tag' und Nächten. (G.) 2. Das Mädchen stand mit gerungenen Händen. (Frei.) 3. Der geistreiche, heitere Italiener war überall ein gern gesehener Gast. (Ebers.) 4. Das volle, ausgefüllte Leben, sowie die leichte Ermüdung nach gethaner Arbeit, dies alles war gewiß schön. (Ebers.) 5. Die Pflichten der Hausfrau kann vielleicht eine gemiethete [gemietete] Hand erfüllen, die Pflichten der Mutter nie. (Busow.) 6. Der König kann nicht alle verdiente Männer kennen. (Löff.)

(352.) 1. Auch bitte ich mir durch Vulpian das Verzeichniß der von mir einzusendenden Bücher zurückschicken zu lassen. (Sch.) 2. Als ich mich wegen eines anzukaufenden Landguts für dich erkundigte, ward sogleich ein Mann berufen, der mir derer zehn antrug. (Bischoffe.) 3. Die Nachahmung ist angeboren, das Nachzuahmende wird nicht leicht erkannt. (G.)

(353.) 1. Sich selbst getreu war er ein Schaffender, ein Vorwärtstrebender bis zu seinen letzten Tagen. (Kewald.) 2. Diese Worte wirkten wie kräftige Arznei auf den Genesenden. (Ebers.) 3. Der Fahrende stieß manchmal die neben ihm Sitzende an, daß

sie auch hinhörche auf das, was man sage. (Auerbach.) 4. Ich bin recht verlangend nach der Ausführung Ihrer vielfachen Ideen, und erwarte recht bald etwas davon. (Sch.) 5. Und wenn ich in die Zukunft sah, wie lachend erschien sie mir! (Hauff.)

(354.) 1. Auf Künftiges rechne nicht, und zahl' nicht auf Versprochenes, klag' an Verlorenes nicht, und denk' nicht an Brochenes. (Rück.) 2. Verordnet ist im englischen Gesetz, daß jeder Angeklagte durch Geschworene von Seinesgleichen soll gerichtet werden. (Sch.) 3. Sie bekam täglich etwas geschenkt. (G.) 4. Ich mußte Sie bei ihm, und fühlte mich nicht ganz von ihm getrennt. (Frei.) 5. Er bekam ihren Anführer gefangen. (Sch.)

(356.) 1. Die Welle schwankt und fliehet und schwellt, und beugt sich schäumend nieder. (G.) 2. Guten Abend, Alte! sagte ich. Sie nickte nur verdrossen mit dem Kopfe. (Heg.) 3. Meinen Vater? stammelte Ulrich, und schaute dem Anderen bleich und fragend ins Antlitz. (Ebers.)

(357.) 1. Von einem so langen Wege kommt man immer ermüdet an. (G.) 2. Neben ihm reitend, erhielt er aus seinem Munde Auskunft über alle Punkte. (S. Gr.) 3. Da lag die Frau . . in einem ärmlichen Sarge von rohen Planken gebettet. (Ebers.) 4. Sie hatte Frauen in der Kirche vor solchen Bildern knieend beten gesehen. (Görres.) 5. Friß aber war in die Kirche gegangen und stand neben seinem Freunde an die Thür gedrückt. (Heg.) 6. Da warf sich der Schüler weinend an die Brust des Meisters. (Ebers.) 7. Da erschien plötzlich, allen unerwartet, der verschollene Meister. (Heg.) 8. Alt geworden bei ununterbrochener Beschäftigung mit der Kunst, war es ihm unmöglich, sich der gewohnten Thätigkeit ganz zu enthalten. (S. Gr.) 9. So war er ein paar Straßen weit gegangen, als er, um eine Ecke biegend, eine Männergestalt vor sich erblickte. (Heg.) 10. Die wahre Freude wandelt auf der Erde, wie die wahre Weisheit, von wenigen gesehen, von der Ruhe begleitet. (Stolberg.) 11. Sowie die Flamme des Lichts, auch umgewendet, hinaufstrahlt, so, vom Schicksal gebeugt, strebet der Gute empor. (Herder.) 12. Möchtest du beglückt und weise endigen des Lebens Reise. (G.) 13. Theilnehmend [teilnehmend] an seinem Zuge, hofften sie die Herrschaft wieder zu er-

langen. (S. Gr.) 14. Von da sich direct nach Osten wendend, und im Thale des Arnos marschirend, würde er Florenz am raschesten erreicht haben. (S. Gr.) 15. Doch endlich, angetrieben durch meinen Oheim, angelockt durch Freunde, die sich vor mir in die Welt hinausbegeben, ward der Entschluß gefaßt. (G.)

(359.) 1. Eine Kugel kam geflogen; galt's dir oder galt es mir? (Uh.) 2. Egmont kam auf dem Markt geritten. (G.) 3. Da kommt einmal gesprungen sein jüngster Edelknab. (Uh.) 4. Das nenne ich geschlafen. (Körner.) 5. Sollst auch nicht lange klagen . . nur frisch, nur frisch gesungen, und alles wird wieder gut. (Chamisso.) 6. Nicht lang gefeiert, frisch! Die Mauersteine herbei! Den Kalk, den Mörtel zugefahren! (Sch.) 7. Rosen auf den Weg gestreut, und des Harms vergessen! (Hölty.)

(358.) 1. Er unterrichtete sie von den außerordentlichen Schicksalen ihrer längst als todt [tot] beweinten Tante. (Bscholke.) 2. Er begab sich auf das ihm vom Kurfürsten geschenkte Landgut. (Grube.) 3. Alle Feinde der vom Kaiser zur Gründung und Kultur seines unermesslichen Reiches begonnenen Reformen erwarteten nach seinem Tode eine allgemeine Gegenrevolution. (Bscholke.) 4. Wo der Strom eine Sandbank übrig läßt, da liegen mit offenen Rachen, unbeweglich wie Felsstücke hingestreckt, oft bedeckt mit Vögeln, die ungeschlachteten Körper der Krokodile. (Hum.)

## THEME XIX.

### PARTICIPLES.

1. We ought not to wake these sleeping children. 2. If we do not wake the sleeping ones, they will not be ready for the intended journey. 3. I said many a consoling word to the weeping maiden, but she did not cease to lament her lost friend. 4. Nothing can bring us back the lost ones. 5. I have not yet received the letters sent in by you, but I hope they will bring us the wished-for news. 6. Instead of giving me the promised present, the traveller gave me nothing. 7. Tired by the long journey, he remained quiet the whole day. 8. Who is the one sitting

next you? 9. I saw her coming into the church weeping and wringing her hands. 10. Kneeling before the picture, and praying, she tries to forget her unhappiness. 11. The few words spoken by the judge taught the accused that he had nothing more to hope. 12. He knew himself to be parted forever from his friends and his home. 13. Accompanied only by a few friends, he left Florence, and turning toward the North, he soon reached the army. 14. Marching directly to Florence the army appeared suddenly, unexpected by everyone, before the city. 15. A man came running into the city, and brought the news that the enemy so long feared by all would soon reach the city. 16. Then one saw the women and children come weeping and complaining into the market-place. 17. Arrived in England, I asked after the son of my long lost but always warmly loved friend. 18. I hoped to find him on the estate bought by his father and given by him to this son. 19. But the son, enticed by bad friends, had sold the estate inherited from his father and had betaken himself to the city. 20. Turning around the corner, and going a couple of streets further, I soon reached the house hired by him. 21. Riding beside me, he begged me to take part in his expedition. 22. On this way we met many riding and driving. 23. It is impossible for a man grown old in uninterrupted employment to abstain entirely from his accustomed activity. 24. The children came springing to me, and brought me the letter sent by you.



# VOCABULARIES.

---

## ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>accus.</i> accusative.	<i>m.</i> masculine noun.
<i>adj.</i> adjective.	<i>n.</i> neuter noun.
<i>adv.</i> adverb.	<i>N.</i> New or weak conjugation.
<i>art.</i> article.	<i>num.</i> numeral.
<i>conj.</i> conjunction.	<i>O.</i> Old or strong conjugation.
<i>dat.</i> dative.	<i>pers.</i> personal.
<i>dem.</i> demonstrative.	<i>pl.</i> plural.
<i>determ.</i> determinative.	<i>poss.</i> possessive.
<i>f.</i> feminine noun.	<i>ppl.</i> past participle.
<i>gen.</i> genitive.	<i>prep.</i> preposition.
<i>impers.</i> impersonal.	<i>pron.</i> pronoun.
<i>indec'l.</i> indeclinable.	<i>pron'l.</i> pronominal.
<i>insep'le</i> inseparable.	<i>reflex.</i> reflexive.
<i>interj.</i> interjection.	<i>rel.</i> relative.
<i>intr.</i> intransitive verb.	<i>sep'le</i> separable.
<i>irreg.</i> irregular.	<i>tr.</i> transitive verb.

## EXPLANATIONS.

Verbs of the Old or strong conjugation, and of the New or weak if irregular, are so noted (by an added *O*, or *irreg.*, respectively). Their forms are to be sought in the list of irregular verbs. Verbs taking *sein* as an auxiliary have an *ſ* added after them; to this an *h* is added if the verb takes either *sein* or *haben*.

Nouns have the sign of their gender appended, and the endings of their genitive singular (except of feminines) and nominative plural.

Adverbs in *-ly* derived from adjectives and having the same form with them (79) are not separately entered.

References are made to the grammar by paragraph and division, as in the grammar itself.

## I. GERMAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

**ab**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* off, away.  
**ab danken**, *tr.* dismiss with thanks, discharge.  
**Abend**, *m.* -ds, -de. evening, eve.  
**abende**, *f.* curfew.  
**aber**, *conj.* but, however.  
**abermals**, *adv.* again, once more.  
**abhängen**, *O. intr.* depend, be dependent.  
**abliefern**, *tr.* deliver, consign.  
**abnehmen**, *O. tr.* take off or away, remove, gain or obtain from (*dat.*)  
**abreisen**, *intr.* †. journey away, depart, go away.  
**abrufen**, *O. tr.* call away.  
**Abſcheu**, *m.* -eues. abhorrence, loathing.  
**Abſchied**, *m.* -ds, -de. departure, leave.  
**abſchlagen**, *O. tr.* strike off, cut off.  
**abſchreiben**, *O. tr.* write off, copy; write and refuse.  
**abſenden**, (*reg. or irreg.*) *tr.* send off or away, despatch.  
**Abſicht**, *f.* -ten. view, aim, intention, plan.  
**abſprechen**, *O. tr.* refuse, deny.  
**abwechſeln**, *intr.* † or ‡. change, alternate.  
**Achſel**, *f.* -ln. shoulder.  
**Acht**, *num.* eight. **zehn**, eighteen.  
**zig**, eighty.  
**achten**, *tr.* have regard for, respect; esteem, consider, value.  
**achtjährig**, *adj.* eight-year-old.

**Acker**, *m.* -rs, Acker. cultivated field, acre. **Ackerbau**, *m.* agriculture.  
**Adel**, *m.* -ls. nobility.  
**Ader**, *f.* -rn. vein.  
**ahnen**, *tr.* have presentiment of, forebode, suspect.  
**ähnlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* like, resembling.  
**Ahnung**, *f.* -gen. presentiment, foreboding.  
**all**, *indef. pron. and pron'l adj.:* collectively, all, entire, whole; distributively, every, each, any, all.  
**alles**, all, everything, everyone: see 193.  
**allein**, *adj. (or adv.)* alone, single, only. *conj.* only, but.  
**allem**, *adv.* all that.  
**allerchriſtlich**, *adj.* most Christian (*title assumed by the French kings*).  
**allgemein**, *adj.* common to all, general.  
**allzuviel**, *adv.* all too much.  
**Almanach**, *n.* -chs, -che. almanach.  
**Almoſen**, *n.* -ns, -n. alms, charity.  
**als**, *conj.* as; as being, in character of; *after comparative*, than; *after negative*, other than, except, but; *with past tense*, when, as; *before inverted clause*, as if. — **ob**, as if.  
**also**, *adv. and conj.* thus, accordingly, therefore.  
**alt**, *adj. (or adv.)* old, aged, ancient.  
**englisch**, *adj.* Old English.  
**Alter**, *n.* -ers, -r. age, old-age, epoch.

**ältlich, adj.** (or *adv.*) elderly, oldish.

**Amerika, n.** America.

**Amerikaner, m.** -rs, -r. American.

**amerikanisch, adj.** American.

**Amt, n.** -tes, *Aemter.* office, charge, place. **mann, m.** bailiff, steward.

**amüsant, adj.** amusing.

**amüsieren, tr.** amuse.

**an, adv.** and *sep'le prefix.* on, along, up. *prep.: of position* (with *dat. or accus.*), at, by, against, along; *of time*, on, upon, at; *in other relations*, in respect to, in the way of, in, at, to, by, of.

**ander, pron'l adj.** other, else; different; next, second: see 194, 193.3c, 203.1a.

**anders, adv.** otherwise, else, differently.

**anerkennen, (irreg.) tr.** recognize, acknowledge.

**Anfang, m.** -gs, -änge. beginning.

**anfangen, O. tr.** set about, begin, undertake. *intr.* begin, originate.

**Anführer, m.** -rs, -r. leader.

**angeboren, adj.** (or *adv.*) inborn, hereditary.

**angehören, intr.** belong, appertain.

**angewöhnen, tr.** accustom, inure.

**angreifen, O. tr.** lay hold on, seize, assail.

**Angst, f.** *Ängste.* anxiety, fear.

**ängstlich, adj.** (or *adv.*) anxious, distressed.

**anhalten, O. tr.** hold on to, stop, detain. *intr.* stop.

**anhören, tr.** listen to, hear to the end.

**anlaufen, tr.** purchase, buy.

**anflagen, tr.** complain against, accuse, charge.

**ankommen, arrive, come;** (with *auf* and *accus.*) depend on. *es kommt ihm nicht darauf an*, it is a

matter of no consequence to him.

**ankündigen, tr.** announce, notify.

**anlocken, tr.** allure, entice, tempt.

**annehmen, O. tr.** take on, take, accept.

**anpöcken, intr.** knock (at the door).

**Anschein, m.** -ns. appearance, semblance.

**ansehen, O. tr.** look on or at, regard.

**Ansehen, n.** -ns. aspect, look.

**Ansicht, f.** -ten. view, sight, opinion.

**Anspruch, m.** -ches, -üche. address, claim.

**anstatt, prep.** (with *gen.*) instead, in place.

**anstößen, O. tr.** push against, strike against. *intr.* stumble, offend.

**Antlitz, n.** -tes, -te. face, visage.

**antragen, O. tr.** lay before some one, propose, offer.

**antreiben, O. tr.** drive on, impel.

**antreten, O. tr.** tread on; commence; approach, accost.

**Antwort, f.** -ten. answer, reply.

**antworten, tr.** answer, reply.

**anvertrauen, tr.** confide, trust.

**anwenden, (reg. or irreg.) tr.** turn or apply to something, apply, employ.

**Anzahl, f.** number.

**anziehen, O. tr.** draw on, attract. *refl.* dress one's self.

**anzünden, tr.** kindle, light up.

**Apfel, m.** -ls, *Äpfel.* apple.

**April, m.** -ls. April.

**Arbeit, f.** -ten. work, labor; result of labor, performance.

**arbeiten, tr. or intr.** work, labor, toil.

**Arbeiter, m.** -rs, -r. workman.

**Archipel, n.** -ls. archipelago.

**Arm, m.** -mes, -me. arm.



**arm, adj.** (or *adv.*) poor, needy, indigent, unfortunate.

**armenisch, adj.** Armenian.

**ärmlich, adj.** (or *adv.*) poor, needy; mean, paltry.

**Art, f.** -ten. kind, sort, manner.

**artig, adj.** (or *adv.*) well behaved, good, obedient, polite, pretty.

**Arznei, f.** medicine, physic.

**Arzt, m.** -tes, -te. doctor, physician.

**athmen [atmen], intr.** breathe.

**auch, adv. or conj.** also, too, even.

*after* wer, was, zc. ever, soever.

**auf, adv. and sep'le prefix.** up, upwards; upon, open. *prep.* (with *dat.* and *accus.*) upon, on, onto, unto, to; after, on, toward, against. **auf und nieder,** up and down.

**Aufgabe, f.** -ben. task, problem.

**aufgeben, O. tr.** give up, resign.

**aufgehen, O. intr.** †. go up, rise.

**aufheben, O. tr.** heave up, lift up, raise.

**aufhören, intr.** stop, cease, finish.

**aufklären, tr.** clear up, explain, brighten.

**aufmachen, tr.** open. *reflex.* get up, rise.

**opferen, tr.** offer up, sacrifice.

**aufrichten, tr.** set up, erect.

**Aufsatz, m.** -tes, -äße. something set up, composition, essay.

**aufstehen, O. intr.** †. stand up, rise; get up.

**aussuchen, tr.** seek out, look up, search for.

**aufthun, O. tr.** open.

**aufwachen, intr.** †. wake up, awake.

**Auge, n.** -ges, -gen. eye. **ins Auge fassen,** fix the eyes upon. **unter vier Augen,** tête-à-tête.

**Augenblick, m.** -fes, -fe. moment, instant.

**August, m.** -ts. August.

**ausbreiten, tr.** spread out.

**Ausbruch, m.** -ches, -üche. outbreak.

**Ausdruck, m.** -des, -üde. expression; phrase.

**ausfallen, O. intr.** †. fall out, turn out, result.

**Ausführung, f.** carrying out, execution.

**ausfüllen, tr.** fill out or up.

**Ausgang, m.** -ngs, -gänge. issue, event, outlet.

**ausgehen, O. intr.** †. go out, go forth or away.

**ausgraben, O. tr.** dig out.

**Auskunft, f.** -ünfte. information.

**auslassen, O. tr.** let out, let go; omit.

**ausreiben, O. tr.** rub out, rub open.

**aus schlagen, O. tr.** strike out, reject.

**aussehen, O. intr.** look, appear.

**außen, adv.** out of doors, outside.

**außer, prep.** (with *dat.*) outside of, beside, except. **außer sich,** beside one's self. *conj.* except, unless.

**außer daß,** except that.

**äußer, adj.** outer, external.

**außerhalb, prep.** (with *gen.*) outside, beyond.

**außerordentlich, adj.** extraordinary.

**ausprechen, O. tr.** speak out, pronounce.

**ausstoßen, O. tr.** thrust out, expel, utter abruptly.

**austheilen [teilen], tr.** deal out, distribute.

**ausziehen, O. tr.** draw out, extract, undress. *intr.* †. move out, remove.

**Bach, m.** -ches, -äche. brook.

**Bächlein, n.** -ns, -n. brooklet.

**backen, O. or N. tr.** bake.

**baden, tr. or intr.** bathe.

**Bahn, f.** -nen. path, road, way.  
**bald, adv.** soon, quickly.  
**Band, n.** -des, -de. bond, fetter.  
**Band, n.** -des, -änder. ribbon.  
**bändigen, tr.** control, subdue.  
**bang, adj. (or adv.)** anxious, fearful. *es ist or wird einem bang,* one is or becomes fearful or afraid.  
**Bank, f.** -änke. bench.  
**Barbar, m.** -ren, -ren. barbarian, savage.  
**barmherzig, adj. (or adv.)** merciful, charitable.  
**Barmherzigkeit, f.** charity.  
**Batavier, n.** Batavian.  
**bauen, tr.** build.  
**Bauer, m.** -rs or -rn, -r or -rn. peasant, rustic.  
**Baum, m.** -mes, -äume. tree.  
**beängstigen, tr.** make anxious, alarm.  
**Beantwortung, f.** -gen. answering, reply.  
**Becher, m.** -rs, -r. beaker, goblet.  
**bedauern, tr.** pity, grieve for.  
**bedecken, tr.** cover.  
**bedenken, (irreg.) tr.** think upon, consider.  
**bedürfen, (irreg.) intr. (with gen.) or tr.** stand in need of, need, require.  
**Befehl, m.** -ls, -le. command, order.  
**befehlen, O. tr.** commend; command, order.  
**befinden, O. reflex.** find one's self, be (*in respect to health, etc.*).  
**befreien, tr.** make free, free.  
**befreunden, tr.** befriend. **befreundet, friendly, allied.**  
**begeben, O. reflex.** betake one's self, repair; occur.  
**begegnen, intr. (with dat.)** f. meet.  
**begehen, O. tr.** go about; commit.  
**begehren, tr.** desire, covet.

**beginnen, O. tr.** begin.  
**begleiten, tr.** accompany, escort.  
**Begleiter, m.** -rs, -r. companion, escort.  
**beglücken, tr.** give happiness to, make happy, bless. **beglückt, blessed, happy.**  
**begnügen, reflex.** content one's self, be satisfied.  
**begreifen, O. tr.** comprehend.  
**Begriff, m.** -ffs, -ffe. comprehension, idea.  
**behalich, adj. (or adv.)** pleasing, comfortable.  
**behalten, O. tr.** hold on to, keep, retain.  
**behaupten, tr.** maintain, assert, declare.  
**behend, adj. (or adv.)** handy, nimble, quick.  
**bei, sep'le prefix and adv.** near, by, beside. *prep. (with dat.)* by, near; at, in, with, among; at the house of.  
**beide, adj.** both, the two.  
**beinahe, adv.** near, about, almost.  
**Beispiel, n.** -ls, -le. illustration, example.  
**beißen, O. tr.** bite.  
**Beistand, m.** -ds. assistance, help.  
**befannt, adj. (or adv.)** known, noted, acquainted; *as noun,* acquaintance.  
**bekommen, O. tr.** get, obtain, receive.  
**befränzen, tr.** adorn with a garland, crown.  
**befümmern, tr.** afflict, trouble, concern.  
**beleben, tr.** enliven, revive.  
**belehren, tr.** teach, inform, correct.  
**belohnen, tr.** reward, recompense.  
**bemächtigen, reflex. (with gen.)** take possession of, get into one's power, seize.

- bemerken, tr.** remark, observe.  
**Bemerkung, f.** gen. remark, observation.  
**beneiden, tr.** envy.  
**benutzen, tr.** turn to use, use.  
**beobachten, tr.** observe, watch.  
**bequemen, tr.** make convenient.  
*reflex.* accomodate one's self, submit.  
**Beredtsamkeit [Beredts-], f.** eloquence.  
**bereit, adj.** ready, prepared.  
**bereiten, tr.** make ready, prepare.  
**bereits, adv.** already.  
**Berg, m.** -ges, -ge. mountain.  
**Bergmann, m.** miner. **Bergpfad, m.** mountain-path.  
**Beruf, m.** -fs, -fe. calling, vocation, office, profession.  
**berufen, O. tr.** call upon, summon.  
**berühmt, past ppl. of berühren,** famous, renowned.  
**beschäftigen, tr.** busy, employ, occupy.  
**Beschäftigung, f.** -gen. employment, business.  
**Bescheidenheit, f.** discretion, modesty.  
**beschreiben, O. tr.** describe.  
**besinnen, O. reflex.** bethink one's self, reflect.  
**besitzen, O. tr.** possess.  
**Besitzer, m.** -rs, -r. possessor.  
**Besitzung, f.** -gen. possession, property.  
**besonders, adv.** in particular, especially.  
**Besonnenheit, f.** -ten. discretion.  
**besprechen, O. tr.** speak about, talk of, discuss.  
**besser, adj. (or adv.: comp. of gut),** better.  
**bessern, tr.** make better, improve, correct.  
**bestechen, O. tr.** corrupt, bribe,
- bestehen, O. tr.** stand up, endure.  
*intr.* stand firm, insist.  
**bestellen, tr.** arrange, order.  
**bestimmen, tr.** fix, determine, design.  
**bestreben, reflex.** exert one's self, endeavor. *as noun,* endeavor, effort.  
**besuchen, tr.** go and see, visit, call upon.  
**beten, intr.** pray, offer prayer.  
**betrachten, tr.** dwell upon, consider, look at, regard.  
**betragen, O. tr.** amount to. *reflex.* behave. *as noun,* bearing, conduct.  
**betreffen, O. tr.** befall, surprise. **betroffen,** surprised, taken aback.  
**Bett, n.** -tes, -tte or -tter or -tten. bed.  
**Bettelbrod, n.** bread obtained by begging.  
**betteln, intr.** ask alms, beg.  
**betten, tr.** make the bed, bed.  
**Bettler, m.** -rs, -r. beggar.  
**beugen, tr.** bend, bow, incline.  
**Beutel, m.** -ls, -l. small bag, money bag, purse.  
**bevollmächtigen, tr.** bestow full power upon. **Bevollmächtigt, (past ppl. as noun)** plenipotentiary, agent.  
**bewegen, O. and N. tr.** induce; move, stir, agitate.  
**Bewegung, f.** gen. movement, agitation.  
**beweinen, tr.** weep over, bewail.  
**beweisen, O. tr.** point out, show, prove.  
**bewundern, tr.** admire.  
**bezahlen, tr.** pay.  
**bezeugen, tr.** bear witness to, testify.  
**bezwingen, O. tr.** subdue, vanquish.  
**Bibliothek, f.** -ten. library.

**biegen**, *O. tr.* bow, bend.  
**Bier**, *n.* -res, -re. beer.  
**bie ten**, *O. tr.* bid, offer.  
**Bild**, *n.* -des, -er. picture, image.  
**Bildhauer**, *m.* sculptor.  
**bil den**, *tr.* shape, form, build, train.  
**billig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) reasonable, fair, just; cheap.  
**Binde**, *f.* -en. something bound on, bandage.  
**binden**, *O. tr.* bind, tie, confine, constrain.  
**binnen**, *adv.* within. *prep.* (with *dat.* or *gen.*) within, inside of.  
**bis**, *adv.* and *prep.* as far as, until, till, to. *conj.* (for *bis daß*) till the time that, till, until. — **nach**, as far as. — **zu**, until.  
**Bis chen**, *n.* -ns, -n. little bit, little.  
**Bis chof**, *m.* -fs, -öfe. bishop; bishop (a kind of drink).  
**Bissen**, *m.* -ns, -n. bit, morsel.  
**Bitte**, *f.* -ten. request, prayer.  
**bitten**, *O. tr.* ask, request, beg.  
**bitter**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) bitter.  
**blaß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) pale.  
**Blatt**, *n.* -ttes, -ätter. leaf; leaf of book, page.  
**blau**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) blue.  
**bleiben**, *O. intr.* f. continue, stay, remain.  
**bleich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) pale, pallid, faded.  
**bliden**, *tr.* glance, look.  
**blind**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) blind.  
**bloß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) bare, stripped, destitute, mere. **bloßstellen**, *tr.* expose, lay open.  
**blühen**, *intr.* bloom, blossom, flower.  
**Blume**, *f.* -men. flower, blossom.  
**Blumenmalen**, *n.* flower painting.

**Blut**, *n.* -tes. blood; race.  
**Blutstropfen**, *m.* drop of blood.  
**Blüthe** [-te], *f.* -then. blossom, bloom.  
**Boden**, *m.* -ens, -öden. bottom; ground, floor; garret.  
**Bohemer**, *m.* -rs, -r. Bohemian, gypsy. **weib**, *n.* gypsy-woman.  
**Böhme**, *m.* -en, -en. Bohemian.  
**borgen**, *tr.* borrow, lend.  
**bös** or **böse**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) bad, evil, wicked, angry, malicious.  
**Bösewicht**, *m.* villain, scamp, rascal.  
**Bösheit**, *f.* badness, wickedness, anger.  
**Boten**, *m.* -ns, -en. messenger.  
**Brand**, *m.* -des, -ände. fire, conflagration, brand.  
**brauchen**, *tr.* use, employ; be in want of, need.  
**brauen**, *tr.* brew.  
**braun**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) brown.  
**brausen**, *intr.* move on tumultuously, roar.  
**Braut**, *f.* -äute. bride; (in Germany betrothed).  
**breit**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) broad, wide.  
**brechen**, *O. tr.* break.  
**brennen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* or *intr.* burn.  
**Brett**, *n.* -ttes, -tter. board, plank.  
**Brief**, *m.* -fes, -fe. letter.  
**brieflich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) by letter, written.  
**bringen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* bring, fetch.  
**Brod**, *n.* -des, -de. bread, loaf of bread.  
**Brücke**, *f.* -en. bridge.  
**Bruder**, *m.* -rs, -über. brother.  
**Brünnlein**, *n.* -ns, -n. little spring.  
**Brust**, *f.* -üste. breast.  
**Bube**, *m.* -en, -en. boy, youth.  
**Buch**, *n.* -ches, -ücher. book.  
**Buchdruckerkunst**, *f.* art of book-printing.

**Bund**, *m.* -des, -ünde. bond, tie; league, compact.

**bunt**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) many colored, gay, variegated, bright.

**Bürger**, *m.* -rs, -r. townsman, burgher, commoner.

**Busen**, *m.* -ns, -n. bosom, breast.

**Cardinal**, *m.* -ls, -le. cardinal.

**Christ**, *m.* -ten, -ten. (*f.* -tin.) christian.

**Christenheit**, *f.* christendom.

**Christenschaar**, *f.* band of christians.

**christlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) christian.

**Cigarre**, *f.* -ren. cigar.

**Comptoir**, *n.* -res, -re. counting house, office.

**Coupé**, *n.* railway car or carriage.

**da** (or **dar**), *adv.* there, then, at that place, under those circumstances. *after relative, -ever, -so-ever. in composition with preps. see 154.3, 166.4, 180.*

**dabei**, *adv.* thereby; by it or them or that: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and bei.* — **sein**, be present, take part.

**Dach**, *n.* -ches, -ächer. roof.

**dafür**, *adv.* therefor, for it or that or them: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and für.*

**dagegen**, *adv.* against it or them or that: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and gegen.*

**daher**, *adv.* thence, therefore.

**Dame**, *f.* -men. lady.

**dämmern**, *intr.* become dusk or twilight.

**Dank**, *m.* -fes. gratitude, thanks.

**danke**, *tr.* thank.

**dann**, *adv.* then, at that time.

**dar**, *see da.*

**daran**, *adv.* at or on it or that or them: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and an.*

**darauf**, *adv.* thereupon, upon or on it or them or that: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and auf.*

**daraus**, *adv.* out of it or them or that: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and auf.*

**darein**, *adv.* thereinto (= *accus. with in*), into or to it, etc.: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and in.*

**darin** (**drin**, or **darinnen**), *adv.* therein (= *dat. with in*), in it, etc.: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and in.*

**darob**, *adv.* on account of it, etc.: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and ob.*

**darstellen**, *tr.* set forth, exhibit, represent.

**darum**, *adv.* therefore, about it, etc.: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and um.*

**daß**, *see der.*

**Dasein**, *n.* -ns. being present; existence.

**da stehen**, *O. intr.* †. stand there.

**dauerhaft**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) lasting, enduring.

**dauern**, *intr.* last, endure.

**davon**, *adv.* thereof; of or from it, etc.: *see 154.3, 166.4, 180, and von.*

**dazu**, *adv.* thereto, to or for it, etc.: *see 154.3, 166.3, 180, and zu.*

**debattieren**, *intr.* debate.

**December**, *m.* -rs. December.

1. **dein**, *poss. adj.* thy, thine.

2. **dein** (or **deiner**), *gen. sing. of du.*

**deinig**, *poss. pro.* thine.

**denken** (*irreg.*) *tr. or intr.* think; think of, call to mind.

**denn**, *adv.* then, in that case. **es sei** — **daß**, unless. *conj.* than (for **als**). *beginning a clause, for.*

**dennoch**, *conj.* even in that case, notwithstanding.

**der** (die, das), *demonstr. pron. and adj.* this or this one, that or that one, etc.; *as emphatic pers. pron.* he, she, it, they. *def. article, the. rel. pron.* who, which, that; *rarely*, he who, that which, etc.

**derjenige** (diejenige, dasjenige), *determ. adj. and pron.* that or that one, those.

**derselbe** (dieselbe, dasselbe). *determ. adj. and pron.* the same; he, she, it, etc.

**Derwisch**, *m.* -[dʰeʃ, -[dʰe. dervish (Mohammedan monk).

**deshalb** (or **deßhalb**), *adv. or conj.* therefore.

**denkungeachtet**, *adv. or conj.* nevertheless.

**desto**, *adv.* so much the (before a comparative); *je . . . desto*, the . . . the.

**deutsch**, *adj.* German. *as noun: m.* a German; *n.* the German language.

**Deutschland**, *n.* Germany.

**dicht**, *adj. (or adv.)* thick, dense.

**dichten**, *tr.* produce as the result of thinking, compose (especially as poetry), invent.

**Dichter**, *m.* -rʃ, -r. poet.

**Dichtkunst**, *f.* art of poetry, poetry.

**die**, *see der.*

**dienen**, *intr. (with dat.)* serve, be of service to, assist.

**Diener**, *m.* -rʃ, -r. servant.

**Dienerſchaft**, *f.* servants (collectively).

**Dienst**, *m.* -teʃ, -te. service, employment.

**Dienſtag**, *m.* Tuesday.

**dieſ** (dieſer, dieſe, dieſes), *dem adj. pron.* this or that, this one or that

one; the latter. **mal**, *adv.* this time.

**Ding**, *n.* -geʃ, -ge. thing, matter.

**direct**, *adj. (or adv.)* direct.

**doch**, *adv. and conj.* though, yet, nevertheless, however; after all, at least, surely; *sometimes simply* but; *or only for emphasis.*

**Doctor**, *m.* -rʃ, -ren. doctor.

**Dolch**, *m.* -dʰeʃ, -dʰe. dagger.

**Dom**, *m.* -meʃ, -me. cathedral.

**donnern**, *intr.* thunder.

**Donnerſtag**, *m.* Thursday.

**doppeln**, *tr.* double.

**doppelt**, *adj. (or adv.)* double.

**Dorf**, *n.* -feʃ, -örfer. village, hamlet.

**dort**, *adv.* there, in that place, yonder.

**draußen**, *adv.* outside, out of doors.

**drehen**, *tr.* turn, twist.

**drei**, *num.* three. **zehn**, thirteen. **zig**, thirty.

**drinnen**, *see darinnen.*

**dritt**, *num. adj.* third.

**drohen**, *tr. or intr. (with dat.)* threaten, menace.

**dröhnen**, *intr.* roar, rumble, groan.

**drucken**, *tr.* print.

**drücken**, *tr.* press, clasp, jam.

**du**, *pers. pron.* thou.

**dumm**, *adj. (or adv.)* stupid, dull.

**Dummheit**, *f.* -ten. stupidity.

**dunkel**, *adj. (or adv.)* dark, gloomy.

**dünkelhaft**, *adj. (or adv.)* arrogant.

**dünken**, *intr. (with dat.)* seem, appear; seem or appear to.

**dünn**, *adj. (or adv.)* thin, slender.

**durch**, *adv. and sep'le or insep'le prefix.* through, throughout. *prep. (with accus.)* through; throughout, during; by means of, by.

**durchaus**, *adv.* throughout.

**Durchmarsch**, *m.* -[sch]es, -är[sch]e. marching through.

**Durchmesser**, *m.* -r[sch], -r. diameter.

**durchschreiten**, *O. tr.* step through, walk through.

**durchtoben**, *tr.* rage through.

**durchweinen**, *tr.* weep through.

**dürfen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* be permitted or allowed, feel authorized, dare, need: see 253.

**dürsten** or **dürsten**, *intr. or impers.* thirst, be thirsty.

**durstig**, *adj. (or adv.)* thirsty.

**düster**, *adj. (or adv.)* gloomy, obscure, dusky.

**eben**, *adj. (or adv.)* even, level, plain. *adv.* evenly; usually, just, exactly, precisely. *so*, *adv.* in like manner, likewise.

**Ebene**, *f.* -en. even or level tract, plain.

**Echo**, *n.* -chos. echo.

**Ecke**, *f.* -fen. edge, corner.

**edel**, *adj. (or adv.)* of noble birth; noble, exalted. *snabe*, *m.* page.

**ehe**, *adv.* sooner, earlier. *conj.* sooner than, before, ere.

**eh**, *adv.* sooner, earlier, rather.

**Ehre**, *f.* -ren. honor, glory, good repute.

**ehren**, *tr.* honor, respect, esteem.

**Ehrenmann**, *m.* man of honor.

**ehrlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* honorable, honest.

**ehrwürdig**, *adj. (or adv.)* worthy of honor, respectable.

**ei**, *interj.* why! oh!

**eifrig**, *adj. (or adv.)* eager, ardent.

**eigen**, *adj. (or adv.)* own, belonging to one's self; real; odd.

**Eigentum** [-tum], *n.* -ms, -ümer. property.

**eigentlich**, *adj.* proper, true. *adv.* properly speaking, really.

**eilen**, *intr.* [ or h, or reflex. hurry, hasten.

**eilig**, *adj. (or adv.)* hasty, quick, hurrying.

1. **ein**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* in, into, corresponding as prefix to in as prep.; in composition with adverbs, into, or in with accus.

2. **ein**, *num.* one; a person, they, one.

3. **ein**, *indef. article.* an, a.

**einander**, *indecl. pron.* one another, each other.

**einbilden**, *tr. (with reflex. pron. in dat.)* form in one's mind, imagine, fancy.

**einerlei**, *adj.* of one sort, the same, indifferent.

**einfach**, *adj.* simple.

**eingeboren**, *adj.* inborn, native.

**einig**, *adj. (or adv.)* one, united, accordant. *in pl.* some, a few.

**einladen**, *O. tr.* invite.

**Einladung**, *f.* -gen. invitation.

**einmal**, *adv.* once, one time; once for all.

**einnehmen**, *O. tr.* take in, receive, accept; take possession of, captivate, prepossess. **ingenommen**, prejudiced.

**Einnehmer**, *m.* -r[sch], -r. collector.

**einrücken**, *intr.* [ move in, enter.

**einsam**, *adj. (or adv.)* lonely, alone.

**einschlafen**, *O. intr.* [ fall asleep.

**einschreiben**, *O. tr.* write in or down, inscribe.

**einsenden**, *tr.* send in, remit.

**Einsicht**, *f.* -ten. insight, intelligence.

**einst**, *adv.* one time, once (in the past); some day (in the future).

**einstellen**, *tr.* put in. *reflex.* present one's self, appear.

**eintreten**, *O. intr.* [ step in, enter.

**Einverständnis** [-nis], *n.* -ſſes, -ſſe. understanding, agreement.

**einzel**, *adj.* single, individual.

**einziehen**, *O. tr.* draw in or on. *intr.* move in.

**einzig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) only, single, sole, unique.

**Eisenbahn**, *f.* -nen. railroad, railway.

**eitel**, *adj.* vain.

**Elegie**, *f.* -ien. elegy (plaintive poem).

**elend**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) miserable, wretched.

**elf**, *num.* eleven.

**Eltern**, *pl.* parents. **Freude**, *f.* parental joy.

**Empfang**, *m.* -gs. reception. **innehmen**, receive.

**empfangen**, *O. tr.* receive, accept.

**Empfindung**, *f.* -gen. feeling, sensation.

**empor**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* aloft, upward, on high. **emporsteigen**, spring up. **emporsehen**, look up. **emporstreben**, strive upward. **emportheilen**, *reflex.* divide itself upward.

**Ende**, *n.* -des, -den. end, issue, conclusion. **am** —, in or at the end, finally. **zu** —, at an end. —**machen**, (with *dat.*) put an end to, stop.

**endigen**, *tr.* stop, finish.

**endlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) final, concluding, last.

**enge**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) narrow.

**Engel**, *m.* -ls, -l. angel.

**engen**, *tr.* narrow, contract.

**Engländer**, *m.* -rs, -r. (*f.* -rin) inhabitant of England.

**englisch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) English.

**ent-**, *insep'le prefix.* forth, from, out, away: see 307.3.

**entbehren**, *tr.* (or *intr.* with *gen.*) do without.

**entbinden**, *O. tr.* unbind, set free, release, absolve.

**entblößen**, *tr.* denude, uncover.

**Entdeckung**, *f.* -gen. discovery, disclosure.

**entfernen**, *tr.* put far off, remove. *reflex.* go off, withdraw.

**entgegen**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* against, toward. *prep.* (with *dative preceding*) against, to meet. **entgegenstehen**, stand against, oppose.

**enthalten**, *O. tr.* hold away; hold in, contain. *reflex.* keep from, abstain.

**entlassen**, *O. tr.* let go, permit to leave, dismiss, absolve.

**entlaufen**, *O. intr.* [ ]. run away, escape.

**entledigen**, *tr.* set free, deliver.

**entlocken**, *tr.* entice or allure away; elicit.

**entrücken**, *tr.* carry away, transport.

**entsagen**, *intr.* (with *dat.*) renounce, give up.

**entscheiden**, *O.* (or *N.*) *tr.* decide, determine. **entscheidend**, decisive.

**entschließen**, *O. tr.* disclose. *reflex.* make up one's mind, decide.

**Entschluß**, *m.* -ſſes, -ſſe. resolution, resolve.

**entschuldigen**, *tr.* exculpate, excuse. *reflex.* excuse one's self.

**Entsetzen**, *n.* horror, dread.

**entstehen**, *O. intr.* [ ]. arise, spring forth, originate.

**entweder**, *conj.* either (followed by *oder* or).

**entwickeln**, *tr.* unwrap, unfold; develop, solve, explain.

**entziehen**, *O. tr.* withdraw, remove or take away.

**er**, *pers. pron.* he.



*er*, *insep'le prefix. see 307.4.*

**erbarmen**, *tr.* move to pity. *reflex.* pity.

**erbauen**, *tr.* build up, erect.

1. **Erbe**, *m.* -en, -en. heir, inheritor.

2. **Erbe**, *n.* -beß. inheritance.

**erblich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) hereditary.

**erbliden**, *tr.* catch sight of, perceive.

**Erbprinz**, *m.* hereditary prince.

**erbrechen**, *O. tr.* break open.

**Erde**, *f.* -den. earth, ground;  
• world. **Erdenraum**, *m.* earth, surface of earth. **Strich**, *m.* zone, region.

**erfahren**, *O. tr.* come upon, make experience of, learn.

**Erfahrung**, *f.* -gen. experience.  
in — bringen, learn by experience, learn.

**erfinden**, *O. tr.* find out, invent.

**erfreuen**, *tr.* give pleasure to, gladden. *reflex.* (with *gen.*) enjoy, rejoice at.

**erfüllen**, *tr.* fill; fulfil, perform.

**ergehen**, *O. intr.* †. go on, fare, happen.

**ergreifen**, *O. tr.* lay hold of, seize upon.

**erhaben**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) elevated, lofty, sublime.

**erhalten**, *O. tr.* obtain, receive; keep, preserve.

**erheben**, *O. tr.* heave up, lift, elevate; extol.

**erheischen**, *tr.* require, demand.

**erhören**, *tr.* hear, hear of; grant.

**erinnern**, *tr.* remind. *reflex.* (with *gen.*) remember, recall.

**Erinnerung**, *f.* -gen. remembrance, memory.

**erfalten**, *reflex.* catch cold.

**erkennen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* perceive, recognize.

**Erkenntniß** [=niß], *f.* -ße. perception, knowledge.

**erklären**, *tr.* make clear, explain; declare, announce.

**erkundigen**, *reflex.* make inquiries, inquire.

**erlangen**, *tr.* reach after, obtain, reach, attain.

**erlauben**, *tr.* allow, permit.

**erleben**, *tr.* live to see, experience, have happen to one.

**erlügen**, *O. tr.* produce by lying, invent. **erlogen**, fabricated, false.

**ermorden**, *tr.* murder.

**ermüden**, *tr.* weary, tire.

**Ermüdung**, *f.* weariness, fatigue.

**Erneuerung**, *f.* -gen. renewal, renovation.

**Erniedrigung**, *f.* -gen. lowering, humiliation, abasement.

**Ernst**, *m.* -tes. earnestness, gravity, seriousness.

**ernst**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) earnest, serious, grave.

**erobern**, *tr.* overcome, conquer.

**eröffnen**, *tr.* open, reveal, disclose.

**erquiden**, *tr.* quicken, revive, refresh.

**erreichen**, *tr.* reach, arrive at.

**erscheinen**, *O. intr.* †. shine forth, come in sight, appear.

**erschrecken**, *O. (or N.) intr.* †. (or *reflex.*) be frightened or startled.

**erschredlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) frightful, dreadful.

**erst**, *adj.* first. *adv.* firstly, at first.

**ersteigen**, *O. tr.* ascend, climb.

**ertönen**, *intr.* sound forth.

**ertragen**, *O. tr.* endure, bear.

**erwachen**, *intr.* †. awake, be aroused.

**erwählen**, *tr.* elect, select, choose.

**erwarten**, *tr.* wait for, expect.

**erweisen**, *O. tr.* show, prove, render.

**erwerben**, *O. tr.* procure by effort, earn, gain.

**erwidern**, *tr.* give back; return, answer.

**erzählen**, *tr.* relate, recount, tell.

**Erzählung**, *f.* -gen. tale, story.

**erziehen**, *O. tr.* educate, train.

**Erzieher**, *m.* -rſ, -r. educator, teacher.

**Erziehung**, *f.* education, training.

**es**, *pers. pron.* it: see 154.3,4.

**Esel**, *m.* -lſ, -l. ass, donkey.

**essen**, *O. tr.* eat. *as noun*, meal, repast.

**etlich**, *pron. adj.* (chiefly in *pl.*) some, sundry.

**etwas**, *indef. pron.* (indeclinable) something, somewhat. *used adverbially*, in some measure, a little, rather: see 188.

1. **eu**, *poss. adj.* your, yours.

2. **eu**, *gen. pl. of du.* of you, your.

**Europa**, *n.* -aſ. Europe.

**europäiſch**, *adj.* European.

**ewig**, *adj. (or adv.)* everlasting, eternal.

**Exemplar**, *n.* -reſ, -re. specimen, copy.

**Exzellenz**, *f.* -zen. excellency.

**fahren**, *O. intr.* *f* or *h.* fare, go, drive, be drawn in a wagon; go in a boat, sail. *tr.* drive, row.

**ſpazieren fahren**, take a drive.

**Fahrt**, *f.* ten. journey, voyage, drive.

**fallen**, *O. intr.* *f.* fall.

**falls**, *conj.* in case, if.

**falsch**, *adj. (or adv.)* false.

**Familie**, *f.* -ien. family.

**Faß**, *n.* -ſſeſ, -äſſer. vat, cask.

**fassen**, *tr.* hold, contain; lay hold of, grasp, seize; comprehend, conceive.

**faſt**, *adv.* almost, nearly.

**faul**, *adj. (or adv.)* decayed; lazy, indolent.

**Fauteuil**, *n.* -lſ, -lſ. armchair (*French*).

**Februar**, *m.* -rſ. February.

**fehlen**, *intr. (with dat.)* fail, be wanting (to), be deficient; be in fault, err. **es fehlt an . . .** (*impers.*) there is a lack of . . .

**Fehler**, *m.* -rſ, -r. fault, defect; error.

**feierlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* ceremonious, festive, solemn.

**feiern**, *intr.* make holiday. *tr.* celebrate, solemnize.

**Feiertag**, *m.* holiday.

**Feigling**, *m.* -gſ, -ge. coward.

**fein**, *adj. (or adv.)* fine, delicate.

**feind**, *adj.* hostile, inimical.

**Feind**, *m.* -deſ, -de. (*f.* -din) enemy, foe.

**Feld**, *n.* -deſ, -der. field, plain.

**Fels**, *m.* -ſen, -ſen. rock, cliff.

**-ſtück**, *n.* piece of rock, cliff.

**Fenster**, *n.* -rſ, -r. window.

**fern**, *adj. (or adv.)* distant, far off, remote.

**fertig**, *adj. (or adv.)* prepared, ready, finished.

**Fessel**, *f.* -ln. fetter, chain.

**fest**, *adj. (or adv.)* fast, firm, strong.

**Fest**, *n.* -teſ, -te. festival.

**feſtgefügt**, *past p'ple of feſtfügen*, fast joined.

**feucht**, *adj. (or adv.)* moist, damp.

**Feuer**, *n.* -rſ, -r. fire.

**Fieber**, *n.* -rſ, -r. fever.

**finden**, *O. tr.* find, discover; (*with object. pred*) deem, consider, think.

**Finger**, *m.* -rſ, -r. finger.

**finſter**, *adj. (or adv.)* dark, obscure.

**Finſterniß** [=niſ], *f.* -ſſe. darkness.

- Fischer, m.** -rs, -r. fisherman.  
**Flamme, f.** -men. flame.  
**Flasche, f.** -[chen. bottle.  
**flehen, tr.** (or *intr.* with *dat.*) implore, entreat. *as noun*, supplication, entreaty.  
**Fleisch, n.** -[ches, -[che. flesh, meat.  
**fleißig, adj.** (or *adv.*) industrious.  
**fliegen, O. intr.** [ or h. fly; rush.  
**fliehen, O. intr.** [. flee, escape.  
**fließen, O. intr.** [ or h. flow, run.  
**Glitterwochen, pl.** honeymoon.  
**Florenz, n.** Florence.  
**Fluch, m.** -ches, -üche. curse.  
**fluchen, intr.** (with *dat.*) curse, swear.  
**Flur, f.** -ren. field; floor; hall.  
**Fluß, m.** -ßes, -üße. river.  
**Fluth [Flut], f.** -then. flood, wave, tide.  
**folgen, intr.** [. (with *dat.*) follow; imitate. *folgend*, following.  
**Folter, f.** -ru. instrument of torture. *banf, f.* rack.  
**Forderung, f.** -gen. demand, claim.  
**Form, f.** -men. form.  
**fort, adv.** and *sep'le prefix.* forth, forward, onward; away, gone, off. *sein*, be away.  
**fortreiten, O. intr.** [. ride away.  
**Fortschritt, m.** -ttes, -tte. forward step, progress, improvement.  
**fortwerfen, O. tr.** throw away.  
**Frage, f.** -gen. question.  
**fragen, intr. or tr.** (*N. or O.*) ask, question.  
**fränkisch, adj.** Frankish.  
**Frankreich, n.** -chs. France.  
**Franzose, m.** -en, -en. Frenchman.  
**Französin, f.** -innen. Frenchwoman.  
**französisch, adj.** French.
- Frau, f.** -auen. woman, wife, lady.  
**Frauenschicksal, n.** woman's fate.  
**frei, adj.** (with *gen.*) (or *adv.*) free; exempt. *brief, m.* charter, privilege.  
**Freiheit, f.** -ten. freedom, liberty.  
**freilich, adv.** to be sure, certainly.  
**Freitag, m.** Friday.  
**fremd, adj.** (or *adv.*) strange, foreign, not one's own, unfamiliar, unusual. *as noun*, stranger, foreigner.  
**Fremde, f.** foreign country, region away from one's home.  
**fressen, O. tr.** eat (*said of animals, not men*), devour.  
**Freude, f.** -den. joy, pleasure, delight.  
**freudig, adj.** (or *adv.*) glad, joyous.  
**freuen, tr.** give pleasure to. *reflex.* be glad, rejoice.  
**Freund, m.** -des, -de. friend.  
**freundlich, adj.** (or *adv.*) friendly, kind.  
**Freundschaft, f.** -ten. friendship.  
**Friede, m.** -dens, -den. peace.  
**Friedensruf, m.** report of a peace.  
**friedlich, adj.** (or *adv.*) peaceable, peaceful.  
**Friedrich, m.** -chs. Frederick.  
**frisch, adj.** (or *adv.*) fresh; gay, lively.  
**Frift, f.** -ten. period, time.  
**fröh, adj.** (or *adv.*) glad, joyous, happy.  
**fromm, adj.** (or *adv.*) pious.  
**frösteln, impers.** (with *accus.*) freeze or shiver, be chilly.  
**Frucht, f.** -üchte. fruit.  
**fruchten, intr.** bear fruit; be of profit.  
**früh(e), adj.** (or *adv.*) early; in early morning; speedy.

**früher**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) earlier, sooner.

**Frühling**, *m.* -gs, -ge. spring.

**frühstücken**, *intr.* breakfast.

**fühlen**, *tr.* feel, touch; be convinced of.

**führen**, *tr.* carry, bring; lead, conduct, drive.

**Fuhrwerk**, *n.* -ts, -te. vehicle, wagon.

**fünf**, *num.* five. **zehn**, fifteen. **zig**, fifty.

**Fünflchen**, *n.* -ns, -n. little spark.

**für**, *prep.* with *accus.* for; in behalf of; instead of; *before objec. pred.* as.

**Furcht**, *f.* fear.

**furchtbar**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) fearful, terrible.

**fürchten**, *tr.* be afraid of, fear. *reflex.* be afraid, become frightened.

**fürchterlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) fearful, terrible.

**Fürst**, *m.* -ten, -ten. prince.

**Fürstin**, *f.* -nnen. princess.

**Fuß**, *m.* -ußes, -üße. foot. **tritt**, *m.* footstep.

**Gabe**, *f.* -ben. gift, present.

**gaffen**, *intr.* gape, stare, look with astonishment.

**Gallerie**, *f.* -ien. gallery.

**ganz**, *adj.* entire, whole, complete. *adv.* wholly, quite.

**gar**, *adj.* (*indecl.*) finished, complete, done. *adv.* completely, quite, absolutely; very, exceedingly. *with negative*, not at all.

**Garten**, *m.* -ns, -ärten. garden.

**Gärtner**, *m.* -rs, -r. gardener.

**Gast**, *m.* -tes, -äste. guest, visitor.

**frei**, *adj.* liberal to friends, hospitable. **freundlich**, hospitable.

**Gatte**, *m.* -ten, -ten. husband.

**ge**, *insep'le prefix*, see 307.5.

**Gebäude**, *n.* -es, -e. building, edifice.

**geben**, *O. tr.* give, bestow. *imp. es gibt*, etc. there is or are.

**Geber**, *m.* -rs, -r. giver.

**Gebet**, *n.* -ts, -te. prayer.

**gebieten**, *O. tr.* order, command, bid.

**geboren**, *past pple* (of **gebären**). born.

**Gebot**, *n.* -ts, -te. commandment, bidding.

**gebrauchen**, *tr.* (*rarely intr.* with *gen.*) use, employ.

**Geburtstag**, *m.* birthday.

**Gedanke**, *m.* -fens, -fen. thought, idea.

**gedenken**, (*irreg.*) *intr.* (*gen'l'y with acc.*, less often with *gen.*) think of, remember.

**Gedicht**, *n.* -tes, -te. poem.

**Gedränge**, *n.* -ges, -ge. crowd, throng.

**Geduld**, *f.* patience.

**Gefahr**, *f.* -ren. danger, risk, peril.

**gefährlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) dangerous.

**Gefährte**, *m.* -ten, -ten. companion.

**Gefährtin**, *f.* -innen. companion.

1. **gefallen**, *O.* (*with dat.*) suit, please, meet the approbation of.

2. **gefallen**, *past pple* of **fallen**.

**gefangen**, *past pple* of **fangen**, caught, captured, imprisoned. *as noun*, prisoner, captive.

**Gefängniß** [*nis*], *n.* -ßes, -ße. prison.

**Gefolge**, *n.* -ges, -ge. following, escort, retinue.

**Gefühl**, *n.* -les, -le. feeling, sensation, sentiment.

**gegen**, *prep.* (*with acc.*) against, opposed to; over against, oppo-

- site to *revolution*, *f.* counter-revolution.
- Gegenstand**, *m.* -ds, -ände. object, topic, subject.
- gegenüber**, *adv.* opposite. *prep.* (*with dat.*) opposite, over against.
- geheim**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) private, secret.
- Geheimniß** [-nis], *n.* -ßes, -ße. secret, mystery.
- gehen**, *O. tr.* *§.* go, move, walk. *impers.* (*with dat.*) go or fare with, be (in health etc.).
- gehören**, *intr.* (*with dat.*) listen to, obey.
- gehören**, *intr.* (*with dat.*) belong to, appertain to.
- Geist**, *m.* -tes, -ter. spirit, mind.
- geistig**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) relating to the mind or spirit, spiritual, mental.
- geistlich**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) spiritual; clerical. *as noun*, clergyman, minister.
- geistreich**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) spirited, witty, clever.
- geizig**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) avaricious, covetous.
- geläufig**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) current, fluent, voluble, easy.
- Geld**, *n.* -des, -der. money, coin, cash.
- Gelegenheit**, *f.* -ten. opportunity, occasion.
- gelehrt**, *adj.* learned. *as noun*, learned man, scholar.
- gelingen**, *O. intr.* *§.* (*with da'.*; *used in 3d pers. only*) prove successful, turn out as desired. *es gelingt einem*, etc., one succeeds or prospers. *as noun*, success, prosperity.
- geloben**, *tr.* promise, vow.
- gelten**, *O. intr.* (*used in 3d pers. or impersonally*) have value; (*with dat.*) concern, have to do with.
- gelüsten**, *tr. or intr.* (*with dat. or accus.*) usually in 3d pers. desire, hanker.
- Gemahl**, *m.* -les, -le. spouse, consort, husband.
- Gemahlin**, *f.* -innen. spouse, wife.
- Gemälde**, *n.* -des, -de. painting.
- gemein**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) (*with dat.*) common, belonging in common to; public.
- Gemüse**, *n.* -fes, -fe. vegetables.
- Gemüth** [-üt], *n.* -thes, -ther. soul, spirit, disposition.
- gemüthlich** [-ütlich], *adj.* (*or adv.*) good natured; comfortable, cozy.
- geneigt**, *see neigen.*
- General**, *m.* -les, -äle. general.
- genesen**, *O. intr.* *§.* get well, recover.
- Genie**, *n.* -ies, -ieß. genius.
- genießen**, *O. tr.* (*less often intr., with gen.*) enjoy; use as food or drink, eat.
- genug**, *adv.* enough, sufficiently; *used as indecl. noun*, enough, plenty.
- Genuß**, *m.* -ßes, -üsse. enjoyment, pleasure.
- gerade**, *adj.* straight, direct, even; erect; plain. *adv.* directly, just, precisely.
- gerathen** [-raten], *O. intr.* *§.* get, come, fall; turn out, happen.
- gerecht**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) righteous, upright, just, right.
- gerechtfertigt**, *past pple from rechtfertigen*. justified, vindicated.
- geringschätzig**, *adj.* depreciating, contemptuous.
- Germania**, *f.* Germany (*personified*).

gern, *adv.* with pleasure, gladly, willingly. *möchte* —, would like. *es* — *thun*, like to do it. *es* — *haben*, be fond of or like it.  
**Gesang**, *m.* -gs, -änge. song, singing.  
**Geschäft**, *n.* -ts, -te. business, affair.  
**geschehen**, *O. intr. f. (impers.)* happen, come to pass, befall, take place, be done.  
**Geschenk**, *n.* -ts, -te. gift, present.  
**Geschichte**, *f.* -ten. story, tale, history.  
**Geschlecht**, *n.* -tes, -ter. species, race, family.  
**geschwind**, *adj. (or adv.)* swift, rapid, quick.  
**Gesell or -le**, *m.* -en, -en. comrade, companion; apprentice.  
**Gesellschaft**, *f.* -ten. company, society; party.  
**Gesetz**, *n.* -tes, -te. law; rule.  
**Gesicht**, *n.* -ts, -te or -ter. sight; (*pl.* -ter) face, visage; (*pl.* -te) vision.  
**gesinnen**, *O. intr. f.* be minded, intend, purpose. **gesonnen**, minded, disposed.  
**Gefinnung**, *f.* -gen. state of mind, disposition, intention.  
**Gestalt**, *f.* -ten. appearance, aspect; form, shape, figure.  
**gestatten**, *tr.* allow, permit.  
**gestern**, *adv.* yesterday.  
**gesund**, *adj. (or adv.)* healthy, sound, well.  
**Gesundheit**, *f.* health.  
**getreu**, *adj. (or adv.)* true, faithful.  
**Gewächs**, *n.* -tes, -te. anything growing; plant.  
**gewähren**, *tr.* warrant, guarantee, assure; grant.  
**Gewährung**, *f.* warranting, granting.

**Gewalt**, *f.* -ten. power, force, might.  
**gewaltſam**, *adj. (or adv.)* forcible, violent.  
**gewinnen**, *O. tr.* win, gain, obtain. *zu* — *ſtehen*, be to be gained.  
**gewiß**, *adj. (or adv.)* sure, certain, undoubting; certain, some.  
**Gewiſſen**, *n.* -ns. consciousness; conscience.  
**Gewitter**, *n.* -rs, -r. thunder-storm.  
**gewohnen**, *tr. (or intr. with gen.)* be accustomed to. **gewohnt**, wont, used to.  
**gewöhnen**, *tr.* accustom, habituate.  
**gewöhnlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* ordinary, customary, usual.  
**Gewühl**, *n.* -ts. turmoil, tumult.  
**Glanz**, *m.* -zes. lustre, splendor.  
**glänzen**, *intr.* shine, glitter, glisten.  
**Glas**, *n.* -ſes, -äſer. glass, tumbler.  
**Glaube**, *m.* -bens, -ben. belief, faith.  
**glauben**, *tr.* believe; think.  
**Glaubensſatz**, *n.* article of faith.  
**Gläubiger**, *m.* -rs, -r. creditor.  
**gleich**, *adj.* like, resembling; alike, equal; direct. *adv.* similarly, equally; directly, at once.  
**gleichen**, *O. intr. (with dat.)* be like, equal, resemble.  
**Gleichgültigkeit**, *f.* indifference.  
**Gleichmaß**, *n.* uniformity, proportion.  
**gleichſtellen**, *reflex.* put one's self on an equality, equal, rival.  
**gleichwohl**, *adv.* nevertheless.  
**Glocke**, *f.* -ſen. bell.  
**glorreich**, *adj.* glorious.  
**Glück**, *n.* -tes. luck, fortune; good fortune, happiness.  
**glücken**, *intr. f. or h. (impers. with dat.)* turn out well, succeed.

**glücklich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) happy, fortunate.  
**glücklich**, *adj.* highly blessed, blissful.  
**Gnade**, *f.* -en. grace, favor, mercy.  
**gnädig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) gracious, propitious.  
**Gold**, *n.* -des. gold.  
**golden**, *adj.* golden.  
**goldig**, *adj.* golden.  
**Goldschmied**, *m.* goldsmith.  
**Goldstück**, *n.* gold-piece.  
**gönnen**, *tr.* grant willingly, not grudge.  
**Gott**, *m.* -ttes, -ötter. god; God.  
**göttlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) god-like, divine.  
**Götze**, *m.* -en, -en. idol, false god.  
**graben**, *O. tr.* dig.  
**Graf**, *m.* -fen, -fen. count, earl.  
**Gräfin**, *f.* -innen. countess.  
**Gram**, *m.* -mes. grief, sorrow, dislike.  
**gräßlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) horrible, ghastly.  
**grauen**, *intr.* (*impers. with dat.*) cause horror, fill with dread, make to shudder.  
**grausen**, *intr.* (*impers. with dat.*) excite horror in, horrify.  
**greifen**, *O. tr.* gripe, grasp, seize.  
**Greis**, *m.* -fes, -fe. old man.  
**Grenze**, *f.* -zen. boundary, limit.  
**Grenzstein**, *m.* boundary stone.  
**Greuel**, *m.* -is, -l. horror, outrage.  
**grimmig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) wrathful, furious, fierce.  
**groß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) great, large, big, huge, tall; eminent, grand.  
**Gruft**, *f.* -üfte. cave, hollow; sepulchre, tomb.  
**grün**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) green.

**Grün**, *n.* -nes. green color, greenness, verdure.  
**Grund**, *m.* -des, -ünde. ground, bottom; grounds, reason, cause. **zu — gehen**, go to destruction.  
**gründen**, *tr.* lay the foundation of, found, establish.  
**gründlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) deep, thorough.  
**Gründung**, *f.* foundation.  
**Gruß**, *m.* -ßes, -üße. greeting, salutation.  
**grüßen**, *tr.* greet, salute; bow to.  
**Gulden**, *m.* -ns, -n. florin (coin of various values).  
**Gunst**, *f.* favor, grace, goodwill.  
**günstig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) favorable.  
**Günstling**, *m.* -gs, -ge. favorite.  
**gut**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) good, proper; kind. *adv.* well.  
**Gut**, *n.* -tes, -üter. property, possession, goods; estate.  
**Haar**, *n.* -res, -re. hair (*used collectively or singly*).  
**haben**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* have, possess; *as aux'y*, have. **gern** —, like.  
**nöthig** [nötig] —, need, want.  
**habhaft**, *adj.* having possession. *with gen. and werden*, get possession of.  
**Hafer**, *m.* -rs. oats.  
**Hahn**, *m.* -nes, -nen or -ähne. cock.  
**halb**, *adj.* half. *adv.* half, by halves. **zwei**, etc. half past one, etc.  
**halber** or **ben**, *prep.* (*with gen.*) on account of, for the sake of.  
**Halfte**, *f.* -en. half.  
**Halle**, *f.* -llen. hall.  
**Halb**, *m.* -fes, -älße. neck; throat. **band**, *n.* necklace.  
**halt**, *m.* -tes, -te. hold; halt, stop.  
**halten**, *O. tr.* hold, keep, retain; contain; esteem, think,

**Hand**, *n.* -ände. hand.  
**handeln**, *intr.* act, behave; trade, carry on commerce. **mit etwas** —, deal in something.  
**Handwerk**, *n.* handicraft, trade.  
**hängen**, *O. intr.* hang, depend.  
**hängen**, *tr.* cause to hang, suspend.  
**Hans**, *m.* -fens. Hans, Jack.  
**Harfner**, *m.* -rs, *r.* harper.  
**Harm**, *m.* -mes. harm, hurt, injury; sorrow, grief.  
**harren**, *intr.* wait, linger in expectation.  
**hart**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) hard; stiff.  
**=nädig**, *adj.* stiff-necked.  
**Haß**, *m.* -ßes. hatred, enmity.  
**häßlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) ugly, hateful.  
**hastig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) hasty, hurried.  
**Haufe**, *m.* -fes, -fen. heap, pile; mass, company of people.  
**Haupt**, *n.* -tes, -äupter. head; chief, leader.  
**Haus**, *n.* -fes, -äuser. house. **zu Hause**, at the house, at home.  
**nach Hause**, to home, home.  
**Hausfrau**, *f.* housewife.  
**heben**, *O. tr.* heave, lift, move.  
**Heer**, *n.* -res, -re. host, army.  
**Heerde**, *f.* -den. herd, flock.  
**heftig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) vehement, violent, impetuous.  
**Heftigkeit**, *f.* vehemence, impetuosity.  
**Heil**, *n.* -les. health, prosperity; as exclamation, hail!  
**heilen**, *tr.* heal, cure.  
**heilig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) holy, sacred.  
**heiligen**, *tr.* hallow, make or keep sacred or holy.  
**Heimath** [at], -then. *f.* home.  
**heimkommen**, *O. intr.* *f.* come home.  
**heimlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) private; secret.

**Heinrich**, *m.* -chs. Henry.  
**heiß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) hot.  
**heißen**, *O. tr.* bid, command; call, name. *intr.* be called or named, mean, signify.  
**heiter**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) clear, bright, cheerful.  
**Held**, *m.* -den, -den. hero.  
**Heldengröße**, *f.* heroic greatness.  
**=sinn**, *m.* heroism.  
**Heldin**, *f.* =innen. heroine.  
**helfen**, *O. intr.* (with *dat.*) help, aid, assist.  
**hell**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) (of sound) clear, distinct; (of light or color) light, clear, bright.  
**Hengst**, *m.* -tes, -te. stallion, steed.  
**Henker**, *m.* -rs, -r. hangman, executioner.  
**her**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* hither, this way, toward the speaker or the point had in view or conceived (opposite of **hin**, hence).  
**um . . . her**, round about.  
**herab**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* down hither, down.  
**heran**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* on hither, near.  
**herankommen**, *O. intr.* *f.* come on or near, approach.  
**heraus**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* out hither, out.  
**herausfallen**, *O. intr.* *f.* fall out.  
**herausfinden**, *O. tr.* find out. *reflex.* find one's way out, stand forth.  
**herbei**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* near by hither, this way.  
**Herbst**, *m.* -tes, -te. autumn, fall.  
**herein**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* in hither, inward (toward the speaker).  
**hereinführen**, *tr.* lead in.  
**hereinkommen**, *O. intr.* *f.* come in.



**hernieder**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* down hither, downward, from above.

**Heros**, *m.* -s, -oen. hero.

**Herr**, *m.* (-rrer or) -rrn, -rrer (or -rrn). master, lord; gentleman; (in address) sir; (before a name) Mr. **der Herr**, the Lord. **Herrgott**, *m.* the Lord God.

**Herrschaft**, *f.* -ten. lordship, dominion; master and mistress, employers; person or persons of rank.

**Herrscher**, *m.* -rs, -r. ruler, lord.

**herüber**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* over hither, to this side.

**herum**, *adv. and sep'le prefix* round about, around.

**herunter**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* down hither.

**hervor**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* forth or forward hither, forward, forth, out.

**hervorbringen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* bring forth or out.

**hervorragen**, *intr.* jut forth, project.

**Herz**, *n.* -zens, -zen. heart; courage, spirit.

**herzlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* hearty, cordial.

**Herzog**, *m.* -gs, -öge. duke.

**heutig**, *adj. (or adv.)* of today; modern.

**hier**, *adv.* here, in this place.

**hierher**, *adv.* hither, to here.

**Hilfe**, *same as* **Hülfe**.

**Himmel**, *m.* -ls, -l. heaven, sky, heavens.

**himmlisch**, *adj. (or adv.)* heavenly, celestial.

**hin**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* hence, that way, away from the speaker or point had in view or conceived (*opposite to* **her**,

*hither*); *sometimes simply* along; gone, lost. **wo** — **hin**, whither.

— **sein**, be gone or away or lost.

**hinab**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* down thither, down.

**hinauf**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* up thither, upward.

**hinaufstrahlen**, *intr.* shine up or out.

**hinaus**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* out hence or thither, forth.

**hinausgeben**, *O. reflex.* betake one's self away, go forth.

**hinausgehen**, *O. intr.* §. go out or forth.

**hinausziehen**, *O. tr.* pull out. *intr.* §. march out.

**hindern**, *tr.* hinder, prevent.

**hinein**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* in thither, in.

**hineingehen**, *O. intr.* §. go in thither.

**hineinschwindeln**, *reflex.* cheat or swindle one's self in, get in by cheating.

**hingehen**, *O. intr.* §. go there or away; pass on, elapse.

**hinhören**, *tr.* listen.

**hinsommen**, *O. intr.* §. come forth or away, get (to somewhere or something).

**hinlegen**, *tr.* lay away or down.

**hinnen**, *adv.* hence.

**hinsinken**, *O. intr.* §. sink down.

**hinstrecken**, *tr.* stretch, extend.

**hinter**, *adj.* hinder, back. *adv. and sep'le prefix.* behind, back, in the rear.

**hinüber**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* over thither, over (from this side), across.

**hinüberlaufen**, *O. intr.* §. run across.

**hinunter**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* down hence, down thither, down.

**hinwerfen**, *O. tr.* throw away or down. **hingeworfen**, casually thrown out, chance.

**Hirt**, *m.* -ten, -ten. shepherd.

**hoch**, *adj.* (as declined, *höher*, etc.) high, tall, lofty, great.

**Hochmuth** [=mut], *m.* arrogance, pride.

**Hochverrath** [=rat], *m.* high treason.

**hoffen**, *tr.* hope, expect, look for.

**Hoffnung**, *f.* -gen. hope, expectation.

**Höflichkeit**, *f.* courtesy, politeness.

**Hofthür**, *f.* door of the courtyard.

**hoh**, see **hoch**.

**höhn**, *tr.* scorn, scoff at.

**hold**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) favorable, propitious, gracious; pleasing, lovely.

**holen**, *tr.* fetch, bring.

**Hölle**, *f.* -en. hell.

**Höllengeist**, *m.* infernal spirit.

**Holz**, *n.* -zes, -ze or -ölzer. wood, timber.

**hören**, *intr.* hearken, listen; *tr.* give ear to, listen to.

**Horde**, *f.* -den. horde, troop.

**hören**, *intr.* or *tr.* hear, give ear to; hearken.

**hübsch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) pretty.

**huldigen**, *intr.* (with *dat.*) pay homage to.

**Hülfe**, *f.* help, aid, assistance.

**Hülfeleistung**, *f.* rendering of help.

**hülffreich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) helpful.

**Humor**, *m.* -rs. humor.

**Hund**, *m.* -des, -de. dog.

**hundert**, *num.* hundred.

**Hunger**, *m.* -rs. hunger, appetite.

**hungern**, *intr.* (or *tr. impers.*) hunger, be hungry.

**Hut**, *m.* -tes, -üte. hat.

**hüten**, *tr.* (rarely *intr.* with *gen.*) have heed, watch. *reflex.* guard one's self, beware.

**Hüter**, *m.* -rs, -r. guardian, keeper.

**Hütte**, *f.* -ten. cottage, hut; tent, tabernacle.

**ich**, *pron.* I.

**Idee**, *f.* -en. idea, notion, conception.

**ihr**, 1. *nom. plu.* of *du*, ye, they.

2. *dat. sing.* of *sie*, *fem.* to her or it. 3. *poss. adj.* (for 3d pers. sing. *fem.*) her or its. 4. *poss. adj.* (for 3d pers. plu.) their; **Ihr**, (in address) your.

**ihrig**, *poss. pron.* her, its; theirs.

**Ihrig**, your.

**im** = in *dem*.

**immer**, *adv.* ever, always, continually; yet, still.

**in**, *prep.* (with *dat.* or *accus.*) in, into, to, at, within.

**indem**, *conj.* in or during that, while.

**indefß** or **essen**, *adv.* meanwhile. *conj.* while.

**inner**, *adj.* inner, interior; as *neuter noun*, inner self, heart.

**innerhalb**, *prep.* (with *gen.*) inside of.

**Insel**, *f.* -ln. isle, island.

**inwiefern**, *conj.* as far as.

**irdisch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) earthly, mortal.

**irgend**, *adv.* ever, soever.

**Irrthum** [=tum], *m.* -ms, -ümer. error, mistake.

**Italien**, *n.* -ns. Italy.

**Italiener**, *m.* -rs, -r. Italian.

**ja**, *part.* of assent. yea, yes.

**Jagd**, *f.* -den. chase, hunt; hunting party.

**jagen**, *intr.* [or *h.* hunt, chase.  
*tr.* hunt.

**Jahr**, *n.* -reß, -re. year. **hundert**,  
*n.* century.

**Jahreszeit**, *f.* -ten. season.

**Jammer**, *m.* -rß, -r. sorrow, grief,  
misery, lamentation.

**Januar**, *m.* -rß. January.

**je**, *adv.* always, ever. **je . . . je** or  
**je . . . desto**, (*before comparatives*) so much the . . . or the . . .  
the.

**jed** (**jeder**, **jede**, **jedes**), *pron.* each,  
every, either. *see* 190.

**jedermann**, *m.* every man, every  
one.

**jedesmal**, *adv.* each time, every  
time.

**jedoch**, *adv.* however, notwithstanding,  
yet.

**jedlich**, *pron.* every, each. *see* 190.

**jeher** (**je** ever and **her** hither), **von**  
**jeher**, from always to here or  
now, always.

**Jemand**, *pron.* some or any one,  
somebody.

**jen** (**jener**, **jene**, **jenes**), *pron.* yon,  
yonder, that, the former. *see*  
163.

**jenseits**, *prep.* (*with gen.*) on the  
other side of, beyond.

**jetzt**, *adv.* at the present time,  
now.

**Johanna**, *f.* Jane, Joan.

**Jude**, *m.* -en, -en. Jew.

**Jüdin**, *f.* -innen. Jewess.

**Jugend**, *f.* youth, time of youth;  
young people, youth. **freundin**,  
*f.* friend of youth. **schein**, *m.*  
light of youth.

**Juli**, *m.* -lis. July. **revolution**, *f.*  
revolution of July (1830).

**Juni**, *m.* -nis. June.

**jung** *adj.* (*or adv.*) young, youth-  
ful: new, recent.

**Junge**, *m.* -enß, -en. young one,  
youth, stripling.

**Jüngling**, *m.* -gß, -ge. young man,  
youth.

**Kaffee**, *m.* -ees. coffee.

**Kaiser**, *m.* -rß, -r. emperor. **los**,  
*adj.* emperorless, without an  
emperor.

**Kalk**, *m.* -les, -le. lime, chalk.

**kalt** *adj.* (*or adv.*) cold, frigid.

**Kamerad**, *m.* -ds or -den, -den.  
comrade, companion.

**Kamin**, *m.* -neß, -ne. chimney,  
fireplace.

**Kammer**, *f.* -rn. chamber, room.

**sherr**, *m.* chamberlain.

**Kampf**, *m.* -pfes, -ämpfe. fight,  
contest, struggle, battle.

**kämpfen**, *intr.* fight, struggle.

**Kanne**, *f.* -nen. can, tankard,  
pot.

**Kapitel**, *n.* -ls, -l. chapter.

**Karl**, *m.* -ls. Charles.

**Kartenspiel**, *n.* game of cards, card  
playing.

**Kartoffel**, *f.* -ln. potato.

**Kater**, *m.* -rß, -r. tom-cat.

**Kauf**, *m.* -fes, -äufe. purchase, bar-  
gain.

**kaufen**, *tr.* buy, purchase.

**Kaufleute**, *see* **Kaufmann**.

**Kaufmann**, *m.* -unes (*rarely* -änner,  
*generally* **Kaufleute**). merchant,  
tradesman.

**kaum**, *adv.* hardly, scarcely, but  
just.

**Keble**, *f.* -len. throat.

**keimen**, *intr.* germinate, shoot forth,  
develop.

**kein**, *pron.* no, not one, not any,  
no one. *see* 195.2.

**Keller**, *m.* -rß, -r. cellar.

**kennen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* know, be ac-  
quainted with.

**Kenner, m.** -rs, -r. knower, connoisseur.

**Kerker, m.** -rs, -r. prison, jail, dungeon.

**Kette, f.** -ten. chain, fetter, bond.

**Kind, n.** -des, -der. child.

**Kindlein, n.** -ns, -n. little child.

**Kirche, f.** -chen. church.

**Kiste, f.** -ten. chest.

**klagen, intr. or tr.** mourn, bewail, lament, complain.

**Klang, m.** -ges, -änge. sound, ringing, clang.

**Klar, adj. (or adv.)** clear, bright, fair; evident.

**Klarheit, f.** clearness, brightness.

**Kleid, n.** -des, -der. garment, article of clothing, dress, raiment.

**klein, adj. (or adv.)** little, small; insignificant, petty.

**Kleinigkeit, f.** -ten. trifle.

**Kleinod, n.** -des, -dien (or -de). ornamental or precious thing; jewel.

**klingeln, intr.** tinkle, ring the bell.

**klopfen, intr.** beat, knock.

**Kloster, n.** -rs, -öster. cloister, monastery, convent.

**klug, adj. (or adv.)** prudent, shrewd, sagacious, clever.

**Knabe, m.** -ben, -ben. boy.

**Knecht, m.** -tes, -te. servant, vassal.

**Knie, n.** -es, -e. knee.

**knieen, intr.** kneel.

**kochen, tr. or intr.** cook, boil.

**Koffer, m.** -rs, -r. coffer, trunk.

**Kofferchen, n.** -ns, -n. little trunk.

**Köln (or Cöln), n.** -ns. Cologne.

**Kommandant, m.** -ten, -ten. commander.

**kommen, O. intr.** †. come, approach, arrive; occur, come about.

**Komödie, f.** -ien. comedy. **spielen, n.** comedy-acting.

**König, m.** -gs, -ge. king.

**Königin, f.** -innen. queen.

**königlich, adj. (or adv.)** kingly, royal.

**Königreich, n.** kingdom, realm.

**können, (irreg.) tr.** can, be able, have power; be permitted; know, understand. *see* 251, 254.

**Kopf, m.** -fes, -öpfe. head.

**Korb, m.** -bes, -örbe. basket.

**Körper, m.** -rs, -r. body; substance; corpse.

**koſtbar, adj. (or adv.)** costly.

**koſten, tr.** cost.

**köſtlich, adj. or adv.** costly, precious; delightful, delicious.

**krachen, intr.** crack, crash.

**Kraft, f.** -äfte. strength, vigor; power, force.

**kräftig, adj. (or adv.)** strong, vigorous, powerful, mighty.

**krähen, intr.** crow.

**krank, adj. (or adv.)** ill, sick, diseased. *as noun*, sick person, invalid.

**Krankenbett, n.** sick-bed.

**Krankheit, f.** -ten. illness, sickness, disease.

**Kraut, n.** -tes, -äuter. herb.

**Kreditiv, n.** -ves, -ve. credentials.

**Kreis, m.** -ſes, -ſe. circle.

**Kreuz, n.** -zes, -ze. cross, crucifix.

**-zug, m.** crusade.

**Kreuzer, m.** -rs, -r. kreuzer (small coin).

**kreuzigen, tr.** crucify. *ppl* *as noun*, the crucified one.

**Krieg, m.** -ges, -ge. war. **Krieges-  
that, f.** deed of war.

**Krokodil, n. (or m.)** -les, -le. crocodile.

**Krone, f.** -nen. crown.

**Krüppel, m.** -ls, -l. cripple.

**Küche, f.** -chen. kitchen.

**Kugel, f.** -ln. ball, bullet.

**kühl, adj.** (or *adv.*) cool.

**kühn, adj.** (or *adv.*) bold, daring, intrepid.

**Kultur, f.** culture, civilization.

**kümmern, tr.** grieve, trouble, concern. *reflex.* concern one's self, care.

**künftig, adj.** (or *adv.*) to come, future.

**Kunst, f.** -ünste. art, skill; art (as distinguished from science).

**-schule, f.** art-school.

**Künstler, m.** -rs, -r. artist.

**Kur, f.** -ren. choice, election; right of electing. **-fürst, m.** Elector (i. e. one of the princes formerly entrusted with the election of the German emperor). **-fürstenthum** [-tum], *n.* electorate (territory of an Elector).

**kurz, adj.** (or *adv.*) short, brief.

**küssen, tr.** kiss.

**Küste, f.** -ten. coast, shore.

**Kutscher, m.** -rs, -r. coachman, driver.

**Rabjal, n.** -les, -le. refreshment, comfort.

**lachen, intr.** (rarely with *gen.*) laugh, laugh at.

**lächerlich, adj.** (or *adv.*) laughable, ridiculous.

**Laden, m.** -ns, -n or -äden. shop, stall; shutter.

**Lage, f.** -en. situation, position.

**Lager, n.** -rs, -r. couch, sickbed; *fig.* sickness; camp, encampment.

**Land, n.** -des, -de or -änder. land, ground; territory, region, country; country (as distinguished from city). **auf dem Lande**, in the country. **-gut, n.** country-

place. **-strecke, f.** stretch of land, region. **Landesverweisung, f.** banishment.

1. **lang, adj.** (or *adv.*) long, extended, protracted; high, tall.

2. **lang (or lange), adv.** long, a long while; by far. *see* 230.1a.

**Langenohren, m.** a long-eared one.

**langeweilen (or langweilen), tr.** bore, tire. *reflex.* be bored.

**längs, prep.** (with *dat.* or *gen.*) along. *see* 373a.

**langsam, adj.** (or *adv.*) slow.

**längst, adv.** very long (already), long since, a great while ago.

**lassen, O. tr.** let alone, leave; let, permit, allow, suffer; (often with another verb in *infin.*) cause, make, effect, bring about, have; in *imperative*, let. **es läßt sich**, it can be; it may be, it is possible. *see* 343.5d.

**Lauf, m.** -fes, -äufe. course, career.

**laufen, O. intr.** [or *h.*] run, move rapidly.

**Laune, f.** -nen. humor, mood, temper.

**laut, adj.** (or *adv.*) loud, aloud.

**Laut, m.** -tes, -te. sound, tone.

**leben, intr.** live, exist; dwell.

**Leben, n.** -ns, -n. life, living; animation.

**Lebensglück, n.** happiness of life.

**Lebenspflicht, f.** duty of life.

**lebendig, adj.** (or *adv.*) living, alive.

**lebhaft, adj.** (or *adv.*) lively, vivacious.

**ledigen, intr.** be parched with thirst, pant.

**leer, adj.** (or *adv.*) empty, vacant; vain.

**legen, tr.** lay, put down, place. *refl. x.* lay one's self down.

**lehnen, tr. or intr.** lean, incline, rest.

**Lehnstuhl**, *m.* easy chair, arm-chair.

**Lehre**, *f.* -ren. doctrine, teaching; theory; apprenticeship.

**lehren**, *tr.* teach, instruct.

**Lehrer**, *m.* -rſ, -r. teacher.

**Leib**, *m.* -beſ, -ber. body; waist.

**leicht**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) light, easy.

**leid**, *adj.* (only predicatively) disagreeable, painful. *es thut mir —*, I am sorry, I regret.

**Leid**, *n.* -beſ. harm, hurt, pain; sorrow.

**leiden**, *O. tr.* suffer, endure, bear; *intr.* suffer. *as noun*, suffering, misfortune.

**Leidenschaft**, *f.* -ten. passion.

**leider**, *interjectional adv.* alas, unfortunately.

**leihen**, *O. tr.* lend.

**leise**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) not loud, soft, low, gentle.

**lenken**, *tr.* (or *intr.*) turn or bend in a desired direction, direct, manage, influence.

**lernen**, *tr.* (or *intr.*) learn.

**lesen**, *O. tr.* read.

**lest**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) last, latest, final.

**leuchten**, *intr.* shine, give light, beam.

**Leute**, *pl.* people, folks.

**Licht**, *n.* -teſ, -ter or -te. light, brightness; candle.

**lieb**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) dear, beloved; attractive, pleasant. — **haben**, hold dear, love. — **sein**, be agreeable or pleasant (to some one).

**Liebchen**, *n.* -nſ, -n. little love, darling, sweetheart.

**Liebe**, *f.* love.

**lieben**, *tr.* love.

**lieber**, *adv.* rather, sooner, more willingly.

**Lied**, *n.* -beſ, -der. song, lay.

**liegen**, *O. intr.* *h* or *ſ*. lie.

**Lilie**, *f.* -ien. lily.

**Linde**, *f.* -den. linden, lime-tree.

**linf**, *adj.* left.

**linfs**, *adv.* to the left.

**Lippe**, *f.* -pen. lip.

**Lob**, *n.* -beſ. praise. **rednerin**, *f.* praiser, panegyrist.

**loben**, *tr.* praise, commend; promise.

**Loch**, *n.* -cheſ, -öcher. hole; dungeon.

**Löffel**, *m.* -lſ, -l. spoon.

**lohn**, *tr.* reward, recompense.

**Loos**, *n.* -ſeſ, -ſe. lot; destiny.

**loſ**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) loose, released, set free; *with ſein* or *werden*, governing *accus.* loose from, rid of. *as ſep'le prefix to verbs*, loose, free.

**Lösegeld**, *n.* ransom.

**löſen**, *tr.* set loose, loosen.

**loſgeben**, *O. tr.* set loose or free, release.

**loſmachen**, *tr.* make loose, loosen; disengage.

**loſreißen**, *O. tr.* tear loose, tear away.

**loſſprechen**, *O. tr.* declare free, release; acquit, absolve.

**Loth** [**Lot**], *n.* -theſ, -the. lead; half an ounce.

**Löwe**, *m.* -en, -en. lion. **Löwenſieger**, *m.* lion-conquerer.

**Luft**, *f.* -üſte. air; breeze, breath.

**lügen**, *O. intr.* lie, speak falsely.

**Luſt**, *f.* -üſte. pleasure, delight; inclination, fancy. — **haben**, have desire, like.

**luſtig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) merry, gay; amusing.

**maſchen**, *tr.* make, produce; cause; do, perform.

**Macht**, *f.* -ächte. might, power, force.  
**mächtig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) mighty, powerful. (*with gen.*) capable of.  
**Mädchen**, *n.* -ns, -n. girl, maiden.  
**Magd**, *f.* -ägte. maid, maiden.  
**Mai**, *m.* -aies. May.  
**Mailand**, *n.* -ds. Milan.  
**Mainz**, *n.* -zes. Mayence (city).  
**Majestät**, *f.* -ten. majesty, Majesty.  
**Major**, *m.* -rs, -re. major.  
**Mal**, *n.* -les, -le or -äler. token, sign, mark; point of time, time, turn.  
**malen**, *tr.* paint.  
**Maler**, *m.* -rs, -r. painter, artist.  
**man**, *indef. pron.* one, people, they. see 185.  
**manch**, *indef. pron.*, *in sing.* many a, many a one; *in pl.* many. see 191.  
**mancherlei**, *adj. indecl.* (or *adv.*) of various sorts, diverse, in many ways.  
**manchmal**, *adv.* many times, often.  
**Mann**, *m.* -nnes, -änner. man; husband.  
**Männergestalt**, *f.* figure of a man.  
**Mansarde**, *f.* -den. mansard (curb-roof).  
**Mark**, *f.* -ten. mark (a coin, worth about 25 cts).  
**Markt**, *m.* -tes, -äfte. market, market-place.  
**marschieren**, *intr.* march.  
**Martertod**, *m.* death by torture.  
**März**, *m.* -zes. March.  
**Masern**, *pl.* measles.  
**Maß**, *n.* -ßes, -ße. measure; standard, scale, proportion.  
**massiv**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) massive.

**Mauer**, *f.* -rn. wall. **stein**, *m.* stone for building.  
**Maus**, *f.* -äuse. mouse.  
**Medaille**, *f.* -en. medal.  
**Meer**, *n.* -res, -re. ocean, sea.  
**mehr**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) more. *generally indeclinable, but pl. mehre or mehrere, more than one, several after negative, any longer.*  
**Meile**, *f.* -len. mile. (*a German mile equals nearly 5 English miles*).  
**mein**, *poss. adj.* my, mine.  
**meinen**, *tr. or intr.* think, suppose; mean, signify.  
**meinig**, *poss. pron.* my, mine.  
**Meinung**, *f.* -gen. opinion.  
**meist**, *adj. most. adv. mostly*, for the most part. **am -en**, most, above all others.  
**Meister**, *m.* -rs, -r. master, chief, leader.  
**melden**, *tr.* mention, notify, announce.  
**Menge**, *f.* -en. multitude, crowd.  
**Mensch**, *m.* -schen, -schen. man, person, human being.  
**Menschen**: **geschlecht**, *n.* human race. **herz**, *n.* human heart. **liebe**, *f.* philanthropy. **seele**, *f.* human soul. **stimme**, *f.* human voice.  
**Menschheit**, *f.* humanity.  
**merken**, *tr.* mark, stamp; note, perceive, observe.  
**messen**, *O. tr.* measure.  
**Messer**, *n.* -rs, -r. knife.  
**meubliren** [**ieren**], *tr.* furnish.  
**Miene**, *f.* -en. mien, expression of face, air, look. — **machen**, put on a look.  
**mieten** [**ten**], *tr.* hire, rent.  
**Milch**, *f.* milk.  
**mild** (or **milde**) *adj.* (or *adv.*) mild, meek, gentle; benevolent.

**Milde**, *f.* gentleness, mercy.  
**Million**, *f.* -nen. million.  
**Minister**, *m.* -rs, -r. minister.  
**Minute**, *f.* -ten. minute.  
**missfallen**, *O. intr.* (with *dat.*) displease.  
**mit**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* along, along with; at the same time; likewise, also. *prep.* (with *dat.*) with, along with, by.  
**mitbringen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* bring along (with one), come bringing.  
**Mitbürger**, *m.* fellow citizen.  
**mitgehen**, *O. intr.* { go along, go too.  
**mitmachen**, *tr.* join in making or doing.  
**mitnehmen**, *O. tr.* take along with one.  
**mitsingen**, *O. intr.* join in singing, sing too or with others.  
**Mittag**, *m.* -gs, -ge. midday, noon.  
**Mittagessen**, *n.* midday-meal, dinner.  
**Mitte**, *f.* middle, midst.  
**Mittel**, *n.* -ls, -l. middle; means, instrument.  
**mitten**, *adv.* (followed by *prep.*) midway, in the midst.  
**mittheilen** [-teilen], *tr.* communicate, impart.  
**Mittwoch**, *m.* -chs, -che. Wednesday.  
**Mittwelt**, *f.* one's own age or time, contemporaries.  
**Mode**, *f.* -den. mode, fashion.  
**mögen**, (*irreg.*) *intr.* or *tr.* may, might, be permitted or allowed; like, choose, care, desire. see 251, 255.  
**Monat**, *m.* -ts, -te. month.  
**Mond**, *m.* -des, -de. moon.  
**Montag**, *m.* -gs, -ge. Monday.  
**Mord**, *m.* -des, -de. murder.

**Morgen**, *m.* -ns, -n. morn, morning; east, orient; morrow.  
**Land**, *n.* the East, the Orient.  
**Munde**, *f.* morning-hour.  
**Mörtel**, *m.* -ls, -l. mortar.  
**müde**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) tired, weary.  
**Mühe**, *f.* -hen. toil, labor, pains.  
**Mumie**, *f.* -en. mummy.  
**Mund**, *m.* -des, -de or -ünde or -ünder. mouth.  
**munter**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) lively, brisk, cheery, gay.  
**Musik**, *f.* -ten. music.  
**müssen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* or *intr.* must, be under necessity of, be compelled or obliged, be unable to help, have to, cannot but. see 251, 256.  
**müßig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) unemployed, idle. **gang**, *m.* idleness, sloth.  
**gänger**, *m.* idler.  
**Muth** [Mut], *m.* -thes. mood, disposition; courage, spirit, mettle.  
**mutig** [mutig], *adj.* (or *adv.*) spirited, courageous, daring.  
**Mutter**, *f.* -ütter. mother.  
**mütterlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) motherly, maternal.  
  
**nach**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* after, afterward, behind; in accordance, conformably. **nach und nach**, little by little; **nach wie vor**, afterwards as before, still.  
*prep.* (with *dat.*) after, behind; according to, after the manner of; for, about; at, by; with names of places, to, toward, for. — **oben**, upward, etc.  
**nachahmen**, *intr.* (with *dat.*) or *tr.* imitate, copy.  
**Nachahmung**, *f.* -gen. imitation, mimicry.  
**Nachbar**, *m.* -rs or -rn, -rn. neighbor.



- Nachkomme**, *m.* -en, -en. successor, descendant.
- Nachlaß**, *m.* -ßes, -äße. thing left behind, residuum; heritage.
- Nachmittag**, *m.* -gs, -ge. afternoon.
- Nachricht**, *f.* -ten. intelligence, news.
- nachstarren**, *intr.* (with *dat.*) stare after.
- Nacht**, *f.* -ächte. night. **Seite**, *f.* night side, dark side.
- nachweisen**, *O. tr.* point out, show, prove.
- Nachwelt**, *f.* after world or age, posterity.
- nah**, *adj.* (with *dat.*) nigh, near, close.
- Nähe**, *f.* nearness, proximity, neighborhood.
- nähern**, *tr.* bring nearer. *reflex.* draw nigh, approach; resemble.
- nähren**, *tr.* nourish, support. **nähr-  
reud**, nourishing, nutritive.
- Name** (or **nen**), *m.* -ns, -n. name.
- Narr**, *m.* -ren, -ren. fool.
- naß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) wet.
- Nation**, *f.* -nen. nation.
- Natur**, *f.* -ren. nature.
- neben**, *adv.* beside. *prep.* (with *dat.* or *accus.*) beside, by the side of, by, with; along with, besides.
- Neffe**, *m.* -en, -en. nephew.
- nehmen**, *O. tr.* take, seize; take away; receive, accept.
- neigen**, *tr.* bend, bow. *reflex.* bow. **geneigt**, inclined; favorable, well affectioned.
- Neigung**, *f.* -gen. inclination; affection, attachment.
- nein**, *indecl.* no, nay.
- Nelke**, *f.* -ten. pink, carnation.
- nennen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* name, call; speak of.
- Nerv**, *m.* -ves, -ve, or **Nerue**, *f.* -ven. nerve.
- nett**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) neat, pretty, nice.
- neu**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) new, fresh, unused; recent, modern.
- neugierig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) curious.
- neuglühend**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) newly glowing.
- neun**, *num.* nine. **zehn**, nineteen. **zig**, ninety.
- nicht**, *indef. pron.* naught, nothingness. *adv.* not. — **einmal**, not even. **noch** —, not yet. — **nur** . . . **sondern auch**, not only . . . but also.
- nichts**, *indef. pron. indecl.* naught, nothing. *adverbially*, in no wise, not at all.
- nicken**, *intr.* nod.
- nie**, *adv.* never, at no time.
- nieder**, *adj.* nether, lower; low, base. *adv. and sep'le prefix.* down, downward.
- niederbeugen**, *reflex.* bend down.
- niederländisch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) Netherlandish, Dutch.
- niederlegen**, *tr.* set down. *reflex.* sit down.
- niederwerfen**, *O. tr.* throw down, prostrate.
- niedrig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) low; humble.
- niemals**, *adv.* never.
- Niemand**, *indef. pron.* nobody, no one, not any one. *see* 186.
1. **noch**, *adv.* still, yet, further. — **nicht**, not yet. — **ein**, one more, another. — **einmal**, once more.
2. **noch**, *conj.* (after negative, esp'ly **weder**) nor.
- Nord**, *m.* -des, -de. north. **nörds**, *adv.* northwards.
- Norden**, *m.* -ns. north, northern region.

**nördlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) northerly, northern.

**Noth** [**Not**], *f.* -öthe. need, necessity; want; trouble, misery.

**nöthig** [nötig], (with *dat.*) *adj.* (or *adv.*) needful, necessary.

**nöthigen** [nötigen], *tr.* constrain, force, compel.

**nothwendig** [not-], *adj.* necessary, indispensable.

**November**, *m.* -rs, -r. November.

**nun**, *adv.* now, at present.

**nur**, *adv.* only, simply; but just, scarcely.

**Nuß**, *f.* -üsse. nut. **braun**, *adj.* nut-brown.

**nutzen** or **nützen**, *intr.* (with *dat.*) be of use to, profit.

**nütlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) useful.

**ob**, *adv.* over, above. *conj.* whether, if; **als** —, as if.

**oben**, *adv.* above, aloft, on high. **nach** —, upwards.

**ober**, *adj.* upper, higher.

**Oberst**, *m.* -tes or -ten, -te or -ten. colonel.

**obgleich**, *conj.* although, though.

**October**, *m.* -rs, -r. October.

**öde** or **öd**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) vacant, deserted, desolate, waste.

**oder**, *conj.* or, otherwise, else.

**offen**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) open; public; frank, sincere.

**offenbar**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) plain, evident.

**Officier** (or **zier**), *m.* -rs, -re. officer.

**oft**, *adv.* often, frequently. **mal**, *adv.* oftentimes, repeatedly.

**Oheim**, *m.* -ms, -me. uncle.

**ohne**, *prep.* (with *accus.*) without; but for, except, save. — **daß**, but that, save that.

**Ohr**, *n.* -res, -ren. ear. **ring**, *m.* earring.

**ordentlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) orderly, regular, proper.

**Ort**, *m.* (or *n.*) -tes, -te or **Orter**. place, spot, region.

**Osten**, *m.* -ns. east; eastern land.

**Otilie**, *f.* -iens. Ottilia.

**Paar**, *n.* -res, -re. pair, couple; **ein Paar** (or **paar**), a couple, two or three, a few. *see* 322.2a.

**Palast**, *m.* -ts, -äste. palace.

**Pantoffel**, *m.* -ls, -l. slipper.

**Papier**, *n.* -rs, -re. paper.

**Pabst**, *m.* -tes, -äpste. pope.

**Paradies**, *n.* -tes, -te. paradise.

**Partei**, *f.* -ien. party, faction.

**parteiisch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) factious, partial, partizan.

**Partie**, *f.* -ien. party, company; part, portion.

**Passagier**, *m.* -rs, -re. passenger.

**Pelz**, *m.* -zes, -ze. fur, furred coat.

**Pfad**, *m.* -des, -de. path, track, way.

**Pfaffe**, *m.* -en, -en. priest, parson (*used generally contemptuously*).

**Pfarrer**, *m.* -rs, -r. parson, minister.

**Pfarrhof**, *m.* parsonage.

**Pferd**, *n.* -des, -de. horse.

**pflügen**, *O. or N. tr.* (or *intr.* with *gen.*) wait upon, nurse, cherish; enjoy, be given to. *intr.* be wont, be used to.

**Pflicht**, *f.* -ten. duty.

**pflücken**, *tr.* pick, pluck.

**Pforte**, *f.* -ten. door, gate, portal; port (of ships).

**pfui**, *interj.* fie!

**Pfund**, *n.* -des, -de. pound.

**Philolog**, *m.* -gen, -gen. philologist.

**Philosoph**, *m.* -phen, -phen. philosopher.  
**Pilger**, *m.* -rs, -r. pilgrim. **schaar**, *f.* band of pilgrims.  
**Plage**, *f.* -gen. plague, torment, calamity.  
**Plank**, *f.* -ten. plank, board.  
**Platz**, *m.* -tes, -te. place, seat; situation.  
**plaudern**, *intr.* chat.  
**plötzlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) sudden.  
**plündern**, *tr.* plunder, pillage.  
**pochen**, *intr.* knock.  
**poetisch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) poetical.  
**politisch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) political.  
**Port**, *m.* -tes, -te. port, harbor.  
**Portrait**, *n.* -tes, -te. portrait. **mal**, *m.* portrait-painter.  
**Post**, *f.* -ten. post, post-office.  
**Pracht**, *f.* -ten. splendor, pomp.  
**Präsident**, *m.* -ten, -ten. president.  
**prassen**, *intr.* carouse, riot.  
**Preis**, *m.* -tes, -te. price, cost; prize, reward; praise, glory.  
**preisen**, *O. tr.* praise, commend.  
**Premierminister**, *m.* prime-minister.  
**Preuße**, *m.* -en, -en. Prussian.  
**Priester**, *m.* -rs, -r. priest.  
**Prinz**, *m.* -zen, -zen. prince.  
**Prinzessin**, *f.* -innen. princess.  
**privat**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) private. **stunde**, *f.* private lesson.  
**Product**, *n.* -ts, -te. product.  
**Professor**, *m.* -ren, -ren. professor.  
**profitieren**, *intr.* profit, gain.  
**Promenade**, *f.* -en. promenade, walk.  
**Pulver**, *n.* -rs, -r. powder, gun-powder.  
**Punkt**, *m.* -ts, -te. point.  
**Quell**, *m.* -les, -le, or **Quelle**, *f.* -en. spring, well, source.

**quellen**, *O. intr.* *h* or *j*. flow forth, burst out, gush.

**Rabe**, *m.* -en, -en. raven.

**Rache**, *f.* revenge.

**Rachen**, *m.* -ns, -n. throat, jaws.

**rächen**, *tr.* avenge.

**Rang**, *m.* -ges, -änge. rank, class.

**rasch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) impetuous, swift, speedy.

**rasen**, *intr.* rave, rage. **rasend**, furious, raving, mad.

**Rath [Rat]**, *m.* -thes, -äthe. counsel, advice; counsellor. **haus**, *n.* town-hall.

**rathen [raten]**, *O. intr.* (with *dat.*) give advice or counsel, advise; guess.

**rauben**, *tr.* take by violence (from, *dat.*), rob of.

**Räuber**, *m.* -rs, -r. robber.

**Rauch**, *m.* -ches. smoke.

**rauchen**, *intr.* smoke.

**rauh**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) rough, harsh, coarse.

**Raum**, *m.* -mes, -äume. room, space, place. — **geben**, give way, yield.

**Rausch**, *m.* -ches, -äufe. noise, rush; sudden enthusiasm, intoxication.

**rauschen**, *intr.* *h* or *j*. move with a sound like rushing water, rustle; roar, rush.

**Rechnenschaft**, *f.* reckoning, account.

**rechnen**, *tr.* reckon, calculate, count, estimate, deem.

**recht**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) straight, direct; right, just; correct, true, real; (with *dat.*) suitable, convenient; right (not left). *adverbially*, really, actually; very, quite.

**Recht**, *n.* -tes, -te. right, justice. — **haben**, be in the right.

**rechtgläubig**, *adj.* orthodox.

**rechts**, *adv.* to the right.

**Rede**, *f.* -den. speech, talk, discourse. — **stehen**, stand talk, (*with dat.*) answer, be accountable to.

**reden**, *intr. or tr.* speak, talk, converse.

**redlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* honest, fair.

**Reform**, *f.* -en. reform.

**Regen**, *m.* -nſ. rain.

**Regierung**, *f.* -gen. government.

**regnen**, *intr. impers.* rain.

**reich**, *adj. (or adv.)* wealthy, rich; copious.

**Reich**, *n.* -des, -de. empire, realm, kingdom.

**reichen**, *intr.* reach, extend. *tr.* hold out, present, offer.

**reichlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* abundant, copious, plentiful.

**Reichthum** [-tum], *m.* -ms, -ümer. riches, wealth.

**Reihe**, *f.* -en. row, series, line.

**Reimer**, *m.* -rs, -r. rhymer.

**rein**, *adj. (or adv.)* clean, pure.

**reinigen**, *tr.* cleanse, purify.

**Reise**, *f.* -ſen. journey, voyage.

**reisen**, *intr.* † or ‡. journey, travel, take a journey.

**reißen**, *O. tr.* tear, snatch away.

**reiten**, *O. intr.* † or ‡. ride, go on horseback.

**Reiter**, *m.* -rs, -r. rider, horseman.

**reizen**, *tr.* incite, excite; charm, attract. **reizend**, charming.

**Rektor** (*or* **rector**), *m.* -rs, -oren. rector (principal of a school).

**Religion**, *f.* -nen. religion.

**Rest**, *m.* -tes, -te. residue, remnant, remainder.

**Restauration**, *f.* -nen. restaurant.

**retten**, *tr.* save, rescue, deliver. *reflex.* save one's self; run away.

**Rettung**, *f.* -gen. rescue, deliverance.

**reuen**, *tr. or intr.* rue, repent, regret. **es reuet mich**, I repent.

**Revolution**, *f.* -nen. revolution.

**Rhein**, *m.* -nes. (river) Rhine.

**Brücke**, *f.* Rhine-bridge.

**richten**, *tr.* set right; direct; judge, censure.

**Richter**, *m.* -rs, -r. judge. **ſtuhl**, *m.* judgment-seat.

**Richtigkeit**, *f.* rightness, correctness.

**Riese**, *m.* -ſen, -ſen. giant.

**Ring**, *m.* -ges, -ge. ring.

**ringen**, *O. tr.* wring, twist. *intr.* struggle, strive, contend.

**rings**, *adv.* around, about. — **umher**, *adv.* round about, all around.

**rinnen**, *O. intr.* † or ‡. run, flow, course.

**Ritt**, *m.* -ttes, -tte. ride.

**Ritter**, *m.* -rs, -r. chevalier, knight.

**Rock**, *m.* -des, -öde. coat, petticoat.

**roh**, *adj. (or adv.)* rude, raw, rough.

**Rolle**, *f.* -len. roll, scroll; rôle, part.

**Rom**, *n.* -ms. Rome.

**Roman**, *m.* -nes, -ne. novel, romance.

**Rose**, *f.* -ſen. rose.

**Roß**, *n.* -ſſes, -ſſe. horse, steed.

**roth** [rot], *adj. (or adv.)* red.

**Rücken**, *m.* -ns, -n. back, rear.

**rücken**, *tr.* jerk, pull; move, push.

**Rückſicht**, *f.* -ten. regard, respect, consideration.

**rückwärts**, *adv.* backwards, back.

**rufen**, *O. intr.* call out, cry. *tr.* call, call to.

**Ruhe**, *f.* rest, repose, tranquillity.

**ruhen**, *intr.* rest, repose.

**ruhig**, *adj. (or adv.)* quiet, tranquil.

- Rührung**, *f.* moving, touching; emotion.
- Ruhm**, *m.* -mes. fame, glory.
- Saal**, *m.* -les, -äle. hall, saloon.
- Sache**, *f.* -en. thing, matter, affair, concern, business. *pl.* things, goods.
- Sacrament**, *n.* -tes, -te. sacrament.
- Saft**, *m.* -tes, -äfte. sap, juice.
- Sage**, *f.* -en. talk, saying; legend, tradition.
- sagen**, *tr.* say, tell, relate; speak, utter, declare.
- Säle**, see **Saal**.
- Salon**, *m.* -ns, -ns. salon, saloon, parlor.
- Salz**, *n.* -zes, -ze. salt.
- samt**, *prep.* (*with dat.*) along with, together with.
- Sand**, *m.* -des. sand. **sand**, *f.* sandbank.
- sant**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) soft, gentle, mild, smooth.
- Saracene**, *m.* -en, -en. Saracen, Mussulman.
- Sarg**, *m.* -ges, -ärge. coffin.
- Satz**, *m.* -zes, -äze. proposition, sentence.
- sauer**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) sour, tart, acid; disagreeable, peevish.
- säuerlich**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) tart, acid, sourish.
- saufen**, *O. intr.* drink (*said of the lower animals*), guzzle.
- Säugling**, *m.* -gs, -ge. nursling, baby.
- Schar** [**Schar**], *f.* -ren. troop, band, crowd.
- schaden**, *intr.* (*with dat.*) harm, injure, hurt.
- schaffen**, *O. tr.* shape, form, create, make. *O. or N.* procure, obtain, provide.
- schämen**, *reflex.* be ashamed.
- schändlich**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) disgraceful, shameful, infamous.
- Schar**, see **Schar**.
- scharf**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) sharp, keen, cutting; severe.
- Schatz**, *m.* -zes, -äze. treasure.
- schätzen**, *tr.* treasure, value.
- schauerhaft**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) awful, horrible.
- schauen**, *intr.* look, gaze, see. *tr.* look at, behold, see.
- schäumen**, *intr.* foam, froth.
- Schauspiel**, *n.* -ls, -le. spectacle, sight; play, drama.
- Schauspieler**, *m.* -rs, -r. player, actor.
- Scheffel**, *m.* -ls, -l. bushel.
- scheiden**, *O. intr.* *f.* part, separate; go away; die.
- scheinen**, *O. intr.* shine; seem *or* appear.
- Scheitel**, *f.* -ln. crown (of the head).
- Schelm**, *m.* -mes, -me. rogue, knave.
- schelten**, *O. tr. or intr.* reprove, chide, scold; revile as, call reproachfully.
- schenken**, *tr.* pour out for drinking; make a present of, give, grant.
- Schenkstube**, *f.* tap-room, bar, room.
- scherzen**, *intr.* joke, jest, make fun.
- schonen**, *tr.* be shy of; avoid, shun; shy (of a horse).
- schicken**, *tr.* cause to happen; *us'ly* send, despatch, forward.
- Schicksal**, *n.* -ls, -le. fate, destiny, lot.
- schießen**, *O. intr. or tr.* shoot.
- Schiff**, *n.* -ffes, -ffe. ship.
- Schild**, *m.* -des, -de *or* -der. shield; coat of arms; sign, signboard.

**ſchimpfen**, *tr.* insult, abuse, call names.

**ſchlacht**, *f.* -ten. battle.

**ſchlaf**, *m.* -ſes. sleep.

**ſchlafen**, *O. intr.* sleep.

**ſchlag**, *m.* -ges, -äge. stroke, blow; shock.

**ſchlagen**, *O. tr. or intr.* strike, hit, beat; knock; defeat.

**ſchlange**, *f.* -gen. serpent, snake.

**ſchlecht**, *adj. (or adv.)* bad, base, mean.

**ſchleife**, *f.* -ſen. knot, bow.

**ſchließen**, *O. tr.* shut.

**ſchloß**, *n.* -ſſes, -öſſer. lock; citadel, castle. **ſthor**, *n.* castle-gate.

**ſchlucht**, *f.* -ten. ravine, gorge.

**ſchlummer**, *m.* -rs, -r. slumber.

**ſchlummern**, *intr.* slumber, sleep.

**ſchluß**, *m.* -ſſes, -üſſe. closing; close, end, conclusion.

**ſchlüſſel**, *m.* -ls, -l. key.

**ſchmach**, *f.* abuse, outrage; disgrace, shame.

**ſchmal**, *adj. (or adv.)* narrow, slender.

**ſchmeicheln**, *intr. (with dat.)* caress; flatter.

**ſchmeicheltrede**, *f.* flattery.

**ſchmerz**, *m.* -zes or -zens, -zen. pain, ache; sorrow, distress.

**ſchmerzen**, *intr.* smart, pain. *tr. or impers. (with dat.)* pain, grieve, afflict.

**ſchmerzlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* painful.

**ſchmied**, *m.* -des, -de. smith.

**ſchmiede**, *f.* -en. smithy, forge.

**ſchnell**, *adj. (or adv.)* quick, speedy, swift, rapid.

**ſchon**, *adv.* already, even.

**ſchön**, *adj. (or adv.)* beautiful, handsome, fine, noble.

**ſchonen**, *tr. (or intr. with gen.)* treat with consideration, spare.

**ſchönheit**, *f.* beauty.

**ſchranke**, *f.* -en. railing, barrier. *pl.* lists (at tournaments). *in die —a kommen*, enter the lists.

**ſchred**, *m.* -des, -de. fright, terror.

**ſchredlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* terrible, frightful.

**ſchreiben**, *O. tr.* write.

**ſchreibtisch**, *m.* writing-table.

**ſchreien**, *O. intr.* cry, cry out, scream.

**ſchrift**, *f.* -ten. writing; something written, scripture.

**ſchritt**, *m.* -ttes, -tte. step, stride, pace.

**ſchuh**, *m.* -hes, -he. shoe.

**ſchuld**, *f.* -den. debt; fault, crime.

**ſchuldig**, *adj. (or adv.)* owing, indebted for (*with accus.*); culpable, criminal, guilty of or lacking in (*with gen.*)

**ſchuldner**, *m.* -rs, -r. debtor.

**ſchule**, *f.* -len. school.

**ſchüler**, *m.* -rs, -r. pupil, scholar.

**ſchurke**, *m.* -en, -en. rascal, knave, villain.

**ſchuß**, *m.* -ſſes, -üſſe. shot; charge (of a gun).

**ſchwach**, *adj. (or adv.)* weak, feeble.

**ſchwägerin**, *f.* -nnen. sister-in-law.

**ſchwan**, *m.* -nes or -nen, -äne or -nen. swan.

**ſchwanken**, *intr.* h or f. stagger, totter; waver.

**ſchwarz**, *adj. (or adv.)* black.

**ſchweben**, *intr.* sweep (through the air), soar, hover, float.

**ſchweigen**, *O. intr.* keep silence, be still, not talk, hold one's peace. *as noun*, silence.

**ſchweiz**, *f.* Switzerland.

**ſchwelgen**, *intr.* gormandize, revel, carouse.

- Schwelle**, *f.* -len. threshold.  
**schwellen**, *O. intr.* *f.* swell, heave.  
**schwer**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) grievous, sore, burdensome, heavy; hard, difficult.  
**Schwert**, *n.* -tes, -ter. sword.  
**Schwester**, *f.* -rn. sister. **shen**, *n.* little sister.  
**Schwiegervater**, *m.* father-in-law.  
**schwimmen**, *O. in'r.* *h* or *f.* swim, float.  
**schwingen**, *O. tr. or intr.* swing; wave, brandish. *reflex.* swing one's self.  
**schwören**, *O. tr. or intr.* swear, take oath to, vow.  
**schül**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) sultry, hot and close.  
**Schwung**, *m.* -ges, -ünge. swing, rotation, swinging motion.  
**Schwur**, *m.* -res, -üre. oath, vow.  
**schwyz**, *adj.* of Swytz (a Swiss Canton).  
**sechs**, *num.* six. **zehn**, sixteen. **zig**, sixty.  
**See**, *m.* -ees, -een. lake. *f.* -een. sea, ocean.  
**Seele**, *f.* -len. soul.  
**Segel**, *n.* -ls, -l. sail.  
**Segen**, *m.* -ns, -n. blessing.  
**segnen**, *tr.* bless.  
**sehen**, *O. tr. or intr.* see, look. glance, perceive; look, appear.  
**sehnen**, *reflex.* long, yearn, feel eager desire. *as noun*, longing, yearning.  
**Sehnsucht**, *f.* eager desire, yearning.  
**sehr**, *adv.* very greatly, very much, much.  
1. **sein**, *O. intr.* *f.* be, exist. *es ist*, there is, etc. *einem gut* —, be fond of one. *an einem* —, depend on one; be one's turn.  
2. **sein**, *poss. adj.* his, its.  
3. **sein**, *gen. of er or es*.  
**seinesgleichen**, *indecl. adj. or pron.* of his kind, such as he.  
**seinig**, *poss. pron.* his, its.  
**seit**, *prep.* (with *dat.*) since, from (a given time till now), during. *conj.* since, since the time that.  
**dem**, *adv.* since then, since. *conj.* since, from the time that.  
**Seite**, *f.* -ten. side; party; page.  
**selber**, *adj. indecl.* self, myself, etc. see 155.5.  
**selbst**, *adj. indecl.* self, etc. see 155.5. *adv.* even.  
**Selbst**: **achtung**, *f.* self-respect. **erhaltung**, *f.* self-preservation.  
**selig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) blessed, happy, blissful.  
**Seligkeit**, *f.* happiness, bliss, salvation.  
**seltsam**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) unusual, strange, wonderful.  
**senden**, (irreg. or reg.) *tr.* send.  
**September**, *m.* -rs, -r. September.  
**setzen**, *tr.* set, place; lay down, lay. *reflex.* sit down.  
**seufzen**, *intr.* sigh, groan.  
**sich**, *reflex. pron.* himself, herself, itself, themselves; one another. see 155.3,4.  
**sicher**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) safe, sure, secure.  
**sichern**, *tr.* make sure, secure, guarantee.  
**sie**, *pers. pron.* (3d sing.) she, her, it; (3d pl) they, them; **Sie**, you. see 153.4.  
**sieben**, *num.* seven. **zehn** (or **sieb-zehn**), seventeen. **zig** (or **sieb-zig**), seventy.  
**Sieg**, *m.* -ges, -ge. victory, conquest.  
**Sieger**, *m.* -rs, -r. victor, conqueror.  
**siegreich**, *adj.* victorious.

**filbern**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) silver.

**fingen**, *O. tr. or intr.* sing.

**finfen**, *O. intr.* †. sink, fall.

**Sinn**, *m.* -nes, -ne or *nuen*. sense, organ of perception; mind; intent, meaning, import; disposition, character.

**fittlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) related to manners or morals; social, moral.

**fitzen**, *O. intr.* sit.

**Sklave**, *m.* -en, -en. slave.

**fo**, *adv.* so, in this manner or degree, as. **fo . . . als** (or **wie**) . . . as . . . as . . . **fo ein**, such a. *used as rel. pron. see 182.1.*

**fo** : **balb**, *adv.* so soon. *conj.* as soon as. **gleich**, *adv.* immediately, at once. **lange**, *conj.* as long as. **oft**, *conj.* as often as. **wie**, *adv.* as. **wohl**, *adv.* as well. **fo wohl . . . als . . .**, as well . . . as . . ., both . . . and.

**Sohn**, *m.* -nes, -öhne. son.

**Söhnlein**, *n.* -ns, -n. little son.

**solch**, *pron'l adj.* such. **ein solcher**, such a.

**Soldat**, *m.* -ten, -ten. soldier.

**solid**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) solid, respectable.

**sollen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* shall, should; owe, ought; be to, be intended to; be said to. *see 251, 257.*

**Sommer**, *m.* -rs, -r. summer.

**sondern**, *conj.* but (*stronger than aber*, and usually after negative).

**Sonnabend**, *m.* -ds, -de. Saturday.

**Sonne**, *f.* -nen. sun.

**sonnen**, *intr.* expose to the sun, air, sun.

**Sonnenlicht**, *n.* sunlight, sunbeam.

**Sonntag**, *m.* -gs, -ge. Sunday.

**sonst**, *adv.* else, otherwise, besides; at other time, heretofore.

**Sophie**, *f.* -tens. Sophia.

**Sorge**, *f.* -gen. care, anxiety, sorrow.

**sorgen**, *intr.* care, take care, make provision; feel anxiety or sorrow.

**Spanien**, *n.* -ns. Spain.

**Spanier**, *m.* -rs, -r. Spaniard.

**spanisch**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) Spanish.

**sparen**, *tr.* spare, save, lay up.

**spät**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) late, tardy, slow.

**spazieren**, *intr.* † or †. walk (for exercise or pleasure), go abroad. — **gehen**, take a walk. — **fahren**, take a drive. — **reiten**, take a ride.

**Speer**, *m.* -res, -re. spear.

**speisen**, *intr.* eat, take food.

**Spiel**, *n.* -les, -le. play, game, sport; playing, acting; gambling; trick.

**spielen**, *tr. or intr.* play; play (music); gamble; act.

**Spielleute**, *pl.* actors, musicians.

**Spize**, *f.* -zen. point, peak, head.

**Spott**, *m.* -ttes, -tte. mockery, derision, scorn, ridicule.

**spotten**, *intr.* (*with gen.*) mock, scoff at, ridicule.

**Sprache**, *f.* -chen. speech, language.

**sprechen**, *O. intr. or tr.* speak, talk, say, utter; speak to, address. **frei** —, pronounce free, absolve.

**springen**, *O. intr.* † or †. spring, leap, jump.

**sprudeln**, *intr. or tr.* bubble, gush.

**Spur**, *f.* -ren. track, trace; way.

**Stab**, *m.* -bes, -äbe. staff.

**Stadt**, *f.* -ädte. city, town.

**Stamm**, *m.* -ammes, -ämme. stem, stalk; stock, race, tribe.

**stammeln**, *intr. or tr.* stammer.

**stammen**, *intr.* †. originate, proceed, descend.



**Stand**, *m.* -des, -ände. standing ; state, position, rank in life. *zu* —*e* bringen, bring about, accomplish. *im* —*e* sein, be prepared, be able.

**stark**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) strong, stout, vigorous ; mighty.

**Stärke**, *f.* -en. force, strength.

**statt**, *prep.* (with *gen.*) instead of ; for.

**stattfinden**, *O. intr.* take place.

**steden**, *O. or N. intr.* stick, remain fast ; lie hidden. *tr.* set ; hide.

**stehen**, *O. intr.* *h* or *j*. stand, be upright ; be situated, be ; stand still, stop. *wie steht's?* how are you ? how goes it ?

**steigen**, *O. intr.* *j*. step up ; rise, ascend, climb, get up or in ; sometimes descend, climb down.

**steil**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) steep.

**Stein**, *m.* -nes, -ne. stone, rock.

**stellen**, *tr.* place, put, set, fix ; arrange. *reflex.* give one's self the appearance, act as if, appear.

**sterben**, *O. intr.* die.

**Stern**, *m.* -nes, -ne (or -nen). star.

**stets**, *adv.* steadily, ever, always.

**Stiefel**, *m.* -ls, -l. boot.

**still**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) still, silent, quiet, calm, tranquil. *im Stillen*, secretly. *schweigend*, silent.

**Stimme**, *f.* -en. voice.

**stimmen**, *intr. or tr.* give voice, sound ; harmonize, agree. *drein*

*stimmen*, join in, join in singing.

**Stirn**, *f.* -nen. forehead, brow.

**Stod**, *n.* -des, -öde. stick, staff, cane ; trunk, stock ; story (of a house).

**Stoff**, *m.* -ffes, -ffe. stuff, matter, material.

**stöhnen**, *intr.* groan.

**stolz**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) proud, haughty, arrogant.

**Storch**, *m.* -ches, -örche. stork.

**stören**, *tr.* stir up, disturb, trouble.

**stoßen**, *O. intr. or tr.* push, thrust, strike.

**strafen**, *tr.* punish, chastise.

**Straße**, *f.* -ßen. street.

**streben**, *intr.* strive, struggle, endeavor ; aspire.

**streden**, *tr.* stretch, extend.

**Streich**, *m.* -ches, -che. stroke, lash ; trick, prank.

**Streit**, *m.* -tes, -te. contest, combat, conflict.

**streiten**, *O. intr.* contend, struggle, fight ; argue, debate.

**streuen**, *tr.* strew, scatter.

**Strom**, *m.* -mes, -öme. stream, river.

**Stübchen**, *n.* -ns, -n. little room.

**Stück**, *n.* -des, -de. piece, part, fragment, bit ; piece, play.

**Student**, *m.* -ten, -ten. student.

**Studium**, *n.* -ms, -ien. study ; *pl.* studies.

**Stuhl**, *m.* -les, -ühle. chair.

**stumm**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) dumb, mute, silent.

**Stunde**, *f.* -den. hour ; lesson (of an hour's duration) ; distance of an hour's walk.

**stündlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) hourly.

**Sturm**, *m.* -mes, -ürme. storm.

**stürzen**, *intr.* *j*. fall headlong, tumble, rush. *tr.* overthrow, ruin.

**suchen**, *tr.* seek, search for, try to find or obtain, aim at.

**Süd**, *m.* -des. south. *sindisch*, *adj.* South-Indian.

**Sünde**, *f.* -den. sin.

**sündigen**, *intr.* sin, commit a sin.

**süß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) sweet, delightful.

**Syrien**, *n.* -ns. Syria.

**Tabal**, *m.* -ls, -le. tobacco.  
**rauch**, *n.* tobacco-smoke.

**tadeln**, *tr.* blame, censure, reproach.

**Tafel**, *f.* -ln. table.

**Tag**, *m.* -ges, -ge. day.

**täglich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) daily.

**talentvoll**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) talented.

**Tanne**, *f.* -nen. fir-tree. **Tannengrün**, *n.* green of the firs.

**Tante**, *f.* -ten. aunt.

**Tanz**, *m.* -zes, -änze. dance.

**tanzen**, *intr.* or *tr.* dance.

**Tapet**, *n.* -tes, -te. carpet.

**Tapete**, *f.* -ten. tapestry, hangings.

**tapfer**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) brave, valiant, bold.

**Tasche**, *f.* -en. pocket, pouch.

**Tasse**, *f.* -en. cup.

**taufen**, *tr.* dip, immerse; baptize, christen. **getauft**, baptized, christian.

**tausend**, *num.* a thousand. **mal**, *adv.* a thousand times.

**Teller**, *m.* -rs, -r. plate.

**Teufel**, *m.* -ls, -l. devil.

**Thal**, *n.* -les, -äler. valley.

**Thaler**, *m.* -rs, -r. dollar, thaler (about 73 cts.)

**That**, *f.* -ten. deed, action.

**thätig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) active, busy.

**Thätigkeit**, *f.* -ten. activity, efficiency.

**Thau** [**Tau**], *m.* -aues, -aue. dew.

**Theater**, *n.* -rs, -r. theatre.

**Thee**, *m.* -ees, -ee. tea; tea-party.

**Theil** [**Teil**], *m.* or *n.* -les, -le. part, portion, share. **zum** —, partly. **einem zu — werden**, fall to one's share.

**theilnehmen** [**teil-**], *O. intr.* take part, participate, be interested.

**theuer** [**teuer**], *adj.* (or *adv.*) dear, beloved; expensive.

**Thier** [**Tier**], *m.* -res, -re animal, creature.

**thierisch** [**tier-**], *adj.* (or *adv.*) animal.

**Thor**, *n.* -res, -re. door, gate.

**Thor**, *m.* -ren, -ren. fool, simpleton.

**Thorheit**, *f.* -ten. folly.

**Thräne**, *f.* -en. tear.

**Thron**, *m.* -nes, -ne or -nen. throne.

**thronen**, *intr.* sit on a throne, be enthroned.

**thun**, *O. tr.* do, perform; make; put. *intr.* act, behave; carry on, conduct. *impers.* matter; be. see 242.3.

**Thür**, *f.* -ren. door.

**tief**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) deep, profound, low.

**Tiefe**, *f.* -fen. depth, profundity, deep place.

**Tisch**, *m.* -sches, -sche. table.

**Titel**, *m.* -ls, -l. title; claim.

**Tizian**, *m.* -ns. Titian (the painter).

**Tizian**, *m.* -ns. hall for the paintings of Titian.

**Tochter**, *f.* -öchter. daughter.

**Tod**, *m.* -des, -de. death.

**tot** [**tot**], *adj.* (or *adv.*) dead. *as noun*, dead or deceased person.

**töden** [**töten**], *tr.* kill, slay, put to death.

**Todtenkammer** [**Tot-**], *n.* chamber of death.

**tödtlich** [**tötlich**], *adj.* (or *adv.*) deadly, mortal.

**tot** [**tot**], *tr.* strike dead.

**Ton**, *m.* -nes, -öne. tone, sound.

**tönen**, *intr.* resound, sound forth.

**träge**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) inert, indolent, lazy.

**tragen**, *O. tr.* or *intr.* carry, bear, bring; wear; support, endure; produce, yield.

**Trank**, *m.* -nkes, -änke. drink, beverage.  
**trauen**, *intr.* (*with dat.*) trust, have confidence in, confide. *reflex.* trust one's self, venture.  
**trauern**, *intr.* mourn, grieve, lament.  
**Traum**, *m.* -meß, -äume. dream.  
**träumen**, *intr. or tr.* dream, fancy.  
**traumlos**, *adj.* dreamless.  
**traurig**, *adj. (or adv.)* mournful, sad, melancholy.  
**traut**, *adj. (or adv.)* beloved, dear.  
**treiben**, *O. tr.* drive, impel; carry on, perform. **ein Spiel**, play a trick.  
**trennen**, *tr.* separate, divide, part. *reflex.* part.  
**Trennung**, *f.* -gen. separation.  
**treten**, *O. intr.* †. tread, step, proceed, enter. **einem nahe** —, come near to, affect.  
**tren**, *adj. (or adv.)* true, faithful, trusty.  
**Trieb**, *m.* -beß, -be. drift; impulse, instinct.  
**trinken**, *O. tr. or intr.* drink.  
**trocken**, *adj. (or adv.)* dry.  
**trocknen**, *tr. or intr.* † or ‡. dry, dry up.  
**Trope**, *f.* -en. tropic.  
**Tropfen**, *m.* -ns, -n. drop.  
**trösten**, *tr.* comfort, console.  
**Tros**, *m.* -ßes. defiance, disdain; stubbornness.  
**troß**, *prep. (with dat. or gen.)* in defiance of, in spite of, notwithstanding. **dem**, *adv.* in spite of that, notwithstanding.  
**Trunk**, *m.* -kes. drink, draught.  
**Trupp**, *m.* -ppes, -ppe. troop.  
**Tuch**, *n.* -ches, -ücher. cloth, linen; kerchief.  
**Tugend**, *f.* -den. virtue.  
**tugendhaft**, *adj. (or adv.)* virtuous.

**Uebel**, *n.* -ls, -l. evil, ill, misfortune.  
**üben**, *tr.* practice, exercise.  
**über**, *adv. and sep'le (or insep'le)* *prefix.* over, above; in excess. **die Zeit** —, during the time. see 230.1a.  
*prep. (with dat.)* over, above, higher than; in the process of; while, by reason of. (*with accus.*) over or above; across; beyond; after, by way of; respecting; over, more than.  
**überall**, *adv.* everywhere.  
**überbringen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* bring over, deliver. (*sep'le*) bring over, carry over.  
**überflüssig**, *adj. (or adv.)* superfluous, unnecessary; plentiful.  
**überhaupt**, *adv.* in general, altogether.  
**überlassen**, *O. tr. (sep'le or insep'le)* leave over, turn over, relinquish, resign, make over, cede.  
**überleben**, *tr.* outlive, survive.  
 1. **überlegen**, *tr. (sep'le)* lay over, turn over. (*insep'le*) turn over in mind, consider.  
 2. **überlegen**, see **überliegen**.  
**überliegen**, *O. intr. (sep'le)* lie over, be deferred. (*insep'le*) be superior to, surpass. **überlegen**, *with dat.* superior to.  
**übermorgen**, *adv.* day after tomorrow.  
**überraschen**, *tr.* surprise, startle.  
**übersetzen**, *tr. (sep'le)* set over or across. (*insep'le*) translate.  
**überstehen**, *intr. (sep'le)* stand over or out. (*insep'le*) last over, last through, outlast, endure, live through.  
**überwinden**, *O. tr.* overcome, conquer, subdue.  
**übrig**, *adj. (or adv.)* left over, left. — **bleiben**, be left.

**übrigens**, *adv.* for the rest, moreover.

**Übung**, *f.* -gen. exercise, practice.

**Ufer**, *n.* -rs, -r. shore, coast, bank.

**Uhr**, *f.* -ren. hour; clock, watch. *after numerals*, o'clock.

**um**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* around, about; around about or over.

*prep.* (with *accus.*) around, about; near to; respecting, concerning. (*after verbs of asking*) for. (*with comparative, denoting am't of difference*) by. before *zu* and an infinitive, in order, so as. **um . . . her**, (with *accus. between*) round about. **um . . . willen**, (with *gen.*) on account of.

**umarmen**, *tr.* throw the arm about, embrace.

**umbringen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* cause to lose one's life, destroy, kill.

**Umgang**, *m.* -gs. going around; roundabout way; society, company.

**umgeben**, *O. tr.* (*insep'le*) surround, environ, enclose.

**umher**, *adv.* around, round about.

**umlernen**, *intr.* learn over again, learn in a different way.

**umliegen**, *O. intr.* *f.* lie around or about. **umliegend**, surrounding, neighboring.

**umsehen**, *O. intr.* look about. *reflex.* look about one's self.

**Umstand**, *m.* -des, -ände. circumstance.

**umwenden**, (*irreg. or reg.*) *tr.* turn about, reverse, invert. *intr.* turn, turn back.

**un-**, *neg. prefix.* same as English *un-*.

**abänderlich**, *adj.* unalterable.

**ansehnlich**, *adj.* inconsiderable,

insignificant. **artig**, *adj.* rude, naughty. **bekannt**, *adj.* unknown. **beweglich**, *adj.* immovable. **bewohnt**, *adj.* uninhabited. **brauchbar**, useless.

**und**, *conj.* and.

**undankbar**, *adj.* thankless. **endlich**, *adj.* endless. **entbehrlich**, indispensable. **erfahrungheit**, *f.* inexperience. **ermesslich**, *adj.* immeasurable. **ersehlich**, *adj.* irreparable. **erträglich**, *adj.* unendurable. **erwartet**, *adj.* unexpected. **fehlbar**, *adj.* infallible. **fehlbarkeit**, *f.* infallibility. **gedacht**, *prep.* (with *dat. or gen.*) in spite of, notwithstanding. *conj.* although. **gefähr**, *adv.* about, nearly, not far from. **geliebt**, *adj.* unloved. **gemischt**, *adj.* unmixed. **gerecht**, *adj.* unjust, unfair. **geschehen**, *adj.* not happened, undone. **geschlecht**, *adj.* uncouth, unwieldy. **gewißheit**, *f.* uncertainty. **gezogen**, *adj.* illbred, rude, unmannered. **glaublich**, *adj.* incredible.

**Unglück**, *m.* ill-luck, misfortune, unhappiness.

**unglücklich**, *adj.* unfortunate, unhappy. **glücklich**, *adj.* unlucky, unfortunate, miserable.

**Universität**, *f.* -ten. university.

**unmöglich**, *adj.* impossible. **passend**, *adj.* unsuitable. **recht**, *n.* wrong, error; injustice, injury. **ruhe**, *f.* disquiet, anxiety. **sauberlich**, *adj.* not neat or clean, dirty. **schuldig**, *adj.* innocent.

1. **unser**, *poss. pron.* our, ours.

2. **unser**, *gen. pl.* of *ich*.

**unserig** (**unfrig**), *poss. pron.* our, ours.

**unsicher**, *adj.* uncertain, unsafe.  
**unten**, *adv.* below, beneath.  
**unter**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* below, beneath, under; among, amid.  
*prep. (with dat. or accus.)* under, beneath, below; less than, inferior to; among, amid, between; during.  
**unterdessen**, *adv.* during this time, meantime.  
**untergehen**, *O. intr.* †. go down, descend, set; fall, perish.  
**unterliegen**, *O. intr. (sep'le)* lie under. (*insep'le*) succumb, yield, be worsted.  
**unternehmen**, *O. tr.* undertake, attempt.  
**unterrichten**, *tr.* instruct, teach.  
**Unterthan**, *m.* -nen or -ns, -nen. subject, dependent.  
**unterwegs**, *adv.* on the way, under-way.  
**ununterbrochen**, *adj.* uninterrupted. **vaterländisch**, *adj.* unpatriotic. **versöhnlich**, *adj.* implacable, irreconcilable. **vollendet**, *adj.* unfinished, incomplete. **vorsichtig**, *adj.* destitute of foresight, imprudent. **weit**, *adv.* not far distant. *prep. (with gen.)* not far from, near. **widerstehlich**, *adj.* irresistible. **wohl**, *adj.* unwell, not well. **würdig**, *adj.* unworthy, derogatory to (*with gen.*)  
**Ursache**, *f.* -chen. cause, motive.  
**Vater**, *m.* -rs, -äter. father. **land**, *n.* native country, fatherland.  
**väterlich**, *adj. (or adv.)* fatherly, paternal.  
**Veilchen**, *n.* -ns, -n. violet.  
**Venedig**, *n.* -gs. Venice.  
**ver-** *insep'le prefix.* see 307.6, 405.III.1d.

**verachten**, *tr.* despise, disdain.  
**Verachtung**, *f.* contempt, scorn.  
**veralten**, *intr.* †. grow old. **veraltet**, grown old, aged.  
**verändern**, *tr.* change, alter.  
**verbergen**, *O. tr.* hide, conceal.  
**verbessern**, *tr.* make better, improve.  
**Verbesserung**, *f.* -gen. improvement, reform.  
**verbieten**, *O. tr. (with dat.)* forbid, interdict.  
**verbinden**, *O. tr.* bind up, tie up; bind together; lay under an obligation.  
**Verbrechen**, *O. tr.* break; transgress. *as noun*, transgression, crime, guilt.  
**Verbrecher**, *m.* -rs, -r. criminal, transgressor.  
**verbrennen**, (*irreg.*) *tr. or intr.* †. burn up, destroy by fire; scorch, scald.  
**verbringen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* pass away, spend.  
**Verdacht**, *m.* -ts. suspicion.  
**verdammten**, *tr.* condemn, damn, sentence. *ppl. used as noun*, condemned one.  
**verdecken**, *tr.* cover up, conceal.  
**verderben**, *O. intr.* †. spoil, be ruined, perish. *N. tr.* spoil, destroy, ruin. *as noun*, ruin, destruction.  
**verderblich**, *adj. (or adv.)* destructible; destructive, pernicious.  
**verdienen**, *tr.* earn, gain; deserve. **verdient**, deserving.  
**verdrießen**, *O. tr.* fret, vex. **verdrößen**, averse; wearied, disgusted.  
**Verehrung**, *f.* reverence, veneration.  
**Verein**, *m.* -ns, -ne. union, combination.

**bereiteln**, *tr.* make vain, frustrate, render futile.  
**verfahren**, *O. intr.* *h* or *f.* proceed, conduct one's self.  
**verfallen**, *O. intr.* *f.* fall in, decline, degenerate, decay. **verfallen**, dilapidated, ruinous.  
**Verfasser**, *m.* -rs, -r. author, composer.  
**Vergangenheit**, *f.* the past, time past.  
**vergänglich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) transitory, perishable.  
**vergeben**, *O. tr.* give away; forgive, pardon.  
**vergebens**, *adv.* in vain, vainly.  
**vergehen**, *O. intr.* *f.* pass away, elapse. *as noun*, error, offense.  
**vergangen**, gone by, elapsed, past.  
**vergelten**, *O. tr.* pay back, return, requite, recompense.  
**vergeffen**, *O. tr.* (or *intr. with gen.*) forget.  
**vergnügen**, *tr.* satisfy, gratify, please. *as noun*, satisfaction, enjoyment, delight.  
**vergönnen**, *tr.* grant cheerfully, not grudge, allow.  
**verhängnißvoll** [=nißvoll], *adj.* (or *adv.*) momentous, fateful.  
**verhaßt**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) hated, hateful, abhorrent.  
**verheimlichen**, *tr.* keep secret, conceal.  
**verheirathen** [=raten], *tr.* give in marriage. *reflex.* marry, get married.  
**verhindern**, *tr.* hinder, prevent.  
**verjagen**, *tr.* chase away, expel.  
**verlaufen**, *tr.* sell.  
**verklagen**, *tr.* accuse; complain of.  
**Verklagt** (*as noun*), the accused.  
**Verkündiger**, *m.* -rs, -r. herald, proclaimer, harbinger.

**verkürzen**, *tr.* make short, shorten.  
**verlangen**, *intr.* long, desire. *tr.* desire, require, demand. *as noun*, longing, desire, wish, demand.  
**verlassen**, *O. tr.* leave, quit; forsake, desert. *reflex.* (with **auf**) confide one's self to, trust in, rely or depend upon.  
**verleben**, *tr.* live, spend, pass.  
**verleihen**, *O. tr.* lend out, let; confer, grant.  
**verlezen**, *tr.* injure, harm, hurt, wound; hurt the feelings of.  
**verlieren**, *O. tr.* lose. **verloren**, lost, ruined.  
**Verlust**, *m.* -ts, -te. loss, detriment.  
**vermögen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* have power to, be able to, can. *as noun*, ability; property.  
**Vermuthung** [=utung], *f.* -gen. supposition, conjecture.  
**vernehmen**, *O. tr.* become sensible of, perceive; hear, understand.  
**vernünftig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) reasonable, sensible.  
**verordnen**, *tr.* order, decree; ordain.  
**Verräther** [=ter], *m.* -rs, -r. traitor, betrayer.  
**verreisen**, *intr.* *f.* go on a journey, travel off, set out.  
**versagen**, *tr.* refuse, deny.  
**versammeln**, *tr.* (and *reflex.*) assemble, collect, gather.  
**versäumen**, *tr.* forget, omit, neglect, miss.  
**verschaffen**, *tr.* procure, obtain, furnish.  
**verschallen**, *O. or N. intr.* *f.* die away. **verschollen**, vanished.  
**verschieden**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) different, various, diverse. *pl.* various, sundry.

**verschließen**, *O. tr.* shut up, close, lock up. **verschlossen**, shut, locked up; closed.

**verschmähen**, *tr.* disdain, despise.

**verschollen**, see **verschallen**.

**verschonen**, *tr.* spare, exempt.

**verschwinden**, *O. intr.* †. vanish, disappear.

**versehren**, *tr.* wound, hurt.

**versetzen**, *tr.* misplace; displace, transfer, put (into a state or condition).

**versöhnen**, *tr.* reconcile, propitiate; expiate, atone for.

**Versöhnung**, *f.* -gen. reconciliation, expiation.

**versprechen**, *O. tr.* promise. as noun, promise.

**Versprechung**, *f.* -gen. promise.

**Verstand**, *m.* -des. understanding, intelligence, intellect.

**verständlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) understanding, reasonable, judicious.

**verstecken**, *tr.* hide, conceal.

**verstehen**, *O. tr.* understand. *reflex.* (*impers.*) understand itself, be a matter of course. (*with auf*) understand, know well.

**verstellen**, *tr.* displace. *reflex.* dissemble. **verstellt**, feigned; sham.

**verstören**, *tr.* disturb, trouble, derange.

**verstreichen**, *O. tr.* spread over. *intr.* †. glide away, elapse.

**versuchen**, *tr.* attempt, try, endeavor.

**vertauschen**, *tr.* exchange, barter; mistake, confound.

**verteidigen** [-teidigen], *tr.* defend, vindicate.

**vertiefen**, *tr.* deepen. *reflex.* be lost or absorbed. **vertieft**, deeply engaged, lost, absorbed.

**Verträglichkeit**, *f.* tolerance.

**vertrauen**, *tr.* entrust, confide. *intr.* (*with dat.*) trust to, confide.

**vertraut**, trusted, trusty, familiar, intimate. **Vertrauen**, *n.* trust, confidence.

**vertreiben**, *O. tr.* drive away, expel, exile.

**verwandeln**, *tr.* change, transform, convert.

**Verwandtschaft**, *f.* -ten. relationship, kin. *collectively*, relations, kindred.

**verwechseln**, *tr.* exchange; confound.

**verwerfen**, *O. tr.* throw away, reject, repudiate.

**Verwirrung**, *f.* -gen. complication, confusion.

**verworren**, *old ppl.* entangled, confused.

**Verzeichnis** [-nis], *n.* -ßes, -ße. note, list.

**verzeihen**, *O. tr.* forgive, pardon.

**Verzeihung**, *f.* pardon, forgiveness.

**verzweifeln**, *intr.* despair.

**Verzweiflung**, *f.* despair, desperation.

**Better**, *m.* -rs, -rn. male cousin.

**viel**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) much, many.

**deutig**, *adj.* ambiguous. **fach**,

*adj.* manifold, various. **grün**,

*adj.* very green. **leicht**, *adv.* or

*conj.* perhaps, maybe. **mal**, *adj.*

many times. **mehr**, *adv.* much

more, rather, sooner.

**vier**, *num.* four. **zehn**, fourteen.

**zig**, forty.

**Viertel**, *n.* -ls, -l. quarter.

**Vogel**, *m.* -ls, -ögel. bird.

**Vöglein**, *n.* -ns, -n. little bird.

**Vogt**, *m.* -tes, -ögte. governor, prefect, etc.

**Volk**, *n.* -kes, -ölker. people, nation.

- sing. used collectively, folks, people.*
- Völkerrecht**, *n.* right of nations, international law.
- voll**, *adj. (or adv.)* full, filled; complete, whole, entire. *sep'le or insep'le prefix.* full.
- vollenden**, *tr.* bring to a close, end, complete, finish. **vollendet**, completed, finished, perfect.
- völlig**, *adj. (or adv.)* full, complete, entire.
- vollkommen**, *adj. (or adv.)* perfect, complete.
- vollständig**, *adj. (or adv.)* complete, entire, total.
- von**, *prep. (with dat.)* from, of, among, by, with; concerning, about, by; on, upon. — **selbst**, of itself.
- vor**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* before; formerly. *prep. (with dat. or accus.)* before (in place or in time), in front of, ere; in sight of; for, on account of; from, against, more than, above. *of time, ago: e. g. vor einem Jahre*, a year ago.
- vorbei**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* along by, past; past and gone, over, done with. **gehen**, *O. intr. √.* go past, pass by.
- Vorderhaus**, *n.* front part of the house.
- vorfahren**, *O. intr. √.* go or drive before or in front, drive up.
- Vorgemach**, *n.* -chß, -ächer. ante-chamber.
- Vorgeschichte**, *f.* introduction, preliminary explanation.
- vorgestern**, *adv.* day before yesterday.
- vorhaben**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* have before one or in view, intend.
- vorher**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* beforehand, before, previously.
- vorig**, *adj.* former, preceding, last.
- vorlesen**, *O. tr.* read before or for any one, read aloud; lecture.
- Vormittag**, *m.* forenoon.
- Vormund**, *m.* -des, -de. guardian.
- vornehmen**, *O. tr.* set before one's self; intend, propose; undertake.
- Vorschein**, *m.* -ns. coming to light, appearance. **zum — kommen**, come to light, appear.
- Vorschlag**, *m.* -gs, -äge. offer, proposal.
- vorsetzen**, *tr.* prefix; set over, appoint; put before (one's self) as an object, propose, intend.
- vorsingen**, *O. tr. or intr.* sing before or for one (*dat.*), sing aloud.
- vorstellen**, *tr.* put before; introduce, present; personate, represent; plead. (*with reflex. dat.*) put before one's mind, imagine, fancy.
- Vorteil** [=teil], *m.* -ls, -le. advantage, profit.
- vorüber**, *adv. and sep'le prefix.* across before or in front, along by, past; over, finished, done.
- vorüberfliegen**, *O. intr. √.* fly past, rush past.
- vormwärts**, *adv.* forward, on, in advance. **streben**, *intr.* strive onward or forward.
- wach**, *adj. (or adv.)* awake.
- wachen**, *intr.* wake, be awake; watch.
- wachsen**, *O. intr. √.* wax, grow, increase.
- wader**, *adj. (or adv.)* gallant, brave, clever.
- Waffe**, *f.* -fen. weapon.



**wagen**, *tr.* hazard, risk, dare.

**Wagen**, *m.* -ns, -n or -ägen.  
wagon, carriage; car.

**Wahl**, *f.* -len. choice, selection, election.

**wählen**, *tr.* choose, select, elect.

**wähnen**, *tr.* believe erroneously, be mistaken in believing; fancy, imagine.

**wahr**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) true, real.

**während**, *prep.* (with *gen.*) during.  
*conj.* while, whilst.

**Wahrheit**, *f.* -ten. truth.

**Wald**, *m.* -des, -älder. forest, wood.

**Wälder**, *m.* forester.

**Wand**, *f.* -ände. wall.

**wandeln**, *intr.* { or *h.* go, walk, proceed.

**wandern**, *intr.* { or *h.* wander, rove; travel.

**Wanderer**, *m.* -rs, -r. wanderer, traveller.

**Wandersmann**, *m.* wanderer, traveller (on foot).

**wanken**, *intr.* { or *h.* stagger, totter, waver, flinch.

**wann**, *adv.* (interrog.) when? at what time?

*conj.* when; at what time.

**warm**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) warm.

**Warnung**, *f.* -gen. warning, caution.

**warten**, *intr.* wait, stay, await; (with *auf*) wait for, await; wait on, serve.

**warum**, *adv.* (or *conj.*) for or on account of what or which, why, wherefore.

**was**, *pron.* interrog. or *relat.* what, that which; whatever; why, for what. *for etwas*, something, somewhat; how. — *für*, what sort of, what kind of. — *auch*, — *immer*, — *nur*, whatever. see 175-6, 179.

**Wasser**, *n.* -rs, -r. water.

**wechseln**, *tr.* or *intr.* change, exchange.

**weden**, *tr.* wake up, wake, arouse.

**weder**, *conj.* neither (with following *noch*, nor).

1. **Weg**, *m.* -ges, -ge. way, path, road, route; mode, manner, means.

2. **weg**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* away, off; gone. *interjec.* be gone, away. *nehmen*, *O.* *tr.* take away. *werfen*, *O.* *tr.* throw away.

**wegen**, *prep.* (with *gen.*) on account of, because of, for.

1. **weh**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) sad, painful.

2. **Weh**, *n.* -hes, -h -he or -hen. woe, pain, distress, grief. — *thun*, (with *dat.*) give pain to, distress.

**Weib**, *n.* -bes, -ber. woman, wife.

**weichen**, *O.* *intr.* { give way, lose ground, flinch, yield; (with *dat.*) yield to, turn out for.

**weiden**, *intr.* pasture, feed.

**weigern**, *tr.* refuse, deny, object to.

**Weihnacht**, *f.* gen'ly in *pl.* = *ten*, Christmas.

**weil**, *conj.* because, since, as.

**Wein**, *m.* -nes, -ne. wine.

**weinen**, *intr.* weep, cry.

**weinerlich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) inclined to weeping, whining.

**weise**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) wise, sage, prudent. *as noun*, wise man, sage.

**Weisheit**, *f.* wisdom, knowledge.

**weiß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) white.

**weit**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) wide, broad, large, far, far off, distant.

**weiter**, *adv.* farther, further; besides.

**welch**, *interrog.* or *relat.* *adj.* or *pron.* which, what, that. *indef. pron.* some, any.

**Welle**, *f.* -len. wave, billow.  
**Welt**, *f.* -ten. world, earth, universe, society. **besieger**, *m.* conqueror of the world. **lauf**, *m.* course of the world. **regierend**, *adj.* world-governing. **weise**, *adj.* philosophic. *as noun*, philosopher.  
**wenden**, (*reg. or irreg.*) *tr.* turn, turn about, direct, apply.  
**wenig**, *adj. (or adv.)* little, not much; few, not many. **ein** —, a little, a bit.  
**wenigstens**, *adv.* at least, at any rate.  
**wenn**, *conj.* when; *usually*, if, in case. **gleich**, although.  
**wer**, *pron. interrog. or relat.* who, he who, whoever. — **auch**, — **nur**, whoever. *see* 173, 179.  
**werden**, *O. intr.* [i. become, come to be, grow. *as auxiliary*, *see* 240.2,4, 275-77. — **zu**, (*with dat.*) turn to, become. **einem** —, fall to one's share, be given to one. *impers. with pred. adj.* begin to be or feel.  
**werfen**, *O. tr.* throw.  
**Werk**, *n.* -es, -e. work, deed, production.  
**werth** [wert], *adj. (or adv.) with gen. (of) or dat. (to)* worthy, worth; dear, beloved, deserving.  
**Werth** [wert], *m.* -thes, -the. worth, value, price.  
**Wesen**, *n.* -ns, -n. being, existence; creature, living thing.  
**Westentasche**, *f.* vest-pocket.  
**Wetter**, *n.* -rs, -r. weather; storm.  
**wichtig**, *adj. (or adv.)* weighty, important.  
**Wichtigkeit**, *f.* -ten. importance, consequence.  
**wickeln**, *tr.* wrap up, roll, envelop.  
**wider**, *adv. and sep'le or insep'le*

*prefix.* against, gain —, with —; *prep (with accus.)* against, contrary.  
**widersehen**, *reflex. (with dat.) (insep'le)* set one's self against, oppose, resist. *tr. (sep'le)* seat one's self again.  
**widerstehen**, *O. intr. (with dat.)* withstand, resist, oppose.  
**widerstreben**, *intr. (with dat.)* strive or struggle against, oppose, resist, be reluctant.  
**widmen**, *tr.* dedicate, devote. *reflex.* devote one's self.  
**widrig**, *adj. (or adv.)* contrary; repugnant, offensive, odious; cross.  
**wie**, *adv. (interrog.)* how? in what way? in what degree or measure? how!  
*conj. (relat.)* how, etc.; of manner and degree, as, like as, like; such as, as if; of time, as, when. — **auch**, — **nur**, however, howsoever.  
**wieder**, *adv. and sep'le or insep'le* *prefix.* again, anew, once more.  
**wiederbringen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* bring back or again, restore.  
**wiedergeben**, *O. tr.* give back, restore.  
**wiederholen**, *tr. (sep'le)* bring or fetch back. (*ins+p'le*) say again, repeat.  
**wiedertehren**, *intr.* [i. turn back, return.  
**wiedertommen**, *O. intr.* [i. come back again, return.  
**widersehen**, *O. tr.* see or meet again. *as noun*, meeting again. **auf** —, till we meet again! *au revoir.*  
**wiedrum**, *adv.* over again, again.  
**Wiege**, *f.* -gen. cradle.  
**wiegen**, *O. tr.* weigh; lift.

- Wien**, *n.* -ns. Vienna.
- Wiese**, *f.* -en. meadow, pasture.
- wild**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) wild, fierce, savage, unruly.
- Wille** or **Willen**, *m.* -ns, -n. will, intent, design, purpose. **um . . .**
- willen**, (with *gen.*) for the sake of, on account of.
- willkommen**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) welcome.
- Wind**, *m.* -des, -de. wind. **blattern**, *pl.* chicken-pox.
- Windung**, *f.* -gen. winding, coil.
- Winkel**, *m.* -ls, -l. corner, angle, nook.
- Winter**, *m.* -rs, -r. winter.
- wir**, *nom. pl.* of *ich*. we.
- wirken**, *tr.* work, produce, do, perform, operate.
- wirklich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) actual, real.
- Wirth** [**Wirt**], *m.* -thes, -the. host, landlord.
- wissen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* know, be aware of; with *infin.* know how. *as noun*, knowledge, learning.
- Wissenschaft**, *f.* -ten. knowledge; science.
- Wittwer** [**Witwer**], *m.* -rs, -r. widower.
- wo** *adv.* (*interrog.*) where? in what place? *conj. (relat.)* where; in which, at which, on which, *etc.* of time, at which (time), when. (for **wo** compounded with *prep.*'s. instead of **was**, **wer**, *etc.* see 173.2, 180.) **her**, *adv.* (*interrog.*) or *conj. (relat.)* whence, from whence. **hin**, *adv.* or *conj.* whither, what way. **zu**, *adv.* or *conj.* whereto, to what purpose.
- Woche**, *f.* -chen. week.
- Woge**, *f.* -gen. wave, billow.
1. **wohl**, *adv.* well, in good manner or degree; often used to make a statement less definite, indeed, perhaps, probably, I presume. *etc.* **mir ist** —, I feel well. **leben Sie** —, farewell. **bekannt**, *adj.* well known. **that**, *f.* good deed, kindness, benefit.
2. **Wohl**, *n.* -les. weal, welfare, advantage.
- wohnen**, *intr.* dwell, live, reside.
- Wohnort**, *m.* dwelling place.
- Wohnung**, *f.* -gen. dwelling, lodging, residence, house.
- Wolf**, *m.* -fes, -ölfe. wolf.
- Wolfe**, *f.* -en. cloud.
- wollen**, (*irreg.*) *tr.* will, be willing; intend, desire, wish; be on the point, be about; claim, assert. see, 251, 258, 259.
- Wonne**, *f.* -en. joy, pleasure, bliss, rapture.
- wor**, same as **wo**.
- Wort**, *n.* -tes, -te or -örter. word, term; expression, speech.
- wund**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) wounded, sore, hurt.
- Wunde**, *f.* -den. wound, hurt.
- Wunder**, *n.* -rs, -r. wonder, miracle.
- wunderbar**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) wonderful, miraculous.
- wundern**, *reflex.* wonder, be astonished or amazed.
- Wunsch**, *m.* -[ches, -ünsche. wish, desire.
- wünschen**, *tr.* wish, desire, long.
- Würde**, *f.* -en. worth; dignity, high rank or office.
- würdig**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) worthy, deserving.
- Wurze**, *f.* -en. spice.
- Wurzel**, *f.* -ln. root.
- Xenie**, *f.* -ien. xenium (name given to satirical epigrams by Goethe und Schiller).

**Zahl, f.** -len. number ; figure.

**zahlen, tr.** tell out; pay off.

**zählen, tr.** tell over, count, number.

**Zahn, m.** -nes, -ähne. tooth.

**zart, adj. (or adv.)** tender, soft, delicate ; slender, frail.

**Zartheit, f.** tenderness, softness.

**zärtlich, adj. (or adv.)** tender, fond.

**Zärtlichkeit, f.** tenderness, fondness.

**zaudern, intr.** delay, linger, hesitate.

**zehn, num.** ten.

**Zeichen, n.** -ns, -n. token, sign, mark ; signal ; miracle, wonder.

**zeigen, tr.** show, point out ; display. *reflex.* show one's self, appear.

**Zeile, f.** -len. line, row.

**Zeit, f.** -ten. time, season.

**Zeitung, f.** -gen. tidings, news ; newspaper.

**Zelt, n.** -tes, -te. tent.

**zer-** *insep'le prefix.* see 307.7.

**zerbrechen, O. intr. §.** *or tr.* break asunder or in pieces, shatter.

**zerfallen, O. intr. §.** fall to pieces, crumble, become ruined ; fall out. **zerfallen, p'ple,** decayed, ruinous ; not on good terms, at variance.

**zerfetzen, tr.** tear, mangle.

**zerreißen, O. tr.** tear in pieces, rend asunder. *intr. §.* be torn asunder.

**zerstören, tr.** destroy, ruin, demolish.

**Zerstreuung, f.** -en. scattering ; diversion, amusement ; absence of mind.

**ziehen, O. tr.** draw, pull ; attract ; extract, obtain, bring ; bring up. *reflex.* draw or move slowly, march ; stretch, extend. *intr. §.* proceed, move ; march, go on an expedition.

**Ziel, n.** -ls, -le. end, limit ; goal, aim, object.

**ziemen, intr. (with dat.)** beseem, become, suit, be fitting for.

**ziemlich, adj. (or adv.)** suitable, proper ; moderate, tolerable.

**zieren, tr.** adorn, ornament.

**Zimmer, n.** -rs, -r. room, apartment.

**Zinn, n** -nnes. tin. **Soldat, m.** tin-soldier.

**zittern, intr.** tremble, quake.

**Zorn, m.** -nes. anger, wrath.

**zornig, adj. (or adv.)** angry.

**zu, adv. and sep'le prefix.** to ; together, closed ; *with adj. or adv.* too, overmuch, in excess.

*prep. (with dat.)* to, unto ; in addition to, besides ; at, in, by ; in order to, for ; on, in ; *with preceding. dat.,* toward. *as sign of infin.,* to, in order to.

**zubereiten, tr.** prepare, make ready.

**zubringen, (irreg.) tr. with accus. and dat.** bring to, offer, present ; *with accus. only,* pass (time), spend.

**Zucht, f.** -ten. training, discipline.

**zuden, intr. h or §.** move with a quick motion, throb, quiver, flash. *tr.* shrink, shrug.

**Zuder, m.** -rs, -r. sugar. **Süß, n.** sweetmeats, confectionary, candy.

**zuerst, adv.** at first.

**zufahren, O. intr. §.** *(with dat.)* drive or ride to, come in, approach.

**zuflüstern, tr.** whisper.

**zufrieden, adj. (or adv.)** at peace, content, pleased.

**Zug, m.** -ges, -üge. drawing, pull ; impulse ; draught, breath ; expedition.

**zugänglich**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) accessible, affable.

**zugehen**, *O. intr.* *ſ.* (with *dat.*) go to, approach; go on, proceed, happen, come to pass.

**Zügel**, *m.* -ls, -l. rein, bridle.

**zugleich**, *adv.* at the same time.

**zugreifen**, *O. intr.* (with *dat.*) take hold of, seize; lay hold, fall to.

**Zukunft**, *f.* time to come, future.

**zumachen**, *tr.* make to, shut, fasten.

**Zunge**, *f.* -gen. tongue; language, speech.

**zureden**, *intr.* (with *dat.*) address; exhort, urge; try to console or pacify.

**zurück**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* backward, back; behindhand, in the rear.

**zurückbleiben**, *O. intr.* *ſ.* remain behind.

**zurückgewinnen**, *O. tr.* win back again.

**zurückkehren**, *intr.* *ſ.* turn back, return.

**zurückkommen**, *O. intr.* *ſ.* come back, return.

**zurückschicken**, *tr.* send back.

**zurücksein**, *O. intr.* *ſ.* be behind hand or back.

**zurückverlangen**, *tr.* demand back.

**zurückweisen**, *O. tr.* send back, reject.

**zurückziehen**, *O. tr.* draw back, withdraw. *reflex.* move back, retreat, withdraw.

**zusammen**, *adv.* and *sep'le prefix.* together, in company, jointly.

**zusammenschmelzen**, *O. intr.* *ſ.* melt together, run together, dwindle away.

**zusammenstürzen**, *intr.* *ſ.* tumble together, collapse, fall in.

**zutrauen**, *tr.* (with *dat.*) entrust to, confide in. *as noun*, trust, confidence.

**zuvor**, *adv.* before, formerly.

**zuweilen**, *adv.* at times, occasionally.

**Zwang**, *m.* -ges, -änge. compulsion, coercion, force.

**zwanzig**, *num.* twenty.

**zwar**, *adv.* or *conj.* to be sure, indeed.

**Zweck**, *m.* -des, -de. aim, end, design, purpose.

**zwei**, *num.* two. *=mal*, twice.

**zweifelloß**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) doubtless.

**zweifeln**, *intr.* doubt.

**Zweig**, *m.* -ges, -ge. twig, branch

**zwingen**, *O. tr.* force, compel.

**zwölf**, *num.* twelve.

## II. ENGLISH-GERMAN VOCABULARY.

- a, an**, *indef. art.* ein, eine.  
**able**, *adj.* fähig.  
**able: to be** —, können (*irreg.*): see 254.  
**about**, *prep.* um (*accus.*), über (*accus. or dat.*). *adv.* herum, umher; ungefähr. **round about**, um . . . herum.  
**above**, *adv.* oben. *prep.* über.  
**abstain**, *intr.* sich enthalten *O.* (from, *dat.*).  
**accept**, *tr.* annehmen *O. tr.*  
**accompany**, *tr.* begleiten.  
**accordingly**, *adv.* also.  
**account: on — of**, *prep.* wegen (*gen.*), vor.  
**accuse**, *tr.* anklagen (*of, gen.*).  
**accustom**, *tr.* gewöhnen (*to, an*).  
**accustomed**, *adj.* gewohnt (*governing accus. with sein*).  
**acquainted: be — with**, kennen (*irreg.*) *tr. become — with*, kennen lernen.  
**acre**, Acker, *m.* -rs, Äcker.  
**act: — as if**, thun als *O.*  
**activity**, Thätigkeit, *f.*  
**admire**, *tr.* bewundern.  
**advantage**, Vortheil [=teil], *m.* -ls, -le.  
**advice**, Rath [Rat], *m.* -thes, -äthe.  
**advise**, *tr.* raten [raten] *O. intr.* (*dat.*).  
**affair**, Sache, *f.* -chen; Geschäft, *n.* -ts, -te.  
**afraid: be** —, sich fürchten (*of, vor*).  
**after**, *prep.* nach (*dat.*). **one . . . another**, nacheinander. *adv. and conj.* nachdem.  
**afternoon**, Nachmittag, *m.* -gs, -ge.  
**afterwards**, *adv.* nachher, darauf, darnach.  
**again**, *adv.* wieder, noch einmal.  
**come —**, wiederkommen *O. intr.* §.  
**age**, Alter, *n.* -rs, -r.  
**alas**, *interj.* weh! ach!  
**alive**, *adj.* lebendig.  
**all**, *adj.* all (see 193), ganz.  
**allow**, *tr.* erlauben. *intr.* (*dat.*) lassen *O. be — ed*, dürfen: see 253.  
**alone**, *adj. or adv.* allein. **all —**, ganz allein.  
**along**, *prep.* entlang (*gen.*).  
**already**, *adv.* schon, bereits.  
**also**, *adv.* auch, noch.  
**although**, *conj.* obgleich, obgleich.  
**always**, *adv.* immer, stets.  
**America**, Amerika, *n.* -as.  
**American**, Amerikaner, *m.* -rs, -r; Amerikanerin, *f.* -innen.  
**American**, *adj.* amerikanisch.  
**among**, *prep.* unter (*dat. or accus.*).  
**amuse**, *tr.* amüsiren. **be - d**, sich amüsiren.  
**amusement**, Vergnügen, *n.* -ns, -n.  
**amusing**, *adj.* amüſant.  
**an**, see a.

- and**, *conj.* und.  
**angry**, *adj.* zornig.  
**animal**, Thier [Tier], *n.* -res, -re.  
**another**, *adj.* ein ander, noch ein: see 198.3c.  
**answer**, *tr. and intr.* antworten (*dat.*).  
**answer**, Antwort, *f.* -ten.  
**antechamber**, Vorgemach, *n.* -ches, -ächer.  
**any**, *adj.* irgend ein. **not** —, kein: see 195.2. — **one**, Jeder, Jedermann. — **thing**, Etwas, was, alles. **not** — **thing**, Nichts.  
**appear**, *intr.* erscheinen O., aus-  
sehen O., scheinen O.  
**appearance**, Ansehen, *n.* -ns, -n.  
**apple**, Apfel, *m.* -ls, Äpfel.  
**April**, April, *m.* -ls.  
**arm**, Arm, *m.* -mes, -me. **-chair**,  
Rheinstuhl, *m.*  
**army**, Heer, *n.* -res, -re.  
**around**, *prep.* um (*accus.*), um...  
herum.  
**arrive**, *intr.* ankommen O. f.  
**art**, Kunst, *f.* -ünste. **-school**,  
Kunstschule, *f.*  
**artist**, Künstler, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**as**, *ad.* als, wie; so. **as if**, als ob.  
**as soon as**, sobald.  
**ashamed**: **be** —, sich schämen.  
**ask**, *tr.* fragen. — **after**, sich er-  
kundigen nach.  
**asleep**, *adv.* im Schlafe. **be** —,  
schlafen.  
**assemble**, *tr.* versammeln, sam-  
meln. *intr.* sich versammeln.  
**at**, *prep.* an, zu, bei, um. — **home**,  
zu Hause. — **twelve o'clock**, um  
zwölf Uhr. — **an end**, zu Ende.  
— **all**, ganz und gar. **not** — **all**,  
gar nicht. — **least**, wenigstens.  
**August**, August, *m.* -ts.  
**aunt**, Tante, *f.* -ten.
- author**, Verfasser, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**autumn**, Herbst, *m.* -tes, -te.  
**avenge**, *tr.* rächen.  
**await**, *tr.* erwarten, warten auf.  
**awake**, *tr.* wecken. *intr.* erwachen,  
aufwachen.  
**away**, *adj.* weg, fort. **be** —, fort  
sein.  
**back**, *adj.* hinter. *adv.* zurück;  
rückwärts.  
**bad**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) schlecht, böse.  
— **fortune**, Unglück, *n.*  
**bag**, Beutel, *n.* -ls, -l.  
**bake**, *tr.* backen O., braten O.  
**baptize**, *tr.* taufen.  
**bar-room**, Schenkstube, *f.* -ben.  
**be**, *intr.* sein O. f., werden O. f.,  
bleiben, O. f. **be** (as to health),  
sich befinden O. **there are**, etc.  
es gibt, etc.  
**bear**, *tr.* tragen O., ertragen O.  
**beautiful**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) schön.  
**beauty**, Schönheit, *f.* -ten.  
**because**, *conj.* weil.  
**become**, *intr.* werden O. f.  
**bed**, Bett, *n.* -ttes, -tte or -tten.  
**to** —, zu Bette, ins Bett.  
**beer**, Bier, *n.* -res, -re.  
**before**, *prep.* vor (*accus. or dat.*).  
*conj.* bevor, ehe. *adv.* vorher.  
**beg**, *tr.* bitten O., betteln. **go beg-**  
**ging**, betteln gehen.  
**begin**, *intr.* anfangen O.  
**beginning**, Anfang, *m.* -gs, -änge.  
**behind**, *prep.* hinter (*accus. or*  
*dat.*).  
**behold**, *tr.* erblicken.  
**belief**, Glaube, *m.* -ens, -en.  
**believe**, *tr.* glauben.  
**belong**, *intr.* gehören, angehören  
(*to, dat.*).  
**bench**, Bank, *f.* -änke.  
**beseem**, *impers.* ziemen (*dat.*), sich  
ziemen.

**beside**, *prep.* neben (*accus. or dat.*).  
*adv.* auch.

**best**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) best.

**betake one's self**, sich begeben *O.*

**betray**, Verräther [-ter], *m.* -rs, -r.

**better**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) besser.

**better**, *tr.* verbessern.

**bid**, *tr.* heißen *O.*, befehlen *O.* (*dat.*).

**big**, *adj.* groß, dick, hoch.

**bind**, *tr.* binden *O.*

**bird**, Vogel, *m.* -ls, -ögel. **little** —, Vöglein, *n.* -ns, -n.

**birthday**, Geburtstag, *m.*

**bit**, Stück, *n.* -ds, -de; Bischen, *n.* -ns, -n.

**bite**, *tr.* beißen *O.*

**bitter**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) bitter, grimmig.

**black**, *adj.* schwarz.

**blame**, *tr.* tadeln.

**bless**, *tr.* segnen.

**blood**, Blut, *n.* -tes.

**blossom**, Blüthe [Blüte], *f.* -then.

**blue**, *adj.* blau.

**book**, Buch, *n.* -ches, -ücher.

**born**, geboren.

**both**, *adj.* beide, alle beide.

**bottle**, Flasche, *f.* -schen.

**boy**, Knabe, *m.* -en, -en.

**brave**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) tapfer.

**bread**, Brod, *n.* -des.

**break**, *tr.* brechen *O.* *intr.* ver-  
brechen, zerbrechen *O.* — **open**,  
erbrechen *O.*

**breakfast**, Frühstück, *n.* -ds, -de.

**breakfast**, *intr.* frühstücken.

**bribe**, *tr.* bestechen *O.*

**bridge**, Brücke, *f.* -den.

**bright**, *adj.* hell.

**bring**, *tr.* bringen (*irreg.*). — **back**,  
wiederbringen *O.*, wiederholen.

**broad**, *adj.* breit.

**brook**, Bach, *m.* -ches, -äche;  
Brünnlein, *n.* -ns, -n.

**brother**, Bruder, *m.* -rs, -über.

**building**, Gebäude, *n.* -des, -de.

**burn**, *tr.* brennen (*irreg.*). *intr.* ver-  
brennen (*irreg.*).

**business**, Geschäft, *n.* -ts, -te.

**busy**, *adj.* beschäftigt. **be** — **or**  
**busied**, sich beschäftigen.

**but**, *conj.* aber, sondern, allein, doch.  
**nothing** —, nichts als.

**buy**, *tr.* kaufen.

**by**, *prep.* bei, neben. *after passive*,  
durch, vor. **longer** — **three feet**,  
um drei Fuß länger, etc.

**call**, *tr.* rufen *O.*, nennen (*irreg.*),  
heißen *O.* — **away**, abrufen. **be**  
**called**, heißen.

**camp**, Lager, *n.* -rs, -r.

**can**, (*irreg.*) können: see 254.

**carpet**, Tapete, *f.* -ten.

**carriage**, Wagen, *m.* -ns, -ägen *or*  
-n.

**carry**, *tr.* tragen *O.*

**cast down**, *tr.* stürzen.

**castle**, Schloß, *n.* -sses, -össer.

**cathedral**, Dom, *m.* -mes, -me.

**catch**, *tr.* fangen *O.* — **cold**, sich  
erkälten.

**cause**, *intr.* lassen: see 243.I.5b.

**cease**, *intr.* aufhören.

**certainly**, *ad.* gewiß.

**change**, *tr.* ändern, verändern. *intr.*  
sich verändern.

**charitable**, *adj.* barmherzig.

**charity**, Barmherzigkeit, *f.*; Wohl-  
thätigkeit, *f.*

**Charles**, Karl, *m.* -ls.

**charming**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) reizend,  
allerliebste.

**chat**, *intr.* plaudern.

**cheap**, *adj.* billig.

**cherish**, *tr.* schätzen.

**child**, Kind, *n.* -des, -der.

**chilly**: **be** —, frösteln, *impers. with*  
*dat.*



**choose**, *tr.* wählen.

**Christian**, Christ, *m.* -ten, -ten;  
Christin, *f.* -innen.

**church**, Kirche, *f.* -chen.

**city**, Stadt, *f.* -ädte.

**claim, make** — **to**, wollen: *see* 258.

**clever**, *adj.* klug.

**climb**, *tr.* steigen *O.*, hinaufsteigen.

**cloister**, Kloster, *n.* -rs, -öster.

**clothes, clothing**, Kleider, *pl.*

**cloud**, Wolke, *f.* -en.

**coachman**, Kutscher, *m.* -rs, -r.

**coat**, Rock, *m.* -des, -öde.

**coffee**, Kaffee, *m.* -ees.

**cold**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) kalt. **catch** —, sich erkälten.

**Cologne** (the city), Köln, *n.* -ns.

**colored**, *adj.* bunt.

**come**, *intr.* kommen *O.* *f.* — **back**, zurückkommen, zurückkehren. — **forth**, hervorkommen. — **to one's help**, einem zu Hülfe kommen. — **out**, hinauskommen.

**comfort**, *tr.* trösten.

**command**, *tr.* heißen, befehlen (*dat.*) *O.*, gebieten (*dat.*) *O.*

**command**, Befehl, *m.* -ls, -le.

**commit**, *tr.* begehen *O.*

**communicate**, *tr.* mittheilen [-teilen] (*to, dat.*).

**companion**, Gefährte, *m.* -en.

**company**, Gesellschaft, *f.* -ten.

**complain**, *intr.* klagen.

**complete**, *tr.* vollenden.

**complete**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) völlig, vollendet.

**comrade**, Kamerad, *m.* -den, -den;  
Gesell, *m.* -en, -en.

**concern one's self**, sich bekümmern.

**concerning**, *prep.* wegen (*gen.*).

**condemn**, *tr.* verdammen.

**confidence**, Vertrauen, *n.* -ns.

**conquer**, *tr.* erobern.

**consider**, *tr.* betrachten. — **as**, halten für *O.*

**console**, *tr.* trösten.

**contain**, *tr.* enthalten *O.*

**contemplate**, *tr.* betrachten.

**content**, *adj.* zufrieden.

**content one's self**, sich begnügen.

**cook**, *tr.* kochen.

**cool**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) kühl.

**copy**, *tr.* abschreiben *O.*

**corner**, Ecke, *f.* -den.

**cost**, *tr.* kosten.

**costly**, *adj.* köstlich, kostbar.

**count** (earl), Graf, *m.* -fen, -fen.

**countess**, Gräfin, *f.* -innen.

**country**, Land, *n.* -des, -änder.  
**native** —, Vaterland, *n.*

**couple**, Paar, *n.* -res, -re.

**courage**, Muth [Mut], *m.* -thes;  
Tapferkeit, *f.*

**cousin**, Vetter, *m.* -rs, -rn; Cousine, *f.* -nen.

**coward**, Feigling, *m.* -gs, -ge.

**create**, schaffen *O.*

**crime**, Verbrechen, *n.* -ns, -n.

**criminal**, Verbrecher, *m.* -rs, -r.

**crowd**, Gedränge, *n.* -es, -e;  
Menge, *f.* -gen; Schaar, *f.* -ren.

**crown**, Krone, *f.* -nen.

**cup**, Tasse, *f.* -ffen; Becher, *m.* -rs, -r.

**curse**, *tr.* fluchen *intr.* (*with dat. or auf*).

**cut**, *tr.* schneiden *O.* — **off**, abschlagen *O.*, abschneiden *O.*

**dance**, *intr.* tanzen.

**danger**, Gefahr, *f.* -ren.

**dangerous**, *adj.* gefährlich.

**dare**, *intr.* sich wagen; dürfen: *see* 253.

**dark**, *adj.* dunkel.

**daughter**, Tochter, *f.* -öchter.

**day**, Tag, *m.* -ges, -ge.

**dead**, *adj.* todt [tot].  
**dear**, *adj.* lieb, werth [wert], theuer [teuer].  
**death**, Tod, *m.* -des, -de.  
**debate**, *intr.* debattieren, sich streiten *O.*  
**deceive**, *tr.* betrügen *O.*  
**December**, December, *m.* -rs.  
**declare**, *tr.* erklären.  
**deed**, That, *f.* -ten.  
**delight**: **it delights me**, es freut mich.  
**deep**, *adj.* tief.  
**deliver**, *tr.* abliefern.  
**demand**, *tr.* verlangen.  
**deny**, *tr.* versagen.  
**descend**, *tr. (or intr.)* herab- *or* hinuntersteigen *O.*  
**describe**, *tr.* beschreiben *O.*  
**description**, Beschreibung, *f.* -gen.  
**desert**, *tr.* verlassen *O.*  
**deserve**, *tr.* verdienen. **-ing**, verdient.  
**devote one's self**, sich widmen.  
**die**, *intr.* sterben *O.* *f.*  
**difficult**, *adj.* schwer.  
**diligent**, *adj. (adv. -ly)* fleißig.  
**dinner**, Mittagessen, *n.* -ns, -n.  
**direct**, *adj. (adv. -ly)* direct, geraden Wegs.  
**disappear**, *intr.* verschwinden *O.*  
**discovery**, Erfindung, *f.* -gen; Entdeckung, *f.* -gen.  
**distant**, *adj.* entfernt, fern, weit.  
**divine**, *adj.* göttlich.  
**do**, *tr. (or intr.)* thun *O.*, machen.  
 — **without**, entbehren. **how — you** — ? wie geht es Ihnen?  
**doctor**, Arzt, *m.* -tes, Aerzte; Doctor, *m.* -rs, -ren.  
**dog**, Hund, *m.* -des, -de.  
**door**, Thür, *f.* -ren.  
**down**, *adv.* herunter, hinunter, herab, hinab: see 362.3, 379.1.

**draw near**, *intr.* sich nähern (to, *dat.*).  
**dream**, Traum, *m.* -mes, -äume.  
**dream**, *intr. (or tr.)* träumen.  
**dress**, Kleid, *n.* -des, -der.  
**dress**, *tr.* kleiden. *intr.* sich anziehen *O.*  
**drink**, *tr.* trinken *O.*  
**drive**, *tr. (or intr.)* fahren *O.*, führen. — (for pleasure), spazieren fahren. — **by or past**, vorbei fahren (an). — **out**, *tr.* verjagen. — **up**, vorfahren.  
**duke**, Herzog, *m.* -ges, -ge *or* -öge.  
**during**, *prep.* während (*gen.*).  
**duty**, Pflicht, *f.* -ten.  
**dwell**, *intr.* wohnen.  
**dwelling**, Wohnung, *f.* -gen.  
**each**, *pron. adj.* jeder, ein jeder. — **one**, jeder: see 190. — **other**, einander; sich, uns, *etc.*: see 155.4.  
**eager**, *adj. (adv. -ly)* eifrig.  
**ear**, Ohr, *n.* -res, -ren. **-ring**, Ohrring, *m.*  
**early**, *adj.* früh.  
**earn**, *tr.* gewinnen *O.*  
**earnestness**, Ernst, *m.* -stes.  
**earth**, Erde, *f.* -den.  
**easy**, *adj. (adv. -ly)* leicht.  
**eat**, *tr.* essen *O.*, speisen *intr.*  
**education**, Erziehung, *f.*  
**either**, *conj.* weder, entweder.  
**either . . . or . . .**, entweder . . . oder . . .  
**emperor**, Kaiser, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**employment**, Beschäftigung, *f.* -gen.  
**empty**, *adj.* öde, leer.  
**end**, Ende, *n.* -es, -n. **at an** — , zu Ende.  
**endeavor**, *intr.* sich bestreben, versuchen.

**endeavor**, Bestreben, *n.* -ns.  
**enemy**, Feind, *m.* -des, -de.  
**England**, England, *n.* -ds.  
**English**, *adj.* englisch.  
**Englishman**, Engländer, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**enjoy**, *tr.* sich freuen (*gen.*), genießen *O.* (*gen.*), froh werden (*gen.*).  
**enough**, *adv.* genug.  
**entice**, *tr.* locken, anlocken.  
**entire**, *adj.* ganz. (*adv.* -ly) ganz und gar, völlig.  
**especially**, *adv.* besonders.  
**estate**, Gut, *n.* -tes, -üter; Landgut, *n.*  
**eternal**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) ewig.  
**even**, *adv.* selbst, auch. — **if**, selbst wenn, auch wenn, obgleich.  
**evening**, Abend, *m.* -ds, -de.  
**every**, jeder (190). **every one**, ein jeder, alle, alles (193), Jeder-mann (187). **everything**, alles (193). **everywhere**, *adv.* überall.  
**evil**, *adj.* böse.  
**evil**, das Böse, Bosheit, *f.* -ten.  
**example**, Beispiel, *n.* -ls, -le. **for** —, zum Beispiel.  
**exchange**, *tr.* vertauschen.  
**excuse**, *tr.* entschuldigen.  
**expect**, *tr.* erwarten.  
**expedition**, Zug, *m.* -ges, -üge.  
**experience**, *tr.* erleben.  
**explain**, *tr.* erklären. — **one's self to anyone**, einem Rede stehen *P.*  
**eye**, Auge, *n.* -s, -n.  
**face**, Gesicht, *n.* -ts, -ter.  
**fall**, *intr.* fallen *O.* — **together**, zusammenstürzen.  
**family**, Familie, *f.* -ien.  
**famous**, *adj.* berühmt.

**far**, *adj.* (or *adv.*) weit. **not** —, unweit. **not** — **from**, *prep.* unweit (*gen.*).  
**fate**, Schicksal, *n.* -ls, -le.  
**father**, Vater, *m.* -rs, -äter. — **land**, Vaterland, *n.*  
**fault**, Fehler, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**fear**, Furcht, *f.*  
**fear**, *tr.* fürchten, sich fürchten (*vor*).  
**fearful**, *adj.* furchtbar.  
**February**, Februar, *m.* -rs.  
**feel**, *intr.* sich fühlen, sich befinden *O.*, sein (*with dat.*): see 292.4.  
**feeling**, Gefühl, *n.* -les, -le.  
**fellow-citizen**, Mitbürger, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**fetch**, *tr.* holen.  
**few**, *adj.* wenig, wenige. **a** —, einige (*pl.*), nicht viele.  
**field**, Feld, *n.* -des, -der.  
**fight**, *intr.* kämpfen.  
**find**, *tr.* finden *O.*  
**fine**, *adj.* fein; schön.  
**finger**, Finger, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**finish**, *tr.* vollenden.  
**finished**, *adj.* fertig, vollendet.  
**fire**, Feuer, *n.* -rs, -r.  
**first**, *adj.* erst. *adv.* erst, zuerst.  
**flame**, Flamme, *f.* -men.  
**Florence**, Florenz, *n.*  
**flower**, Blume, *f.* -men.  
**follow**, *tr.* folgen (*dat.*).  
**following**, *adj.* folgend.  
**fool**, Thor, *m.* -res, -ren.  
**foolish**, *adj.* dumm.  
**foot**, Fuß, *m.* -sses, -üsse.  
**for**, *conj.* denn. *prep.* für (*accus.*), zu (*dat.*), seit (*dat.*), vor (*dat.* or *accus.*).  
**forbid**, *tr.* verbieten *O.*  
**force**, *tr.* zwingen *O.*  
**foreign**, *adj.* fremd. — **land**, die Fremde.  
**forest**, Wald, *m.* -des, -älder.

**forever**, *adv.* auf ewig.  
**forget**, *tr.* vergessen *O.*  
**forgive**, *tr.* vergeben *O.*  
**former**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) früher.  
**fortune**, Glück, *n.* -des, -de.  
**forward**, *adv.* vorwärts.  
**four**, *num.* vier.  
**France**, Frankreich, *n.* -ds.  
**Frederick**, Friedrich, *m.* -ds.  
**free**, *tr.* befreien.  
**free**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) frei.  
     — **thought**, Gedankenfreiheit, *f.*  
**freedom**, Freiheit, *f.*  
**French**, *adj.* französisch. — **man**,  
     Franzose, *m.* -sen, -sen.  
     — **woman**, Französin, *f.* -innen.  
**fresh**, *adj.* frisch.  
**friend**, Freund, *m.* -des, -de.  
**friendly**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) freundlich.  
**friendship**, Freundschaft, *f.* -ten.  
**fright**, Schreck, *m.* -des, -de.  
**frightened**: **be** —, erschrecken, sich  
     erschrecken (über).  
**from**, *prep.* von, aus (*dat.*); *dat.*  
     *cas*: see 222.I,3.  
**fruit**, Frucht, *f.* -üchte.  
**frustrate**, *tr.* vereiteln.  
**full**, *adj.* voll (*of, gen.*).  
**furnish**, *tr.* meublieren.  
**further**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) weiter.

**game**, Spiel, *n.* -les, -le.  
**garden**, Garten, *m.* -ns, -ärten.  
**gardener**, Gärtner, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**gay**, *adj.* froh; (*in color*) bunt.  
**general**, General, *m.* -ls, -äle.  
**genius**, Genie, *n.* -ies, -ies.  
**gentleman**, Herr, *m.* -rrn, -rrn.  
**German**, *adj.* deutsch. *noun*, der  
     Deutsche, *etc.*  
**Germany**, Deutschland, *n.* -ds.  
**get**, *tr.* holen, verschaffen. **away**,  
     sich losmachen (von). — **up**, auf-  
     stehen *O.*  
**gift**, Gabe, *f.* -ben.

**girl**, Mädchen, *n.* -ns, -n.  
**give**, *tr.* schenken, geben *O.* — **one's**  
     **hand**, die Hand reichen. — **up**,  
     *tr.* entsagen *O.* (*dat.*), aufgeben *O.*  
**glad**, *adj.* glücklich. **be** —, sich  
     freuen.  
**glance**, *intr.* blicken.  
**glass**, Glas, *n.* -ses, -äser.  
**go**, *intr.* gehen *O.* — **along or**  
     **too**, mitgehen. — **away**, fort-  
     gehen, abreisen. — **out**, aus-  
     gehen, hinausgehen.  
**God**, Gott, *m.* -ttes, -ötter.  
**godlike**, *adj.* göttlich.  
**gold**, Gold, *n.* -des. — **piece**,  
     Goldstück, *n.*  
**golden**, *adj.* golden.  
**good**, *adj.* gut. **a** — **deal**, viel.  
     — **fortune**, Glück, *n.* -des.  
**government**, Regierung, *f.* -gen.  
**gracious**, *adj.* gnädig.  
**great**, *adj.* groß, hoch.  
**green**, *adj.* grün.  
**grim**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) grimmig.  
**grow**, *intr.* wachsen *O.*; werden *O.*  
**guardian**, Vormund, *m.* -des, -de.  
**guest**, Gast, *m.* -tes, -äste.  
**guilty**, *adj.* schuldig.

**hair**, Haar, *n.* -res, -re.  
**half**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) halb. — **an**  
     **hour**, eine halbe Stunde.  
**hall**, Saal, *m.* -les, -äle.  
**hand**, Hand, *f.* -ände. **on the**  
     **other** —, *adv.* dagegen.  
**handsome**, *adj.* schön.  
**hang**, *tr. or intr.* hängen.  
**happiness**, Glück, *n.* -des.  
**happy**, *adj.* glücklich.  
**hard**, *adj.* hart, schwer.  
**hardly**, *adv.* kaum.  
**hasty**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) hastig, eilig.  
**hat**, Hut, *m.* -tes, -üte.  
**hate**, *tr.* hassen.  
**hateful**, *adj.* (*or adv.*) gehässig.

**hatred**, Haß, *m.* -ßes.  
**have**, *tr.* haben (*irreg.*). **have to**,  
 müssen: *see* 256. **have** (a thing  
 done), lassen: *see* 343. I, 5b, d.  
**he**, *pers. pron.* er; derjenige, der.  
 — **who**, wer.  
**head**, Kopf, *m.* -fes, -öpfe;  
 Spitze, *f.* -gen.  
**health**, Gesundheit, *f.*  
**healthy**, *adj.* gesund.  
**hear**, *tr.* hören.  
**heed**, *tr.* achten (*gen.*). **take** —, sich  
 hüten.  
**heir**, Erbe, *m.* -ben, -ben.  
**help**, *tr.* helfen *O.* (*dat.*), zu Hülfe  
 kommen (*dat.*).  
**help**, Hülfe, *f.*  
**helpful**, *adj.* hilffreich.  
**Henry**, Heinrich, *m.* -chs.  
**her**, *pers. pron.* sie. *poss. pron.*  
 ihr, der ihrige.  
**hero**, Held, *m.* -den, -den.  
**heroine**, Heldin, *f.* -innen.  
**hide**, *tr.* verbergen *O.*  
**high**, *adj.* hoch (*höher etc.*).  
**him**, ihn. — **self**, selbst.  
**hinder**, *tr.* hindern.  
**hire**, *tr.* miethen [*mieten*].  
**his**, *poss. pron.* sein, der seinige.  
**history**, Geschichte, *f.* -ten.  
**hold**, *tr.* halten *O.*  
**home**, Heimat [=mat], *f.* -en. **at**  
 —, zu Hause.  
**honor**, Ehre, *f.* -ren.  
**honor**, *tr.* ehren.  
**honorable**, *adj.* ehrlich, ehren=  
 haft.  
**hope**, *intr.* hoffen.  
**hope**, Hoffnung, *f.* -gen.  
**horrorstruck**: **be** —, grauen (*im=  
 pers. with dat.*).  
**horse**, Pferd, *n.* -des, -de.  
**hot**, *adj.* heiß.  
**hour**, Stunde, *f.* -den.  
**house**, Haus, *n.* -fes, -äuser.

**how**, *adv.* wie. — **ever**, *adv.* wie  
 auch; doch.  
**humanity**, Menschheit, *f.*  
**hundred**, *num.* hundert.  
**hunger**, Hunger, *m.* -rs.  
**hungry**: **be** —, hungern (*impers.*  
*with accus.*).  
**hunt**, *tr.* jagen.  
**hunt**, Jagd, *f.* -den.  
**hunter**, Jäger, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**hurry**, *intr.* eilen.  
**hurry**, Eile, *f.*  
**husband**, Mann, *m.* -nes, -änner;  
 Gatte, *m.* -en, -en.  
**hut**, Hütte, *f.* -ten.

**I**, *pers. pron.* ich.  
**idea**, Begriff, *m.* -ffs, -ffe.  
**idle**, *adj.* träge, faul.  
**if**, *conj.* wenn. **as** —, als ob.  
**ill**, *adj.* krank.  
**illness**, Krankheit, *f.* -ten.  
**imitate**, *tr.* nachahmen (*dat.*).  
**important**, *adj.* wichtig.  
**impossible**, *adj.* unmöglich.  
**imprisoned**, *adj.* gefangen.  
**improve**, *tr.* verbessern, bessern.  
**in**, *prep.* in (*dat. or accus.*): *see*  
 376.  
**inclined**, *adj.* geneigt.  
**incredible**, *adj.* unglaublich.  
**indifference**, Gleichgültigkeit, *f.*  
**indifferent**, *adj.* gleichgültig, einer=  
 lei (*indeclinable*).  
**indispensable**, *adj.* unentbehrlich.  
**industrious**, *adj.* fleißig.  
**industry**, Thätigkeit, *f.*  
**inexperience**, Unerfahrenheit, *f.*  
**inherit**, *tr.* erben.  
**injure**, *tr.* schaden (*dat.*), verletzen.  
**instead of**, *prep.* anstatt, statt  
 (*gen. or infin. with zu*).  
**intend**, *intr.* vorhaben; sich (*dat.*)  
 vornehmen, beabsichtigen.  
**interesting**, *adj.* interessant.

**into**, *prep.* in (*accus.*): see 376.  
**invitation**, Einladung, *f.* -gen.  
**invite**, *tr.* einladen *O.*  
**it**, *pers. pron.* es; das, dasjenige.  
**Italy**, Italien, *n.* -iens.

**January**, Januar, *m.* -rs.  
**jew**, Jude, *m.* -den, -den.  
**journey**, Reise, *f.* -sen.  
**journey**, *intr.* reisen. — **away**,  
 abreisen.  
**joy**, Freude, *f.* -den.  
**judge**, Richter, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**judgment-seat**, Richterstuhl, *m.*  
**July**, Juli, *m.* -lis.  
**June**, Juni, *m.* -nis.  
**just**, *adj.* billig.

**keep**, *tr.* behalten *O.*, erhalten *O.*  
 — **from**, sich enthalten.

**keeper**, Hüter, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**kill**, *tr.* tödten [töten].  
**kind**, *adj.* freundlich.  
**kind**, Art, *f.* -ten. **what** — **of**,  
 was für: see 175.  
**kindness**, Wohlthat, *f.* -ten.  
**king**, König, *m.* -gs, -ge.  
**knee**, Knie, *n.* -es, -e.  
**kneel**, *intr.* knien.  
**knife**, Messer, *n.* -rs, -r.  
**knock**, *intr.* klopfen, pochen.  
**know**, *tr.* wissen (*irreg.*), kennen  
 (*irreg.*), erkennen.  
**known**, *adj.* bekannt.

**lack**: **there is a** — **of**, es fehlt  
 (ihm) an.

**lady**, Dame, *f.* -men.  
**lament**, *tr.* beweinen.  
**lamp**, Lampe, *f.* -pen.  
**land**, Land, *n.* -des, -änder.  
**landlord**, Wirth [Wirt], *m.* -thes,  
 -the.  
**large**, *adj.* groß.  
**last**, *adj.* lezt.

**last**, *intr.* dauern.  
**late**, *adj. or adv.* spät.  
**laugh**, *intr.* lachen.  
**laughable**, *adv.* lächerlich.  
**law**, Gesetz, *n.* -tes, -te.  
**lay**, *tr.* legen.  
**lazy**, *adj.* faul, träge.  
**lead**, *tr.* führen. — **back**, zurück-  
 ziehen *O.* — **out**, hinaus-  
 führen.

**learn**, *tr.* lernen.  
**learned**, *adj.* gelehrt.  
**least**: **at**, *adv.* wenigstens, am  
 wenigsten.

**leave**, *tr.* verlassen; lassen *O.*  
**left**, *adj.* linf.

**less**, *adj. or adv.* minder, weniger.

**letter**, Brief, *m.* -tes, -te.

**library**, Bibliothek, *f.* -ten.

**lie**, *intr.* liegen *O.*

**life**, Leben, *n.* -ns, -n.

**lift**, *tr.* heben *O.* — **up**, er-  
 heben *O.*

**light**, Licht, *n.* -tes, -ter.

**light**, *tr.* anzünden, anstecken.

**like**, *adj.* gleich.

**like**: **be like**, gleichen *O.* (*dat.*).

**like**, *tr. (or intr.)* lieben, mögen  
 (*irreg.*: see 255), gern haben. **I**  
 — **it**, es gefällt mir.

**listen**, *intr.* hórchen, zuhören, an-  
 hören.

**little**, *adj.* klein, wenig.

**live**, *intr.* leben; wohnen.

**lonely**, *adj.* einsam.

**long**, *adj.* lang. *adv.* lange, längst.  
 — **ago**, längst. **as** — **as**, so-  
 lange.

**look**, *tr. (or intr.)* sehen *O.*, blicken,  
 ansehen. — **down**, hinunter-  
 blicken, hinuntersehen.

**lose**, *tr.* verlieren *O.*

**love**, *tr.* lieben.

**love**, Liebe, *f.*

**low**, *adj.* niedrig.

**lying**, *pp'le of* liegen *O.*  
**maid**, Magd, *f.* -ägde.  
**make**, *tr.* machen.  
**man**, Mensch, *m.* -schen, -schen;  
 Mann, *m.* -nnes, -änner.  
**mansard**, Mansarde, *f.* -den.  
**many**, *adj. or noun*, viel, viele.  
 — *a*, manch.  
**March**, März, *m.* -zes.  
**march**, *intr.* marschieren.  
**mark** (a coin), Markt, *f.* -ten.  
**market**: — **place**, Markt, *m.*  
 -ttes, -ärkte.  
**massive**, *adj.* massive.  
**master**, Meister, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**matter**: **it does not matter to**  
**me**, es kommt mir nicht darauf  
 an.  
**May**, Mai, *m.* -aies.  
**meantime**, *adv. and conj.* indessen.  
**meat**, Fleisch, *n.* -sches, -sche.  
**medal**, Medaille, *f.* -en.  
**meet**, *tr. (or intr.)* begegnen (*dat.*),  
 treffen *O.*, sich begegnen.  
**merchant**, Kaufmann, *m.* -annes,  
 -änner *or (more generally)* Kauf-  
 leute.  
**methinks**, *impers.* mich dünkt,  
 from dünken.  
**mile**, Meile, *f.* -len.  
**milk**, Milch, *f.*  
**mine**, *poss. pron.* mein, der mei-  
 nige.  
**minister**, Minister, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**minute**, Minute, *f.* -ten.  
**misfortune**, Unglück, *n.* -des.  
**mock**, *tr (or intr.)* spotten (*gen.*).  
**modesty**, Bescheidenheit, *f.*  
**moment**, Minute, *f.* -ten; Augen-  
 blick, *m.* -des, -de.  
**monastery**, Kloster, *n.* -rs, -öster.  
**money**, Geld, *n.* -des, -der.  
**month**, Monat, *m.* -ts, -te.  
**moon**, Mond, *m.* -des, -de *or* -den.  
**more**, *adj. (or adv.)* mehr.

**morning**, Morgen, *m.* -ns, -n.  
**most**, *adv.* am meisten.  
**mother**, Mutter, *f.* -ütter.  
**mountain**, Berg, *m.* -ges, -ge.  
**mourn**, *tr. or intr.* beweinen,  
 klagen.  
**move**, *intr.* ziehen *O.* — **in**, ein-  
 ziehen. — **out**, ausziehen.  
**movement**, Bewegung, *f.* -gen.  
**Mr.**, Herr, *m.* -rrn, -rrn.  
**much**, *adj. (or adv.)* viel.  
**murder**, Mord, *m.* -des, -de.  
**murder**, *tr.* ermorden.  
**music**, Musik, *f.*  
**my**, *poss. pron.* mein.

**name**, *tr.* nennen (*irreg.*).  
**name**, Name, *m.* -ns, -n.  
**naughty**, *adj.* unartig.  
**necessary**, *adj.* nöthig [nötig].  
**neck**, Hals, *m.* -ses, -älse.  
**necklace**, Halsband, *n.* -des,  
 -änder.  
**need**, *tr.* bedürfen, brauchen.  
**need**, Noth [Not], *f.* -öthe. **there**  
**is** — **of**, es braucht.  
**neighbor**, Nachbar, *m.* -rs *or* -rn,  
 -rn.  
**neither**, *conj.* weder. — . . . **nor**,  
 weder . . . noch. *pron.* keiner,  
 etc.  
**nerve**, Nerve, *f.* -ven.  
**never**, *adv.* nie, niemals.  
**nevertheless**, *adv.* dennoch, doch.  
**new**, *adj.* neu.  
**news**, Nachricht, *f.* -ten.  
**newspaper**, Zeitung, *f.* -gen.  
**next**, *adj.* nächst (*sup. of* nah),  
 ander: *see* 203.1a.  
**night**, Nacht, *f.* -ächte.  
**no**, *adv.* nein. *adj.* kein. — **one**,  
 Keiner, Niemand. — **longer**,  
 nicht mehr.  
**noble**, *adj.* edel. *noun*, der Edle,  
 Adelige.

**nobleman**, Edelmann, *m.*  
**nod**, *intr.* nicken.  
**north**, Nord or Norden, *m.* -ns.  
**northern**, *adj.* nördlich.  
**not**, *adv.* nicht. — **one**, kein einziger, *etc.*  
**nothing**, *noun*, Nichts, *n.* *adv.* nichts. — **but**, nichts als.  
**novel**, Roman, *m.* -ns, -ne.  
**November**, November, *m.* -rs.  
**now**, *adv.* jetzt.  
**number**, Anzahl, *f.*  
  
**obey**, *tr.* gehorchen (*dat.*).  
**obliged**: **be** — **to**, müssen: *see* 256.  
**ocean**, Meer, *n.* -res, -re.  
**o'clock**, Uhr, *f.*: *see* 211.3.  
**October**, October, *m.* -rs.  
**of**, *prep.* von (*dat.*).  
**offer**, *tr.* anbieten *O.*, reichen.  
**officer**, Offizier, *m.* -rs, -re.  
**often**, *adv.* oft.  
**old**, *adj.* alt.  
**on**, *prep.* auf (*dat.* or *accus.*).  
**once**, *adv.* einmal. **at** —, gleich.  
**one**, *num.* ein. *adj.* ein, eine, ein, *etc.* *pron.* einer, eine, eins, *etc.*  
*indef. pron.* man: *see* 185.  
**not** —, kein.  
**only**, *adj.* einzig. *adv.* allein, nur.  
**not** — . . . . **but also**, nicht nur . . . . sondern auch.  
**open**, *tr.* öffnen, aufmachen.  
**opinion**, Meinung, *f.* -gen.  
**opportunity**, Gelegenheit, *f.* -ten.  
**oppose**, *tr.* sich widersetzen.  
**opposite**, *prep.* gegenüber (*dat.*).  
**or**, *conj.* oder.  
**order**, *tr.* bestellen; befehlen *O.* (*dat.*).  
**order**: **in** — **to** or **that**, *conj.* daß, damit: *see* 332.5b, um: *see* 346.I.  
**orthodox**, *adj.* rechtgläubig.

**other**, *adj.* ander.  
**otherwise**, *adv.* sonst.  
**ought**, *intr.* sollen: *see* 257.  
**our**, *poss. adj.* unser, der unsrige.  
**out** (*of*), *prep.* aus (*dat.*).  
**outbreak**, Ausbruch, *m.* -chs, -üche.  
**outlet**, Ausgang, *m.* -gs, -änge.  
**outside**, *prep.* außerhalb (*gen.*).  
**over**, *prep.* über (*dat.* or *accus.*). *adv.* hinüber.  
**own**, *adj.* eigen.  
**owner**, Besitzer, *m.* -rs, -r.  
  
**pace**, Schritt, *m.* -ttes, -tte.  
**pain**, *tr.* schmerzen (*dat.*).  
**pain**, Schmerz, *m.* -zes or -zens, -zen.  
**paint**, *tr.* or *intr.* malen.  
**painter**, Maler, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**painting**, Gemälde, *n.* -des, -de.  
**pair**, Paar, *n.* -res, -re.  
**pale**, *adj.* blaß.  
**palace**, Palast, *m.* -ts, -äste.  
**parents**, *pl.* Eltern.  
**part**, Theil [Teil], *m.* or *n.* -les, -le. **take** —, theilnehmen [teil-]  
*O.*  
**part**, *tr.* trennen. *intr.* sich trennen.  
**pass** (*time*), *tr.* zubringen, verbringen (*irreg.*). *intr.* verstreichen  
*O.*  
**past**, *adv.* vorbei.  
**pastor**, Pfarrer, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**path**, Pfad, *m.* -des, -de.  
**pay**, *tr.* bezahlen.  
**peace**, Friede or -den, *m.* -ens, -en.  
**peaceful**, *adj.* friedlich.  
**peasant**, Bauer, *m.* -rs or -rn, -r or -rn.  
**pen**, Feder, *f.* -rn.  
**people**, *pl.* Leute; Volk, *n.* -les, -ölker.



- penetrate**, *tr.* durchbringen *O.* (*sep'le*).
- perhaps**, *adv.* vielleicht; wohl.
- philosopher**, Philosoph, *m.* -phen, -phen.
- picture**, Bild, *n.* -des, -der.
- piece**, Stück, *n.* -des, -de.
- pilgrim**, Pilger, *m.* -rs, -r.
- pity**, *tr.* bedauern, beklagen; dauern (*impers.*). **take — on**, sich erbarmen (*gen.*).
- place**, Platz, *m.* -zes, -äße.
- plant**, *tr.* pflanzen.
- plant**, Pflanze, *f.* -zen; Gewächs, *n.* -ses, -se.
- plate**, Teller, *m.* -rs, -r.
- play**, *intr.* spielen.
- play**, Spiel, *n.* -les, -le.
- players**, *pl.* Spielleute.
- pleasant**, *adj.* angenehm.
- please**, *tr.* gefallen *O.* (*dat.*).
- pleasure**, Freude, *f.* -den; Vergnügen, *n.* ns, -n.
- pluck**, *tr.* pflücken.
- poem**, Gedicht, *n.* -tes, -te.
- poet**, Dichter, *m.* -rs, -r.
- poetry**, Dichtkunst, *f.*
- point**, Spitze, *f.* -zen. **be on the — of**, wollen eben: *see* 258.
- politeness**, Höflichkeit, *f.*
- political**, *adj.* politisch.
- poor**, *adj.* arm.
- pope**, Papst, *m.* -tes, -äpste.
- portion**; **be the — of**, einem zu Theil [Teil] werden.
- portrait**, Portrait, *n.* -tes, -te.
- possess**, *tr.* besitzen, im Besitz haben.
- possession**, Besizung, *f.* -gen.
- take or gain — of**, sich bemächtigen (*gen.*), erringen *O.* *tr.*
- post**, Post, *f.* -ten.
- potato**, Kartoffel, *f.* -ln.
- pound**, Pfund, *n.* -des, -de.
- power**, Macht, *f.* -ächte; Gewalt, *f.* -ten.
- powerful**, *adj.* mächtig.
- praise**, *tr.* loben, preisen *O.*
- pray**, *intr.* beten.
- preach**, *intr.* predigen.
- prepare**, *tr.* zubereiten.
- preserve**, *tr.* erhalten *O.*
- president**, Präsident, *m.* -ten, -ten.
- presume**: **I presume**, wohl *with* werden: *see* 328.
- pretty**, *adj.* hübsch.
- price**, Preis, *m.* -ses, -se.
- pride**, Hochmuth [=mut], *m.* -thes.
- prince**, Fürst, *m.* -ten, -ten; Prinz, *m.* -zen, -zen.
- princess**, Fürstin, *f.* -innen.
- print**, *tr.* drucken.
- prison**, Gefängniß [=nis], *n.* ses, -sse.
- prisoner**, Gefangen (*p'ple as noun*).
- probably**, *adv.* wahrscheinlich, wohl: *see* 328.
- procure**, *tr.* verschaffen.
- professor**, Professor, *m.* -rs, -ren.
- promise**, *tr.* versprechen *O.*
- promise**, Versprechen, *n.* -ns, -n.
- pronounce**, *tr.* aussprechen *O.*
- proud**, *adj.* stolz.
- prove**, *tr.* beweisen *O.*, nachweisen *O.*
- Prussia**, Preußen, *n.* -ns.
- Prussian**, *adj.* preussisch. *noun*, der Preuße.
- punish**, *tr.* strafen.
- pupil**, Schüler, *m.* -rs, -r.
- put**, *tr. or intr.* setzen, stellen, legen, stecken. — **himself**, sich stellen.
- quarter**, Viertel, *n.* -ls, -l.
- queen**, Königin, *f.* -innen.
- question**, *tr.* fragen.

**question**, Frage, *f.* -en.  
**quick**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) schnell, rasch.  
**quiet**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) ruhig.  
**quite**, *adv.* ganz, völlig.

**race**, Geschlecht, *n.* -tes, -ter.  
**railroad**, Eisenbahn, *f.* -nen.  
**rain**, *intr. impers.* regnen.  
**rain**, Regen, *m.* -ns.  
**rank**, Rang, *m.* -ges, -änge.  
**reach**, *tr.* erreichen.  
**read**, *tr. or intr.* lesen *O.* — **aloud**, vorlesen (to, *dat.*).  
**ready**, *adj.* bereit.  
**really**, *adv.* wirklich.  
**receive**, *tr.* empfangen *O.*  
**recognize**, *tr.* erkennen (*irreg.*).  
**reconcile**, *tr.* versöhnen.  
**red**, *adj.* roth [rot].  
**regard**, *tr.* betrachten.  
**regret**, *intr.* reuen (*impers. with accus.*).  
**rejoice**, *intr.* sich freuen (in, *gen.*; over, über, auf).  
**relations**, *pl.* Verwandtschaft, *f.*  
**release**, *tr.* entlassen *O.*, entbinden *O.* (from, *gen.*).  
**remain**, *intr.* bleiben *O.* §. — **behind**, zurückbleiben.  
**remember**, *tr.* sich erinnern (*gen. or an*), gedenken (*irreg.*) (*gen.*).  
**repeat**, *tr.* wiederholen (*insep'le*).  
**respect**, *tr.* achten.  
**rest**, Ruhe, *f.*  
**restaurant**, Restauration, *f.* -nen.  
**revile**, *tr.* schimpfen.  
**revolution**, Revolution, *f.* -nen.  
**reward**, *tr.* lohnen.  
**Rhine**, Rhein, *m.* -nes.  
**ribbon**, Band, *n.* -des, -änder.  
**rich**, *adj.* reich.  
**riches**, Reichthum [=tum], *m.* -ms, -ümer.  
**rid**, *adj.* los (of, *accus.*).

**ride**, *intr.* reiten *O.* — **away**, fortreiten.  
**ride**, Ritt, *m.* -ttes, -tte.  
**right**, *adj.* recht.  
**right**, Recht, *n.* -tes, -te.  
**righteous**, *adj.* gerecht.  
**ring**, Ring, *m.* -ges, -ge.  
**rise**, *intr.* aufstehen *O.* §. (of the sun) aufgehen *O.* §.  
**rob**, *tr.* rauben, berauben.  
**Rome**, Rom, *n.* -ms.  
**roof**, Dach, *n.* -ches, -ächer.  
**room**, Zimmer, *n.* -rs, -r.  
**rude**, *adj.* rauh, ungezogen.  
**run**, *intr.* laufen *O.* §. — **away**, entlaufen (from, *dat.*).

**sad**, *adj.* traurig.  
**sake: for the — of**, *prep.* wegen (*gen.*).  
**same**, *adj.* selb, gleich. **the —**, derselbe, etc.  
**save**, *tr.* retten.  
**say**, *tr.* sagen.  
**scamp**, Bösewicht, *m.* -ts, -te.  
**scholar**, Schüler, *m.* -rs, -r; Gelehrte (r), *m.* -en, -en.  
**school**, Schule, *f.* -len.  
**science**, Wissenschaft, *f.* -ten.  
**scream**, *intr.* schreien *O.*  
**scold**, *tr.* schelten, *O.*  
**sculptor**, Bildhauer, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**season**, Jahreszeit, *f.* -ten.  
**seat one's self**, sich setzen.  
**secret**, Geheimniß [=nis], *n.* -ßes, -ße.  
**secure**, *tr.* sichern.  
**see**, *tr.* sehen *O.* — **about one**, sich umsehen. — **again**, wiedersehen.  
**seek**, *tr.* suchen.  
**seem**, *intr.* scheinen *O.*  
**seldom**, *adv.* selten.  
**self**, *pron.* selbst, selber: see 155.5.  
**self-respect**, Selbstachtung, *f.*

**sell**, *tr.* verkaufen (to, *dat.*).  
**send**, *tr.* schicken, senden (*reg.* or *irreg.*) — **in**, einsenden.  
**sensible**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) vernünftig.  
**September**, September, *m.* -rs.  
**servant**, Diener, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**service**, Dienst, *m.* -stes, -ste.  
**set**, *tr.* setzen; (of the sun) untergehen *O.* †. — **over**, übersetzen (*sep'le*).  
**several**, *adj. pl.* mehrere: see 192.2; verschiedene.  
**she**, *pers. pron.* sie.  
**shepherd**, Hirt, *m.* -ten, -ten.  
**shoe**, Schuh, *m.* -hes, -he.  
**shop**, Laden, *m.* -ns, -äden.  
**short**, *adj.* kurz.  
**show**, *tr.* zeigen.  
**shut**, *tr.* schließen *O.*, zumachen.  
**sick**, *adj.* krank. — **bed**, Krankenbett, *n.*  
**sickness**, Krankheit, *f.* -ten.  
**silent**: **be** —, *intr.* schweigen *O.*  
**silver**, Silber, *n.* -rs.  
**silver**, *adj.* silbern.  
**sin**, *intr.* sündigen.  
**since**, *prep.* seit (*dat.*). *adv.* seitdem. *conj.* da, indem.  
**sing**, *tr.* or *intr.* singen *O.* — **too** or **at the same time**, join in —**ing**, mit-singen.  
**single**, *adj.* einzig. **not a** —, kein einziger, etc.  
**sister**, Schwester, *f.*  
**sit**, *intr.* sitzen *O.* — **down**, sich setzen.  
**sleep**, *intr.* schlafen *O.* **go to** —, einschlafen.  
**slow**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) langsam.  
**slumber**, Schlummer, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**small**, *adj.* klein.  
**small-pox**, die Blattern, *pl.*  
**smoke**, *tr.* or *intr.* rauchen.  
**smoke**, Rauch, *m.* -ches.  
**snow**, *intr.* and *impers.* schneien.

**so**, *adv.* and *conj.* so, also; *es*: see 154 4e.  
**soldier**, Soldat, *m.* -ten, -ten.  
**solid**, *adj.* solid.  
**some**, *pron. adj.* einiger, etlich; etwas, was; welche: see 176.2. — **thing**, etwas, was. — **body**, Jemand.  
**son**, Sohn, *m.* -nes, -öhne.  
**song**, Lied, *n.* -des, -der.  
**soon**, *adv.* bald.  
**sorrow**, Schmerz, *m.* -jes, -zen; Sorge, *f.* -en.  
**sorrow**, *intr.* leiden *O.*  
**sorry**: **be** — **for**, bedauern *tr.*; sich erbarmen (*gen.*).  
**sort**: **what** — **of**, was für.  
**soul**, Seele, *f.* -len.  
**south**, Süden, *m.* -ns.  
**southern**, *adj.* südlich.  
**Spain**, Spanien, *n.* -iens.  
**Spanish**, *adj.* spanisch.  
**Spaniard**, Spanier, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**spare**, *tr.* schonen, verschonen.  
**speak**, *tr.* or *intr.* sprechen *O.*, reden. — **out**, aussprechen *O.*  
**spend**, *tr.* (of time) verbringen (*irreg.*), verleben.  
**spiritual**, *adj.* geistig.  
**spite**: **in** — **of**, *prep.* trotz (*gen.*).  
**spoil**, *tr.* verderben *O.*  
**spoon**, Löffel, *m.* -ls, -l.  
**spring**, Frühling, *m.* -gs, -ge.  
**spring**, *intr.* springen *O.* h or †.  
**stand**, *intr.* stehen *O.* h or †.  
**stay**, *intr.* bleiben *O.* †.  
**step**, Schritt, *m.* -ttes, -tte.  
**still**, *adj.* still, schweigend. *adv.* noch, stets; doch.  
**stop**, *intr.* aufhören, stehen bleiben.  
**story**, Geschichte, *f.* -ten.  
**strange**, *adj.* fremd.  
**stranger**, der Fremde, etc.  
**stream**, Strom, *m.* -mes, -öme.  
**street**, Straße, *f.* -ßen.

**strength**, Kraft, *f.* -äfte.  
**stretch**, *tr.* strecken. *intr.* sich strecken.  
**strike**, *tr.* schlagen *O.* — **off**, ab= schlagen.  
**strong**, *adj.* stark.  
**student**, Student, *m.* -ten, -ten.  
**study**, Studium, *n.* -ms, -ien.  
**stupid**, *adj.* dumm.  
**style**, Mode, *f.* -den.  
**sublime**, *adj.* erhaben.  
**succeed**, *intr.* gelingen *O.* (*impers.* *with dat.* .  
**such**, *pron. adj. or adv.* solch.  
     — **a**, solch ein, ein solch, so ein.  
**sudden**, (*adj.* -ly) plötzlich.  
**suffer**, *intr.* (*or tr.*) leiden *O.*  
**sufficiently**, *adv.* genug.  
**suitable**: **be** —, ziemen (*impers.* *with dat.*).  
**summer**, Sommer, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**sun**, Sonne, *f.* -nen.  
**Sunday**, Sonntag, *m.* -gs.  
**sure**, *adv.* gewiß. **to be** —, zwar.  
**survive**, *tr.* überleben.  
**suspicion**, Verdacht, *m.* -ts.  
**sweet**, *adj.* süß.  
**Switzerland**, Schweiz, *f.*  
**sword**, Schwert, *n.* -tes, -ter.  
  
**take**, *tr.* nehmen *O.* — **away**, weg= nehmen. — **along or too**, mit= nehmen.  
**talk**, *intr.* reden. sprechen *O.*  
     — **over**, besprechen *O.*  
**tall**, *adj.* groß, hoch.  
**task**, Aufgabe, *f.* -ben.  
**tea**, Thee, *m.* -ees, -ee.  
**teach**, *tr.* lehren.  
**teacher**, Lehrer, *m.* -rs, -r;  
     Meister, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**teaching**, Lehre, *f.* -ren.  
**tear**, Thräne, *f.* -nen.  
**tell**, *tr.* erzählen, sagen.  
**terrible**, *adj.* furchtbar.

**thaler**, Thaler, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**than**, *conj.* als, denn.  
**thank**, *tr.* danken (*dat.*).  
**thanks**, Dank, *m.* -tes.  
**that**, *dem. pron.* jener, derjenige, etc.; *rel. pron.* welcher, der, etc.  
*conj.* daß, damit. **in order** —, damit.  
**the**, *def. art.* der (die, das). *conj.* *or adv.* je, desto.  
**theatre**, Theater, *n.* -rs, -r.  
**their**, *poss. pron.* ihr, der ihrig.  
**then**, *adv.* dann, darauf. *conj.* denn, dann, so.  
**there**, *adv.* da, dort. — **are**, etc., es gibt, etc., es sind, etc.  
**therefore**, *adv. or conj.* darum.  
**they**, *pers. pron.* sie. *indef. man.*  
**thine**, *poss. pron.* dein, der deinig.  
**thing**, Ding, *n.* -ges, -ge; Sache, *f.* -en.  
**think**, *intr.* denken (*irreg.*) ge= denken. (*of, gen.*).  
**thirst**, *intr.* dürsten (*impers. with accus.*).  
**this**, *dem. pron.* dies.  
**thou**, *pers. pron.* du.  
**thought**, Gedanke, *m.* -tens, -ten.  
**three**, *num.* drei.  
**throne**, Thron, *m.* -nes, -ne *or* -nen.  
**through**, *prep.* durch (*accus.*).  
**thunder**, Donner, *m.* -rs, -r.  
     — **storm**, Gewitter, *n.* -rs, -r.  
**time**, Zeit, *f.* -ten. **three times**, dreimal, etc. **sometimes**, manch= mal.  
**tire**, *tr.* ermüden.  
**tired**, *adj.* müde, ermüdet. **be** — **of it**, es müde sein, es satt haben.  
**to**, *prep.* zu, nach (*dat.*), in, an (*accus.*), bis (*dat.*); *with infin.* zu.  
**today**, *adv.* heute. **of** —, **today's**, heutig (*adj.*).  
**together**, *adv.* zusammen.

**tomorrow**, *adv.* morgen.  
**tone**, Ton, *m.* -nes, -öne.  
**too**, *adv.* zu; auch. — **much**, zu viel or sehr, allzusehr.  
**toward**, *prep.* nach (*dat.*), gegen (*accus.*), gen.  
**town**, Stadt, *f.* -ädte. — **hall**, Rathhaus [Rat-], *n.*  
**translate**, *tr.* übersetzen (*insep'le*).  
**travel**, *intr.* reisen [or h].  
**treason**, Verrath [-rat], *m.* -thes.  
**high** --, Hochverrath, *m.*  
**tree**, Baum, *m.* -mes, -äume.  
**tremble**, *intr.* zittern.  
**troop**, Trupp, *m.* -ppes, -ppe.  
**tropic**, Trope, *f.* -pen.  
**trouble**, Mühe, *f.*  
**true**, *adj.* wahr; treu. **it is** —, *adv.* zwar.  
**truly**, *adv.* wahrlich, wahrhaftig.  
**trust**, *tr.* trauen, vertrauen (*dat.*).  
**truth**, Wahrheit, *f.*  
**try**, *intr.* versuchen.  
**turn (to)**, *intr.* biegen *O.*, sich wenden; werden (zu) *O.*  
**twice**, *adv.* zweimal.  
**twig**, Zweig, *m.* -ges, -ge.  
**two**, *num.* zwei.  
  
**ugly**, *adj.* häßlich.  
**unable**: **be** —, nicht können: see 256.  
**uncle**, Onkel, *m.* -ls, -l; Oheim, *m.* -ms, -me.  
**under**, *prep.* unter (*dat.* and *accus.*).  
**understand**, *tr.* verstehen *O.*  
**undertake**, *intr.* or *tr.* sich (*dat.*) vornehmen *O.*  
**undone**, *adj.* ungeschehen.  
**unending**, *adj.* endlos, unendlich.  
**unexpected**, *adj.* unerwartet.  
**ungrateful**, *adj.* undankbar.  
**unhappiness**, Unglück, *n.* -ds.  
**unhappy**, *adj.* unglücklich.

**uninterrupted**, *adj.* ununterbrochen.  
**university**, Universität, *f.* -ten.  
**unknown**, *adj.* unbekannt.  
**unless**, *conj.* ohne daß, wenn nicht, es sei denn: see 331.1d.  
**until**, *conj.* bis, bis daß. *prep.* bis (*dat.*).  
**unwell**, *adj.* or *adv.* unwohl.  
**unworthy**, *adj.* unwürdig.  
**up**, *adv.* or *prep.* auf, an (*dat.* or *accus.*), hinauf.  
**upon**, *prep.* auf (*dat.* or *accus.*).  
**usual**, *adj.* (*adv.* -ly) gewöhnlich.  
**as** —, wie gewöhnlich.  
**use**, *tr.* benutzen. **be of** —, nutzen (to, *dat.*).  
**useless**, *adj.* unbrauchbar.  
  
**vain**, *adj.* eitel.  
**vainly**, **in vain**, *adv.* vergebens.  
**valley**, Thal, *n.* -les, -äler.  
**vanquish**, *tr.* bezwingen *O.*  
**vegetable**, Gemüse, *n.* -ses, -se.  
**very**, *adv.* sehr.  
**victor**, Sieger, *m.* -rs, -r.  
**victorious**, *adj.* siegreich.  
**victory**, Sieg, *m.* -ges, -ge.  
**Vienna**, Wien, *n.* -ns.  
**village**, Dorf, *n.* -ses, -örfer.  
**violet**, Veilchen, *n.* -ns, -n.  
**virtue**, Tugend, *f.* -den.  
**visit**, *tr.* besuchen.  
**visit**, Besuch, *m.* -ches, -che.  
**voice**, Stimme, *f.* -men.

**wagon**, Wagen, *m.* -ns, -n or -ägen.  
**wait**, *intr.* warten (for, *gen.* or auf).  
**wake**, *tr.* wecken. *intr.* aufwachen.  
**walk**, *intr.* gehen *O.*; wandern.  
**take a** —, spazieren gehen.  
**wander**, *intr.* wandern f.  
**wanderer**, Wanderer, *m.* -rs, -r.

**want**, *tr. (or intr.)* wünschen, wollen (*irreg.*).

**war**, Krieg, *m.* -ges, -ge.

**warm**, *adj.* warm.

**warning**, Warnung, *f.* -gen.

**watch**, *intr.* wachen.

**watch**, Uhr, *f.* -ren.

**water**, Wasser, *n.* -rs.

**way**, Weg, *m.* -ges, -ge. *on the* —, unterwegs.

**we**, *pers. pron.* wir.

**weak**, *adj.* schwach.

**weary**, *adj.* müde.

**weather**, Wetter, *n.* -rs.

**Wednesday**, Mittwoch, *m.* -chs.

**week**, Woche, *f.* -en.

**weep**, *intr.* weinen.

**weigh**, *intr. (or tr.)* wiegen *O.*

**welcome**, *adj.* willkommen.

**well**, *adv.* gut, wohl.

**what**, *pron.* was; *welch.* — **kind of**, was für. — **ever**, was auch. *interj.* wie! was!

**when**, *adv.* als, wenn; wann.

**where**, *adv.* wo. — **ever**, wo, wo auch.

**whether**, *conj.* ob.

**which**, *pron.* welch, wer, was *etc.* **that** —, was.

**while**, *adv.* indem, während.

**white**, *adj.* weiß.

**who**, *pron.* wer, welcher, *etc.*, der, *etc.* **he** —, **she** —, wer, der- or die-jenige. — **ever**, wer auch.

**whole**, *adj.* ganz.

**whose**, *pron.* wessen (*gen. of* wer).

**why**, *adv.* warum; was: *see* 176.3.

**widower**, Wittwer [Witwer], *m.* -rs, -r.

**wife**, Frau, *f.* -en; Gattin, *f.* -nnen.

**willingly**, *adv.* gern.

**window**, Fenster, *n.* -rs, -r.

**wine**, Wein, -nes, -ne.

**winter**, Winter, *m.* -rs, -r.

**wisdom**, Weisheit, *f.*

**wise**, *adj.* weise, gelehrt.

**wish**, *tr. or intr.* wünschen, wollen (*irreg.*). **wished for**, erwünscht.

**wish**, Wunsch, *m.* -sches, -ünsche.

**with**, *prep.* mit (*dat.*).

**withdraw**, *tr.* zurückziehen *O.* *intr.* sich zurückziehen.

**without**, *prep.* ohne (*accus. or infin. with zu*).

**woman**, Weib. *n.* -bes, -ber; Frau, *f.* -en.

**wonder**, *intr.* wundern. — **at**, sich wundern über.

**wood**, Holz, *n.* ges, -ze; Wald, *m.* -des, -älder.

**word**, Wort, *n.* -tes, -örter.

**work**, *intr.* arbeiten.

**work**, Arbeit, *f.* -ten; Werk, *n.* -tes, -te.

**world**, Welt, *f.* -ten.

**worse**, **worst**, *comp. and superl. of bad*, schlecht.

**wretched**, *adj.* unglücklich.

**wring**, *tr.* ringen *O.*

**write**, *tr. or intr.* schreiben *O.* — **in**, register, einschreiben.

**writing**, Schreiben, *n.* -ns.

**wrong**, Unrecht, *n.* -tes, -te.

**year**, Jahr, *n.* -res, -re.

**yes**, *adv.* ja.

**yesterday**, *adv.* gestern.

**yet**, *adv.* noch. **not** —, noch nicht.

**you**, *pers. pron.* du, ihr, Sie: *see* 153.

**young**, *adj.* jung.

**your**, *poss. pron.* dein, ihr, Ihr, *etc.*: *see* 157.

**youth**, Jugend, *f.*

**youth**, **young man**, Jüngling, *m.* -gs, -ge.



# INDEX.

*The references are to Sections, not to pages.*

- a**, pronunciation of, 8; **a** for **aa** in new orthography, 8.1.  
**ä**, pronunciation of, 15; **ä** for **e** in new orthography, 15.1.  
**Ablaut**, 400.2.  
**Absolute construction**, with accusative, 230.3; with infinitive, 347.  
**accent**, 55.  
**accessary clause**, see dependent.  
**accusative case**, general office of, 59.4, 226; with transitive verbs, 227.1; with intransitive, 227.2; double accus., with verbs, 227.3; accus. with prepositions, 228, 375-6; with adjectives, 229; accus. of measure and time, 230.1,2; accus. absolute, or of accompanying circumstance, 230.3.  
**active voice of verb**, 233.3.  
**address**, use of pronouns in, 153.  
**adjective**, usual adjunct of noun, 110; when declined, 114-7; rules of adj. declension, 118-28; indeclinable adj. 126.4; origin of double declension of adj., 132; adj. as noun, 129; as adverb, 130, 363.1,2; adj. with *etwas*, *was*, *nichts*, 129.5; comparison of adj., 133-42; absolute use of comparative adj., 142.2; modifying adjuncts of adj., 143-6; their place, 147:—agreement of adj., 62, 209; genitive dependent on adj., 217; dative do., 223; accusative do., 229:—primitive adj., 413; adj. derived from verbs, 414; derived by suffix, 415; by prefix, 416; compound adj., 423-4.  
**adjective clause**, 437, 444.2, 110.1c.  
**adjective phrase**, compound, 437.2a, 147.2, 358.  
**adverb**, office of, 361; usual adjunct of adjective, 144; of verb, 317; of noun, 110.2, 369.3; of preposition, 369.1; complement of preposition, 379; used as adj., 379.3; place of adv., 219.2f, 370; classification of adverbs., 362; derivation of adverbs, from nouns, 364; from adj., 363; from adj., by derivative endings, 363.3; by combination, 365; from pronominal roots, 367.2; original adverbs, 367; ordinal adv., 207.3; comparison, 368; adjective as adv., 130, 363.1,2; participle as adv., 356; comparison of adjectives by adv., 141.  
**adverbial clause**, 438, 444.3, 144.2.  
**adverbial predicate**, adjective as, 116.1b, 316.2b.  
**Äe**, see **ä**.  
**Äeu**, see **äu**.  
**ai**, pronunciation of, 19.1.  
**all**, 193.  
**aller**, prefixed to superlatives, 142.3.  
**alphabet**, German, 1-3; its origin, 1; written character, 2.1, pp. 275-77; use of capitals, 4.  
**als**, in sense of 'as if,' 332.2b,c, 433b; do. in substantive clause, 436.3g; omission of *als* after *so* and adverb or adjective, 438.3d,e.  
**ander**, 194.



- apodosis, 332.1.  
 appositive adjective, 110.1b, 116.2, 4; do. noun, 59.4, 111.2; in nominative, 213.2.  
 arrangement of the sentence, rules for 429-39; summary of rules, 440-44; additional remarks, rhetorical arrangements, 445-6.  
 articles, declension, 63-4; combination with prepositions, 65; rules for use, 66; place, 67.  
 Aryan languages, *see* Indo-European.  
 assertive sentence, 427.  
 attributive adjective, 110.1a, 115.  
 au, pronunciation of, 20.  
 äu, pronunciation of, 21.2.  
 auxiliaries, of tense, 239-41; of mood, *see* modal auxiliaries; causative auxiliary, 242.2; omission of auxiliary of tense, 439.3a; verbs taking either *haben* or *sein* as auxiliary, 241.3.  
 aŋ, pronunciation and use of, 19.3.  
  
 b, pronunciation of, 23; English correspondent of, 459.I.  
 bases, 393b.  
 be-, derivation and use of, 307.2, 405.III.1a.  
 beide, 199b.  
  
 c, pronunciation and use of, 24.  
 capitals, use of, 4; in pronouns of address, 153.3-5.  
 cardinal numerals, 197-201; their derivatives, 202-8.  
 cases of declension, their uses, 59, 212-30: *and see* accusative, dative, genitive, nominative.  
 causative auxiliary, 242.2; causative derivative verbs, 404.I.1.  
 Celtic languages, relationship of, 450.  
 ch, pronunciation of, 43; English correspondents of, 460.  
 ch, pronunciation and use of, 30, 44.  
 classes, under first declension, how determined, 69; first class, 75-80; second, 81-6; third, 87-90.  
  
 cognate accusative, 227.2a.  
 collective noun, agreement of verb with, 322.2.  
 comparative degree, 134 ff.; declension of, 140.1.  
 comparison, of adjectives, 133-42; degrees and endings, 134-5; modification of vowel, 136; irregular and defective comparison, 139; declension, 140:—of participles, 355; of adverbs, 368.  
 composition or combination of words, 418-25.  
 compound adjective phrase, 437.2a, 147.2, 358.  
 compound forms of verb, 238-42.  
 compound nouns, gender of, 61.4; inflection of, 68.1; formation of, 421-2.  
 compound verbs, with prefixes, 233.4, 296-311; with other elements, 312-3.  
 compound words, 418; their frequency in German, 419; orthography, 419b,c; pronunciation of finals and initials in, 53; accent, 55.2-4; rules of formation of compound verbs, 420; nouns, 421-2; adjectives, 423-4; particles, 425, 365.  
 conditional clauses, inversion in, 433, 443.5.  
 conditional tenses, formation of, 240.2c; their use, 334-6.  
 conditional use of subjunctive, 332.  
 conjugation, defined, 231; rules respecting, 232-313; conjugations, distinction and origin of, 246; New conjugation, 247-60; Old conjugation, 261-73; mixed conjugation, 272.  
 conjunctions, 382; their classification, 383; general connectives, 384; adverbial conjunctions, 385; subordinating conjunctions, 386.  
 consonants, pronunciation of, 23-54.  
 copula, 316.1a, 426.2b; omission of, in dependent clause, 439.3.  
 correspondences between English

- and German words and letters, 452-61.  
countries and places, declension of names of, 103.
- b**, pronunciation of, 25; English correspondent of, 458.1.
- da**, added to relative pronoun, 182.2.
- da** or **dar**, in combination with prepositions, as substitute for pronoun of third person, 154.2, 3; for demonstrative, 166.4; for relative, 180.
- dative case**, general use of, 59.3, 221; **dat.** with verbs, 222; of possession, with *werden*, etc., 222.II.1*d*; with impersonal phrases of condition, 222.II.1*f*, 292.4; of interest or concern, 222.III.; possessive **dat.**, 222.III*a, b*; **dative** with adjectives, 223; with prepositions, 224, 374, 376; with nouns, 225.1; in exclamations, 225.2:—use or omission of *e* in **dat.** of nouns, 71.1*b*, 83; old **dat.** sing. fem. in *n*, 95.
- day of the month**, expression of, 216.5*d*.
- declension**, defined, 57; rules of **decl.**, 58-208; **decl.** of articles, 63-4; of nouns, 68-108; of adjectives, 118-28, 140; of pronouns, 151-95; of numerals, 198-208; uses of the forms of **decl.**, 209-30.
- defective declension** of nouns, 100; **defective theme** in **declension**, 98.
- definitive article**, see **articles**; use in generalizing sense, 66.1, 2; in sense of possessive, 66.3, 161.
- demonstratives**, 163-71; use of, in sense of personal or possessive pronouns, 166*b*, 171.
- denominative verbs**, 405
- dependent clauses**, 426.2*d*, 435, 444; their arrangement, 434-9, 444; their introduction in a period, 439.5; omission of auxiliary or copula in, 439.3.
- der**, as definite article, 63; as demonstrative adjective or pronoun, 163.4, 164.1, 2, 166; as relative, 177-8.
- derer**, 164.2.
- derivation of words**, 393-417.
- Derò**, 162.
- determinative pronouns**, 167-71; use of, instead of personal or possessive pronouns, 171.
- dies**, 163, 165-6.
- digraphs**, vowel, 18-22; consonant, 43-51.
- dimidiative numerals**, 207.1.
- diphthongs**, pronunciation of, 18-22.
- doubled vowels**, 7.1, 53; modified vowels not doubled, 14.2; doubled consonants, 7.2, 52.2, 53.
- dürjen**, 251, 253.
- e**, pronunciation of, 9; *e* for *ee* in new orthography, 9.1; *e* for *ä* in new orthography, 15.1.
- ei**, pronunciation of, 19.2.
- ein**, as indefinite article, 63; as indef. pronoun, 193.1; as numeral, 198.
- einig**, 189.
- emp**, derivation and use of, 307.3.
- emphasis or impressiveness**, inversion for, 431*g*, 443.2.
- endings of inflection and of derivation**, see **suffixes**.
- English language**, relation of German to, 447-52; correspondences between English and German words and letters, 452-61.
- ent**, derivation and use of, 307.3; 405.III.1*b*.
- er**, derivation and use of, 307.4; 405.III.1*c*.
- es**, special uses and constructions of, 154.4; omission of, as impersonal subject, 293.
- etlich**, 189.
- etwas**, 188; form of adjective with, 129.5.
- etweld**, 189.
- eu**, pronunciation of, 21.1; for *äu* in new orthography, 20.3.
- Eu.**, 162.

- exclamation, construction of, 391, 432.1c, 439.4a.
- expletive personal pronoun in dative, 156, 222.IIIb.
- en, pronunciation and use of, 19.3.
- f, pronunciation of, 26; English correspondents of, 459.3.
- factitive predicate, *see* objective predicate.
- feminine, *see* gender: classification of fem. nouns in declension, 69.2, 70; fem. noun invariable in singular, 71.1a; exceptions, 95.
- first or strong declension of nouns, 69, 73, 74-90; its first class, 75-80; second, 81-6; third, 87-90:—of adjectives, 118-28, 132.
- foreign nouns, declension of, 86, 92.1a, 2c, 97.2, 101; gender, 61.5.
- foreign words, pronunciation of, 54; of *h*, *ie*, *e*, *t*, *ch* in, 13, 18, 24, 37, 43.3; of *g* in words from French, 27; accent, 55.5.
- fractional numerals, 207.2.
- für in *was* für, 175, 177, 179.
- future perfect tense, how formed, 240.2b; its use, 328.
- future tense, how formed, 240.2a; its use, 328; present in sense of future, 324.4.
- g, pronunciation of, 27, 43; English correspondents of, 460.
- ge-, derivation and use of, 307.5; use as prefix of participle, 243.3; its origin as such, 243.3c.
- gegessen, 271.3.
- gender, 60; general rules for, in nouns, 61; in adjectives etc., 62; of compound nouns, 421.1; gender of personal pronoun, 154.1.
- genitive case, general office of, 59.2, 215; gen. with nouns, 216; its place, 216.6; with adjectives, 217; with prepositions, 218, 373; with verbs, 219, 220.2-4; substitution of dative with *you* for, 216.4; adverbial gen., 220.1; predicate gen., 220.2; gen. with interjections, 220.5:—form of gen. determines declension of a noun, 69.1, 70; use of *es* or *s* in, 83; of *en* or *n*, 93; old gen. sing. of feminines, in *n*, 95; omission of sign of genitive, 101.5; gen. of second adjective declension used instead of first, 121.3.
- Germanic or Teutonic group of languages, 449-50; its divisions, 451; progression of mutes in, 453-60.
- German language, relation of to English, 447-61; history of, 462-9.
- Gothic language, relationship of, 451.4.
- gradation of vowels, *see* variation.
- Greek language, relationship of, 450.
- Grimm's law of progression of mutes, 453.
- h, pronunciation of, 28; used to denote a long vowel, 7.1; English correspondents of, 460.
- haben, conjugation of, 239.1, 4a; use as auxiliary, 240-1; origin of use, 240.4.
- Hebrew etc., not related with Germanic languages, 450.7b.
- hier, compounded with prepositions, in sense of demonstrative, 166.4.
- High-German subdivision of Germanic group of languages, 451.2; its history, 463-9.
- hour of the day, expression of, 211.3.
- hypothetical period, construction of, 332.1, 2.
- i, pronunciation of, 10; *ie* for *i* in new orthography, 18.1.
- ie, pronunciation of, 18.
- Ich, 162.
- imperative mood, 235.4, 237.5, 270; filled up from subjunctive

- present, 243.1; use, 337; substitutes for, 338.
- imperative sentence, *see* optative.
- imperfect tense, *see* preterit.
- impersonal verb, 233.2b, 291-5; relation to passive, 294; omission of impers. subject, 293; with genitive object, 219.4; with dative of subject, 222.II.1e; accusative of subject, 227.2c.
- impressiveness or emphasis, inversion for, 431g, 443.2.
- indeclinable words, 56.3, 360; indeclinable adj., 126.4.
- indefinite article, *see* articles.
- indefinite pronouns and numerals, 184-95.
- indefinite subjects of verbs, 154.4, 166.3, agreement of verb after, 154.4d, 322.3.
- Indian (East) languages, relationship of, 450.
- indicative mode, 235.2; uses of its tenses, 323-8; use of indicative instead of subjunctive, 330c, 332.5c, 333.5.
- indirect statement, subjunctive of, 333.
- Indo-European family of languages, 449-50.
- Indo-Germanic, *see* Indo-European.
- infinitive, verbal noun, 235.5, 339; ending, 237.1a; *zu* as sign of, 243.2, 341; perfect inf., 240.1d; use of inf. for participle in perfect and pluperfect, 240.1c, 251.4a; inf. as noun, 340; inf. as subject of a verb, 342; as object, 343; subject-accusative of inf., 343.I.5a; active inf. in sense of passive, 343.I.5c,d, III.1b; more special cases, 343.1.6; inf. of purpose or design, 343.III.1; inf. dependent on adjective, 344; on noun, 345; on preposition, 346; in absolute construction, 347; inf. clauses, 348; with preposition, 346.2; place of inf. 348.2, 319.2a-b; —two infin., place of transposed verb with, 439.2, 444.3b.
- inseparable prefixes, 297.2, 307; conjugation of verb with, 302-6; denominative verbs formed with, 405.III.1.
- interjections, 56.4, 387-9; interjectional use of other parts of speech, 390; interjectional or exclamatory construction, 391; construction of cases with interj., 392.
- internal change as means of inflection and derivation, 400.
- interrogative pronouns, 172-6; their use as relatives, 176.1; as indefinites, 176.2.
- interrogative sentence, 427; order of, 432.1, 443.3, 439.4b.
- intransitive verb, 233.1, 227.1a,b; construction of accusative with, 227.2, 288.1; impersonal passive from, 279.2; reflexive from, 288.2.
- inverted order of sentence, 431-3, 441, 443; inversion after adverbial clause, 438.3f; after appositive adjective phrase, 431d; in exclamatory clause, 432.1c.
- irregular declension of nouns, 96-100; irr. comparison of adjectives, 139; irr. conjugation of verbs, 249-60.
- irregular verbs, list of, pp. 278-84; equivalent to Old or strong verbs, 236.2.1, 246.3.
- Italic languages, relationship of, 450.
- iterative numerals, 206.
- j*, pronunciation of, 29.
- ja*, 360a.
- jed*, *jeder*, 190.
- jedermann*, 187.
- jedwed*, *jedweder*, 190.
- jeglich*, 190.
- jemand*, 186.
- jen*, *jener*, 163, 165-6.
- ſ*, pronunciation of, 30; English correspondents of, 460.
- ſein*, 195.2.
- können*, 251, 254.

- l**, pronunciation of, 31.  
 Latin language, relationship of, 450.  
 letters, German, *see* alphabet.  
 Low-German subdivision of Germanic languages, 451.1, 452.1.  
 Luther's influence on German language, 467-8.
- m**, pronunciation of, 31.  
 man, 185.  
 manch, 191.  
 masculine, *see* gender.  
 measure, use of singular instead of plural in expressing, 211.2; noun of measured substance not in genitive, 216.5a; accusative of measure, 230.1.  
 mehr, 192.  
 Meistersänger, works of, 465.2c.  
 Middle High-German period, dialects, literature, 463.2, 465; transition to New, 466.  
 Minnesänger, works of, 465.2a.  
 miß, as prefix, 313.  
 mixed conjugation, 272; declension of nouns, 97; of adjectives, 124.  
 modal auxiliaries, 242.1, 251-9.  
 modes, 235.2-4.  
 modified vowels, origin, 14, 400.1; pronunciation of, 15-7, 21.2; in declension of nouns, 69, 78, 84, 87; in comparison of adjectives, 136; in inflection of verb, 250.2, 251, 268.2, 269.II.1.  
 mögen, 251, 255.  
 Moeso-Gothic, *see* Gothic.  
 month, invariable after numeral designating day, 216.4d.  
 multiplicative numerals, 204.  
 müssen, 251, 256.  
 mutes, progression of, in Germanic languages, 453-6; correspondences of, in English and German, 457-60.
- n**, pronunciation of, 32.  
 n-declension of nouns, 73; of adjectives, 132.  
 nein, 360a.
- neuter, *see* gender.  
 New or weak conjugation, characteristics and origin of, 236.1, 246.2,3; rules of, 247-60; irregular verbs of, 249-60.  
 New High-German period and dialects, 463.3, 467-9; transition from Middle to, 466.  
 New orthography, 5.  
 ng, pronunciation of, 45; English correspondent of, 460.  
 Nibelungenlied, 465.2b.  
 nicht, position in sentence, 219 2f.  
 nichts, 188; form of adjective with, 129.5.  
 niemand, 186.  
 nominative case, uses of, 59.1, 212-4.  
 normal or regular order of sentence, 319, 430, 441-2.  
 noun, declension of, 68-73; first declension, 74-90; second declension, 91-5; irregular declension, 96-100; foreign nouns, 101; proper names, 102-8; modifying adjuncts of the noun, 109-12; equivalents of, 113; adjective used as noun, 129; infinitive, 340; noun as adjunct of adjective, 145, 147.3; genitive dependent on a noun, 216; dative do. 225; syntax of nouns, *see* the several cases:—primitive nouns, 407; derivative, 408-12; compound, 421-2.  
 numbers, in declension, 58; rules for use, 210-11; in conjugation, 235.3; rules for use, 322; of verb or adjective with *ſie*, 'you,' 153.4.  
 numerals, 196-208; cardinals, 197-202; ordinals, 203; multiplicatives, 204; variatives, 205; iteratives, 206; dimidiatives, 207.1; fractionals, 207.2; indefinite, 189-95.
- o**, pronunciation of, 11; *o* for *oo* in new orthography, 11.1.  
**ö**, pronunciation of, 16.  
 objective predicate, noun as, 316.1b, 227.2b,3b,c; adj. as, 116.1c, 216.2c.

**De**, see **ð**.

**Old or strong conjugation**, characteristics of, 246.1.3, 261-73; changes of radical vowel in, 262; classification of verbs of, 263-7; rules of inflection of, 268-71; conjugation of, 273.

**Old High-German period**, dialects, literature, 463.1, 464.

**omission**, of auxiliary or copula in dependent clauses, 439.3; of certain endings of adjective declension, 126; of subject of impersonal verb, 293.

**optative or imperative sentence**, 427; its arrangement, 432.2, 443.4.

**optative use of subjunctive**, 331.

**ordinal numerals**, 203; their derivatives, 207; ordinal adverbs, 207.3.

**p**, pronunciation of, 33; English correspondents of, 459.2.

**participles**, verbal adjectives, 235.6, 349; forms, 237.6,7, 243.3; use as adjectives, 131, 148; as adverbs, 356; comparison of, 355; participial clauses, 357-8:—present part., form, 237.6; use and office, 350, 353, 355-8:—past part., form, 237.7, 246, 271; use of *ge* as sign of, 243.3; value and office, 351, 354-8; certain special uses, 359; adjectives in form of past part., 351.3:—future passive part., 278, 352.

**parts of speech**, enumeration and classification of, 56.

**passive voice**, 233.3, 274; its forms, 275-7; future pass. participle, 278, 352; pass. formed from what verbs, 279; cases used with, 280; infrequency of its use, 281; distinction of pass. from past participle with *sein*, 282; pass. use of active infinitive, 343.I.5c,d, III.1b.

**perfect tense**, 240.1a,c; use, 326; omission of auxiliary of, 439.3.

**Persian languages**, relationship of, 450.

**personal forms of the verb**, 314a.

**personal pronouns**, declension of, 151-2; use in address, 153; other rules respecting, 154; reflexive use, 155; expletive dative of, 156; possessive dative of, 161, 222.III<sup>o</sup>; declension of adjective after, 125.2; place of, 319.3b; *do.* in inverted and transposed clauses, 431h, 439.1, 443.5b, 444.3a.

**persons of verb**, 235.3,4; endings of, 237.2,3,5; rules respecting use, 321.

**persons**, declension of names of, 104-8.

**pf**, pronunciation of, 46.1; origin, 459.4.

**ph**, pronunciation of, 46.2.

**pluperfect tense**, 240.1b,c; use, 327; omission of auxiliary of, 439.3.

**plural**, its ending determines class under first declension of nouns, 69; irregular formation of, in nouns, 97.2, 99, 100, 101.3-5; singular used for, in expressions of measure, 211.2.

**positive degree of adjectives**, 134.

**possessive dative**, 222.IIIa,b, 225.1.

**possessive pronouns or pronominal adjectives**, 157-8; declension, 159; used as nouns, 160; definite article or poss. dative used for, 161; old style expressions and abbreviations for, 162; used instead of genitive of pronoun, 158.2, 216.3.

**potential use of subjunctive**, 332.3.

**predicate of a sentence**, 426.2, 428.2.

**predicate adjective**, 116.1, 316.2; its form in superlative, 140.2b.

**predicate noun**, 213, 316.1; verb in plural to agree with, 322.3.

**prefixes**, origin of, 395.

**prefixes of verbs**: separable, 297.1, 298; inseparable, 297.2, 302, 307; separable or inseparable, 297.3, 308-9.

**prepositions**, 371; classification,

- 372; prep. followed by genitive, 218, 373; by dative, 224, 374; by accusative, 228.1, 375; by dative or accusative, 224.2, 228.2, 376; by infinitive, 346.1; by infinitive clause, 346.2; by substantive clause, 377, 436; by adverbs, 378; taking adverb as complement, 379; combination of prep. with definite article, 65.
- prepositional phrase, 380; as adjunct of noun, 112; of adjective, 146; of verb, 318.
- present tense, 235.1, 268; use, 324; in sense of our preterit, 324.2; of perfect, 324.3; of future, 324.4.
- preterit tense, 235.1, 269; its origin, 246.3; use 325; in sense of our pluperfect, 325.2; of perfect, 325.3.
- primitive words, 402; verbs, 403; nouns, 407; adjectives, 413; adverbs, 367.
- principal parts of verb, 237.1.
- progression of mutes in Germanic languages, 453-60.
- pronouns, substantive and adjective use of, 149; classification, 150; personal pron., 151-6; reflexive, 155; possessive, 157-62; demonstrative, 163-71; determinative, 167-71; interrogative, 172-6; relative, 177-83; indefinite, 184-95.
- pronunciation, 6-55.
- proper names, declension of, 102-8.
- protasis, 332.1.
- q, pronunciation of, 34, 39.
- qu, pronunciation of, 47.
- question, *see* interrogative sentence.
- r, pronunciation of, 35.
- reciprocal use of reflexive pronoun, 155.4.
- redundant declension, 99.
- reflexive use of personal pronouns, 155; reflexive pronoun, 155.3; reciprocal reflexive, 155.4.
- reflexive verb, 233.2<sup>a</sup>, 283; conjugation of, 284-5; from what verbs formed, 286-7; from intransitives, 288; cases used with, 289; with reflexive object in dative, 290; with genitive object, 219.3.
- regular order of sentence, *see* normal order.
- regular verbs, 246.3.
- relative pronouns, 177-83; compound rel., 179.1-3; indefinite, 179.4; compound relative used for our simple, 179.5; agreement of verb with rel., 181, 321.2.
- root of verb, 237.1<sup>a</sup>; roots of language, 393<sup>b</sup>, 398.
- rotation of mutes, 453.
- ſ, pronunciation of, 36; English correspondents of, 458.3; use of long or short ſ (ſ or s) in writing or printing, 3.1.
- Sanskrit language, relationship of, 450.
- Scandinavian languages, relationship of, 451.3.
- ſch, pronunciation of, 48
- Se., 162.
- second or weak declension of nouns, 70, 73, 91-5; of adjectives, 119-28, 132.
- ſein, conjugation of, 239.2, 4<sup>b</sup>; use as auxiliary, 240-1; origin of use, 240.4<sup>b</sup>.
- ſelber, ſelbſt, added to reflexives, 155.5, 169.3.
- sentence, definition and constituents, 426, 428; kinds, 427; arrangement, 429-46.
- separable prefixes, 297-8; conjugation of verbs with such, 299-301; place of prefix, 299.1, 319.2<sup>c, d</sup>; denominative verbs formed with, 405.III.2.
- ſich, 155.3.
- simple predicate adjective, 116.1<sup>a</sup>, 316.2<sup>a</sup>.
- Slavic or Slavonic languages, relationship of, 450.
- ſo, as relative pronoun, 182.1; with aſ omitted after, 438.3<sup>d, e</sup>.



þoldh, 170.

þollen, 251, 257.

Þr., 162.

þ, þ, pronunciation and use of, 49; English correspondents of, 458.3.

þ, romanized as ss, 2.2; þ for þ, in new orthography, 49.1.

stems, 393b.

strong declension, *see* first or strong declension.

strong conjugation, *see* old or strong conjugation.

subject of a sentence, 426.2, 428.1.

subjunctive mood, 235.2; nature and use, 329-30; optative subj., 331; conditional and potential, 332; of indirect statement, 333; other less frequent uses, 332.5.

subordinate clause, *see* dependent.

substantive, *see* noun.

substantive dependent clause, 113.3, 436, 444.

suffixes, origin and relation of, 393 5; formation of, 418c.

superlative degree, of adjective, 134 42; declension of, 140.1, 2; predicate form, 140.2b; adverbial form, 140.2c, 363.2; sup. absolute and relative, 142.1: do. in adverbs, 363.2c; sup. intensified by aller, 142.3.

t, pronunciation of, 37; English correspondent of, 458.2; t for þt in new orthography, 25.1; t for th, 37.3.

tenses, simple, 235.1; compound, 247-1; use of, indicative, 324 8.

Teutonic languages, *see* Germanic.

th, pronunciation of, 37, 50; English correspondent of, 458.2; h of th omitted in new orthography, 37.3.

themes, 393b.

thun, as auxiliary, 242.3.

time, accusative of, 230.2; genitive of, 220.1.

titles, declension of, 108; plural verb used with, 322.4,

transitive verb, 233.1, 227.1a,b.

transposed order of dependent clauses, 434, 441, 444; limited to clauses grammatically dependent, 439.6; of interrogative and exclamatory clauses, 439.4.

þ, pronunciation of, 51.

u, pronunciation of, 12.

ü, pronunciation of, 17.

lle, *see* ü.

ui, pronunciation of, 22.

umlaut, 400.1.

v, pronunciation of, 38.

variation of radical vowel in Old conjugation, 400.2, 262-7.

variative numerals, 205.

ver-, derivation and use of, 307.6, 405.III.1d.

verb, essential characteristic and office of, 232, 314; classification, 233; simple forms of, 235-7; principal parts, 237.1; compound forms, 238-41; auxiliaries, of tense, 239; of mood, 242.1, 251-9; other, 242.2, 3; Old and New conjugations, 245-73; passive voice, 274-82; reflexive verbs, 283-90; impersonal, 291-5; compound, 296 313, 420:- adjuncts of verb, 315-8; their order, 319; object, 315; predicate noun or adjective, 316; adverb, 317; prepositional phrase, 318; genitive case with verbs, 219-20; dative, 222, 225.1; accusative, 227, 230:- primitive verbs, 403; derivative, 404-6.

viel, 192.

vocative, nominative in sense of, 214.

voices, active and passive, 233.2.

voll, as prefix, 313.

vowels, pronunciation of, 7-22; quantity, 7; modified vowels, 14-7.

w, pronunciation of, 39.

was, 129.5, 172-3, 176, 179; was für, 175, 177, 179.



- weak declension, *see* second or weak declension.
- weak conjugation, *s.e.* New or weak conjugation.
- welch, 172, 174, 176-9.
- wenig, 192.
- wer, 172-3, 176, 179.
- werden, conjugation of, 239.3, 4c; as auxiliary of future and conditional tenses, 240.2, 4; of passive voice, 275-7.
- wissen, 260.
- wo or wor, combined with prepositions, in interrogative sense, 173.2; in relative sense, 180.
- wollen, 251, 258.
- word-combination or composition, 418-25.
- word-formation or derivation, introductory explanations, 393-7; principles, 398-402; means of derivation, 399-400; rules of derivation, 403-17.
- written character, German, 2.1, pp. 275-77.
- ʀ, pronunciation of, 40.
- ʁ, pronunciation and use of, 13, 19.3, 41.
- ʒ, pronunciation of, 42; English correspondents of, 458.3.
- ʒer-, derivation and use of, 307.V, 405.III.1c.
- ʒu, as sign of infinitive, 341.
- ʒween, ʒwo, 199a.

# GERMAN TEXT-BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

HENRY HOLT & CO., NEW YORK.

*These books are bound in cloth unless otherwise indicated.*

---

## Grammars and Exercise Books.

- Blackwell's German Prefixes and Suffixes.** By J. S. BLACKWELL, Professor in the University of Missouri. 16mo. 137 pp.
- Huss's Oral Instruction in German.** By H. C. O. HUSS, Professor of Modern Languages in Princeton College. 12mo. 230 pp.
- Joynes-Otto First Book in German, The.** For young pupils. By EMIL OTTO. Revised by EDWARD S. JOYNES, Professor in the South Carolina College. 12mo. 116 pp. Boards.
- Joynes-Otto Introductory German Lessons, The.** New edition, with full vocabularies. By Prof. EDWARD S. JOYNES. 12mo. 252 pp.
- Keetels's Oral Method with German.** By JEAN GUSTAVE KEETELS. 12mo. 371 pp.
- Otis's Elementary German.** By CHARLES P. OTIS. 16mo. 332 pp.
- Otto's German Conversation Grammar.** By Dr. EMIL OTTO. New edition, revised, and in part re-written, by WM. COOK. 12mo. Half roan. 591 pp.
- Otto's Translating English into German.** By Dr. EMIL OTTO. Edited by Prof. RHODES MASSIE and Prof. EDWARD S. JOYNES. 12mo. 167 pp.
- Spanhoofd's Deutsche Grammatik.** By A. W. SPANHOOFD, teacher in St. Paul's School, N. H. 16mo. 187 pp.
- Wenckebach und Schrakamp's Deutsche Grammatik für Amerikaner.** By CARLA WENCKEBACH, Professor in Wellesley College, and JOSEPHA SCHRAKAMP. 12mo. 291 pp.
- Whitney's Compendious German Grammar.** By WM. D. WHITNEY, Professor in Yale University. 12mo. 472 pp. Half roan.
- Whitney's Brief German Grammar,** based on the author's "Compendious German Grammar." By WM. D. WHITNEY. 16mo. 143 pp.
- Whitney-Klemm German by Practice, The.** By Dr. L. R. KLEMM. Edited by WILLIAM D. WHITNEY. 12mo. 305 pp.

## Natural Method and Conversation Books.

- Game of German Conversation.** By Mme. F. JEFF TENSER.
- Heness's Der Neue Leitfaden.** Beim Unterricht in der deutschen Sprache. By GOTTLIEB HENESS. 12mo. 403 pp.
- Heness's Der Sprechlehrer** unter seinen Schülern, von GOTTLIEB HENESS. 12mo. 187 pp.
- Kaiser's Erstes Lehrbuch.** Von HEINRICH C. KAISER, Ph.D. 12mo. 128 pp.
- Pylozet's German Conversations.** By L. PYLODET. 18mo. 278 pp.

## **HENRY HOLT & CO.'S GERMAN TEXT-BOOKS.**

---

**Schrakamp und Van Daell's Das Deutsche Buch.** By A. N. VAN DAELL and JOSEPHA SCHRAKAMP. 12mo. 144 pp.

**Sprechen Sie Deutsch ?** 18mo. 147 pp. Boards .

**Stern's Studien und Plaudereien. First Series.** By SIGMON M. STERN, Director of Stern's School of Languages. 12mo. 262 pp.

**Stern's Studien und Plaudereien. Second Series.** By SIGMON M. STERN and MENCO STERN. 12mo. 380 pp.

**Wenckebach's Deutscher Anschauungs-Unterricht.** By CARLA and HELENE WENCKEBACH. 12mo. 451 pp.

**Williams's German Conversation and Composition.** By ALONZO WILLIAMS, A.M., Professor in Brown University. 12mo. 147 pp.

### **Reading Books.**

**Fouqué's Undine.** With introduction, notes, and vocabulary, by H. C. G. VON JAGEMANN, Professor in the Indiana University. 190 pp.

**Hey's Fabeln für Kinder.** Illustrated by OTTO SPECKTER. With vocabulary. 12mo. 52 pp. Boards

**Joynes-Otto Introductory German Reader, The.** By Dr. EMIL OTTO. With notes and vocabulary by Prof. EDWARD S. JOYNES. 12mo. 282 pp.

**Klemm's Lese- und Sprachbuecher. In Sieben Kreisen.** By Dr. L. R. KLEMM.

**Klemm's Abriss der Geschichte der Deutschen Literatur. Kreis VIII.** 12mo. 385 pp.

**Otis's Grimm's Maerchen.** Selected and edited with introduction, notes, and vocabulary, by CHARLES P. OTIS. 151 pp.

**Otto's German Reader.** By Prof. E. P. EVANS. 12mo. 239 pp. Half roan.

**Schrakamp's Erzaehlungen aus der Deutschen Geschichte.** By JOSEPHA SCHRAKAMP. 12mo. 286 pp.

**Simonson's German Ballad Book.** Prepared by Prof. L. SIMONSON of the Hartford (Ct.) High School. 12mo. 304 pp.

**Storme's Easy German Reading.** By G. STORME. 16mo. 356 pp.

**Wenckebach's Deutsches Lesebuch.** By CARLA and HELENE WENCKEBACH. 12mo. 316 pp.

**Wenckebach's Die Schoensten Deutschen Lieder.** By CARLA and HELENE WENCKEBACH. 12mo. 363 pp.

**Whitney's German Reader.** By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, Professor in Yale University. 12mo. 523 pp. Half roan.

**Whitney-Klemm Elementary German Reader, The.** By Dr. L. R. KLEMM. Edited by Prof. W. D. WHITNEY. 12mo. 237 pp.

### **Dictionary.**

**Whitney's Compendious German Dictionary.** (German-English and English-German.) By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY. 8vo. 900 pp.

*A complete catalogue and price-list of Henry Holt & Co.'s educational publications will be sent on application.*

## **Whitney's German Texts.**

Selected and annotated under the general editorship of Professor **WILLIAM D. WHITNEY**. 16mo. Cloth.

**Goethe's Iphigenie auf Tauris.** With an introduction and notes by **FRANKLIN CARTER**, President of Williams College. 113 pp.

— **Faust. I. Theil.** With an introduction and notes by **WILLIAM COOK**, late Professor in Harvard University. 220 pp.

**Lessing's Minna Von Barnhelm.** With an introduction and notes by **W. D. WHITNEY**, Professor in Yale University. 138 pp.

— **Nathan Der Weise.** With an introduction and notes by **H. C. G. BRANDT**, Professor in Hamilton College. 158 pp.

**Schiller's Wilhelm Tell.** With an introduction and notes by **A. SACHTLEBEN**, Professor in the College of Charleston, S. C. 199 pp.

— **Maria Stuart.** With an introduction and notes by **EDWARD S. JOYNES**, Professor in South Carolina College. 222 pp.

## **Student's Collection of Classic German Plays.**

12mo Paper

**Goethe's Hermann und Dorothea.** With notes by **E. C. F. KRAUSS**. 99 pp

— **Egmont.** Edited by Professor **WILLIAM STEFFEN**. 113 pp.

**Koerner's Zriny.** With an introduction and notes by **EDWARD R. RUGGLES**, Professor in Dartmouth College. 126 pp.

**Lessing's Emilia Galotti.** With notes. 82 pp.

— **Minna Von Barnhelm.** In English, with notes to aid in translating back into German. 123 pp.

**Schiller's Der Neffe Als Onkel.** With notes and a vocabulary by **A. CLEMENT**. 99 pp.

— **Jungfrau Von Orleans.** Edited by **Rev. A. B. NICHOLS**, late Instructor in German in Yale University. 203 pp.

— **Wallenstein's Lager.** With notes by **E. C. F. KRAUSS**. 60 pp

— **Die Piccolomini.** With notes by **E. C. F. KRAUSS**. 139 pp.

— **Wallenstein's Tod.** With notes by **E. C. F. KRAUSS**. 210 pp.

— **Wallenstein**, complete in one volume. Cloth.

## **College Series of German Plays.**

12mo. Paper.

**Einer Muss Heirathen**, by **WILHELM**; and **Eigensinn**, by **BENEDIX**. With notes. 63 pp.

**Three German Comedies.** I. **Er ist Nicht Eifersuechtig**, by **ELZ**; II. **Der Weiberfeind**, by **BENEDIX**; III. **Im Wartesalon Erster Classe**, by **MUELLER**. With notes. 24 pp.

**Der Bibliothekar (The Private Secretary).** By **GUSTAV VON MOSER**. With notes by **FRANZ LANGE**, Ph.D. 162 pp.

**Die Journalisten.** By **GUSTAV FREYTAG**. With notes by **FRANZ LANGE**. 178 pp.

**Zopf und Schwert.** By **GUTZKOW**. With notes by **FRANZ LANGE**. 173 pp.

**Englisch.** By **GOERNER**. With notes by **A. H. EDGREN**, Professor in the University of Nebraska. 61 pp.

**Badekuren.** By **POTLITZ**. With notes. 69 pp.

**Das Herz Vergessen.** By **POTLITZ**. With notes. 79 pp.

**Stern's Selected German Comedies.**

**Selected and Edited by Professor S. M. STERN. 12mo. Paper.**

- Ein Knopf.** By JULIUS ROSEN. 41 pp.  
**Der Schimmel.** By G. VON MOSER. 55 pp.  
**Sie Hat Ihr Herz entdeckt.** By WOLFGANG MUELLER VON KOENIGSWINTER. 79 pp.  
**Simson und Delila.** By EMIL CLAAR. 55 pp.  
**Er Sucht Einen Vetter.** By JUNGMAN. 49 pp.  
**Er Muss Tanzen.** By C. A. PAUL. 51 pp.  
**Gaenschen Von Buchenau.** By W. FRIEDRICH. 59 pp.

**German Plays for Children.**

**Kinder Comedien.** By various authors. Edited and annotated in German by Professor TH. HENESS. Five plays in one volume. 12mo. 141 pp.

**Unterhaltungs Bibliothek.**

12mo. Paper.

- Andersen's Bilderbuch Ohne Bilder.** With notes and vocabulary by Professor L. SIMONSON of the Hartford (Ct.) High School. 104 pp.  
**Die Kijungfrau u. Andere Geschichten.** With notes by E. C. F. KRAUSS. 150 pp.  
**Auerbach's Auf Wache.** Von BERTHOLD AUERBACH, **Der Gefrorene Kuss.** Von OTTO ROQUETTE. The two in one volume. With introduction and notes by A. A. MACDONELL. 126 pp.  
**Carove's Das Maerchen Ohne Ende.** With notes. 45 pp.  
**Eichendorff's Aus Dem Leben Eines Taugenichts.** 132 pp.  
**Ebers's Eine Frage.** With introduction and notes by F. STORR. 117 pp.  
**Fouqué's Undine.** With a Glossary of the principal words and phrases. 129 pp. *See also Jagemann's edition under Reading Books.*  
—— **Sintram und Seine Gefahrten.** 114 pp.  
**Grimm's Die Venus von Milo; Rafael und Michel-Angelo.** 139 pp.  
**Grimm's Kinder- und Hausmaerchen.** With notes. 223 pp. *See also Otis's edition under Reading Books.*  
**Heine's Die Harzreise und Das Buch Le Grand.** With introduction and notes by JAS. A. HARRISON, Professor in Washington and Lee University. 164 pp.  
**Heyse's Anfang und Ende.** 54 pp.  
—— **Die Einsamen.** 44 pp.  
**Hillern's Hoher als Die Kirche.** 46 pp.  
**Mueller's Deutsche Liebe.** With English notes. 121 pp.  
**Muegge's Riikan Voss.** 55 pp.  
—— **Signa Die Seterin.** 71 pp.  
**Nathusius's Tagebuch Eines Armen Fraeuleins.** 163 pp.  
**Ploennies's Princessin Ilse.** With notes by J. M. MERRICK. 45 pp.  
**Putlitz's Was Sich Der Wald Erzaehlt.** 62 pp.  
—— **Vergissmeinnicht.** With English notes. 44 pp.  
**Schiller's Das Lied von der Glocke.** With introduction and notes by CHARLES P. OTIS, Ph.D., late Professor in Massachusetts Institute of Technology. 70 pp.  
**Storke's Immensee.** With notes. 34 pp.  
**Tieck's Die Elfen. Das Rothkaepchen.** With notes by Professor L. SIMONSON. 41 pp.

# FRENCH TEXT-BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

HENRY HOLT & CO., NEW YORK.

*These books are bound in cloth unless otherwise indicated.*

---

## Grammar and Exercise Books.

**Borel's Grammaire Française.** A l'usage des Anglais. Par EUGÈNE BOREL. Revised by E. B. COE. 12mo. 450 pp. Half roan.

**Delille's Condensed French Instruction.** B. C. J. DELILLE. 18mo. 143 pp.

**Eugène's Student's Comparative French Grammar.** To which are added French-English Exercises. Revised by L. H. BUCKINGHAM, Ph.D. 12mo. 284 pp.

**Eugène's Elementary French Lessons.** Revised and edited by L. H. BUCKINGHAM, Ph.D. 12mo. 126 pp.

**Gibert's French Manual.** A French Pronouncing Grammar for Young Students. By M. GIBERT. 12mo. 112 pp.

**Gasc's The Translator.**—English into French. By Professors GASC, LE BRUN, and others. 12mo. 220 pp.

**Julien's Petites Leçons de Conversation et de Grammaire.** By F. JULIEN. Square 12mo. 252 pp.

**Otto's French Conversation Grammar.** Revised by FERDINAND BÔCHER, Professor of Modern Languages in Harvard University. 12mo. 489 pp. Half roan.

**Pylozet's Beginning French.** Exercises in Pronouncing, Spelling, and Translating. By L. PYLODET. 16mo. 180 pp. Boards.

**Sadler's Translating English into French.** By P. SADLER. Revised and annotated, by Prof. C. F. GILLETTE. 12mo. 285 pp.

**The Joynes-Otto Introductory French Lessons.** By EDWARD S. JOYNES, Professor in University of South Carolina. 12mo. 275 pp.

**The Joynes-Otto First Book in French.** By EDWARD S. JOYNES. 12mo. 116 pp. Boards.

**Whitney's French Grammar.** By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, Professor in Yale University. 12mo. 442 pp. Half roan.

**Whitney's Practical French.** Taken from the author's larger Grammar and supplemented by conversations and idiomatic phrases. By Professor W. D. WHITNEY.

## Natural Method and Conversation Books.

**Alliot's Contes et Nouvelles.** Suivis de Conversations, d'Exercices de Grammaire. Par MADAME L. ALLIOT. 12mo.

**Aubert's Colloquial French Drill.** By E. AUBERT, Professor in the Normal College, New York City. 16mo. 66 pp.

**Le Jeu des Auteurs.** 96 Cards in a Box.

**Moutonnier's Les Premiers Pas dans L'Étude du Français par la méthode naturelle.** Par C. MOUTONNIER. 12mo. 197 pp. Illustrated.

## HENRY HOLT & CO.'S FRENCH TEXT-BOOKS.

---

**Parlez-vous Français ?** A pocket manual of French and English Conversation, with hints for pronunciation and a list of the irregular verbs. 18mo. 111 pp. Boards.

**Stern & Méras's Etude Progressive de la Langue Française.** By SIGMON M. STERN and Baptiste Méras. 12mo. 288 pp.

**Witcomb & Bellenger's French Conversation.** Dialogues on Familiar Subjects, to which is annexed the Summary of French Grammar, by DELILLE. 18mo. 250 pp.

### Reading Books.

**Æsop's Fables in French.** With vocabulary. 16mo. 237 pp.

**Alliot's Les Auteurs Contemporains.** Extraits choisis d'œuvres diverses, avec Notices Biographiques et Notes. By MME. L. ALLIOT. 12mo. 371 pp.

**Aubert's Littérature Française.** Première Année. By E. AUBERT. 16mo. 338 pp.

**Bôcher's Progressive French Reader.** With notes and vocabulary by F. BÔCHER, Professor in Harvard University. 12mo. 291 pp. Half roan.

**Fisher's Easy French Reading.** Historical tales and anecdotes, arranged with foot-notes, containing translations of the principal words. 16mo. 253 pp.

**Fleury's L'Histoire de France.** Racoutée à la Jeunesse. Par M. LAMÉ FLEURY. 16mo. 372 pp.

**De Janon's Recueil de Poésies.** À l'usage de la Jeunesse Américaine. Par MME. CAMILLE DE JANON. 16mo. 186 pp.

**Joynes-Otto Introductory French Reader, The.** Edited with notes and vocabulary, by EDWARD S. JOYNES. 12mo. 163 pp.

**Julien's Practical and Conversational Reader in French and English.** By F. JULIEN. Square 12mo. 182 pp.

**Lacombe's Petite Histoire du Peuple Français.** By PAUL LACOMBE. With Grammatical and Explanatory Notes by JULES BUÉ. 12mo. 212 pp.

**La Fontaine's Fables Choies.** Edited, with notes, by LEON DELBOS. 12mo. 119 pp. Boards.

**Pylodet's Beginner's French Reader.** With a complete vocabulary. Arranged by L. PYLODET. 16mo. 235 pp. Boards.

**Pylodet's Second French Reader.** With a complete French-English vocabulary. Compiled by L. PYLODET. Illustrated. 12mo. 277 pp.

**Pylodet's La Littérature Française Classique.** Tirées des Matinées Littéraires d'ÉDOUARD MENNECHET. 12mo. 393 pp.

**Pylodet's La Littérature Française Contemporaine.** Recueil en prose et en vers. 12mo. 310 pp.

**Pylodet's Gouttes de Rosée.** Petit Trésor poétique des Jeunes Personnes. 18mo. 188 pp.

**Pylodet's La Mère L'Oie.** Poésies, énigmes, chansons et rondes enfantines. Illustré. 8vo. 80 pp.

### Dictionaries.

**Bellow's French and English Dictionary for the Pocket.** 32mo. 600 pp.

**Gasc's New Dictionary of the French and English Languages.** By FERDINAND E. A. GASC. 8vo. French-English part, 600 pp. English-French part, 586 pp. One volume.

**Gasc's Improved Modern Pocket Dictionary.** By F. A. E. GASC. 18mo. French-English part, 261 pp. English-French part, 387 pp. One volume. The same, Tourist's edition, 2 vols. in a neat case. 18mo.

*A descriptive catalogue, with prices, of Henry Holt & Co.'s educational publications will be sent on application.*

## **Students' Collection of Classic French Plays.**

The first six with full notes, by Prof. E. S. JOYNES. The last three with notes by LEON DELBOS, M.A. 12mo. Paper.

**Le Cid.** Par CORNEILLE. 110 pp.  
**Athalie.** Par RACINE. 117 pp.  
**Le Misanthrope.** Par MOLIÈRE. 130 pp.  
**L'Avare.** Par MOLIÈRE. 132 pp.  
**Esther.** Par RACINE. 66 pp.  
**Cinna.** Par CORNEILLE. 87 pp.  
**Le Bourgeois Gentilhomme.** Par MOLIÈRE. 140 pp.  
**Horace.** Par CORNEILLE. 78 pp.  
**Les Plaideurs.** Par RACINE. 80 pp.

The foregoing in 3 vols., three plays in each, in the above order. 12mo. Cloth.

## **College Series of Modern French Plays.**

With English Notes. By Prof FERDINAND BOCHER. 12mo. Paper.

**La Jolie Fait Peur.** Par Mme. DE GIRARDIN. 46 pp.  
**La Bataille de Dames.** Par SCRIBE et LEGOUVÉ. 81 pp.  
**La Maison de Penarvan.** Par JULES SANDEAU. 72 pp.  
**La Poudre aux Yeux.** Par LABICHE et MARTIN. 59 pp.  
**Jean Baudry.** Par AUGUSTE VACQUERIE. 72 pp.  
**Les Petits Oiseaux.** Par LABICHE et DELACOUR. 70 pp.  
**Mademoiselle de la Seiglière.** Par J. SANDEAU. 99 pp.  
**Le Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre.** Par O. FEUILLET. 100 pp.  
**Les Dolgts de Fée.** Par E. SCRIBE. 111 pp.

The foregoing in 2 vols. Vol. I., containing the first five—Vol. II., the last four. Cloth.

---

## **Modern French Comedies. (12mo. Paper.)**

**Le Village.** Par O. FEUILLET. 34 pp.  
**La Cagnotte.** Par MM. EUGENE LABICHE et A. DELACOUR. 83 pp.  
**Les Femmes qui Pleurent.** Par MM. SIRAUDIN et LAMBERT THIBOUST. 28 pp.  
**Les Petites Misères de la vie Humaine.** Par M. CLAIRVILLE. 35 pp.  
**Le Niais de Saint Flour.** Par BAYARD et LEMOINE. 38 pp.

With Vocabulary.

**Trois Proverbes.** Par TH. LECLERQ. 68 pp.  
**Valerie.** Par SCRIBE. 39 pp.  
**Le Collier de Perles.** Par MAZÈRES. 56 pp.

---

## **Romantic French Drama. (12mo. Flexible covers.)**

**Ruy Blas.** By VICTOR HUGO. Edited, with notes, by RENA A. MICHAELS, Professor in the Northwestern University. 117 pp.

---

## **French Plays for Children. (12mo. Paper.)**

**La Petite Maman;** par Mme. DE M. **Le Bracelet;** par Mme. DE GAULE. 38 pp.  
**La Vieille Cousine;** par E. SOUVESTRE. **Les Ricochets.** 52 pp.  
**Le Testament de Madame Patural;** par E. SOUVESTRE. **La Demoiselle de St. Cyr;** par DROHOYOWSKA. 54 pp.  
**La Loterie de Francfort;** par E. SOUVESTRE. **La Jeune Savante;** par Mme. CUBO. 47 pp.

---

## **French Plays for Girls. (12mo. Paper.)**

**Trois Comédies pour Jeunes Filles.** I. **Les Cuisinières;** II. **Le Petit Tom;** III. **La Malade Imaginaire.** Par LEMERCIER DE NEUVILLE. 134 pp.



**Bibliothèque d'Instruction et de Récréation.**

12mo volumes. Paper or Cloth.

**Achard's Clos-Pommier, et les Prisonniers du Caucase.** Par XAVIER DE MAISTRE. Cloth. 144 pp.

**Achard's Clos-Pommier.** Paper. 106 pp.

**Bédollière's Mère Michel.** With Vocabulary. Cloth. 138 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Biographies des Musiciens Célèbres.** Cloth. 271 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Carraud et Segur's Contes** (Les Petites Filles Modèles, par Mme. DE SEGUR, et Les Gouters de la Grand'mère, par Mme. Z. CARRAUD). With a list of difficult phrases. Cloth. 193 pp.

**Carraud's Les Gouters de la Grand'mère.** With a list of difficult phrases. Paper 95 pp.

**Choix de Contes Contemporains.** With notes. By B. F. O'CONNOR. Cloth. 300 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Erckmann-Chatrian's Conscrit de 1813.** With notes. By Prof. F. BÔCHER. Cloth. 236 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

—— **Le Blocus.** With notes. By Prof. F. BÔCHER. Cloth. 258 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

—— **Madame Thérèse.** With notes. By Prof. F. BÔCHER. Cloth. 216 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Fallet's Princes de l'Art.** Cloth. 334 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Feuillet's Roman d'un Jeune Homme Pauvre.** Cloth. 204 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Féval's 'Chouans et Bleus.'** With notes. Cloth. 188 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Foa's Contes Biographiques.** With vocabulary. Cloth. 189 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

—— **Petit Robinson de Paris.** With vocabulary. Cloth. 166 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Macé's Bouchée de Pain.** (L'Homme.) With vocabulary. Cloth. 260 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**De Maistre's Voyage Autour de ma Chambre.** Paper. 117 pp.

—— **Les Prisonniers du Caucase.** Paper. 38 pp.

**Porchat's Trois Mois sous la Neige.** Cloth. 160 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Pressensé's Rosa.** With vocabulary. By L. PYLODET. Cloth. 285 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Saint-Germain's Pour une Épingle.** With vocabulary. Cloth. 174 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Sand's Petite Fadette.** Cloth. 205 pp.

—— The same. Paper.

**Séguir et Carraud's Contes.** (Petites Filles Modèles; Les Gouters de la Grand'mère) Cloth. 193 pp.

**Séguir's Les Petites Filles Modèles.** Paper. 98 pp.

**Souvestre's Philosophe sous les Toits.** Cloth. 187 pp.

—— The same. Paper.











